

SAMSUNG

Service Manual

Service Manual

Service Manual



DIGITAL LASER MFP SCX-6555N

The keynote of Product

Copier based Multi-Function Laser printer (Print, Copy, FAX, Scan)

- 55ppm (Letter), 53ppm (A4)
- Max. 1200dpi effective output
- Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base TX
- USB 2.0

- CPU : 500MHz
- Max. paper capacity : 3,140sheets
- Drum Life :80K
- Toner yield : 23K
- HDD : 80G
- Option : Finisher, SCF, HCF, NW Scan Kit
- Machine Life : 1,500K



ELECTRONICS

Service Manual

Service Manual

GSPN (Global Service Partner Network)

North America : service.samsungportal.com

Latin America : latin.samsungportal.com

CIS : cis.samsungportal.com

Europe : europe.samsungportal.com

China : china.samsungportal.com

Asia : asia.samsungportal.com

Mideast & Africa : mea.samsungportal.com

© Samsung Electronics Co.,Ltd. September. 2008
Printed in Korea.

VERSION NO. : 1.00

CODE : 6555-N00XSA

chapter 1 *Precautions*

1.1 Safety Warning	1-1
1.2 Caution for safety	1-2
1.3 ESD Precautions	1-5
1.4 Super Capacitor or Lithium Battery Precautions	1-5

chapter 2 *Product spec and feature*

2.1 Product Specifications	2-1
2.1.1 Product Overview	2-1
2.1.2 Product Specification	2-2
2.1.3 General specifications	2-7
2.1.4 Printer specifications	2-8
2.1.5 Copier specifications	2-8
2.1.6 Scanner specifications	2-9
2.1.7 Facsimile specifications (optional)	2-9
2.1.8 Scan to Email (optional)	2-10
2.1.9 NW Scan (Scan to SMB/FTP/HTTP(S))	2-10
2.1.10 SmarThru Workflow	2-11
2.1.11 Paper Handling	2-12
2.1.12 Model Comparison	2-14
2.1.13 PM(Preventive Maintenance) List	2-15
2.1.14 Option & Maintenance Kit	2-16
2.2 System Overview	2-17
2.2.1 Machine overview	2-20
2.2.2 System Layout	2-22
2.2.3 System Description	2-27
2.2.4 Hardware Structure	2-29
2.3 Finisher Unit	2-45
2.3.1 Summary of the Finisher Unit	2-45
2.3.2 System Configuration	2-47
2.3.3 SPECIFICATION	2-48
2.3.4 PERFORMANCE	2-51

Contents

2.4 HCF Unit(High Capacity Feeder)	2-54
2.4.1 Summary of the Finisher Unit	2-54
2.4.2 Specification	2-55
2.4.3 Media	2-56
2.4.4 Paper Feeding speed	2-57
2.4.5 Maintenance	2-57
2.5 Network Printer Server.....	2-58
2.5.1 Network Printer Configuration.....	2-58
2.5.2 Samsung Network Printer Server Type	2-59
2.5.3 Network Data Reception / Transmission	2-60
2.5.5 SyncThru Web Admin Service Web based Printer Management Solution	2-61
2.5.6 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: General Information (MFP)	2-71
2.5.7 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Machine Settings (MFP)	2-72
2.5.8 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Network Settings	2-73
2.5.9 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Maintenance	2-74
2.5.10 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Support	2-75
2.5.11 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Service (MFP).....	2-76
2.5.12 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication	2-77
2.5.13 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication (Local uthentication).....	2-78
2.5.14 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication (Network uthentication)	2-79
2.5.15 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: LDAP Server Setup	2-82
2.5.16 Samsung SetIP	2-85
2.5.17 TCP/IP Printing Protocol	2-86
2.5.18 Management Protocol	2-87
2.5.19 HTTP.....	2-87

chapter 3 *Disassembly and Reassembly*

3.1 Disassembly and Reassembly on Disassembly	3-1
3.1.1 Screws used in the printer	3-2
3.2 Customer Replaceable Units	3-5
3.2.1 Toner Cartridge	3-5
3.2.2 Replacing the Drum Cartridge	3-7
3.2.3 Replacing The Stapler	3-9
3.3 General Disassembly	3-10
3.3.1 Cover	3-10
3.3.2 DADF	3-11
3.3.3 OPE.....	3-14
3.3.4 Scan Assy	3-15
3.3.5 Main board	3-16
3.3.6 SMPS board	3-17
3.3.7 FDB (Fuser Drive board)	3-17
3.3.8 Transfer Roller	3-18
3.3.9 ELA HOU-ID SENSOR.....	3-18
3.3.10 Fuser.....	3-20
3.3.11 Exit Assy	3-21
3.3.12 Pick up roller	3-21
3.3.13 LSU	3-22
3.3.14 Drive Exit Assy	3-22
3.3.15 Main Drive Assy	3-23
3.3.16 MP Assy	3-24

chapter 4 *Alignment & Troubleshooting*

4.1 Alignment and Adjustments.....	4-1
4.1.1 Paper path	4-1
4.1.2 Clearing Paper Jams	4-3
4.1.3 Abnormal Image Printing and Defective Roller.....	4-14
4.1.4 Control Panel Overview	4-15
4.1.5 Menu overview	4-17

4.1.6 Machine Setup	4-42
4.1.7 Firmware upgrade.....	4-56
4.1.8 Diagnostics.....	4-57
4.1.9 Cleaning Your Machine	4-89
4.1.10 Error Message.....	4-94
4.2 Troubleshooting.....	4-101
4.2.1 Procedure of Checking the Symptoms	4-101
4.2.2 Solution	4-102

chapter 5 *Exploded Views & Parts List*

Thumbnail	5-2
5.1 Main	5-9
5.2 Cover Unit	5-12
5.3 Main Frame	5-14
5.4 Base Frame	5-17
5.5 Main Drive	5-20
5.6 Fuser Drive	5-22
5.7 Exit Ass'y	5-24
5.8 Fuser Unit	5-26
5.9 Pick Up Ass'y.....	5-29
5.10 Side Duplex.....	5-31
5.11 MP Unit.....	5-34
5.12 MP Tray	5-36
5.13 Scanner Ass'y	5-38
5.14 OPE Unit	5-40
5.15 Platen Ass'y.....	5-42
5.16 DADF Ass'y	5-45
5.17 DADF SUB Ass'y	5-47
5.18 Cover Platen_DADF	5-49
5.19 Cover Open_DADF	5-51
5.20 TX Stacker_DADF	5-53
5.21 Guide Scan_DADF.....	5-55
5.22 Guide Pickup_DADF	5-57

5.23	Exit Unit_DADF	5-59
5.24	Cassette	5-61
5.25	Fax Unit	5-63
5.26	SCF	5-65
5.27	FINISHER UNIT (Optional Unit)	5-69
5.27-1	Main_Finisher	5-69
5.27-2	Frame Unit	5-71
5.27-3	Stacker Unit.....	5-74
5.27-4	Extension Tray Unit	5-76
5.27-5	EjectorUnit	5-78
5.27-6	Compile Unit	5-81
5.27-7	Feed Unit	5-83
5.28	HCF UNIT (Optional Unit)	5-86
5.28-1	ELA HOU-HCF	5-86
5.28-2	SUB PLATE-BOTTOM	5-88
5.28-3	SUB UNIT-REAR	5-91
5.28-4	AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT	5-93
5.28-5	ELA HOU-UPPER	5-95
5.28-6	AS-UNIT CASSETTE.....	5-98
5.28-7	MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP	5-100
5.28-8	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R	5-102
5.28-9	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L	5-104
5.28-10	SUB GUIDE REAR	5-106

chapter 6 System Diagram

6.1	Block Diagram	6-1
6.2	Connection Diagram.....	6-2

chapter 7 Reference Information

7.1	Parts Life Cycle Maintenance Table	7-1
7.1.1	Parts Life Cycle Maintenance Table	7-1

Contents

7.1.2 Toner Cartridge Criterion	7-1
7.2 Model Information.....	7-2
7.2.1 Understanding for Model Code	7-2
7.2.2 Understanding Material Code & Name	7-3
7.3 Tool for Troubleshooting	7-4
7.4 Acronyms and Abbreviations	7-5
7.4.1 Acronyms	7-5
7.4.2 Service Parts	7-7
7.5 The Sample Pattern for the Test.....	7-11
7.6 Selecting a location	7-12

1. Precautions

In order to prevent accidents and to prevent damage to the equipment please read the precautions listed below carefully before servicing the printer and follow them closely.

1.1 Safety Warning

(1) Only to be serviced by appropriately qualified service engineers.

High voltages and lasers inside this product are dangerous. This printer should only be serviced by a suitably trained and qualified service engineer.

(2) Use only Samsung replacement parts

There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. Do not make any unauthorized changes or additions to the printer, these could cause the printer to malfunction and create electric shock or fire hazards.

(3) Laser Safety Statement

The Printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, chapter 1 Subchapter J for Class 1(1) laser products, and elsewhere, it is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 825. Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Warning >> Never operate or service the printer with the protective cover removed from Laser/Scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can damage your eyes. When using this product, these basic safety pre-cautions should always be followed to reduce risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons.



CAUTION - INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION
WHEN THIS COVER OPEN.
DO NOT OPEN THIS COVER.

VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG,
WENN ABDECKUNG GE...FFNET.
NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

ATTENTION - RAYONNEMENT LASER INVISIBLE EN CAS
D'OUVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE
AU FAISCEAU.

ATTENZIONE - RADIAZIONE LASER INVISIBLE IN CASO DI
APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL
FASCIO.

PRECAUCION - RADIACION LASER IVISIBLE CUANDO SE ABRE.
EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRALNING VED BNING, NR
SIKKERHEDSBRYDERE ER UDE AF FUNKTION.
UNNG UDSAETTELSE FOR STRALNING.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRALNING NR DEKSEL
PNES. STIRR IKKE INN I STRLEN.
UNNG EKSPONERING FOR STRLEN.

VARNING - OSYNLIG LASERSTRALNING NR DENNA DEL
R...PPNAD OCH SPRREN R URKOPPLAD.
BETRAKTA EJ STRLEN. STRLEN R FARLIG.

VARO! - AVATTAESSA JA SUOJALUKITUS OHITETTAESSA
OLET ALTIINA NKYMTT...MLLE LASER-
STEILYLLE L KATSO STEESEEN.

注 意 - 严禁揭开此盖, 以免激光泄露灼伤

주 의 - 이 덮개를 열면 레이저광에 노출될 수 있으므로
주의하십시오.

1.2 Caution for safety

1.2.1 Toxic material

This product contains toxic materials that could cause illness if ingested.

- (1) If the LCD control panel is damaged it is possible for the liquid inside to leak. This liquid is toxic. Contact with the skin should be avoided, wash any splashes from eyes or skin immediately and contact your doctor. If the liquid gets into the mouth or is swallowed see a doctor immediately.
- (2) Please keep Drum cartridge and Toner Cartridge away from children. The toner powder contained in the Drum cartridge and Toner Cartridge may be harmful and if swallowed you should contact a doctor.

1.2.2 Electric Shock and Fire Safety Precautions

Failure to follow the following instructions could cause electric shock or potentially cause a fire.

- (1) Use only the correct voltage, failure to do so could damage the printer and potentially cause a fire or electric shock.
- (2) Use only the power cable supplied with the printer. Use of an incorrectly specified cable could cause the cable to overheat and potentially cause a fire.
- (3) Do not overload the power socket, this could lead to overheating of the cables inside the wall and could lead to a fire.
- (4) Do not allow water or other liquids to spill into the printer, this can cause electric shock. Do not allow paper clips, pins or other foreign objects to fall into the printer these could cause a short circuit leading to an electric shock or fire hazard.
- (5) Never touch the plugs on either end of the power cable with wet hands, this can cause electric shock. When servicing the printer remove the power plug from the wall socket.
- (6) Use caution when inserting or removing the power connector. The power connector must be inserted completely otherwise a poor contact could cause overheating possibly leading to a fire. When removing the power connector grip it firmly and pull.
- (7) Take care of the power cable. Do not allow it to become twisted, bent sharply round corners or otherwise damaged. Do not place objects on top of the power cable. If the power cable is damaged it could overheat and cause a fire or exposed cables could cause an electric shock. Replace a damaged power cable immediately, do not reuse or repair the damaged cable. Some chemicals can attack the coating on the power cable, weakening the cover or exposing cables causing fire and shock risks.
- (8) Ensure that the power sockets and plugs are not cracked or broken in any way. Any such defects should be repaired immediately. Take care not to cut or damage the power cable or plugs when moving the machine.
- (9) Use caution during thunder or lightening storms. Samsung recommend that this machine be disconnected from the power source when such weather conditions are expected. Do not touch the machine or the power cord if it is still connected to the wall socket in these weather conditions.
- (10) Avoid damp or dusty areas, install the printer in a clean well ventilated location. Do not position the machine near a humidifier. Damp and dust build up inside the machine can lead to overheating and cause a fire.
- (11) Do not position the printer in direct sunlight. This will cause the temperature inside the printer to rise possibly leading to the printer failing to work properly and in extreme conditions could lead to a fire.
- (12) Do not insert any metal objects into the machine through the ventilator fan or other part of the casing, it could make contact with a high voltage conductor inside the machine and cause an electric shock.

1.2.3 Handling Precautions

The following instructions are for your own personal safety, to avoid injury and so as not to damage the printer

- (1) Ensure the printer is installed on a level surface, capable of supporting its weight. Failure to do so could cause the printer to tip or fall.
- (2) The printer contains many rollers, gears and fans. Take great care to ensure that you do not catch your fingers, hair or clothing in any of these rotating devices.
- (3) Do not place any small metal objects, containers of water, chemicals or other liquids close to the printer which if spilled could get into the machine and cause damage or a shock or fire hazard.
- (4) Do not install the machine in areas with high dust or moisture levels, beside an open window or close to a humidifier or heater. Damage could be caused to the printer in such areas.
- (5) Do not place candles, burning cigarettes, etc on the printer, These could cause a fire.

1.2.4 Assembly / Disassembly Precautions

Replace parts carefully, always use Samsung parts. Take care to note the exact location of parts and also cable routing before dismantling any part of the machine. Ensure all parts and cables are replaced correctly. Please carry out the following procedures before dismantling the printer or replacing any parts.

- (1) Check the contents of the machine memory and make a note of any user settings. These will be erased if the mainboard or network card is replaced.
- (2) Ensure that power is disconnected before servicing or replacing any electrical parts.
- (3) Disconnect printer interface cables and power cables.
- (4) Only use approved spare parts. Ensure that part number, product name, any voltage, current or temperature rating are correct.
- (5) When removing or re-fitting any parts do not use excessive force, especially when fitting screws into plastic.
- (6) Take care not to drop any small parts into the machine.
- (7) Handling of the OPC Drum
 - The OPC Drum can be irreparably damaged if it is exposed to light. Take care not to expose the OPC Drum either to direct sunlight or to fluorescent or incandescent room lighting. Exposure for as little as 5 mins can damage the surface's photoconductive properties and will result in print quality degradation. Take extra care when servicing the printer. Remove the OPC Drum and store it in a black bag or other lightproof container. Take care when working with the covers (especially the top cover) open as light is admitted to the OPC area and can damage the OPC Drum.
 - Take care not to scratch the green surface of the OPC Drum Unit. If the green surface of the Drum Cartridge is scratched or touched the print quality will be compromised.

1.2.5 Disregarding this warning may cause bodily injury

- (1) Be careful with the high temperature part.
The fuser unit works at a high temperature. Use caution when working on the printer. Wait for the fuser to cool down before disassembly.
- (2) Do not put finger or hair into the rotating parts.
When operating a printer, do not put hand or hair into the rotating parts (Paper feeding entrance, motor, fan, etc.). If do, you can get harm.
- (3) When you move the printer
 - When transporting/installing the equipment, employ four persons and be sure to hold the positions as shown in the figure.
The equipment is quite heavy and weighs approximately 45 Kg (including consumables), therefore pay full attention when handling it.
 - Be sure not to hold the movable parts or units (e.g. the control panel, DADF) when transporting the equipment.
 - Be sure to use a dedicated outlet with 110V/220V power input.
 - The equipment must be grounded for safety.
 - Select a suitable place for installation. Avoid excessive heat, high humidity, dust, vibration and direct sunlight.
 - Provide proper ventilation since the equipment emits a slight amount of ozone.
 - To insure adequate working space for the copying operation, keep a minimum clearance of 80cm (32" on the left, 80 cm (32") on the right and 10 cm (4") on the rear.
 - The equipment shall be installed near the socket outlet and shall be accessible.
 - Be sure to fix and plug in the power cable securely after the installation so that no one trips over it.

1.3 ESD Precautions

Certain semiconductor devices can be easily damaged by static electricity. Such components are commonly called “Electrostatically Sensitive (ES) Devices” or ESDs. Examples of typical ESDs are: integrated circuits, some field effect transistors, and semiconductor “chip” components.

The techniques outlined below should be followed to help reduce the incidence of component damage caused by static electricity.

Caution >>Be sure no power is applied to the chassis or circuit, and observe all other safety precautions.

1. Immediately before handling a semiconductor component or semiconductor-equipped assembly, drain off any electrostatic charge on your body by touching a known earth ground. Alternatively, employ a commercially available wrist strap device, which should be removed for your personal safety reasons prior to applying power to the unit under test.
2. After removing an electrical assembly equipped with ESDs, place the assembly on a conductive surface, such as aluminum or copper foil, or conductive foam, to prevent electrostatic charge buildup in the vicinity of the assembly.
3. Use only a grounded tip soldering iron to solder or desolder ESDs.
4. Use only an “anti-static” solder removal device. Some solder removal devices not classified as “anti-static” can generate electrical charges sufficient to damage ESDs.
5. Do not use Freon-propelled chemicals. When sprayed, these can generate electrical charges sufficient to damage ESDs.
6. Do not remove a replacement ESD from its protective packaging until immediately before installing it. Most replacement ESDs are packaged with all leads shorted together by conductive foam, aluminum foil, or a comparable conductive material.
7. Immediately before removing the protective shorting material from the leads of a replacement ESD, touch the protective material to the chassis or circuit assembly into which the device will be installed.
8. Maintain continuous electrical contact between the ESD and the assembly into which it will be installed, until completely plugged or soldered into the circuit.
9. Minimize bodily motions when handling unpackaged replacement ESDs. Normal motions, such as the brushing together of clothing fabric and lifting one’s foot from a carpeted floor, can generate static electricity sufficient to damage an ESD.

1.4 Super Capacitor or Lithium Battery Precautions

1. Exercise caution when replacing a super capacitor or Lithium battery. There could be a danger of explosion and subsequent operator injury and/or equipment damage if incorrectly installed.
2. Be sure to replace the battery with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
3. Super capacitor or Lithium batteries contain toxic substances and should not be opened, crushed, or burned for disposal.
4. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacture? instructions.

2. Product spec and feature

2.1 Product Specifications

2.1.1 Product Overview

Concept

Copier based Multi-Function Laser printer
A3 to A4 Transition

Target

SMB, Corporate

- Print, Copy, FAX, Scan
- 55ppm (Letter)
53ppm (A4)
- Max. 1200 dpi effective output
- Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base TX
USB 2.0
- Max. paper capacity : 3140 sheets



SCX-6555N

- 633x506x641 mm
45.5 Kg
- Drum Life :80K
Toner yield : 25K
- Option :
 - Finisher
 - SCF
 - HCF
 - NW Scan Kit
 - Fax

2.1.2 Product Features

Low Operational Cost

- High Performance & Feature Rich MFP with Competitive Total Cost of Ownership

Highly Efficient Solutions

- Document Management & Security Solutions
- Device Management & Job Accounting Solutions

Click-Charge Model

- Click Charge Business model for Customers
- Additional Revenue via Supplies & Service Contract

Less-Time for Maintenance

- User Replaceable PM Parts
- Simple Jam Recovery Features
- Automatic Toner Ordering Systems

Ease of Use

- Compact Design & Color Touch Screen GUI
- User Installable Set & Options
- User Replaceable Toner, Drum

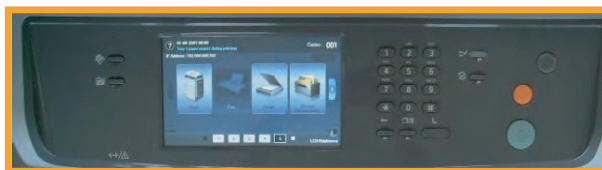
Durability & Reliability

- High Machine Life & Monthly Duty²
- Low UMR & MPBF¹

¹ UMR (6.3 Times / 1M Prints, Unscheduled Maintenance Rate) & MPBF (Mean Print Between Failure, 250K Sheets).

² Monthly Duty (250K)

■ Easy to Handle MFP



TFT LCD Touch Screen



Slide-in Finisher



Slide-in Fax Module



Easy to install Drum



Memory & Option Kit



Easy to install Toner Cartridge

<i>Intuitive User Interface</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High Resolution TFT LCD Color Touch Screen • WVGA 7 inch. 800 x480
<i>User Installable Set & Options</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modular Design Concept for Easy & Fast Installations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Set (Less than 30 minutes by service technician) - Options (Finisher, Fax, SCF, HCF, Stapler)
<i>User Replaceable PM Parts</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Design to Reduce Maintenance Time & Costs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fuser & Transfer Roller - Pickup Roller & Friction Pad (Printer, DADF)
<i>Easy Trouble Resolutions</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper Path & Layout for Convenient Jam Recovery • Animation based Trouble Shooting Guide

2.1.3 Product Specification

2.1.3.1 Main Specifications

Item		SCX-6555N	Remark
Major Function	Standard	- Copy - Direct Print & N/W Print - Direct Scan (USB)	- DADF - HDD(80GB)
	Option	N/W Scan(to Email, FTP, SMB)	OEK (Option Enable Key)
		FAX	Smart DAA, Single LIU
		HCF(2100 sheet @ 75g/m2)	
		SCF (520 sheet @ 75g/m2)	Max. x3 Tray
		Finisher with Stapler	Stapling: Portrait, Landscape (Left-Top 1 position)
		Memory: 256MB	
		Stand: Short/Tall	UK Kentinental
Copy Speed	Simplex Copy	55 cpm/Ltr, 53 cpm/A4	
	Duplex Copy	- Simplex-Duplex(1-2) : Up to. 55 ipm/Ltr, 53 ipm/A4 - Duplex-Duplex(2-2) : Up to. 36 ipm/Ltr, 35 ipm/A4	
Print Speed	Simplex Print	Up to 55 ppm/Ltr, 53 ppm/A4	
	Duplex Print	Up to 50 ipm/Ltr, 48 ipm/A4	
Printing Technology	Printing Method	4 Beam LASER Scanning Unit and Electro-Photography	
	Photoconductive Materials	OPC	
	Developing System	Two Components Magnetic Brush	
	Fusing System	Dual Lamp heating	

Item		SCX-6555N	Remark
Main Processor		Orion2(500MHz) + CIP5+Hyper3	Samsung Printing
Device Memory		256MB System Memory	Option : 256MB (max 512MB)
UI		7" Color TFT LCD with Touch screen panel	800x480 pixels
Physical Interface	Parallel IEEE1284	Not Support	
	IEEE 1394	Not Support	
	USB	Hi-Speed USB 2.0	For Print / Scan / FW Upgrade
	Ethernet	10/100/1000 base TX	
	Wireless	Not Support	
Power Consumption	Operating / Standby / Low-Power / Sleep	900W / 180W / 80W / 35W	Max.1500W
Machine Life	Machine Life	5 Years or 1,500,000 Pages	which comes first
	Average Monthly Print Volume	15,000 Pages	
	Etc. Life	- DADF Feed Roller : 250,000 P - Tray Paper Feed Roller : 250,000P - Transfer Roller : 125,000 P - Fuser Unit : 250,000P	
FCOT	Normal / Low-Power / Sleep	5 / 25 / 40 seconds	@ Platen
FPOT	Normal / Low-Power / Sleep	8/ 25 / 40 seconds	
FAX	Compatibility	ITU-T G3, Super G3	
	Communication System	PSTN / PABX	
	Modem Speed	33.6Kbps	Battery Back-Up 72H

2.1.3.2 General specifications

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
DADF	Up to 100 sheets (55 cpm for Letter Size, 53 cpm for A4 Size)
DADF document size	Width: 174 to 218 mm Length: 128 to 356 mm for single page scan 128 to 356 mm for multi pages scan
Paper input capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plain paper= Tray (1,option tray)=520 sheet, MP=100 sheet • OHP=Tray (1,option tray)=100 sheet, MP=20 sheet • card stock= Tray (1,option tray)=50 sheet, MP=10 sheet • envelopes= Tray (1,option tray)=50 sheet, MP=10 sheet • Label= Tray (1,option tray)=100 sheet, MP=20 sheet
Paper output capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 500 sheet (face down) • 500 sheet (optional stacker)
Consumables	2-piece toner/drum cartridge system
Power rating	110 - 127 VAC, 50/60 Hz, 9 A 220 - 240 VAC, 50/60 Hz, 4.5 A
Power consumption	Average operation mode: Less than 800 W Power save mode: Less than 50 W Stand by mode: Less than 150 W
Noise level ^a	Standby mode: Less than 43 dBA Printing mode: Less than 60 dBA Copying mode: Less than 62 dBA
Warm-up time	Less than 35 seconds (from sleep mode)
Operating environment	Temperature: 10 to 32 Humidity: 20% to 80% RH
Display	Message UI provided through 800 pixels by 480 lines TFT Color Graphic LCD with Touch panel.
Toner cartridge life ^b	25,000 pages at ISO 19752 Std.
Drum cartridge life ^b	80,000 pages at ISO 19752 Std.
*Memory	256 MB (max. 512 MB)
External dimension (W x D x H)	606.8(560)*443(423)*610(490)mm
Weight	45 Kg (including consumables)
Package weight	Paper: 5.4 Kg, Plastic: 1.2 Kg

a. Sound Pressure Level, ISO 7779

b. The number of pages may be affected by operating environment, printing interval, media type, media size and option.

* **Note:** This machine comes with 128 MB of on-board memory and a 128 MB DIMM.
To expand the memory of your machine, you must remove the existing DIMM and purchase a larger one.

2.1.3.3 Printer specifications

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
Printing method		4 Beams Laser scanning unit(1x4 VCSEL Array LSU) + Electro
Printing speed ^a		Up to 53 ppm in A4 (55 ppm in Letter)
Duplex printing speed		Simplex-to-Duplex(1-2):55 ipmr. Duplex-to-Duplex(2-2):35ipm
First print out time		8 seconds (from ready)
Print resolution		Up to 600 x 600 dpi (1200 dpi class)
Printer language		PCL5e, PCL6, PostScript Level3, PDF 1.4, TIFF, JPG
OS Support	PCL/PS	Windows 98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP(32/64bit)/2003 Server(32/64bit), Various Linux OS including Red Hat 8~9, Fedora Core 1~4, Mandrake 9.2~10.1 and SuSE 8.2~9.2 Mac OS 10.3~10.4
	WHQL	Windows 2000/XP/2003 Server
	Network	Windows 98/ME/NT4.0/2000/XP(32/64bits)/2003(32/64bits) NetWare 4.x, 5.x, 6.x Mac OS 8.6~9.2/10.1~10.4 Various Linux OS including Red Hat 8~9, Fedora Core 1~4, Mandrake 9.2~10.1, and SuSE 8.2~9.2 Unix HP-UX, Solaris, SunOS, SCO UNIX
	UNIX Filter	N/A
Printing Support for AS/400		Yes
Direct Printing		PDF 1.4
Interface		High Speed USB 2.0
		Ethernet 10/100 Base TX

a. Print speed will be affected by operating system used, computing performance, application software, connecting method, media type, media size, and job complexity.

b. Please visit www.samsungprinter.com to download the latest software version.

2.1.3.4 Copier specifications

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Copy speed ^a	Up to 53 ppm in A4 (55 cpm in Letter)
Duplex Copy speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Simplex-to-Duplex(1-2): 50 cpm for Letter / 48 cpm for A4 • Duplex-to-Duplex(2-2): 35 cpm for letter
Copy resolution	Scan: up to 600 x 300 (text, text/photo) up to 600 x 600 (photo using platen) up to 600 x 300 (photo using DADF) Print: up to 600 x 600 (text, text/photo, photo)
Zoom rate	25% ~ 400% (Platen), 25% ~ 200% (ADF)
Multiple copies	1 to 999 pages

a. Copy Speed is based on Single Document Multiple Copy.

b. images per minute

2.1.3.5 Scanner specifications

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Compatibility	No direct scan to PC (direct connect TWAIN or WIA)
Scanning method	DADF and Flat-bed Color CCD (Charge Coupled Device) module
Resolution	Optical: 600 x 600 dpi (mono and color) Enhanced: 4,800 x 4,800 dpi
Effective scanning length	Scanner glass: 348 mm DADF: 348 mm
Effective scanning width	Max 208 mm
Color bit depth	Internal: 36 bit External: 24 bit
Mono bit depth	1 bit Linearity & Halftone 8 bits (External), 12 bits (Internal) for Gray Scale
Grayscale	256 levels

2.1.3.6 Facsimile specifications (optional)

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
Compatibility	ITU-T Group 3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) or behind PABX
Data coding	MH/MR/MMR/JBIG/JPEG (Tx only)
Modem speed	Max 33.6 kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page ^a
Maximum document length	Scanner glass: 356 mm Duplex automatic document glass: 356 mm
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard: 203 x 98 dpi • Fine: 203 x 196 dpi • Super Fine: 300 x 300 dpi, 406 x 392 dpi, 203 x 392 dpi (Rx only)
Fax Memory	32MB by HDD
Halftone	256 levels
Auto dialer	up to 200 numbers (all numbers / Max group avail)

a. Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data with ECM compression using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.

2.1.3.7 Scan to Email (optional)

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
HW, S/W Requirements		Need Scan Enable Kit
Authentication	ID/Password Login	LDAP/Kerberos/SMB/Local Authentication
Protocol		SMTP, MIME(Base 64)
Max. Capacity of Message	Message size	1/2/3/4/5/10MB
	Local Address Book	Up to 200
Max. Scan Area		Up to Legal size in Platen, DADF
Basic Sending Mode	Address Entry	Manual EntryLocal Address Book (Up to 200 Users)LDAP
	Duplex	- 1-Sided - 2-Sided - 2-Sided & Rotate Side2
	Resolution	Color: 100, 200, 300 Mono: 100, 200, 300, 400, 600 Gray: 100, 200, 300, 400, 600
Image control Mode	Original Size	Auto, Custom, Mixed Size
	Original type	Text, Text/Photo, Photo, Color
	Darkness	5 Levels
	Sharpness	No
	Erase Background	Yes (On/Off)
	Erase Edge	Yes
Output Control	Quality/File Size	Normal Quality
	File Formats	BMP, TIFF-S, TIFF-M, JPEG, PDF

2.1.3.8 NW Scan (Scan to SMB/FTP/HTTP(S))

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
HW, S/W Requirements		SCX-KIT10S
Authentication	ID/Password Login	LDAP/Kerberos/SMB/Local Authentication
Protocol		SMB, FTP
Template settings	Server Address	IPv4 Address or DNS name
	Port Number	0 ~ 65535
Basic Entry	Color	Yes
	Resolution	Color: 100, 200, 300 Mono: 100, 200, 300, 400, 600 Gray: 100, 200, 300, 400, 600
Image control Mode	Original Size	Auto, Custom, Mixed Size
	Original type	Text, Text/Photo, Photo
	Darkness	5 Levels
	Sharpness	No
	Erase Background	Yes (On/Off)
	Erase Edge	Yes (On/Off)
Output Control	Quality/File Size	Normal Quality
	File Formats	TIFF-S, TIFF-M, JPEG, PDF

2.1.3.9 SmarThru Workflow

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
HW, S/W Requirements		SCX-KIT11S
OS	Server	Windows 2000/XP/2003 Server
	Cient	OS including Windows that supports IE5.5 or higher
Server	No. of user	Up to 1,000 user (up to 100 Workforms per user)
	No. of device	Up to 100 device (up to 10 devices at the same time)
	Address Entry	Server: Device: Server Address book + each Device's Phonebook, Email Address book Local(HD) + Local(SmarThru Workflow) + Global(LDAP) Address book UI
Scan To	Folder(SMB)	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	Email	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	OCR	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	FTP	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	Fax	Tx to Fax Server (Via SmarThru Server)
	HTTP/S	No
	Print	Color scan(Mono Print) to Color Print (Via SmarThru Server)
Fax to	Folder	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	Email	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	OCR	N/A (Fax Resolution is too low)
	FTP	Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	Fax	similar with Server Fax solution (Via SmarThru Server)
	Erase Edge	Print Yes (Via SmarThru Server)
	HTTP/S	No
Security	SSL/TLS	SSLV3.0, TLS V1.0
	Authentication	LDAP, Kerberos v5.0
	IPv6	NO

2.1.3.10 Paper Handling

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
Input Capacity	Main Tray	Up to 520sheets @ 75g/
	MP Tray	100sheets @ 75g/
	Optional Cassette (SCX-S6555A)	520 sheets @ 75g/ Max. three additional cassettes could be attached (SEE Tray2 Option for more information)
	Sensing(Cassette)	H/W Install Sensor: Yes Paper Empty Sensor: Yes Paper Size Detect: Partially YES (A4,Ltr.,Legal,Folio,Oficio, Executive) Paper Type Detect: No
Output Capacity	Face Down	500 sheets @ 75g/
	Face Up	N/A
	Sensing	Paper Full Sensor: Yes
Tray 1/2/3/4	Media Size	Letter, Legal, Oficio, Folio, A4, JIS B5, ISO B5, Executive, A5, Statement, A6, PostCard 4x6, Envelope B5, Envelope Monarch, Envelope COM-10, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Custom
	Media Size Control Guide	Min: 98.0 mm x 148 mm (3.86"x5.83") Max: 215.9 mm x 355.6 mm (8.5"x14.0")
	Media type	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Bond, Punched, Pre-Printed, Recycled, Envelope, Transparency, Label, CardStock, Letterhead,Thick,Cotton,Colored,Archive
	Mdeia Weight	Plain Paper: 60~90g/ (16~24 lb) (Duplex : 20~24lb) Thin Paper: 60g/ (16 lb) Bond: 105~120g/ (28~32 lb) Punched: 60~90g/ (16~24 lb) Pre-Printed : 60~90g/ (16~24 lb) Recycled : 90~108g/ (20~24 lb) Envelope : 75~90g/ Transparency : 138~146
MP Tray	Media Size	Letter, Legal, Oficio, Folio, A4, JIS B5, ISO B5, Executive, A5, Statement, A6, PostCard 4x6, Envelope B5, Envelope Monarch, Envelope COM-10, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C6, Custom
	Media Size Control Guide	Min: 98.0 mm x 148 mm (3.86"x5.83") Max: 215.9 mm x 355.6 mm (8.5"x14.0")
	Media type	Plain Paper, Thin Paper, Bond, Punched, Pre-Printed, Recycled, Envelope, Transparency, Label, CardStock, Letterhead,Thick,Cotton,Colored,Archive
	Mdeia Weight	16~43 lb.
	Paper empty sensor	Yes
	Paper size detection	No

ITEM		DESCRIPTION
DADF	Model Code	Standard
	Document Weight	50~120 g/sm(12.5~28lb = 0.07mm~0.13mm)
	Capacity	100 sheets @ 75g/m ²
	Document Size	Width: 174 ~ 218mm (6.9"~8.5") Length : 128 ~ 356mm (5" ~ 14.0") for Single page scan 128 ~ 400mm (5" ~ 15.7") for Multi pages scan
	Document Type	MN standard except transparencies
	Original size detection	Letter or A4, Legal, and Small Size
Others	High Capacity Feeder	SEE 'HCF'
	Finisher	SEE "Finisher"
	Stapler	SEE Stapler spec in "Finisher"

■ Margin Specification

1. Print/Copy Image Area

- Longitudinal Direction - 4mm from top/bottom edges
- Transverse Direction - 5mm from side edges

2. Skew Specification




Mode	Paper Source	Horizontal	Vertical
Simplex Copy	Tray 1	± 2.5	± 3.0
	MP	± 2.5	± 3.0
	Tray 2-Option	± 3.0	± 3.5
	Tray 3 & 4-Option	± 3.0	± 3.5
Duplex Copy	Tray 1	± 3.0	± 3.5
	MP	± 3.0	± 3.5
	Tray 2-Option	± 3.3	± 3.5
	Tray 3 & 4-Option	± 3.3	± 3.5
Simple Print	Tray 1 & MP	± 1% (± 1.8)	± 1.12% (± 2.4)
	Tray 2, 3 & 4-Option	± 1.12% (± 2)	± 1.12% (± 2.7)
Duplex Print	Tray 1 & MP	± 1.12% (± 2)	± 1.12% (± 2.7)
	Tray 2, 3 & 4-Option	± 1.25% (± 2.2)	± 1.25% (± 3.0)

2.1.4 Model Comparison

1) SAMSUNG Model

Item		SCX-6555N	SCX-6345N
Multifunction Modes		Copy/Print/Scan/Fax	Copy/Print/Scan
Basic Device	Print Speed (B/W)	53	43
	Paper Trays (Std)	520sh CST, 100sh MP	520sh CST, 100sh MP
	Max. Paper Capacity	3140 sheet *Incl. 2,100 sheet HCF	2180 sheet
	Memory	Std: 256 MB Max: 512 MB	Std: 256 MB Max: 384 MB
	Document Handling	DADF - 100 Sheets	DADF - 50 Sheets
	Duplex Print	Standard	Standard
	CPU	500 MHz	400 MHz
	Scan to Email	Standard	Option
	HDD	80 GB	40 GB
	LCD	7" Color Touch Panel	8" Mono Touch Panel
Copy	Copy Resolution	600 x 600	600 x 600 dpi
	Mixed-Size Originals	Partial	Partial
Printer	Print Resolution	1200 x 1200	1200 x 1200
Scan	Color Resolution	600 dpi	300 dpi
	Scan to	E-mail/FTP/SMB/HDD	E-mail/FTP/SMB
Fax	Speed	33.6Kbps	33.6Kbps
	Fax to	Email/Fax/FTP/SMB/HDD	Email/Fax
Connectivity	Gigabit N/W	Standard	No
Consumables	Toner	25K	20K
	Drum	80K	60K

2) Competitor model

		Samsung SCX-6555N	Lexmark X646dte	Xerox WC232 (A3)
Image				
Print	Speed	53 ppm	48 ppm	32 ppm (A4), 22 ipm (A3)
	Resolution	1200 X 1200 dpi	1200 x 1200 dpi	600 X 600 dpi
	F POT	8 Sec. (from Standby)	8.5 sec	4.5 Sec.
	Duplex Print	Standard	Standard	Standard
Copy	Speed	53 ipm	53 cpm	32 ipm (A4), 22 ipm (A3)
	FCOT	Less than 5 Sec.	8.5 sec	4.5 Sec.
	Duplex Copy	Std	Std	Std
Scan	Max Resolution	600 x 600 dpi	600 x 600 dpi	600 x 600 dpi
	Scan To	e-mail, FTP, SMB, Client, HDD	E-mail	e-mail, I-FAX
Fax	Modem Speed	33.6 Kbps	33.6 Kbps	33.6 Kbps
	Compatibility	ITU-T G3, Super G3		ITU (CCIT) Group3
Paper Handling	Media Size	A4	A4	A3
	Input Tray	520sh + MP 100sh HCF 2,100sh Max 3,240sh	500sh x2 +MP 100 Max 4,100 sh	550sh x 2 + MP 150sh LCF 3,600sh Max: 4,800sh
	ADF	DADF 100sh	DADF 100sh	RADF 75sh
General	Noise	Less Than 57dB	Less than 57 dB	67dB
	Dimension	22.2 " x 16.5 " x 21.3 "	22" x 26" x 33"	57" x 49" x 33"
	Duty Cycle/ Month	250Ksh	225K sh	125Ksh

2.1.5 Consumables and PM(Preventive Maintenance) List

Cosumables

Image	Model Name	Description	Life
	SCX-D6555A	Toner cartridge	25K
	SCX-R6555A	Drum Cartridge	80K

PM Parts

Description	Part No.	Life	Qty	Remark
Pickup Roller	JC97-02259A	250K	3	-
Fuser Unit	JC96-04991A	250K	1	-
Transfer Roller	JC97-02287A	125K	1	-
DADF Rubber PAD	JC97-03097A	50K	1	for DADF
DADF Feed Roller	JC97-03099A	250K	1	for DADF
MEA UNIT-HOLDER PAD	JC97-02260A	50K	1	for MP Tray
ELA HOU-MP PICK UP	JC96-03533A	250K	1	for MP Tray
ELA HOU ID SENSOR	JC96-05348A	125K	1	-

Maintenance Kit

	Top Code	Parts	Part No.	Quantity	Lifetime
Maintenance Kit1	SCX-V6555A/SEE	Pick-Up Roller	JC97-02259A	3	250K
		Fuser Unit	JC96-04991A	1	250K
		Quick Install Guide	New	1	-
		Box,Cushion,Label Master Box (4box/1master box)	New	1	-
Maintenance Kit2	SCX-V6555B/SEE	Transfer Roller	JC97-02287A	5	125K
		Quick Install Guide	New	1	-
		Box,Cushion,Label Master Box (4box/1master box)	New	1	-

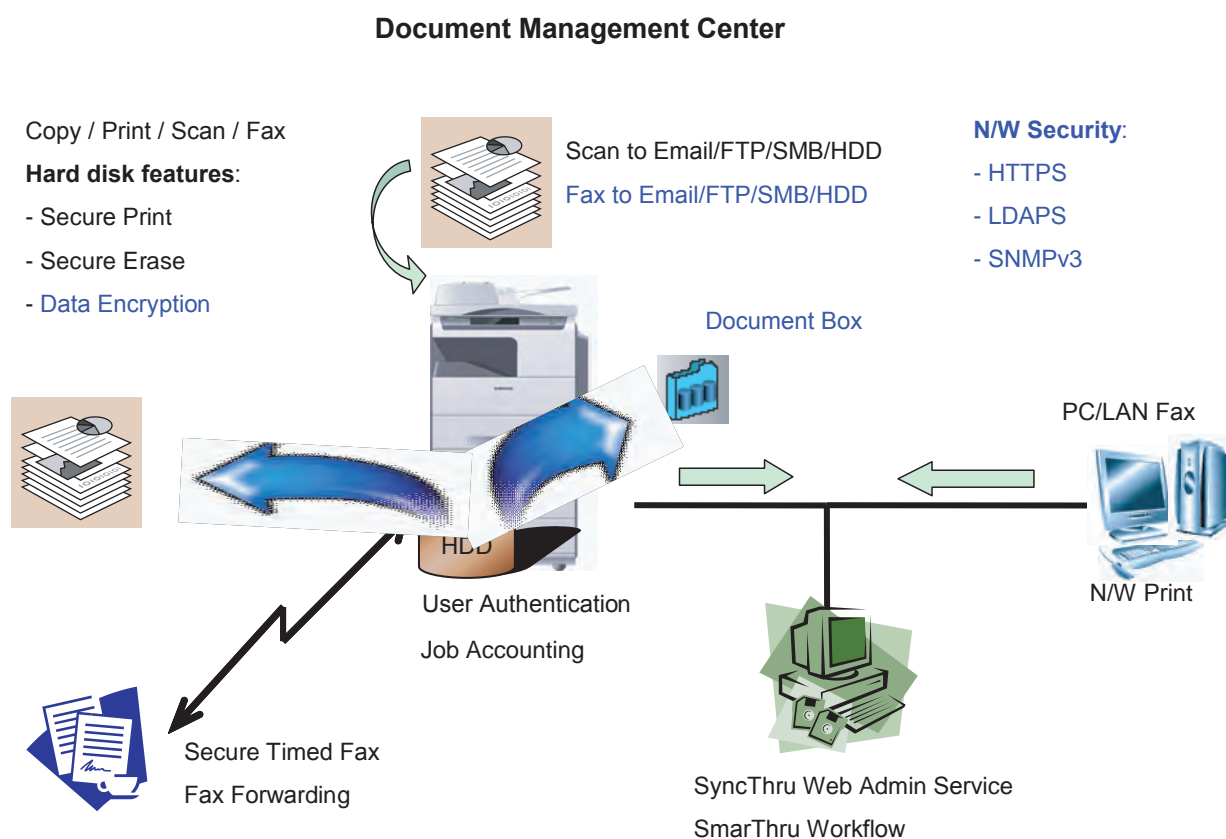
2.1.6 Option Unit

Your machine is a full-featured model that has been optimized to meet most of your printing needs. Recognizing that each user may have different requirements, however, Samsung makes several accessories available to enhance your machine's capabilities.

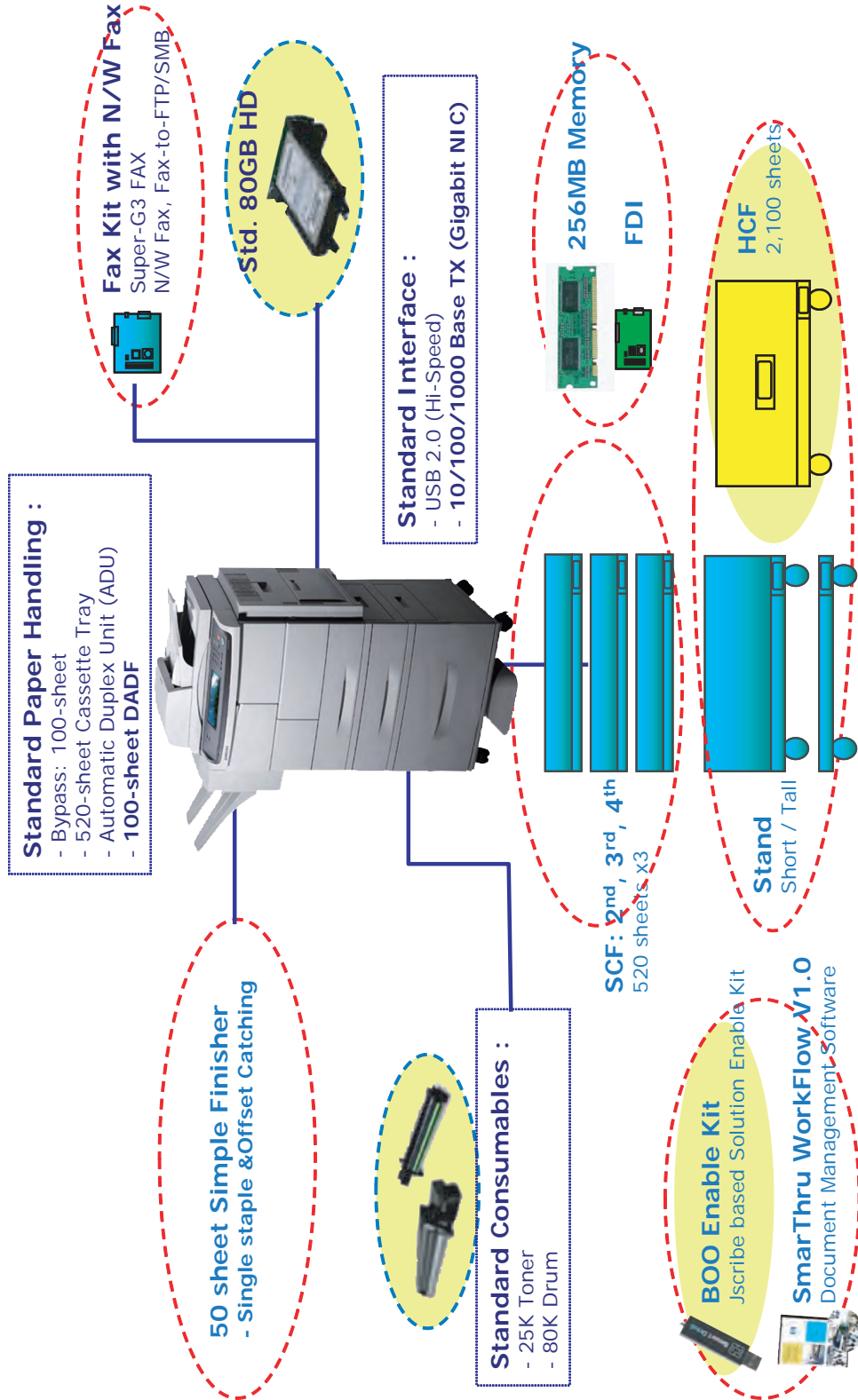
Image	Item	Model Code	Remark
	Short stand	SCX-DSK10S	SCX-6345N/ SCX-6555N/ CLX-8380ND Common Module
	Tall stand	SCX-DSK10T	
	Staples	SCX-STP000	
	Finisher	SCX-FIN11S	
	Memory	ML-MEM160	
	SCF	SCX-S6555A	SCX-6555N/ CLX-8380ND Common Module
	HCF	SCX-HCF100	
	Fax Kit	SCX-FAX210 (Serial Type)	
		SCX-FAX211 (Parallel Type)	







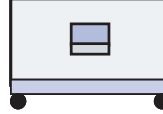
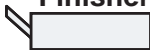





2.2 System Overview

The SCX-6555N is a networked Multi-Function Peripheral (MFP) integrating a plain fax, a B/W laser printer, a color flatbed scanner, and a B/W copier, and a Scan-To-Email sender, scanning. The SCX-6555N series can be expanded to support non-scan and FAX functions such as Copy-only or Copy and printer functions (2-in-1 with DADF). The SCX-6555N is developed for workgroup office customers. The main product concept is "High Speed and High Quality". This model has 55 ppm letter print-speed, 3 sec transmission-speed for fax, 33.6kbps fax-transfer rate, optical 600 dpi color scanner, and addressable 1200 dpi printer.



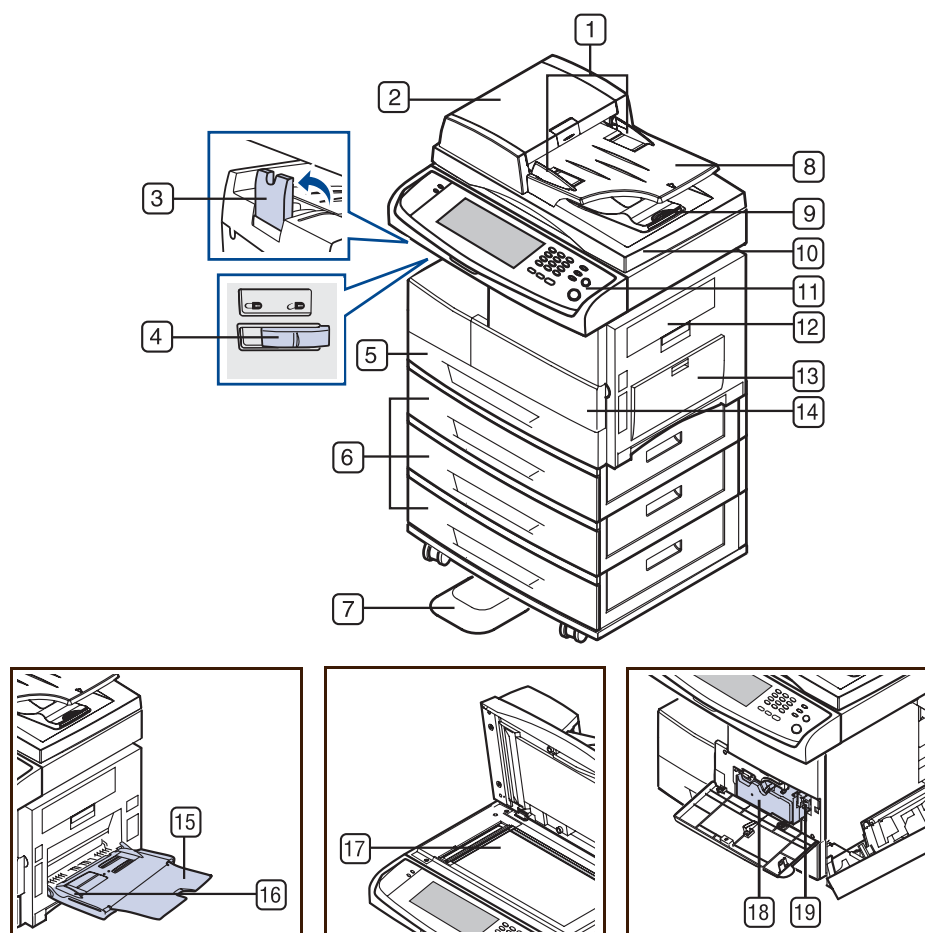
■ Product Configuration



<p>Main Set</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">3-in-1 (NW Print/Copy/Scan)</p>  <p style="text-align: right;">Copy, Network print N/W Scanning with HDD</p>		
<p>Customer Installable Options</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">2nd Tray</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Tall Stand</p> 	<p style="text-align: center;">Tray 2/3/4</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Short Stand</p> 	<p style="text-align: center;">2nd Tray</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">HCF</p> 
<p>Service Installable Options</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Finisher FAX Kit Memory</p>   		
<p>Series Model</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">3-in-1 (NW Print/Copy/Scan)</p> 	<p style="text-align: center;">4-in-1 + SCF + Fax</p> 	<p style="text-align: center;">4-in-1 + SCF + Finisher + Stand</p> 

2.2.1 Machine overview

■ Front view



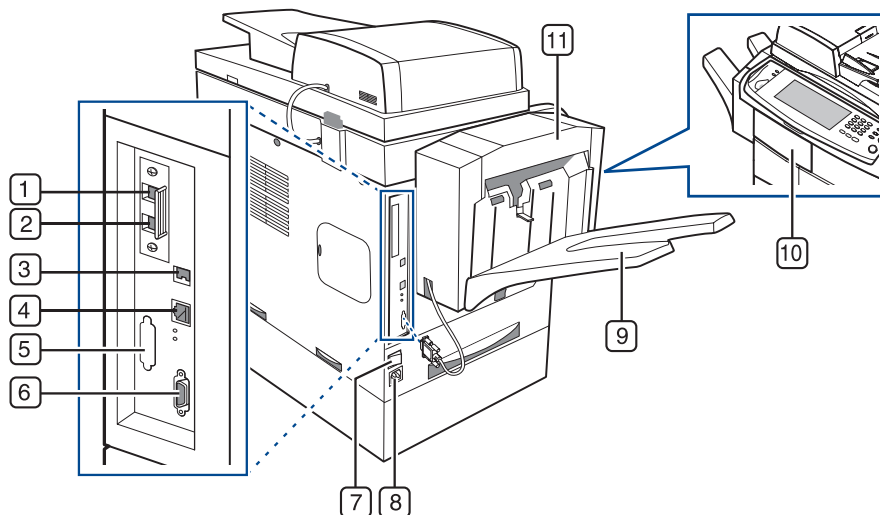
1	DADF ^a document width guides	11	control panel
2	DADF cover	12	side cover
3	output support	13	multi-purpose tray
4	CCD Lock ^b	14	front cover
5	tray 1	15	multi-purpose tray extension
6	optional tray ^c	16	multi-purpose tray paper width guides
7	stand ^c	17	scanner glass
8	DADF document input tray	18	toner cartridge
9	DADF document output tray	19	drum cartridge
10	scanner lid		

a. DADF (Duplex Automatic Document Feeder): The machine with this feature scans both sides of a paper.

b. CCD (Charge Coupled Device) Lock: It is the hardware which enables the scan job. It is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when you move the machine.

c. The symbol ^c is a mark for the optional device.

■ Rear view



1	extension telephone socket (EXT) ^a	7	power switch
2	telephone line socket (LINE) ^a	8	power receptacle
3	USB port	9	finisher output tray (Stacker & Stapler) ^a
4	network port	10	finisher cover (Stacker & Stapler) ^a
5	dummy for FDI (Foreign Device Interface) ^a	11	finisher (Stacker & Stapler) ^a
6	15-pin Finisher connection (Stacker & Stapler) ^a		

a. The symbol ^a is a mark for the optional device.

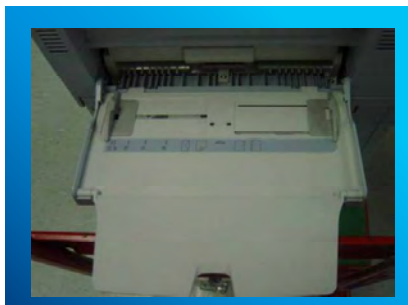
2.2.2 System Layout

2.2.2.1 Feeding Section

- Feeding Method : Universal Cassette Type
- Feeding Standard : Center Loading
- Feeding Capacity : Cassette 520 Sheets (75g/m² Standard Paper)
Manual Feed 100 Sheets(75g/m² Standard Paper)
20 Sheets(OHP, Envelope, etc.)
SCF 520 Sheets (Option)
HCF 2100 Sheets (Option)
- Paper Detecting Sensor : Photo Sensor
- Paper Size Sensor : Tact Switch



Cassette



MPF



HCF

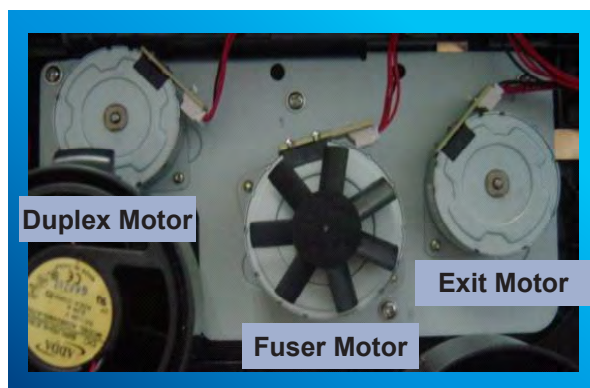
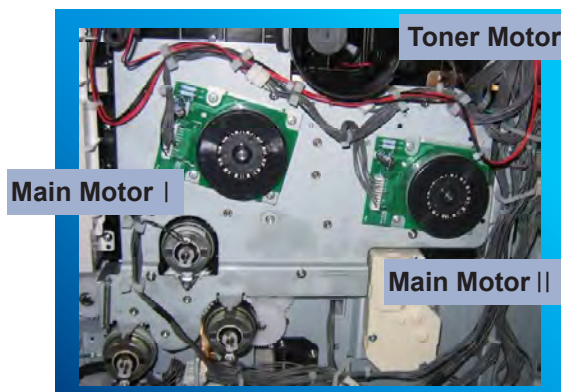
2.2.2.2 Transfer Ass'y

- In Warranty(Life time) : Within 125,000 sheets printing



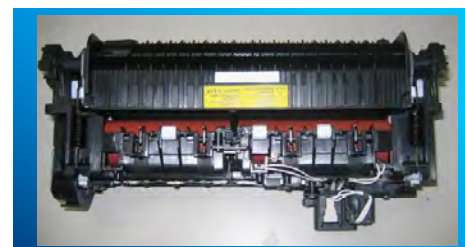
2.2.2.3 Drive Ass'y

- Main Motor I is for Pick-up, MPF and Registration
- Main Motor II is for OPC rotation
- Toner Motor is for Toner feeding
- Fuser Motor is for Fuser and Exit roller
- Duplex Motor is for Duplex feeding
- Exit Motor is for stable stacking



2.2.2.4 Fuser Ass'y

- Fusing Type : [Dual Lamp Heating, 750W/650W]
- Heat Roller : [ø40 electrically nonconductive]
- Pressure Roller : [ø50 electrically conductive]
- Thermistor – Temperature Detecting Sensor
non-contact thermistor 1EA, contact thermistor 2EA
- Thermostat – Overheat Protection Device
- Fuser Bias : 350V on the P/R tube

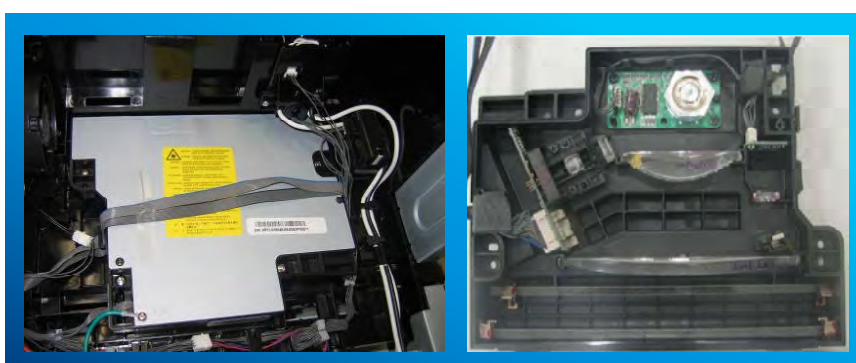


Trouble	Temperature Control concept
Open Heat Error	80°C below for 15 sec after power on.
Over Heat Error (Fuser High Error)	225°C over for 3 sec.
Low Heat Error (Fuser Low Error)	10°C below than target Temp. for 20 sec.

2.2.2.5 LSU

- LSU consists of LD(Laser Diode) and polygon motor control. When the controller generate the printing signal LD will turn on and Polygon motor starts.If the receiving part in LSU detect the beam and then Hsync is generated. When the rotation of polygon motor is steady, it is time of LSU ready status for printing. If either of two condition is not satisfied, LSU error is expected.

Trouble	Failure Analysis
Polygon Motor Error	No steady rotation of Polygon Motor
Hsync Error	In spite of steady rotation of Polygon Motor, No the generation of the Hsync signal



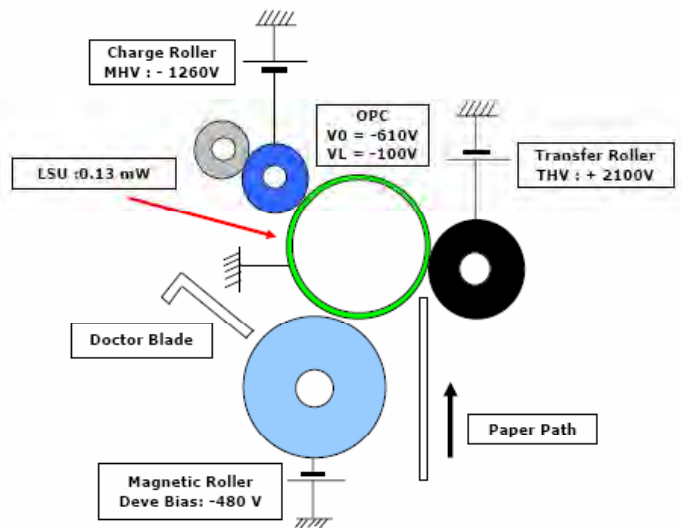
2.2.2.6 Scanner(DADF)

- Scanning Method: Color CCD
- Scan speed : Mono 55/Color 45cpm@300*300
- FCOT (first copy out time) : within 5sec
- DADF Copy speed : simplex 55cpm(LTR)
duplex 36cpm(LTR)



2.2.2.7 Toner Cartridge

- Standard Toner : 25K life



2.2.2.8 Finisher

- Stacking Capacity : up to 500 sheets
- Staple Capacity : 50 sheets
- Staple Cartridge Capacity : 5,000 staples/cartridge



2.2.2.9 Optional Tray (SCF and HCF)

1) SCF

- For customer convenience in managing paper
- Capacity : 520 sheets



2) HCF

- For customer convenience in managing paper
- Capacity : 2100 sheets

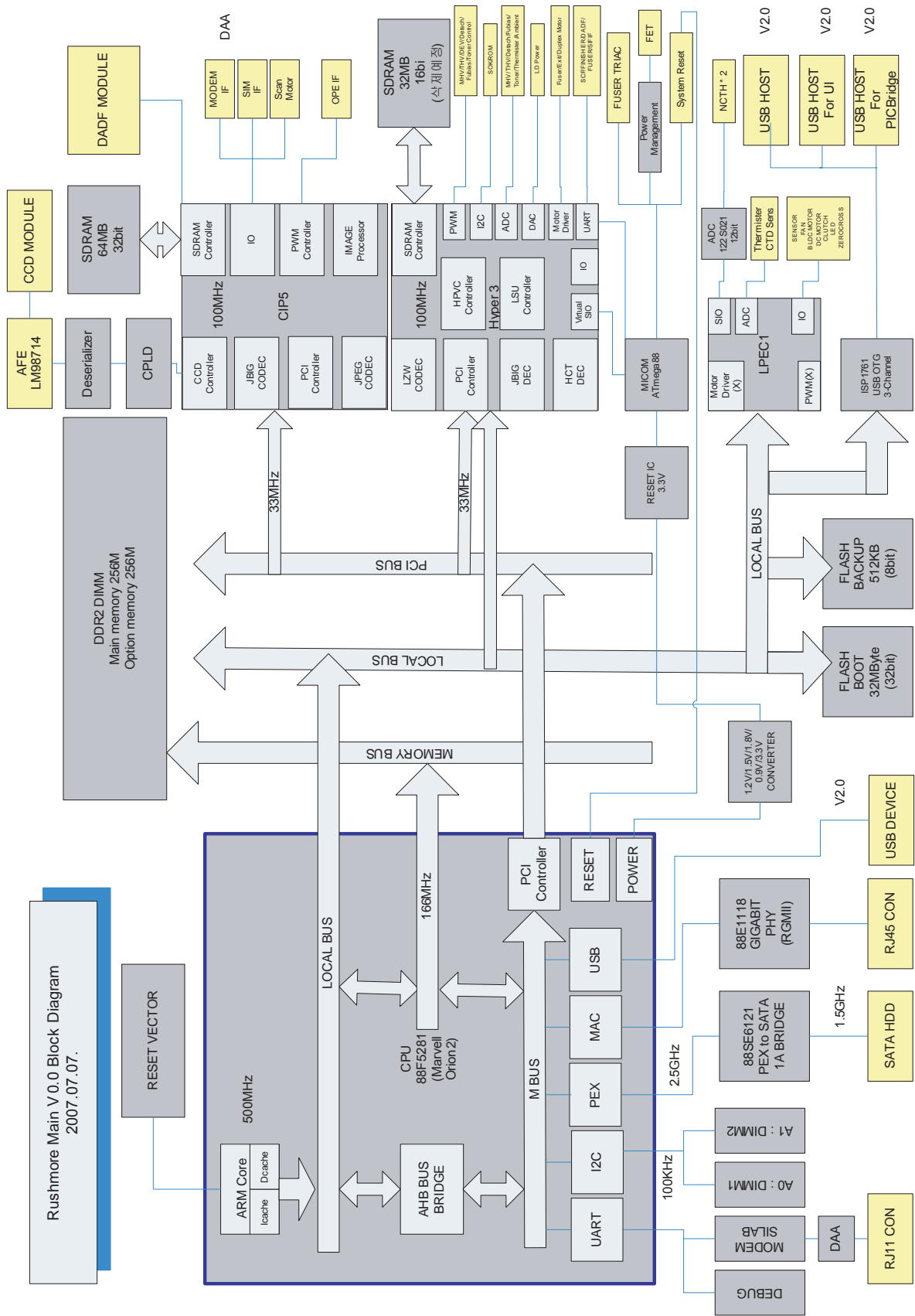


2.2.3 System Description

2.2.3.1 System controller architecture

Largely, SCX-6555N consists of Main Control Part, Operation Panel Part, Scanner Part, Line Interface Part, Power Part and Network Interface Card, Optional DIMM(Dual-In-Memory Module) for Scan-To-Email. Main Controller is commonly applied in all products, Jungfrau Series, and in case of necessary a part of components or Module is selectively adopted in accordance with required feature of each model. Each Part is designed with emphasis on Common-Use/Standardization with other models as independent module.

• System Block Diagram

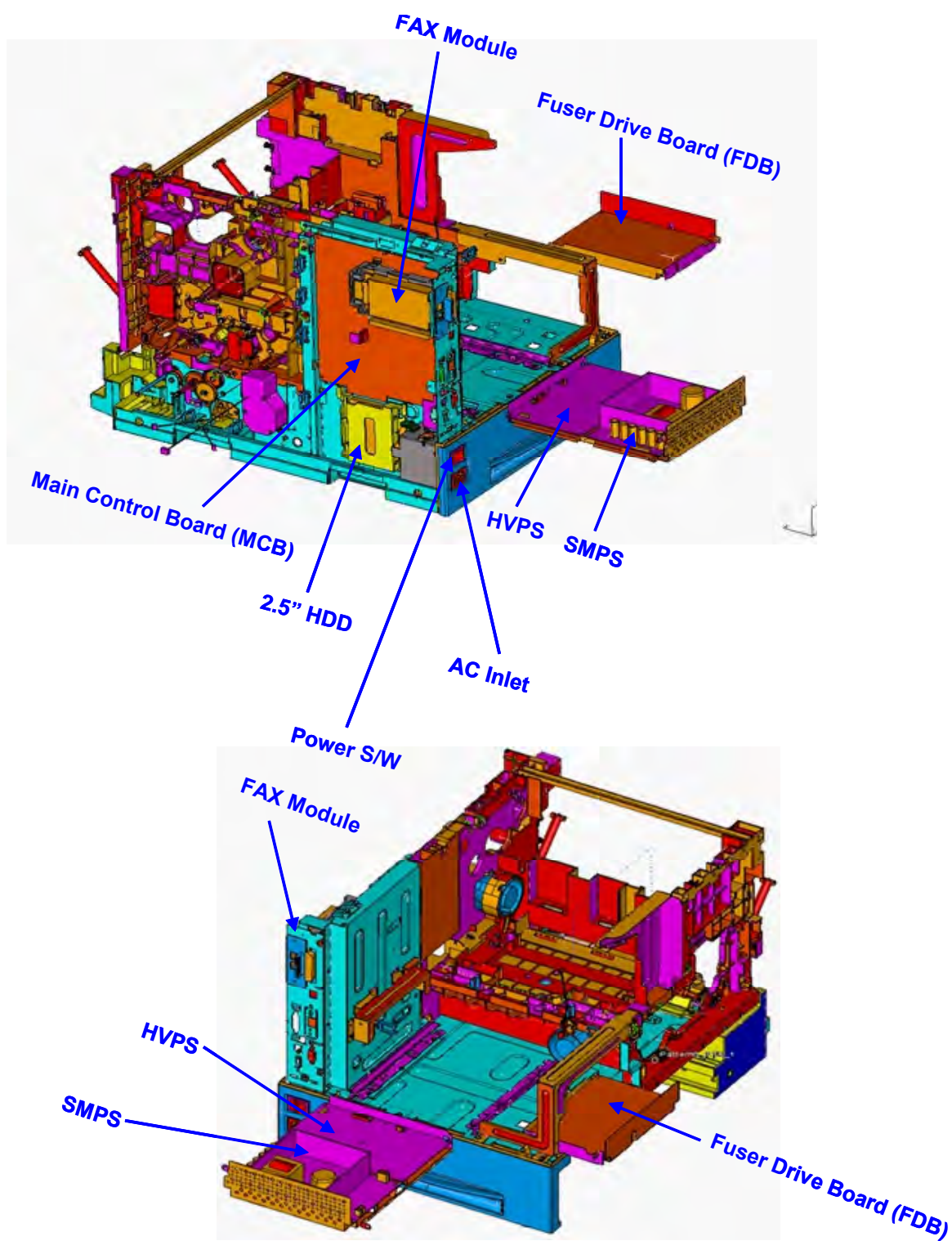


2.2.4 Hardware Structure

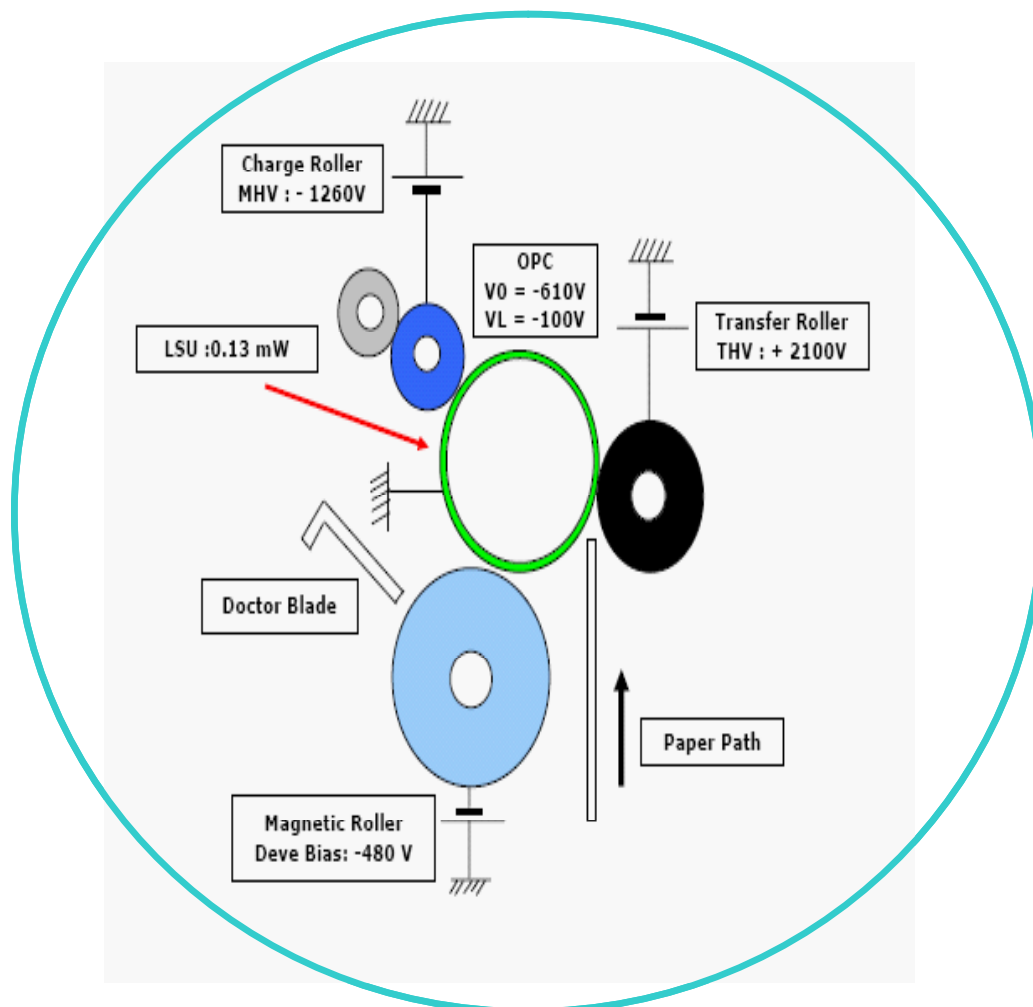
2.2.4.1 Hardware Specification

Main	Main Processor		Orion II
	Array Raster Processor		Hyper3
	Image Processor		CIP5
	Program Memory		32MB
	Working Memory		256MB (Max. 512MB)
	FAX Memory		(32MB)
	Physical Interface	Network	10/100/1000BaseT
		Host	2 Ports
		Device	1 Port
	Modem I/F		Serial (UART)
	HDD		2.5" S-ATA 80GB
Data Back-Up		512KB NOR Flash + 8KB sEEPROM	
Power	SMPS		TYPE 5
	HVPS		T / DEV / C / DET / FUBIAS / ZENER
	Processor		S3C2413
	Memory		32MB NOR Flash 64MB DDR SDRAM
	Display		7" wVGA TFT LCD
	TSP		7"
	MCB Interface		USB
User Interface	USB Host		x
DADF	Processor	S3C443FX	Processor
	MCB Interface	UART	MCB Interface
	Drive	2 Stepping Motors 2 Clutch	Drive
	Sensor	10 Sensors	Sensor
SCF & HCF	Processor	S3C443FX	Processor
	MCB Interface	UART	MCB Interface
	Drive	1 Stepping Motor 1 DC Motor 1 Clutch	Drive
	Sensor	SCF: 10 Sensors HCF: 12 Sensors	Sensor
Finisher	Processor	S3C443FX	Processor
	Main Interface	UART	Main Interface

2.2.4.2 Hardware Layout



2.2.4.3 Electro-photographic Process



1) OPC Section

- OPC Type : UCL Type (Φ30)
- Life : 80K Pages (in accordance with simplex mode)
- V0 = -610 (V)
- VL = -100 (V)
- Process Speed : 345 mm/sec (Letter 55 PPM)

2) Development Section

- Development Roller : Magnetic Roller with Sleeve (Φ25)
- Development Method : Non magnetic Two Component Type
- Carrier(Ferrite Type) + Toner(Non magnetic Pulverized Toner) : 300 g
- Vbias = -480 (V)
- Speed (vs OPC) -> 1: 2

3) Mixer Section

- Type : Mixer + Mixing Screw Type
- High Speed Mixing type
- Roll of Mixer :
 - 1) Circulation of Developer
 - 2) Supply Developer to Magnetic Roller

4) Charger Section

- Type : Charge Roller Type (Φ14)
- Cleaning Method : Urethane Cleaning Roller (Contact Type)
- MHV : -1260 (V)
- Pressure Type : Two Spring (End of Roller Shaft)

5) Toner Cartridge Section

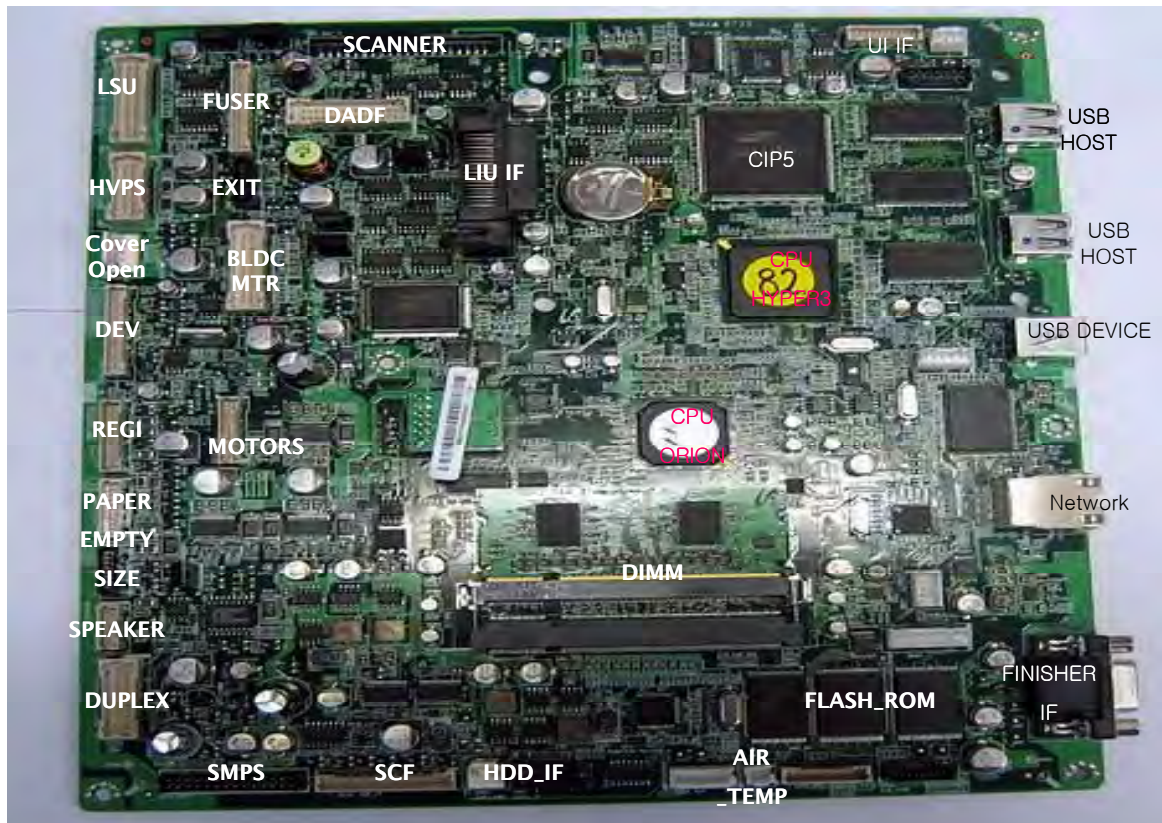
- Toner Type : Non magnetic Pulverized Toner (680 g)
- Life : 23K (in accordance with ISO 19752 Pattern)
- Supply Type : Urethane Feed Roller
- Supply Method : DC Motor by Pulse control

6) CRUM Section

- Type : SCRUM Type
- Control Method : Modular Jack Type
- Function :
 - 1) Interface with machine and cartridge
 - 2) Storage (Cartridge Information...etc)

2.2.4.4 Main PBA

The Main Control Part comprises 1 CPU and 1 B D by adopting the dedicated Controller for Fax & LBP. The Scanner Part comprises ADF& CCD and connected with Main through Harness.



* MAIN Processor

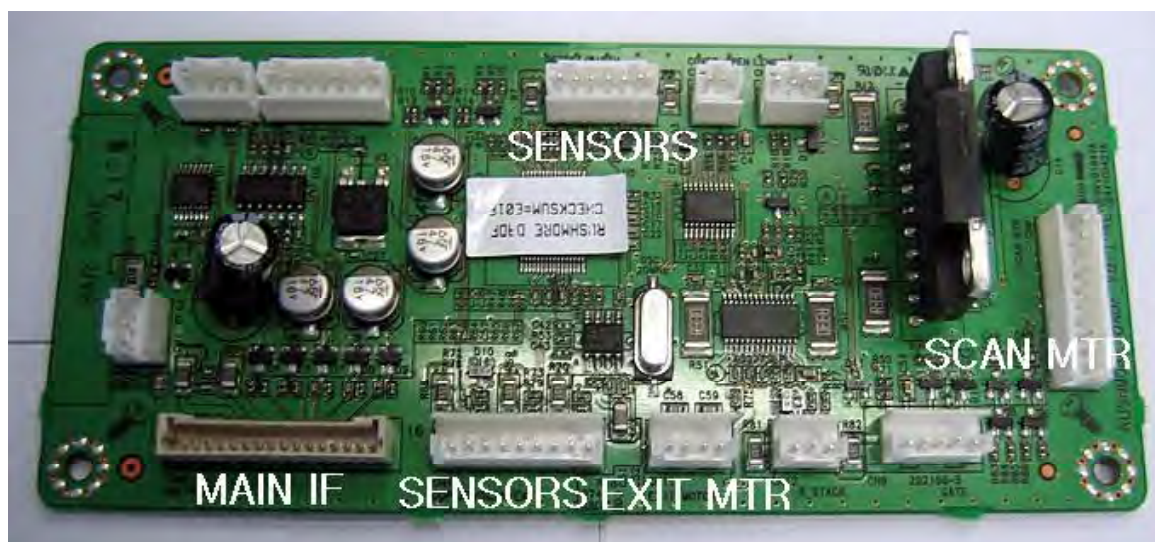
- (1) ORION2(ARM9 core)
 - for MAIN SYSTEM BUS
- (2) HYPER3(SEC, ARM 1020E)
 - for Video Controller, Engine, LSU...
- (3) CIP5 : Color Image Processor

* External Interface Ports

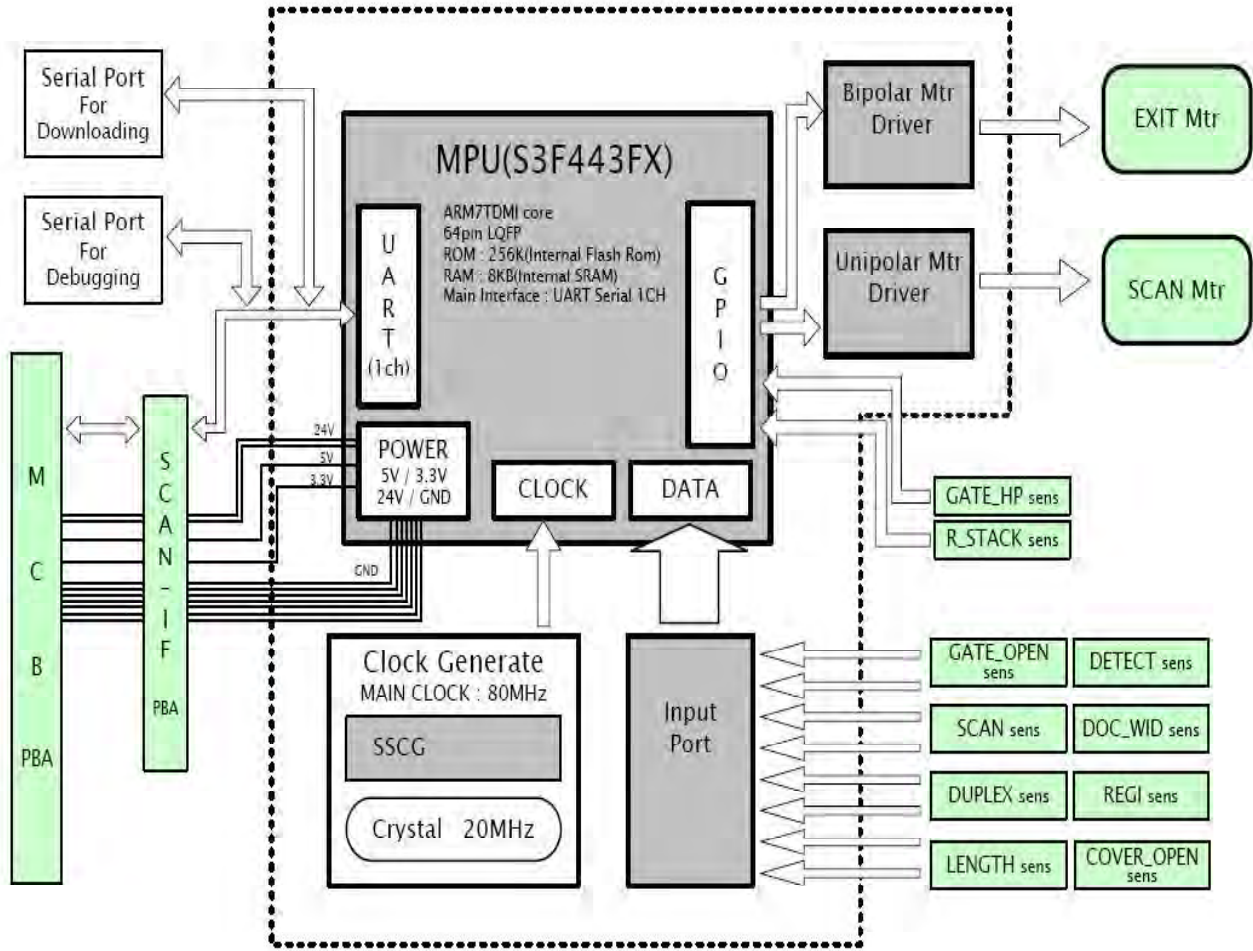
- (1) USB
 - 2.0 DEVICE 1
 - 2.0 HOST 2
- (2) N/W(Gigabit)
- (3) RJ45 for telephone(with Optional Fax Kit)
- (4) Finisher IF

2.2.4.5 DADF Board (Duplex Automatic Document Feeder)

A DADF board controls 2 stepping motors, 2 clutches, 1 solenoid, 10 sensors. By using CPU(S3F443FX) having 80MHz Core Frequency. A DADF board supports customer to copy Max 100 sheets of documents automatically. In this reason, SCX-6555N series has a DADF module in standard option. Also 6555N's DADF is serving up to 65% of Duplex speed. And this happens to make one more paper path for high speed paper feeding.



< DADF Block Diagram >



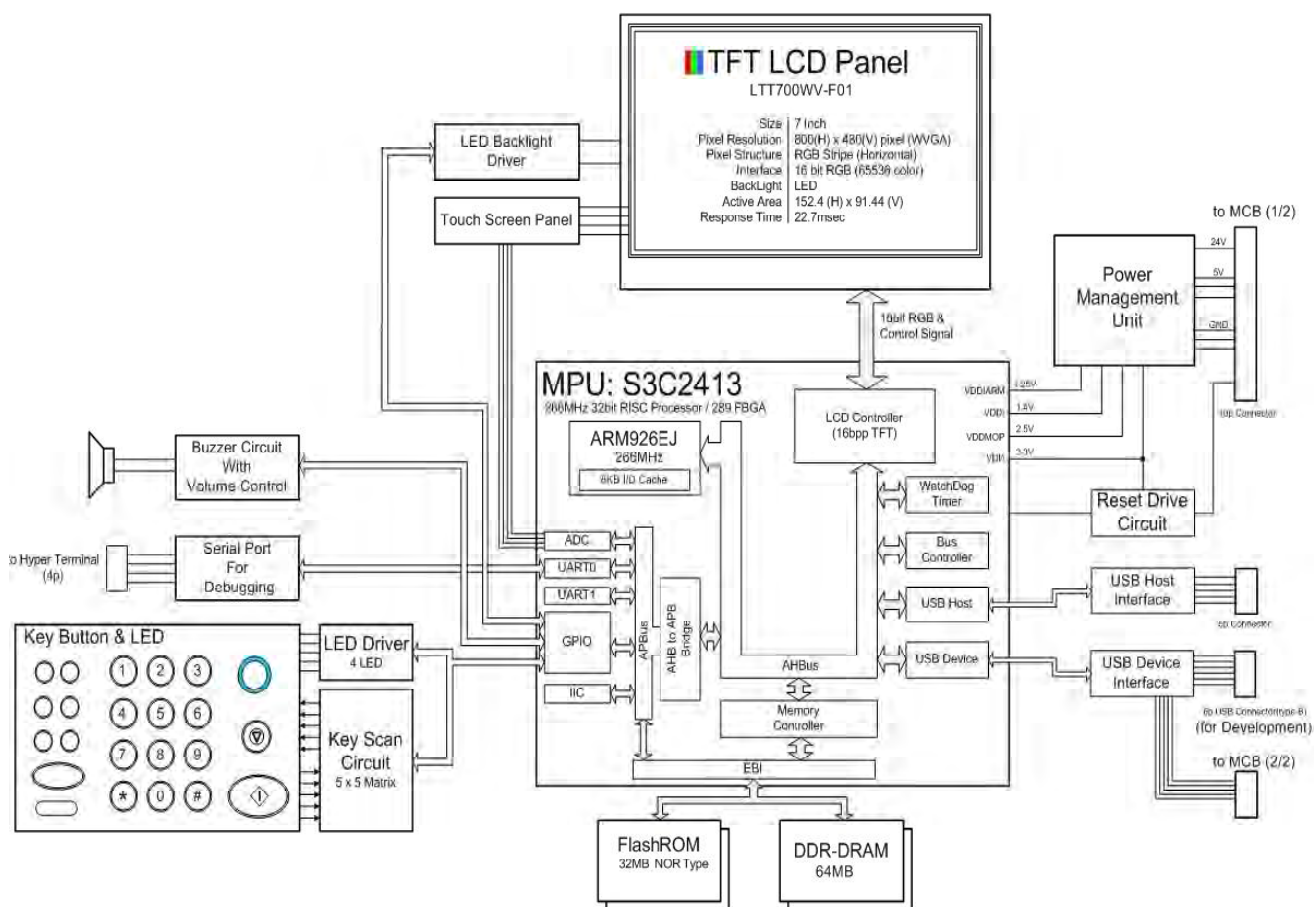
- MPU: S3F443FX (Refer to the next page)
- Motor Drive Block
 - Unipolar Motor Driver IC(SLA7066M): Most rollers are controlled by a SLA7066M motor drive.
 - Bipolar Motor Driver IC(A3977): For Exit motor
- Clock Generator(CY25814): SSCG converts crystal 12Mhz to 48MHz clock for MPU main clock

2.2.4.6 OPE Board

- 800*480 color TFT LCD
- CPU(S3C2413C): ARM9 Based 32bit RISC Processor.
- Flash ROM(32MB): OP Operating program F/W
- DDR2(64MB): System Program and Data Buffer
- BLU : LED type / with TSP(Touch Screen Panel)



< OPE Board Block Diagram >

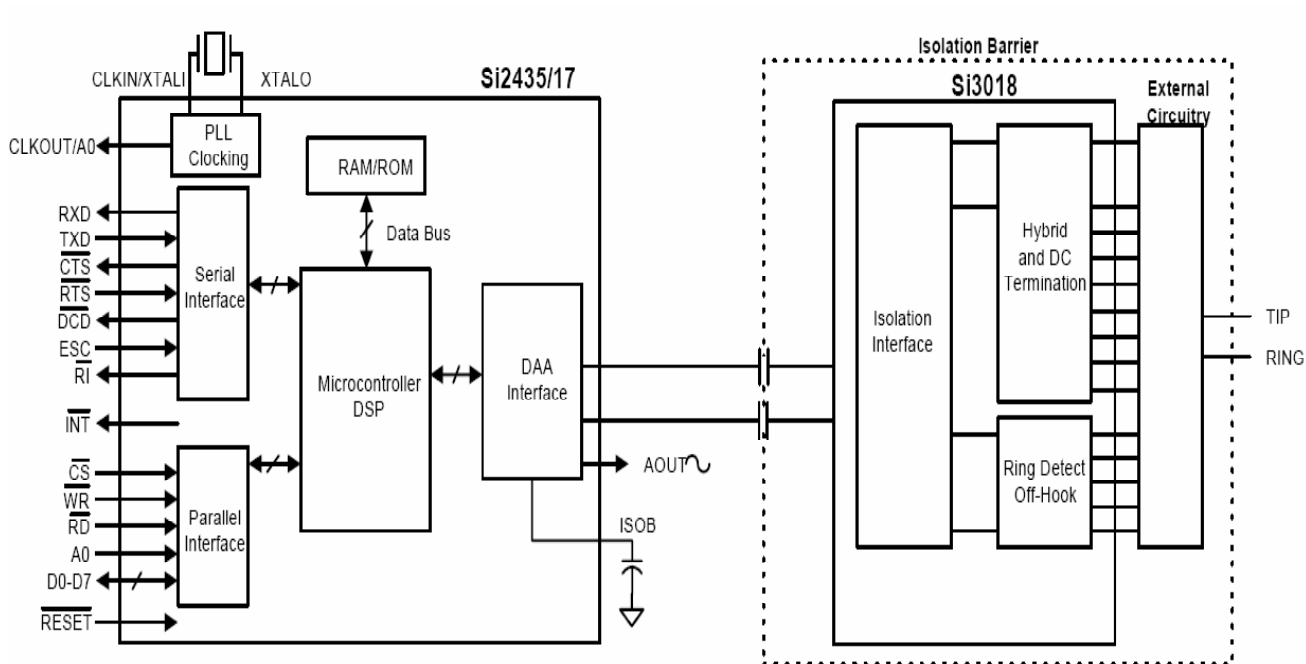


2.2.4.7 FAX Board

- LINE CONNECTION: PSTN or PABX (RJ-11)
- Compatibility: ITU-T G3, Super G3
- Communication System: PSTN/PABX
- Modem Speed: 33.6Kbps
- TX Speed: 3 sec
 - * Standard Resolution, MMR, 33,6Kbps
 - * Phase "C" by ITU-T No.1 Chart in Memory transmission with ECM
- Scan Speed
 - Platen -> 2 sec / A4
 - ADF -> 5.5 sec / A4
 - * Scan time: 2 sec/A4 @ 203x98dpi
 - * Scan setup time : 3.5 sec
- Receive Mode: Fax, TEL, ANS/FAX
- Compression: MH/MR/MMR/JBIG/JPEG
- ECM: Yes
- Resolution Std: 203*98dpi
 - Fine: 203*196dpi
 - S.Fine: 203x392dpi, 300*300dpi, 406x392dpi
- Contrast: Adsustable 5 levels
- Fax Memory: 32MB (in HDD)



< Block Diagram >



< Parallel VS Serial >

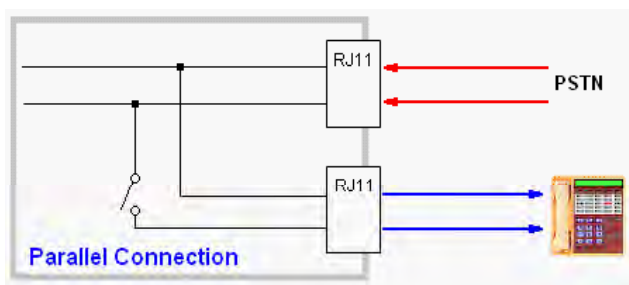
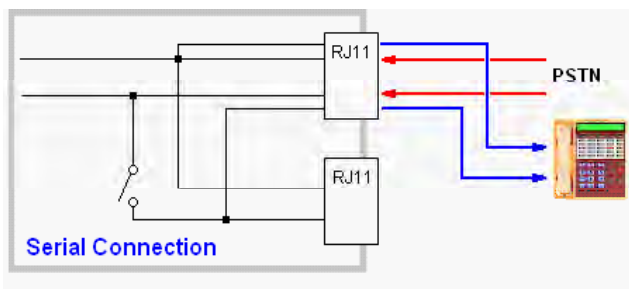
The FAX unit has a parallel and a serial type according to PSTN.

- How to connect a serial fax first.

- 1) Users can use fax by connecting line cord into Line RJ11.
- 2) 2nd phone can be used by 4 line cord.

- Parallel Fax

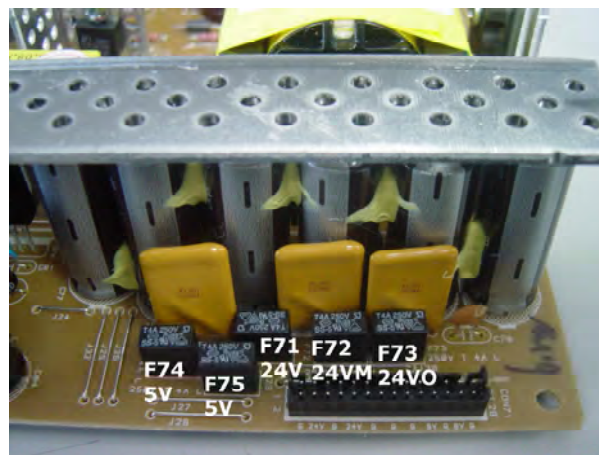
- 1) Users can use fax by connecting line cord into Line RJ11.
- 2) If an user want to use a 2nd phone, just connect to External RJ11.



2.2.4.8 SMPS PBA

It supplies electric power to a Main Board and other boards through a Main Controller by +5V,+24V from 110V/220V power input. It has safety protection modes for over current and load.

- 24V(CON71-1, 3, 4): LSU, OPE, HVPS, DEVE, etc use on all other components except below 24V powers.
- 24VM(CON71-7, 9, 10): Make 24VS for units with regard to safety like a fan.
- 24VO(CON71-13, 15): Option (SCF, Finisher)
- 5V(CON 71-19, 21, 22, 25, 26): It is a source to make all other power, 3.3V and 1.2V used in IC, CPU and etc.



< General Input/Output Voltage >

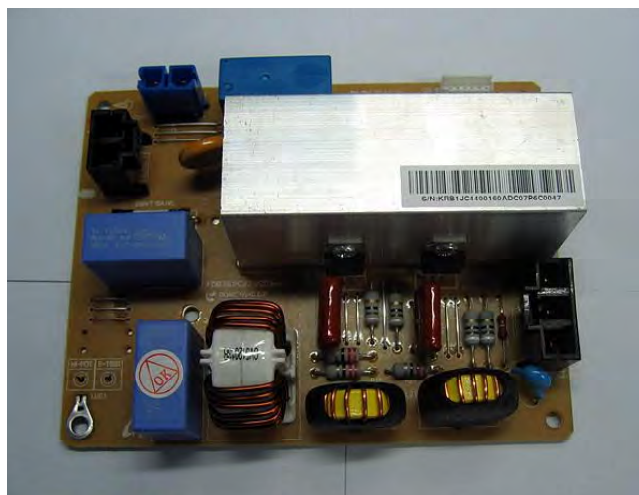
- 1) AC 110V (90V ~ 135V)
- 2) AC 220V (180V ~ 270V)
- 3) Input Current: 3.214 [A] (rms)
- 4) Output Power: 192W/Max.270W
 - DC 5V: 24W~30W (0.6A ~ 6.0A)
 - DC 24V: 168W~240W (0A ~ 10A)

2.2.4.9 FDB PBA (FUSER DRIVE BOARD)

FDB(FUSER DRIVE BOARD) is controlled by MCB's AC lamp control signal. It can handle the FUSER Assy' by providing AC voltage.

< General Input/Output Voltage >

- 1) AC 110V (90V ~ 135V)
- 2) AC 220V (180V ~ 270V)
- 3) Output Power: 800[W]
(800[W]/100V~120V=8A)
(800[W]/220V~240V=4A)



2.2.4.10 HVPS PBA (High Voltage Power Supply)

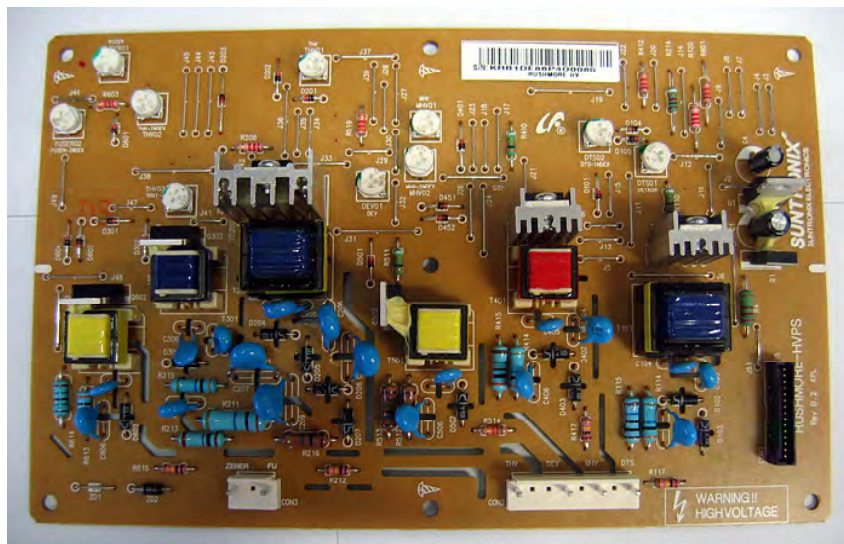
HVPS Part outputs the high voltage for THV(+),(-)/MHV/DEV/DTS/FU-BIAS by DC 24V input and the output high voltage is provided into OPC Cartridge and Transfer Roller. It helps transfer toner to media well.

< General Input Voltage >

- 1) DC 5V (4.75 ~ 5.25V)
- 2) DC 24V (21.6V ~ 27.6V)

< General Output Voltage >

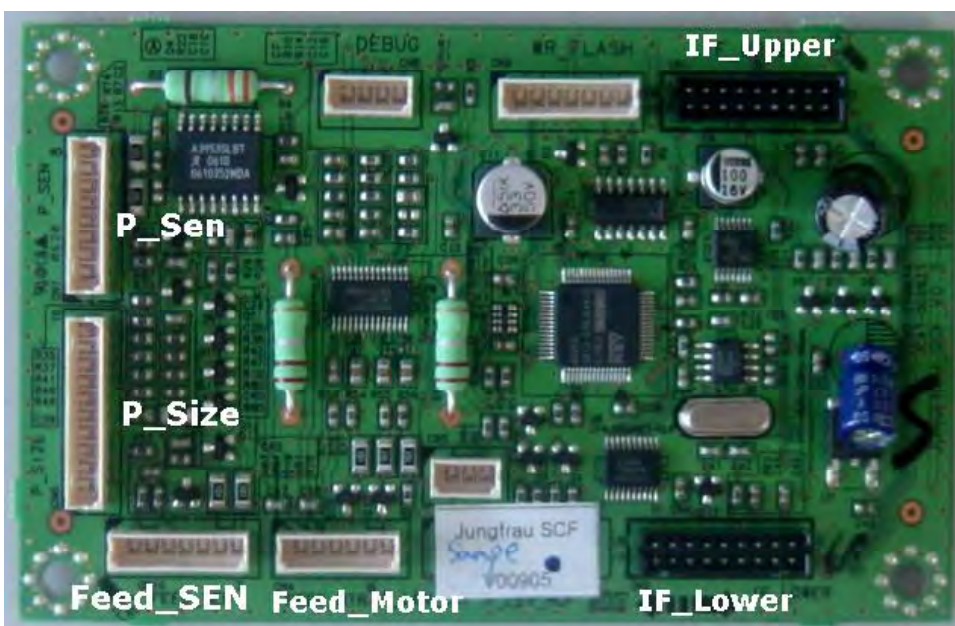
- 1) MHV: -1200V±3%
- 2) Fu-Bias: 220V±5%
- 3) DEV: -500V±3%
- 4) THV(+): 1400V±3%
- 5) THV(-): -1300V±20%
- 6) DTS: -1800V±3%



2.2.4.11 SCF / HCF

A SCF PBA is a option cassette controlling in SCX-6555N. Max. 3 cassettes are connected on a purpose of feeding paper. It consists one controller(S3F443FX) and two motor drive IC to control feeding timing through Uart communication with a Main controller.

This PBA is also used in HCF. Key funtion is same with SCF and HCF & SCF can be able to be composed together.

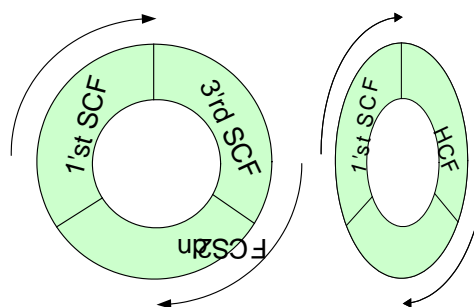


< Feeding Control >

The following example shows the order to select SCF.

Example)

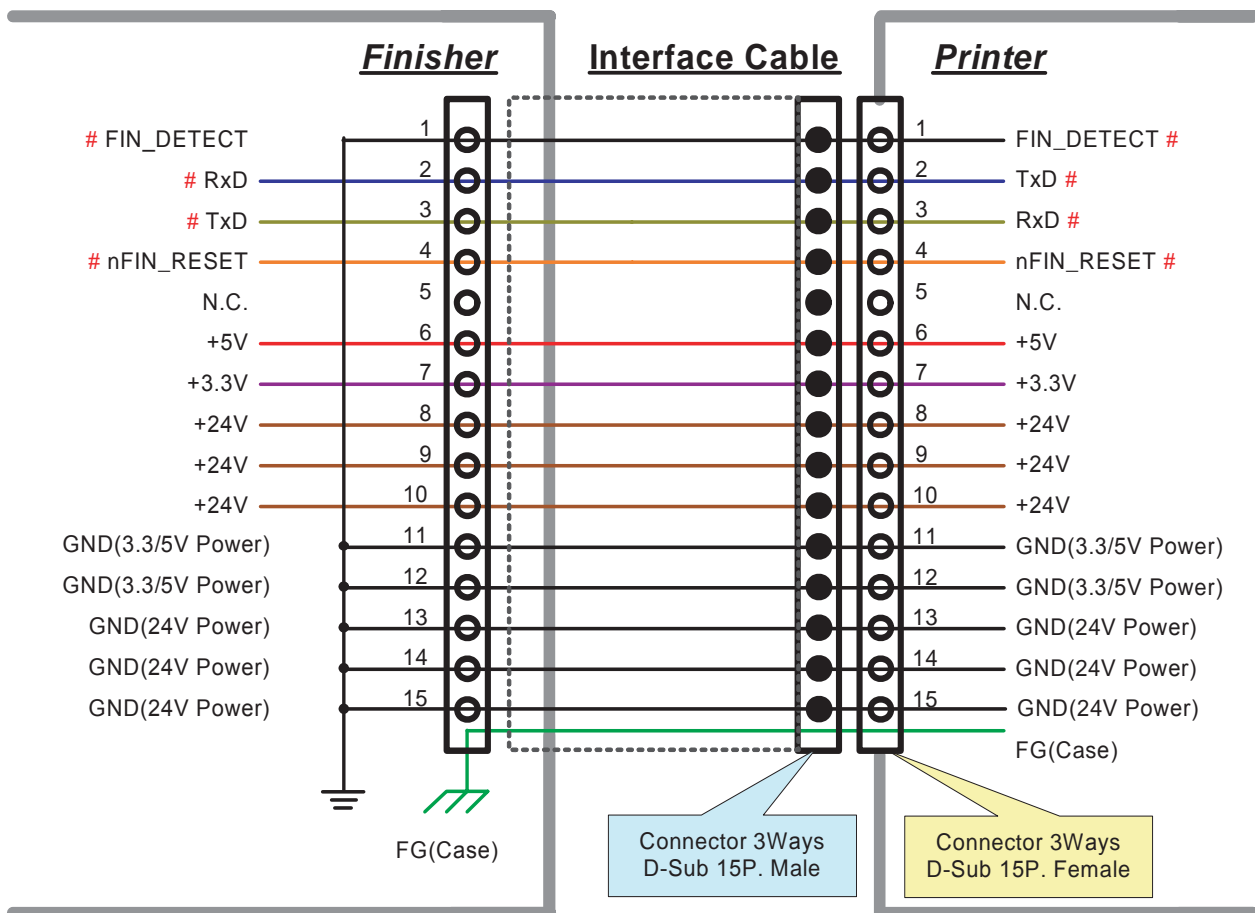
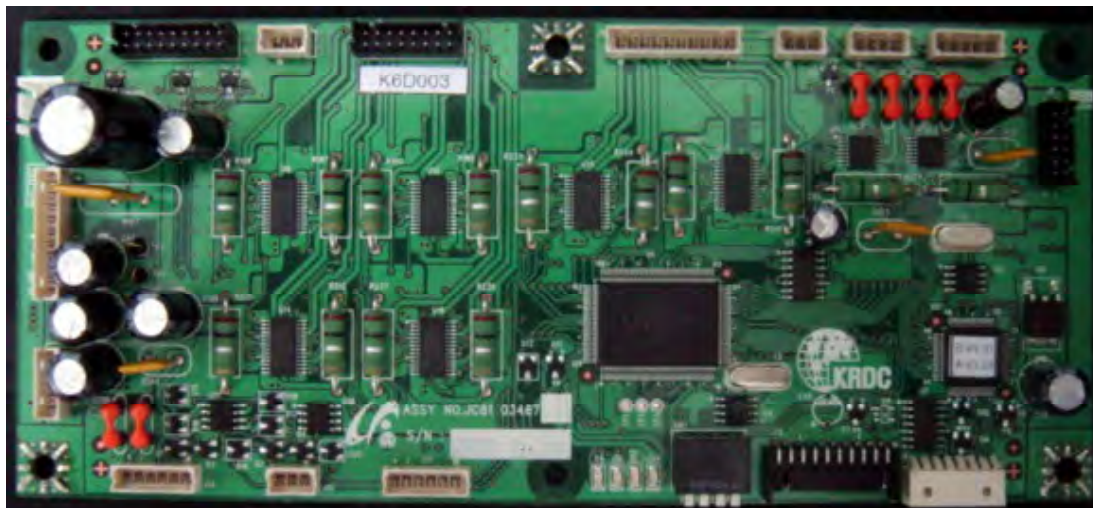
- Event with 2nd SCF operating: 2'nd SCF -> 1'st SCF -> 3'rd SCF
- Event with 3rd SCF operating: 3'rd SCF -> 2'nd SCF -> 1'st SCF
- Event with 1st SCF operating: 1'nd SCF -> 3'st SCF -> 2'rd SCF



No.	Signal Name	Direction	Active Level	Description	Remarks
1	24V	POWER	-	+24V Power	
2	3.3V	POWER	-	+3.3V Power	
3	GND	POWER	-	Signal Ground	
4	TxD	OUT	-	Data Transmission	
5	RxD	IN	-	Data Receive	
6	nBUSY	OUT	LOW	SCF TxD Line Busy	
7	nCMDREQ	OUT	LOW	Command Request	
8	Reserved1	I/O	LOW	Reserved	
9	Reserved2	I/O	LOW	Reserved	

2.2.4.12 Finisher

A Finisher PBA is a Finisher controlling in SCX-6555N for option. It also consists one controller(S3F443FX), two motor drive IC and LPEC1 for expandable I/O IC to control a finisher through Uart communication with a Main controller.



: TTL Level (3.3V)

2.3 Finisher Unit

2.3.1 Summary of the Finisher Unit

2.3.1.1 Product summary

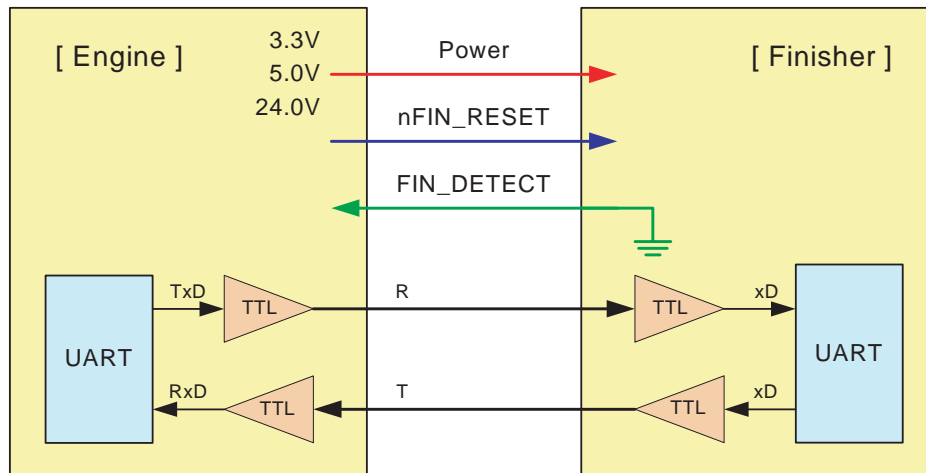
- (1) High Speed System : 35ppm with minimized skip-pitches.
- (2) Heavy Duty Design : 50 sheets stapling / 500 sheets stacking
- (3) Paper Spec. : Length (148~357mm) / Width (98-216mm) (60~163gsm)
- (4) Staple Cartridge : 5,000 staples / cartridge
- (5) Configuration : Embed type
- (6) Machine Life : 1000K life or 5 years

2.3.1.2 Appearance



2.3.1.3 Interface between Finisher and Engine

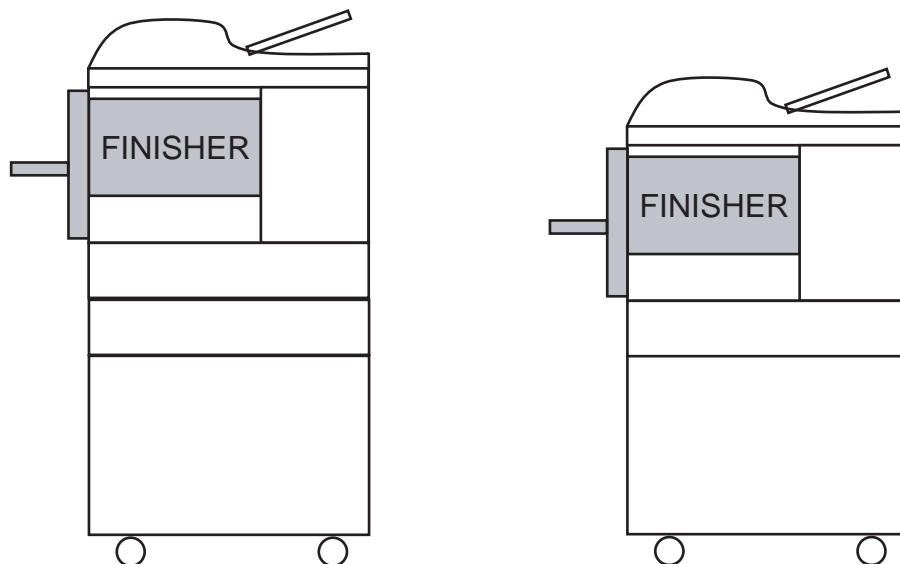
< Block Diagram >



< Protocol Specification >

- Transmission System: Serial, UART, Full Duplex
- Voltage Level: TTL Level (3.3V)
- Baud Rate: 38,400 bps ±3%
- Data Length: 8 bit
- Stop bit: 1 bit
- Parity: No

2.3.2 System Configuration



* Finisher Compatibility

Model Name	SCX-6345N	SCX-6555N	CLX-8380ND	Remark
SCX-FIN10S	●			Production Over (Aug.8.2008)
SCX-FIN11S	●	●	●	

2.3.3 SPECIFICATION

2.3.3.1 Physical

- (1) Size : Without Stacker : W 498 X D 390 X H 284 (mm)
With Stacker : W 726 X D 390 X H 300 (mm)
- (2) Weight : 11.0 kgf

2.3.3.2 Connection

< Mechanical connection >

- (1) Paper Registration : Center Registration
- (2) Docking alignment position : 3 Docking Pins and 2 Latches

< Electrical Connection >

- (1) Control command : 3.3V
- (2) Connection : D-Sub Connector (Rear side)
- (3) Control specification : Gradco I/F Specification for Samsung

< Power Supply >

- (1) Power Supply : Engine supplies 24V / 5V / 3.3V to Finisher
- (2) Input Power : 24V \pm 10%, 5 \pm 5%, 3.3 \pm 5%
- (3) Rating Current : 24.0 V, 3.0 A (Peak 4.5A for 25ms MAX.)
 - 5.0 V, 0.5 A
 - 3.3 V, 0.6 A

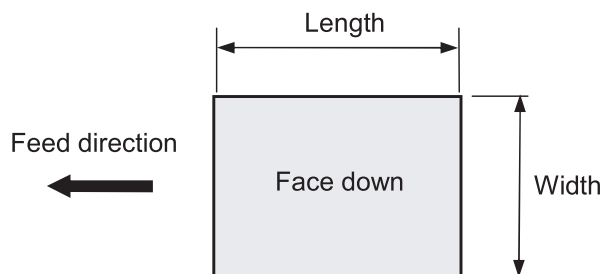
2.3.3.3 Functions

< Basic Function >

- (1) Stacking : 500 sheet with 20lb sheet
- (2) Stapling : 50 sheet stapling with 20lb sheet
 - : 5,000 staples per a stapler cartridge
- (3) Offset at Non Staple job : Available
- (4) Offset at Stapled job : Available (Gradco cannot avoid infringing the Canon's Patent "JP 2531751" for this stapling with Offset stacking mode)

2.3.3.4 Media

(1) Paper orientation



(2) Paper Size : Length (148.357mm) Width (98.216mm)

(3) Paper Weight : 60.163g/m² (16.53lb)

< Operating Mode Table >

	Stack	Staple	Offsetting	
Width 98C ~ 182mm	O	X	X	60C ~ 163g/m ² 16C ~ 53lb
Width 182mC ~ 216mm	O	O	O	60C ~ 163g/m ² 16C ~ 53lb
Multi media	O	X	X	(Note1)

Note1) Multi-Media are not guaranteed for the performance(No dropping, No miss-Ordering)

(4) Paper Type : PPC paper (Coefficient of sliding friction: Max. 0.6)

Note1) Tracing paper / Label / OHP / Envelope are not guaranteed for the performance
(No dropping, No miss-Ordering)

Note2) Pre punched PPC paper is not guaranteed for the performance

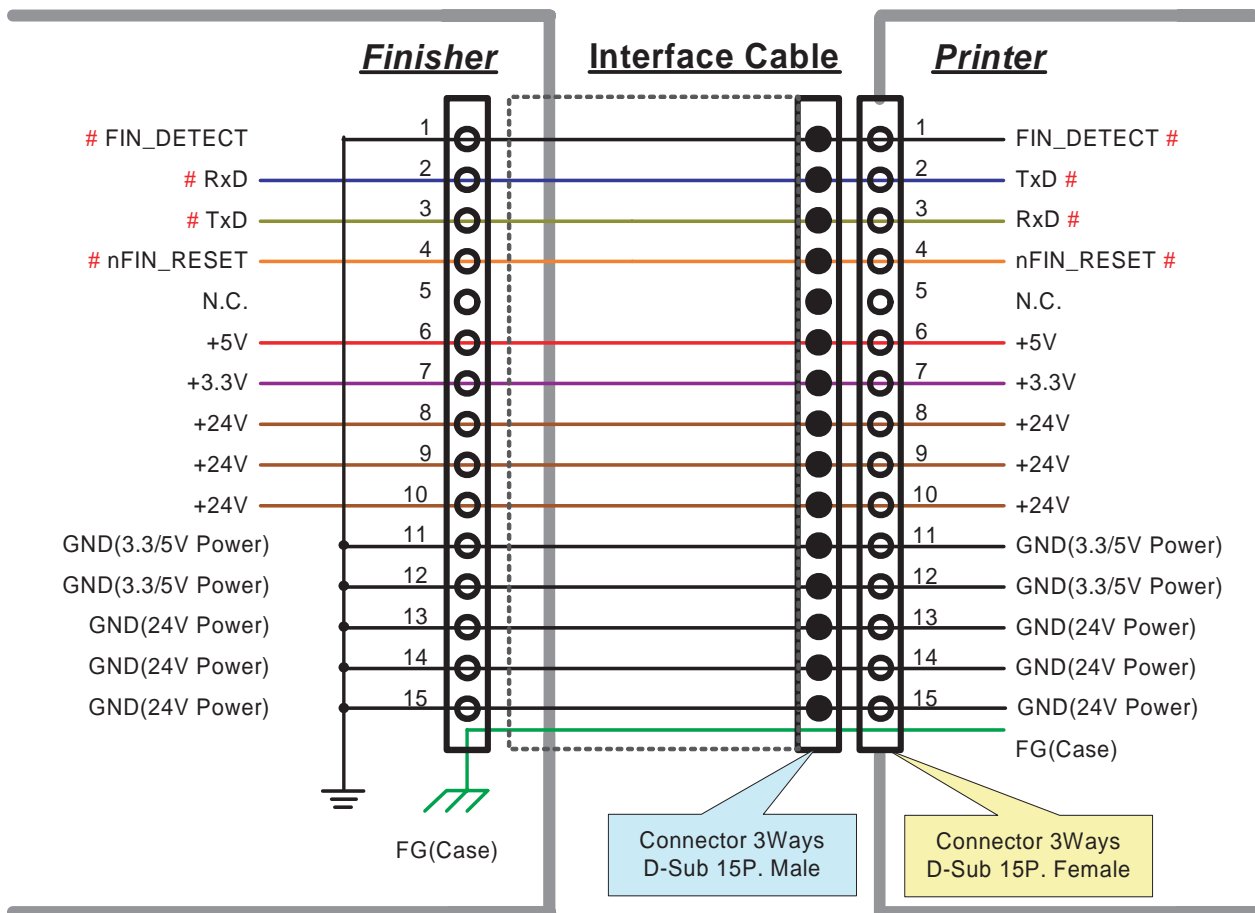
(5) Standard Test Paper (based on Finisher Core Media List from Samsung)

	Type	Size	Weight	Manufacturer
1	Xerox 4024 DP	Letter	20lb	Xerox
2	Xerox Premier	A4	80 g/m ²	Xerox
3	Samsung Premier	A4	75 g/m ²	Samsung

2.3.3.5 Interface Hardware

Serial, RS-232C, UART, Full Duplex

* Connection



: TTL Level (3.3V)

2.3.4 PERFORMANCE

2.3.4.1 Input paper conditions

- Paper delivery from Engine :

- Printing : Simplex / Duplex
- Output : Face Down

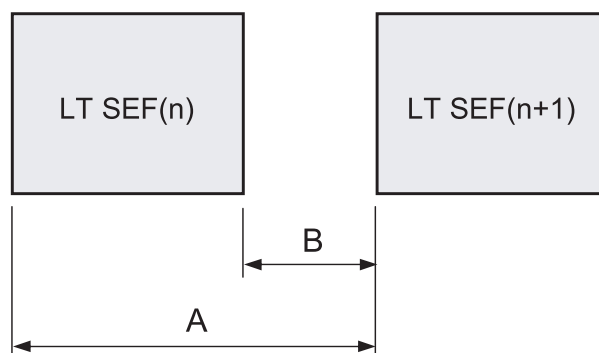
Note) Odd pages should be face down exit at duplex print mode.

- Page order : 1 to N
- Registration : Feeding Center

- Engine speed : 35.45ppm

- Feed Speed (Engine to Finisher)

Conditions	Value	Note
Feed speed from Engine	Max. 282.75mm/sec	
Inter-gap A	Min.1.333sec	
Inter-gap B	Min. 0.3466 sec	



Note) Skip pitch insertion is required between previous and next job at stapling mode, and 1 sheet ejecting with offset .

2.3.4.2 Curl amount from Engine

(1) Allowance of curl : $|A \text{ MAX}| \leq 12.7 \text{ mm (1/2")}$

$R \geq 80 \text{ mm}$

(Guarantee feeding function, sensing)

(2) Standard condition of curl : $|A \text{ MAX}| \leq 7 \text{ mm}$

$R \geq 40 \text{ mm}$

(Guarantee functions, performance, and reliability)

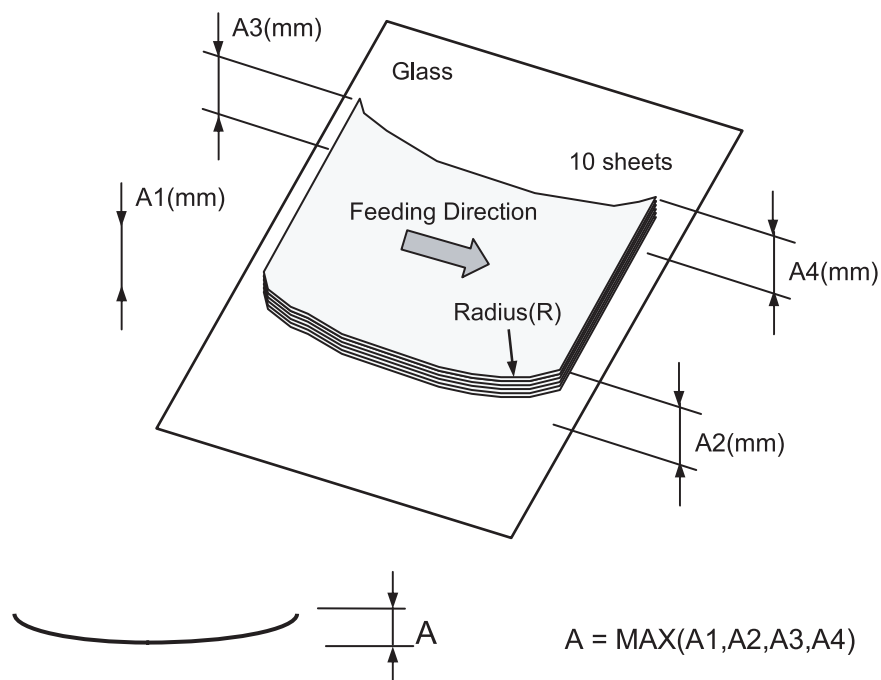
- 1) This curl condition insures the stacking performance.
- 2) Ignore any trouble due to the paper curl of the located the top position in the bunch of sheets without stapled.
- 3) It is out of spec that paper curl increasing by the time passing.

<Curl measurement method >

Media : Test paper

Environment : Test environment

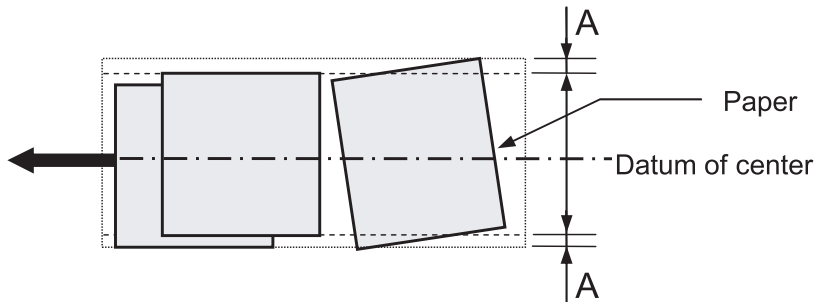
Method : Measure the curl of 10 sheets on the flat board (glass) immediately after printed out,



2.3.4.3 Electric static charge amount from Engine

: ≤ 0.5 kV per sheet
(Simplex / Duplex)

- Registration and skew from Engine
: $A \leq 3.0$ mm

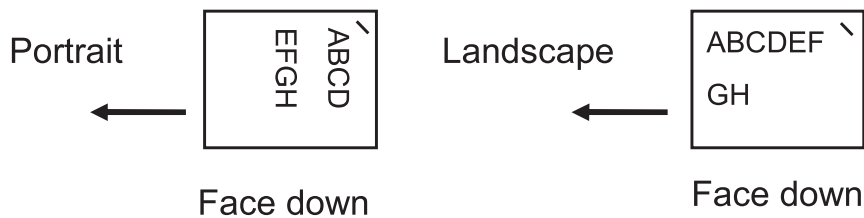


- Standard test pattern of printing : Samsung's Printing Pattern

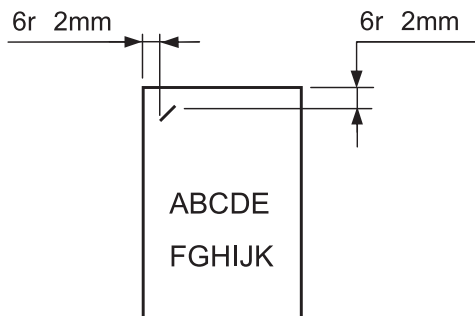
2.3.4.4 Stapling

2.3.4.4(a) Printing orientation

(This finisher can't staple on a suitable position if printing direction is not as follows.)



2.3.4.4(b) Position of stapling

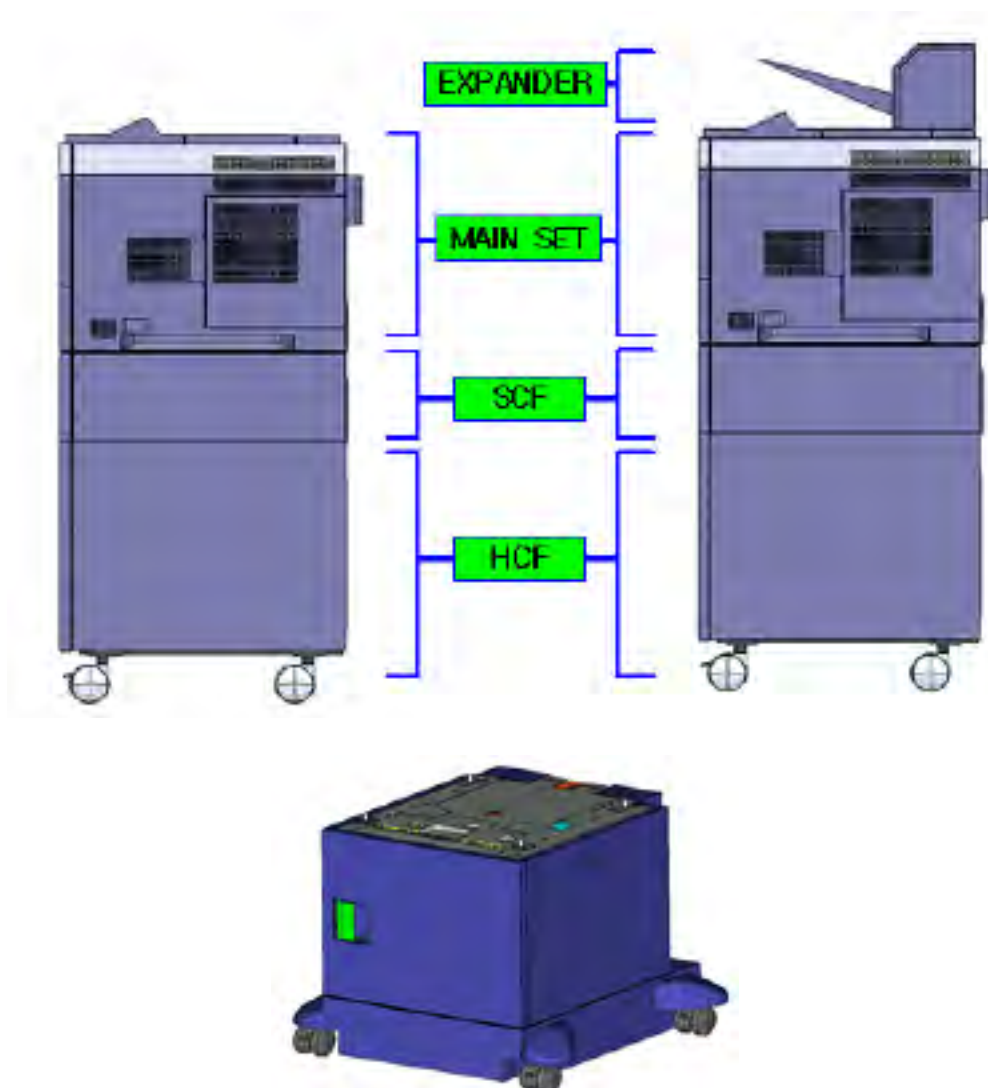


2.4 HCF Unit(High Capacity Feeder)

2.4.1 Summary of the Finisher Unit

HCF Unit is optional paper feeding unit of device unit in SCX-6555N. The HCF Unit assisted paper feeding capa of A4/2,000 sheets.

- System configuration



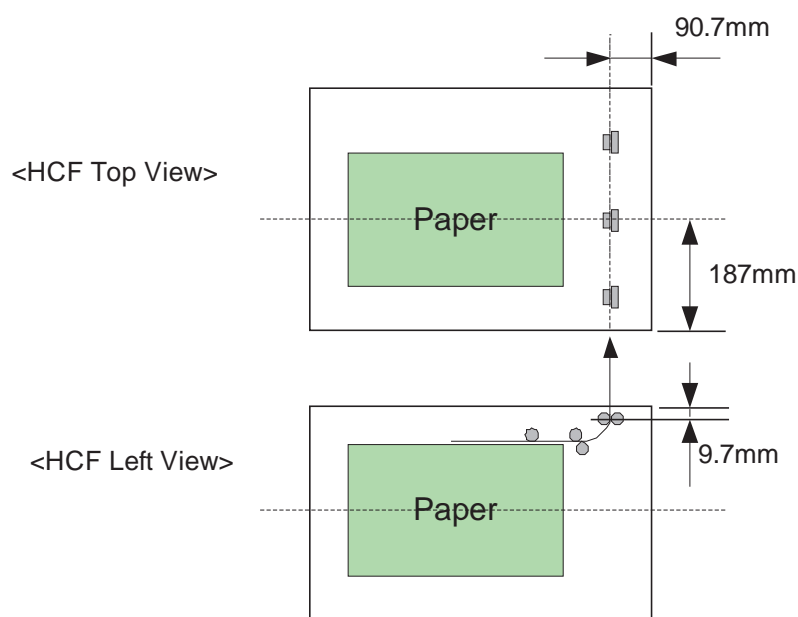
2.4.2 Specification

- 1) Type of Unit : Pedestal style
- 2) Paper capacity : 2,000sheet (A4 80g/m²)
- 3) Paper Loading : Front Loading
- 4) Paper Size : A4 SEF, LETTER SEF, FOLIO SEF, LEGAL SEF (Short Edge Feeding)
- 5) Paper Speed : 48ppm(A4), 50ppm(LETTER)
- 6) Dimension : 415x540x468.5mm (W x D x H mm)
- 7) Weight : 25 Kg (Net, empty paper)
- 8) Environment:
 - Operating Temperature: 10°C ~ 32°C
 - Operating Humidity: 20 ~ 80% RH
 - Storage Temperature: -20°C ~ 50°C
 - Storage Humidity: 10 ~ 95 % RH
 - Install Temp/Humidity(Std.): 15~ 25°C, 30 ~ 70% RH
- 9) Power : 24V/5V used (from Engine)
 - input power : 24V ± 10%, 3.3V ± 5%
 - Power Consumption
 - 1) Average : Max.1.5A/24V(target), Max.0.5A/5V
 - 2) Max. : Max. 3A
- 10) Acoustic Noise
 - HCF Printing : Ave. 55dB ↓
- 11) Connection type : Drawer Connector
 - control spec : Sasung I/F Specification
 - control signal

No	Item	I/O	QT'y	used
1	BLDC Motor	Output	1Ea	*Driver circuit
2	DC Geared Motor	Output	1Ea	*Bottom Knock up Plate Lift
3	Magnetic Clutch	Output	1Ea	*On/Off clutch (Paper Feed)
4	Micro Switch	Input	1Ea	*Knock up Plate Limit
5	Photo Interrupt	Input	8Ea	*P_Empty, Paper level, Feed, P_Limit Paper size detect

- 12) Motor Drive
 - Paper feeding : BLDC Motor
 - Bottom knock up plate lifting : DC geared motor

13) Mechanical connection
 - Standard : Center Registration



2.4.3 Media

- Paper size : A4 SEF, LETTER SEF, FOLIO SEF, LEGAL SEF
- Paper weight : 60~ 80g/m²(16~22lb), ~105g/m²(target)
- Paper type : general paper (PPC Paper)
- Note1) Tracing paper, OHP Film, Label : Not support.
- Note2) Punched paper : Not support.

- Standard paper

No	Type	Size	weght	maker
1	Xerox Multipurpose 4200	LGL	75g/m ²	USA
2	Gilbert 25%	LTR	90g/m ²	USA
3	Boise-X9	LTR	60g/m ²	USA
4	DOMTAR Microprint	LTR	105g/m ²	USA
5	Hammermill bond	LTR	20lb	USA
6	Premium	A4	75g/m ²	Korea
7	Dr.Paper	A4	75g/m ²	Korea
8	Double-A	A4	80g/m ²	Korea
9	Beijing	A4	80g/m ²	China
10	Bridge	A4	70g/m ²	China
11	SANYI	A4	70g/m ²	China

2.4.4 Paper Feeding speed

ppm	50ppm	Note
Feed Speed	296.12mm	LETTER SEF
Interval A	1.111sec	279mm + 50mm
Interval B	0.169sec	Paper Margin : 50mm

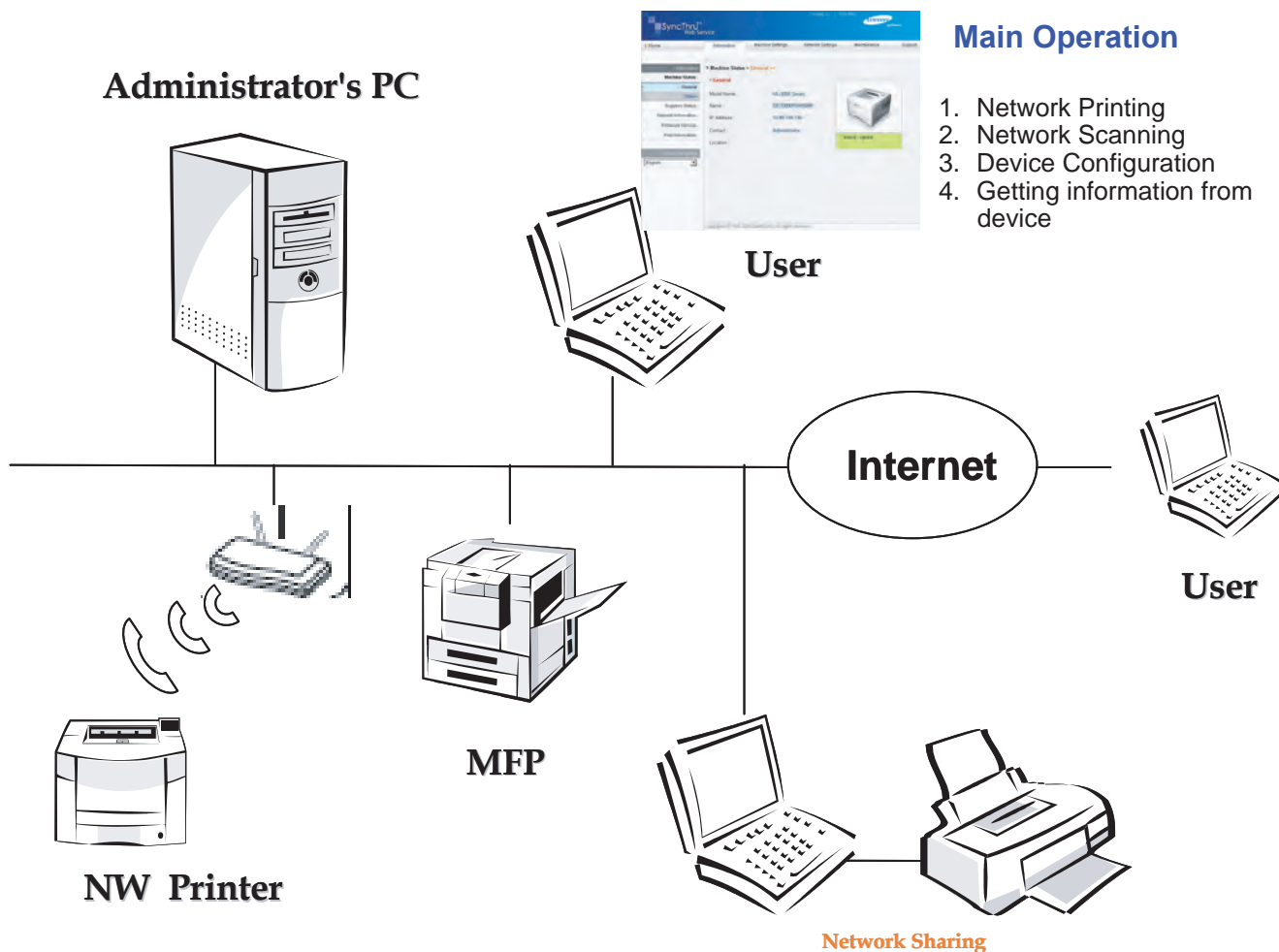
2.4.5 Maintenance

No	Part Name	Part No	Life	Note
1	Pick up Roller	JC97-02259	100,000 Pages Feeding	
2	Retard Roller	JC97-02259	100,000 Pages Feeding	
3	Feed Roller	JC97-02259	100,000 Pages Feeding	
4	Timing Belt S3M	JC81-06072A	100,000 Pages Feeding	
5	Unit Spring Roll	JC81-06074A	100,000 Pages Feeding	

* Machine Life : To combine the HCF in the SET, 1,000,000 pages printing process

2.5 Network Printer Server

2.5.1 Network Printer Configuration



Main Operation

1. Network Printing
2. Network Scanning
3. Device Configuration
4. Getting information from device

Connectivity

1. Wired (10/100 Base TX)
2. Wireless (802.11 a/b/g)

Protocols

1. TCP/IP
 - ✓ 9100,LPR,IPP...
 - ✓ SNMP,HTTP...
2. Netware (IPX/SPX)
3. EtherTalk (Macintosh)

2.5.2 Samsung Network Printer Server Type

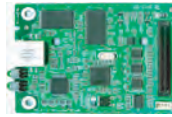
1. Internal Card Type (NPC1/NPC3/NPC3 / NPC3H)

- Network Printer = Printer + Network Card (NPC3 or NPC3H)



Printer
S/W only

+



Network
S/W + H/W

2. Embedded Network Type

- PHY Board Type = Printer + PHY Board



Printer S/W +
Network S/W

+



Network H/W

- On Board Type

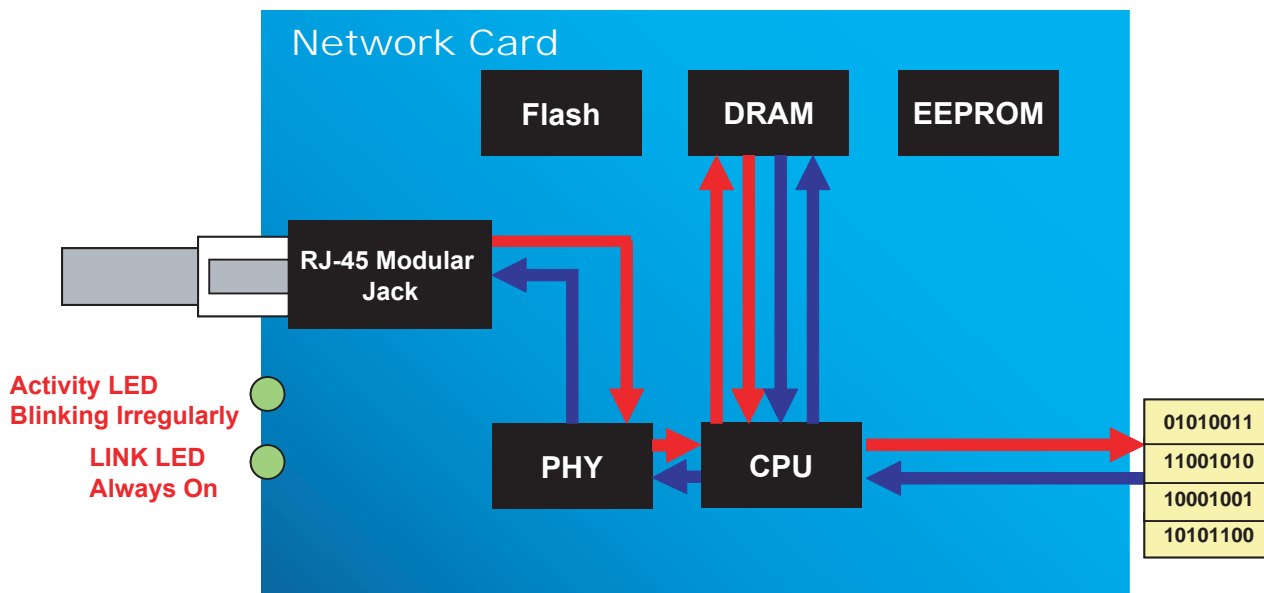


Printer S/W +
Network S/W + H/W

3. External Printer Server Type



2.5.3 Network Data Reception / Transmission



2.5.4 Network Printer Server Software

2.5.4.1 Network Card Firmware : Upgrade

Firmware Upgrade

- To upgrade network print server firmware with latest version

Use TFTP Protocol (NPC3 Only)

Use HTTP Protocol (EWS, SWS, SWAS)

Use Printing Protocol (Platform S/W Models – Port : 9100, 515, 2000, 631...)

Requirements

- Target Network Card

Well Configuration of TCP/IP Protocol

In Local Area Network with Server Computer

- Server Computer

Well Configuration of TCP/IP Protocol

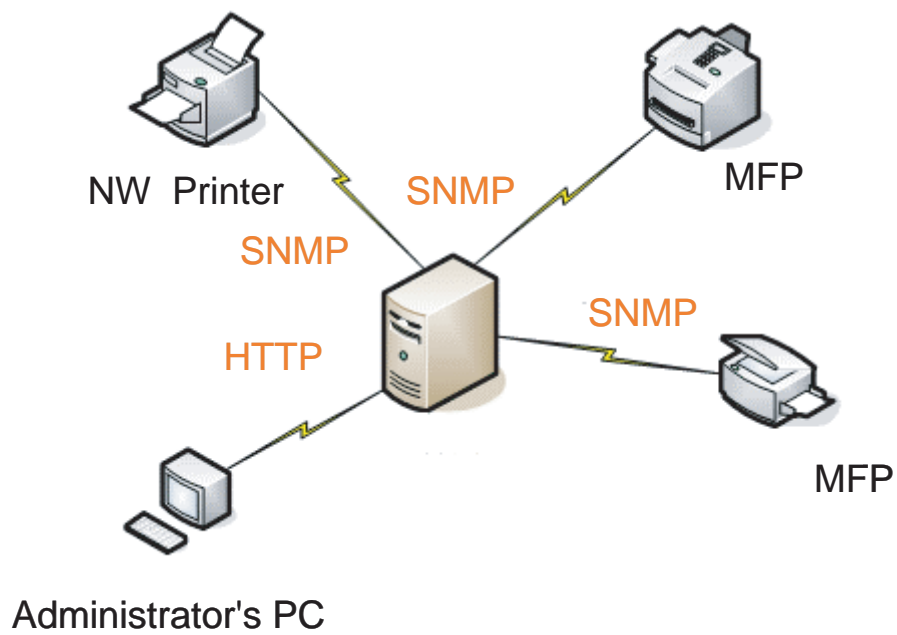
Samsung SyncThru Application in case of using TFTP

SWS or SWAS in case HTTP

Printing Port in case printing protocols

2.5.5 SyncThru Web Admin Service Web based Printer Management Solution

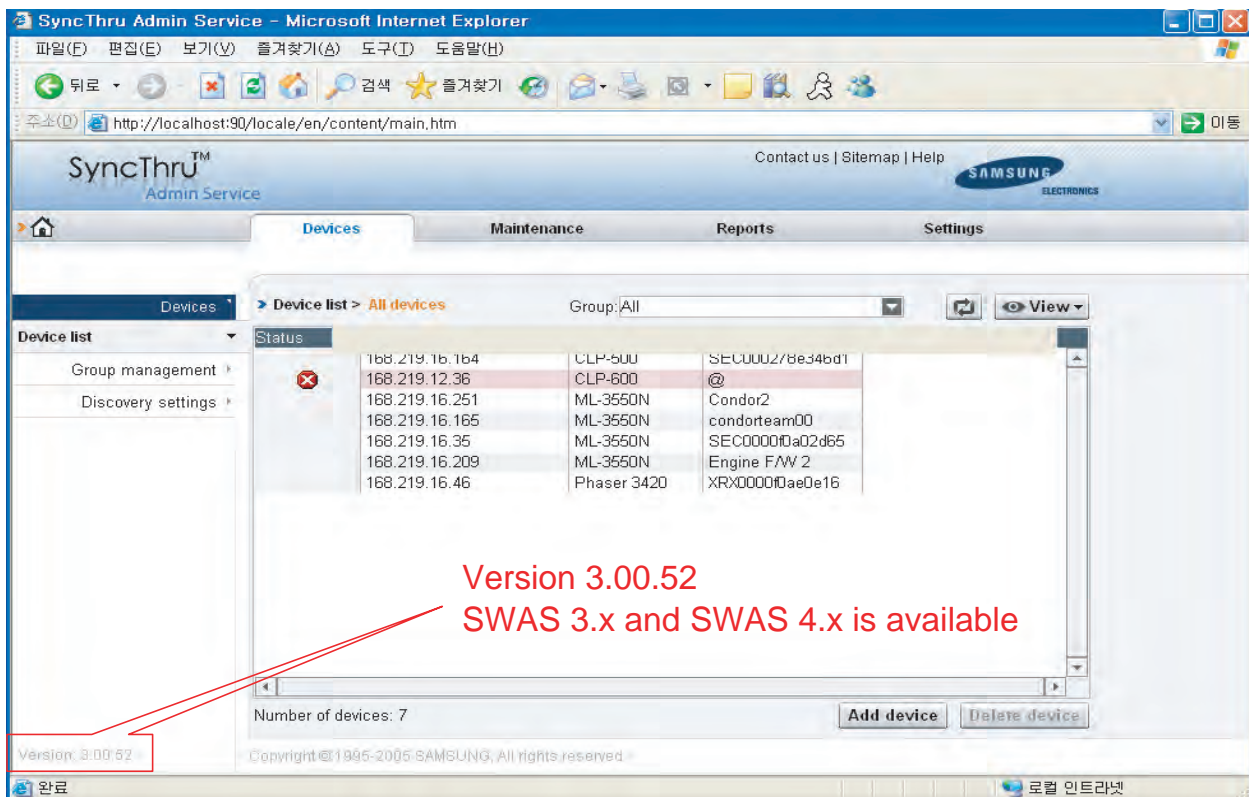
- Detecting device on the network
- Performing Maintenance operations
- Getting detailed reports and statistics on device events



2.5.5.1 SWAS Features

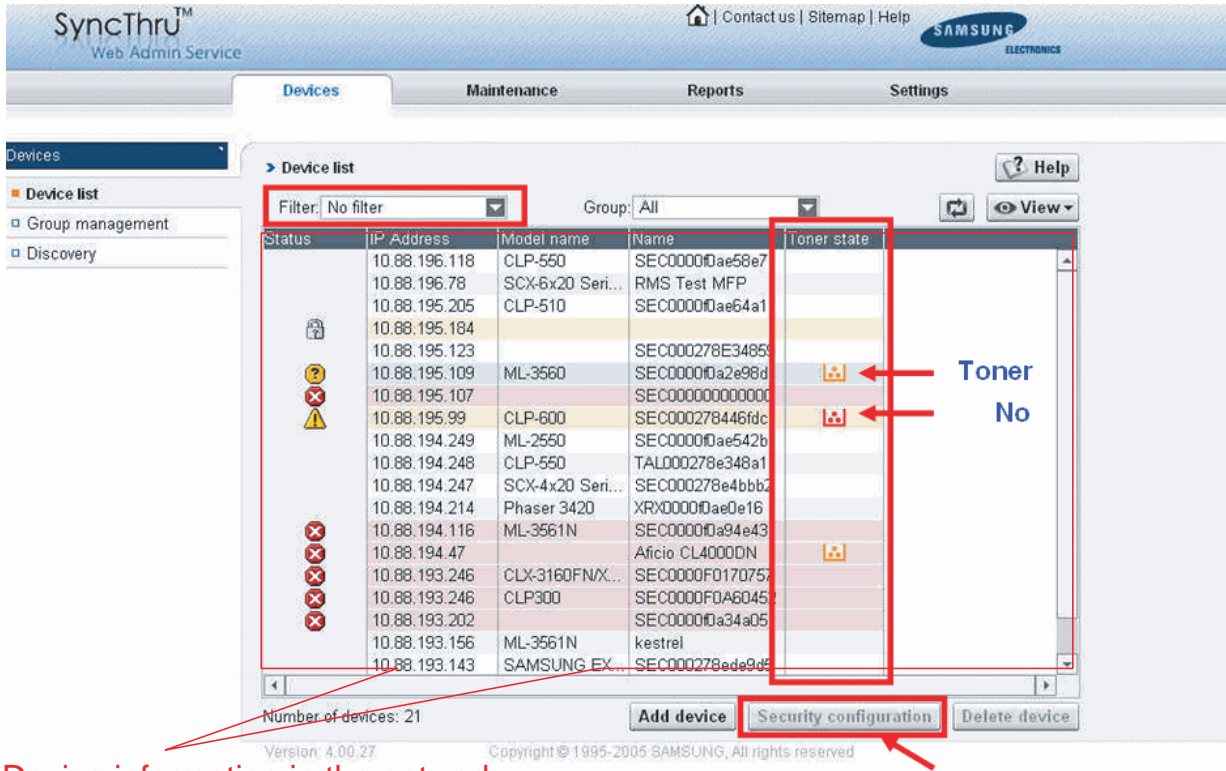
Version	Model	Remark
3.xx.xx	Kestrel (ML-3560), Dove (ML-3051ND), Falcon (ML-8800), Elbert (SCX-5530FN), DaVinci (CLP-600), DaVinci PDL (CLP-650), Iris (CLX-3160FN)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Detecting device on the network - Performing Maintenance operations - Display general , Supply, Protocols, Status, Usage meters, Alert, Diagnostics information - Grouping and Managing devices - Setting of detection Protocol - Upgrading Firmware group of device - Reporting information of Alert and Consumables by HTML or Email
4.xx.xx	Oriole (ML-2570), Stork (ML-4551ND), Elbruz (SCX-6322DN), Whitney2 (SCX-4725)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Discovery Status Checking - Set IP - Online Toner Ordering - SSL / User Authentication - IPv6 - SNMP V3 - 13 Languages (Hungarian, Brazilian Portuguese, Turkish)
Plug-ins	Jungfrau And upcoming model	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Plug-in will be released in the samsung download center • Plug-ins can be installed on the SyncThru4.0 (Addon functions) - Restrict user permission and monitor actual usage information (Job Accounting Plug-in) - Copy configuration settings into multiple devices (Device Cloning Plug-in) - Add, delete, copy and move files between devices (File Storage Plug-in) - Discovery and monitor about non- network printers (Local Device Discovery Plug-in) - Get the latest driver and management driver files (Driver Management Plug-in) - Pre-configure and install drivers in the remote hosts (Driver Management Plug-in)

2.5.5.2 Version Identifier



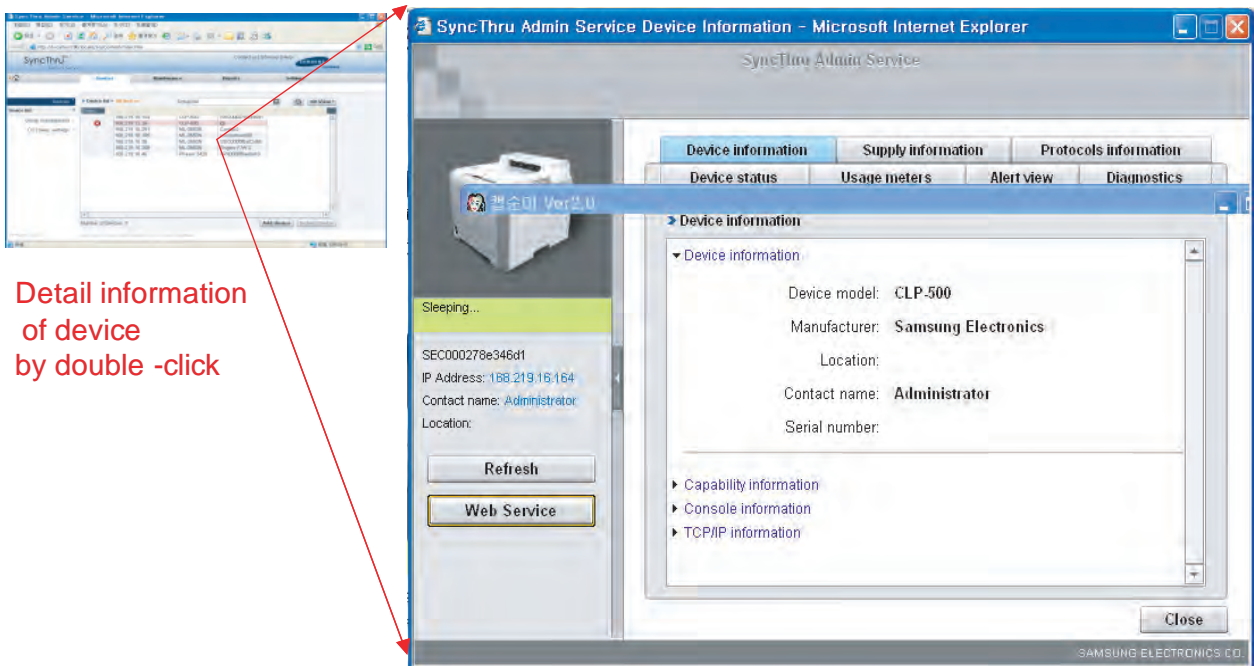
2.5.5.3 SWAS Device Menu

- Detecting and Displaying devices on the network



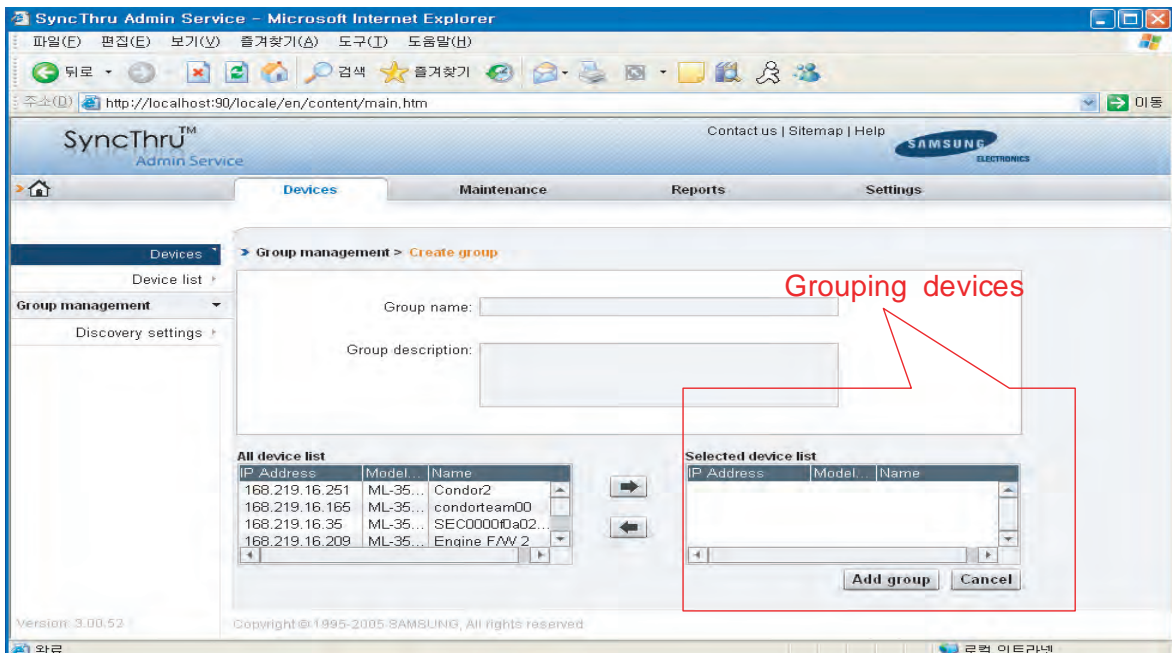
Device information in the network

- Display general, Supply, Protocols, Status, Usage meters, Alert, Diagnostics information

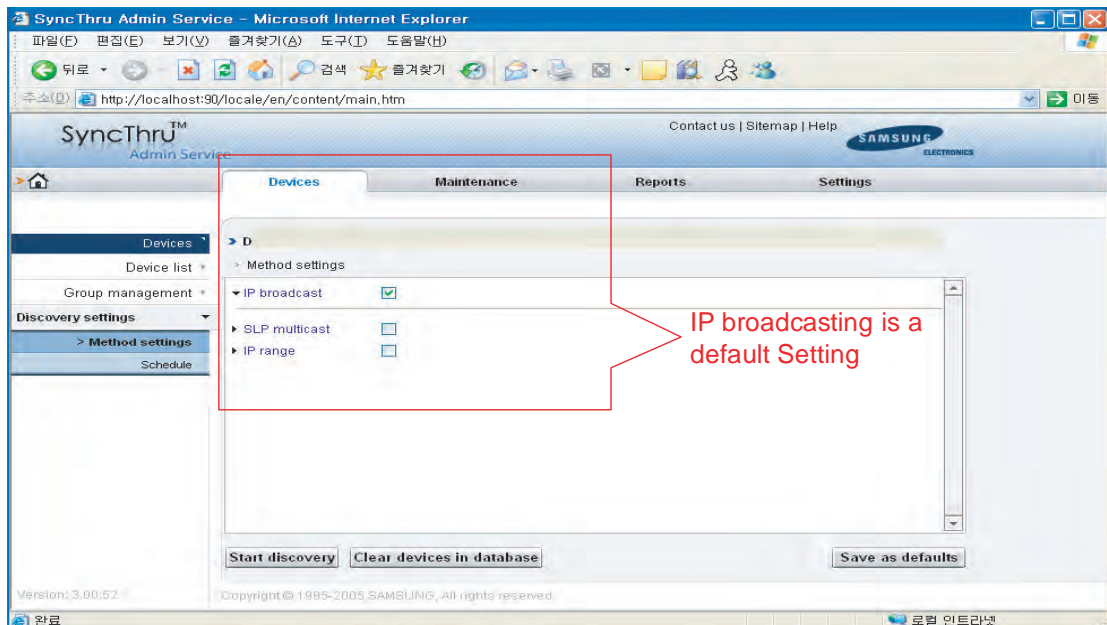


Detail information of device by double -click

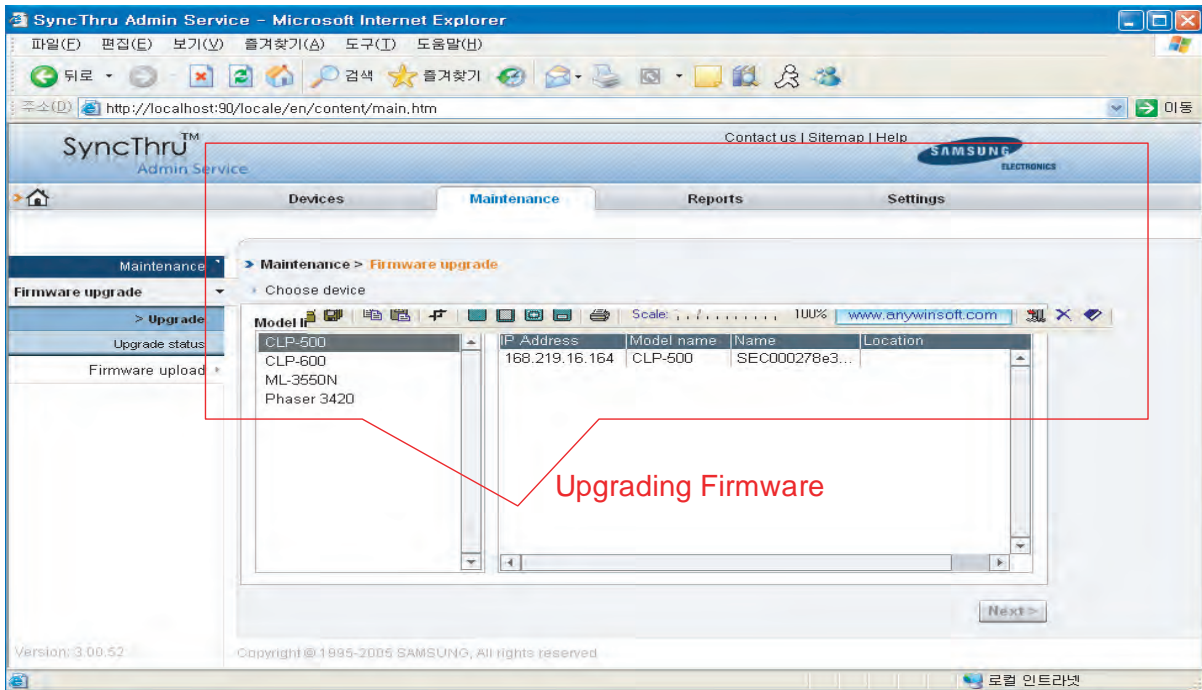
• Grouping and Managing devices



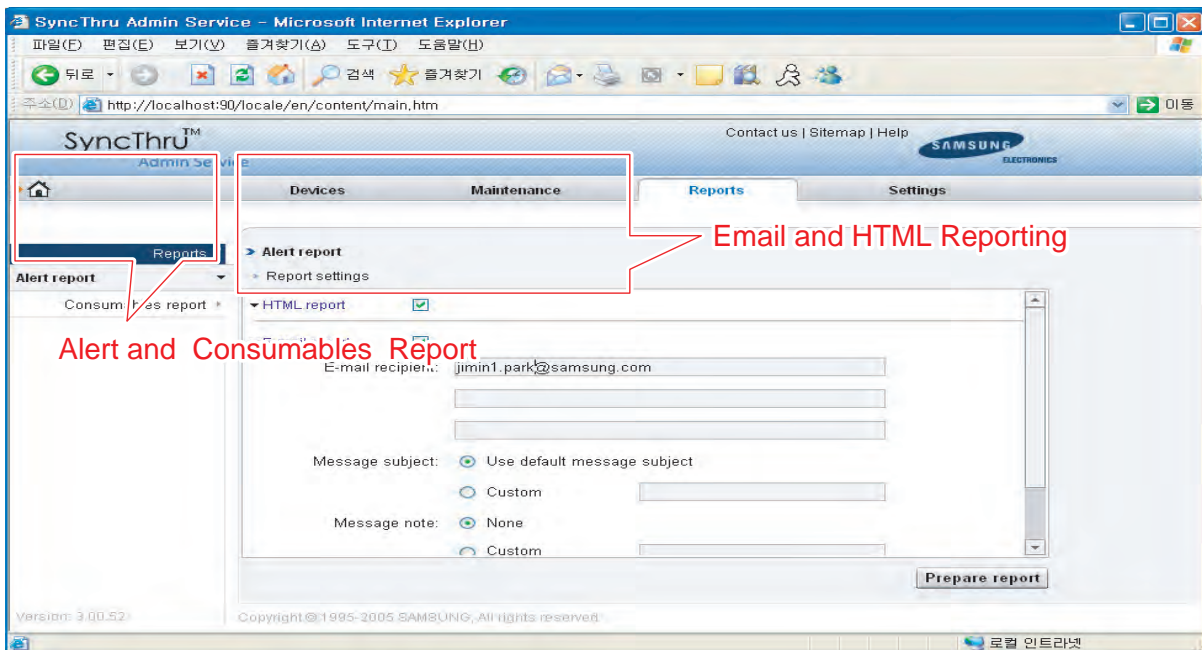
• Setting of detection Protocol



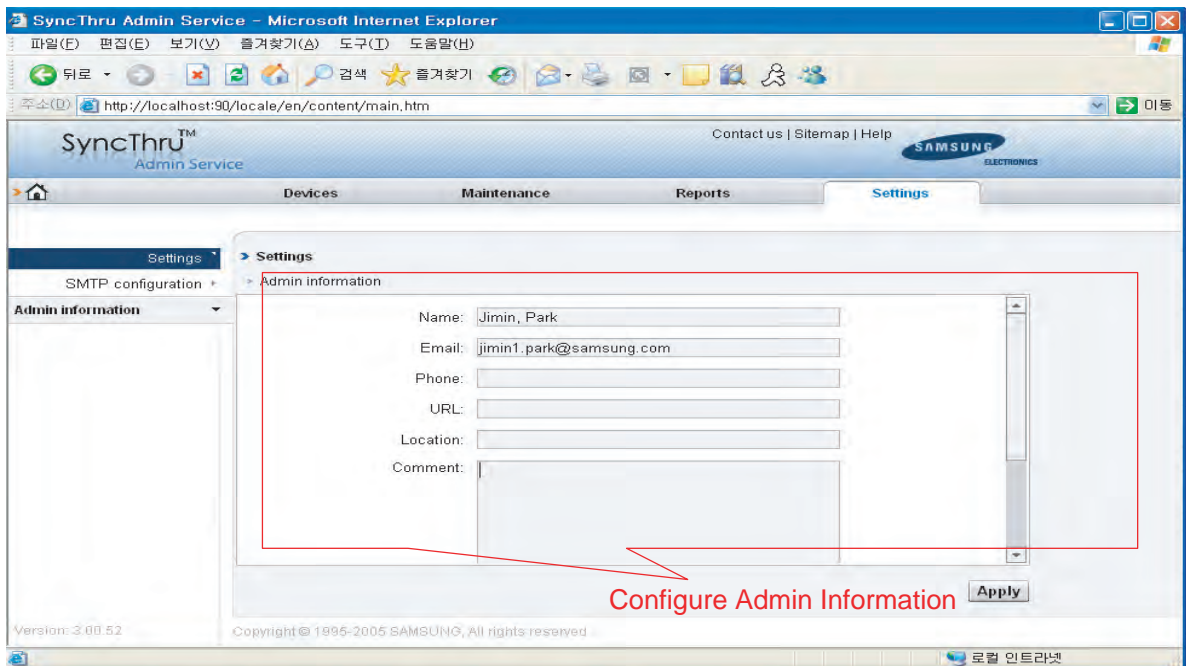
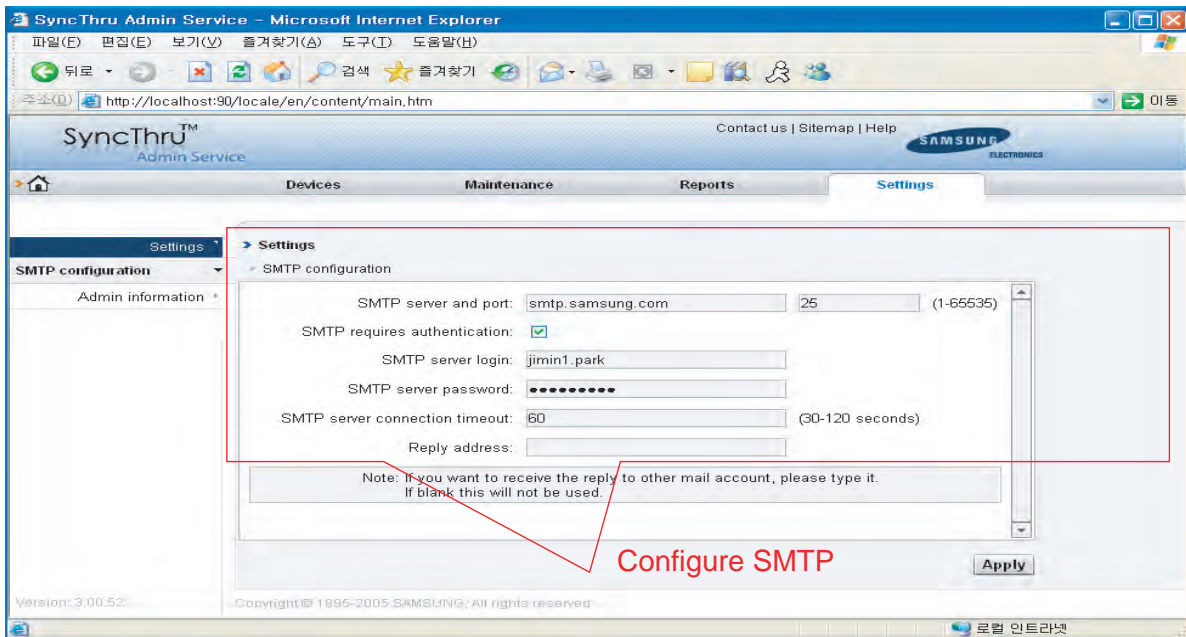
• Upgrading Firmware to multiple devices



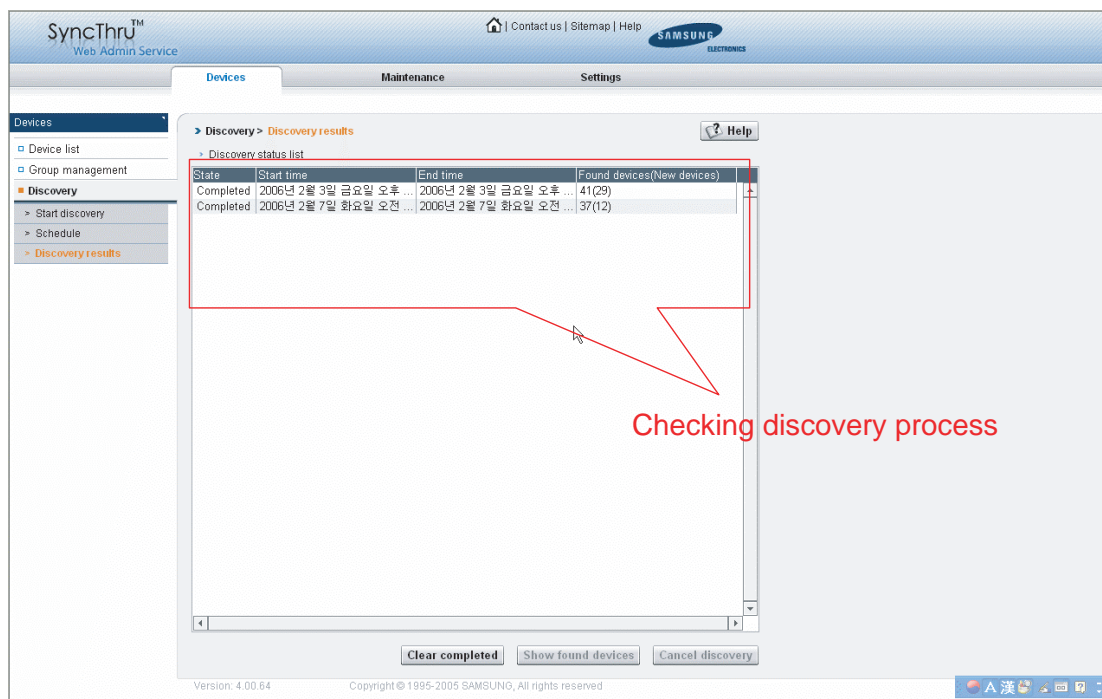
• Reporting information of Alert and Consumables by HTML or Email



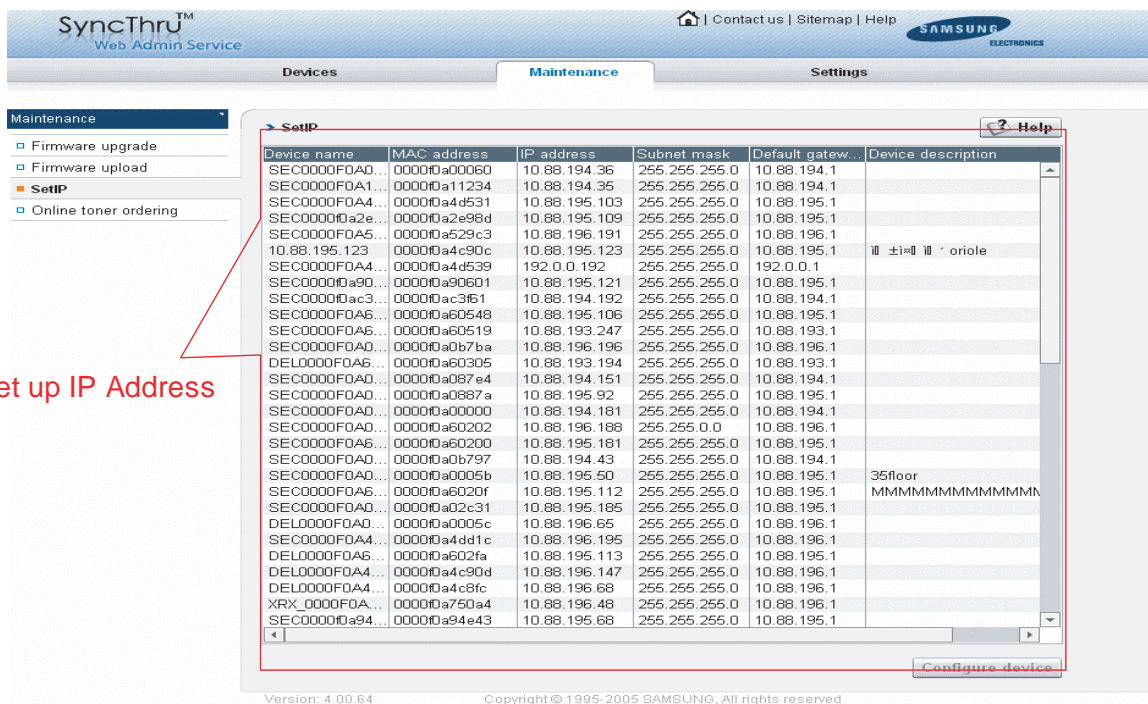
• Configure SMTP Server and Admin Information



• Discovery results



• Set up IP



• Online toner ordering

The screenshot displays the 'SyncThru™ Web Admin Service' interface. The main content area is titled 'Online toner ordering' and features a 'Toner low' alert. Below the alert is a table with the following data:

Toner status	Name	IP Address	Physical address	Location	Model name
Low	SEC00000a2e98d	10.88.195.109	00.00.F0.A2.E9...		ML-3560
No cartridge	SEC000278446fd	10.88.195.99	00.02.78.44.6F...		CLP-600

At the bottom of the interface, there are two buttons: 'Toner ordering site' and 'Order toner'. The text below the screenshot explains their functions:

You can set the site for toner order.
 This button opens the page set in the toner ordering site.

• Authentication settings

If SSL is not enabled and configured then it's not possible to enable authentication. The link leads to SSL configuration.

Authentication can be enabled with the button. Authentication works only when SSL is enabled.

Type	User name
Domain	RND/Roman
Local	Sergey
Local	Misha
Local	Dima
Domain	RND/Dima
Domain	RND/Artur

User list shows user accounts both from Domain and Local. The method of authentication is used according the type of user profile (Local or Domain).

Change password for Local users only.

2.5.6 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: General Information (MFP)

General Information

- Machine Status
- Supplies Status
- Billing/Counters
- Network Information
- Firmware Version
- Print Information

The screenshot displays the Samsung SyncThru Web Service interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Information', 'Machine Settings', 'Network Settings', 'Maintenance', and 'Support'. The 'Information' tab is selected, showing a sidebar with options like 'Machine Status', 'Supplies Status', 'Billing/Counters', 'Network Information', 'Firmware Version', and 'Print Information'. The main content area shows the following status:

- Supplies Status:** Black Toner: Ready, Drum Cartridge: Ready.
- Paper Sources:** Copy Tray: Tray 1.
- Input Trays:** Tray1: Ready, MP Tray: Empty.

On the right, a printer icon is shown with a yellow error message: 'Transferring Tray1 Paper Mismatch'. Below the icon, the printer details are listed: SCX-6x45 Series, Name: SEC0000AA9604AF, IP Address: 10.08.195.148, Contact: Administrator, Location: . A 'Refresh' button is located at the bottom of this section.

Copyrights © 1995-2006 SAMSUNG. All rights reserved.

2.5.7 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Machine Settings (MFP)

Machine Settings

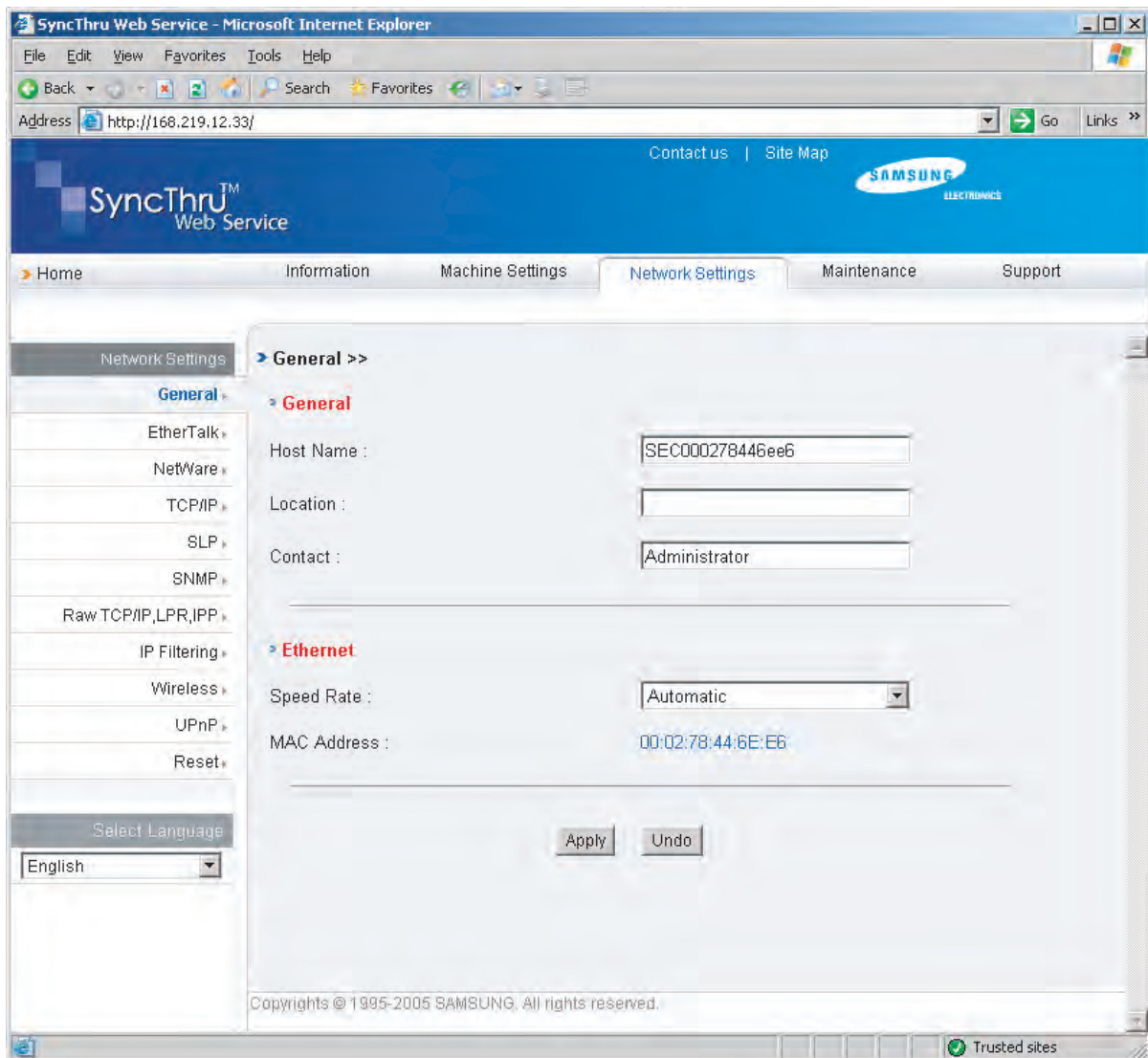
- System Setup
- Copy Setup
- User Authentication Setup
- E-mail Setup
- E-mail Notification Setup
- Reset
- ...

The screenshot shows the Samsung SyncThru Web Service interface. The top navigation bar includes 'Home', 'Information', 'Machine Settings' (selected), 'Network Settings', 'Maintenance', and 'Support'. The left sidebar contains a tree view of settings: System Setup, Machine Setup (selected), Paper Setup (selected), Copy Setup, User Authentication, E-mail Setup, FTP Setup, SMB Setup, Scan Setup, PCL, PS, E-mail Notification Setup, LDAP Server Setup, and Reset. Below the sidebar is a 'Select Language' dropdown set to 'English'. The main content area is titled 'System Setup > Paper Setup >>'. It contains three sections: 'Paper Size' with 'Tray 1' set to 'A4' and 'MP Tray' set to 'Letter'; 'Paper Type' with 'Tray 1' and 'MP Tray' both set to 'Plain Paper'; and 'Paper Source' with 'Copy Tray' set to 'Tray 1'. 'Apply' and 'Undo' buttons are at the bottom of the settings area. A copyright notice 'Copyrights © 1995-2006 SAMSUNG. All rights reserved.' is visible at the bottom of the page.

2.5.8 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Network Settings

Network Settings

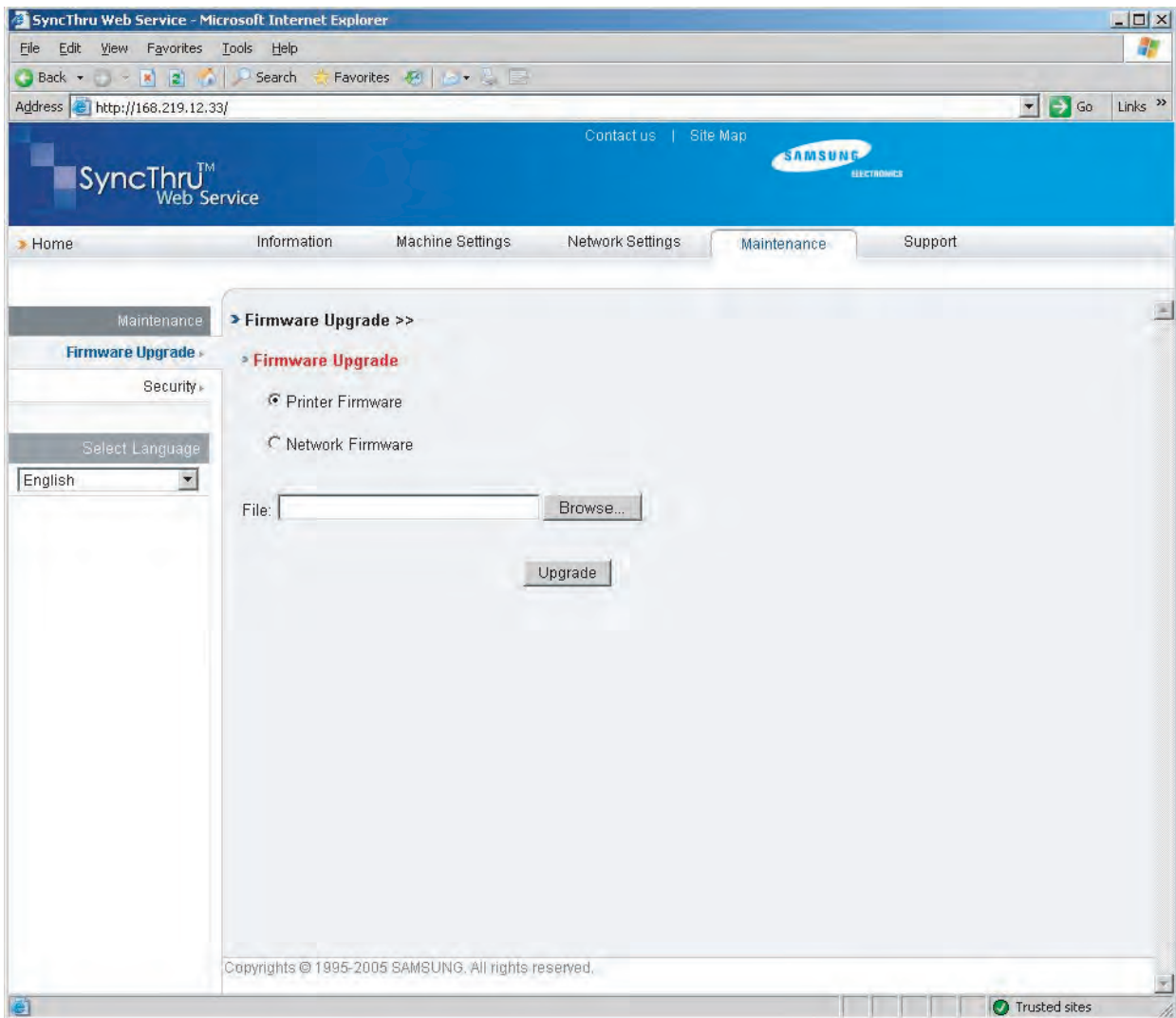
- General
- NetWare
- TCP/IP
- SLP
- SNMP
- Raw TCP/IP, LPR, IPP
- IP Filtering
- Wireless
- UPnP
- Reset



2.5.9 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Maintenance

Maintenance

- Firmware Upgrade
- Security



2.5.10 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Support

Support

- Contact Information
- Link

SyncThru Web Service - Microsoft Internet Explorer

Address: http://168.219.12.33/

Contact us | Site Map

SyncThru™ Web Service

SAMSUNG ELECTRONICS

Home Information Machine Settings Network Settings Maintenance Support

Support

Contact Information >>

System Administrator

Name :

Phone Number :

Location :

E-mail Address :

Samsung Support

Customer Support Phone Number :

Services Phone Number :

Supply Phone Number :

Apply Undo

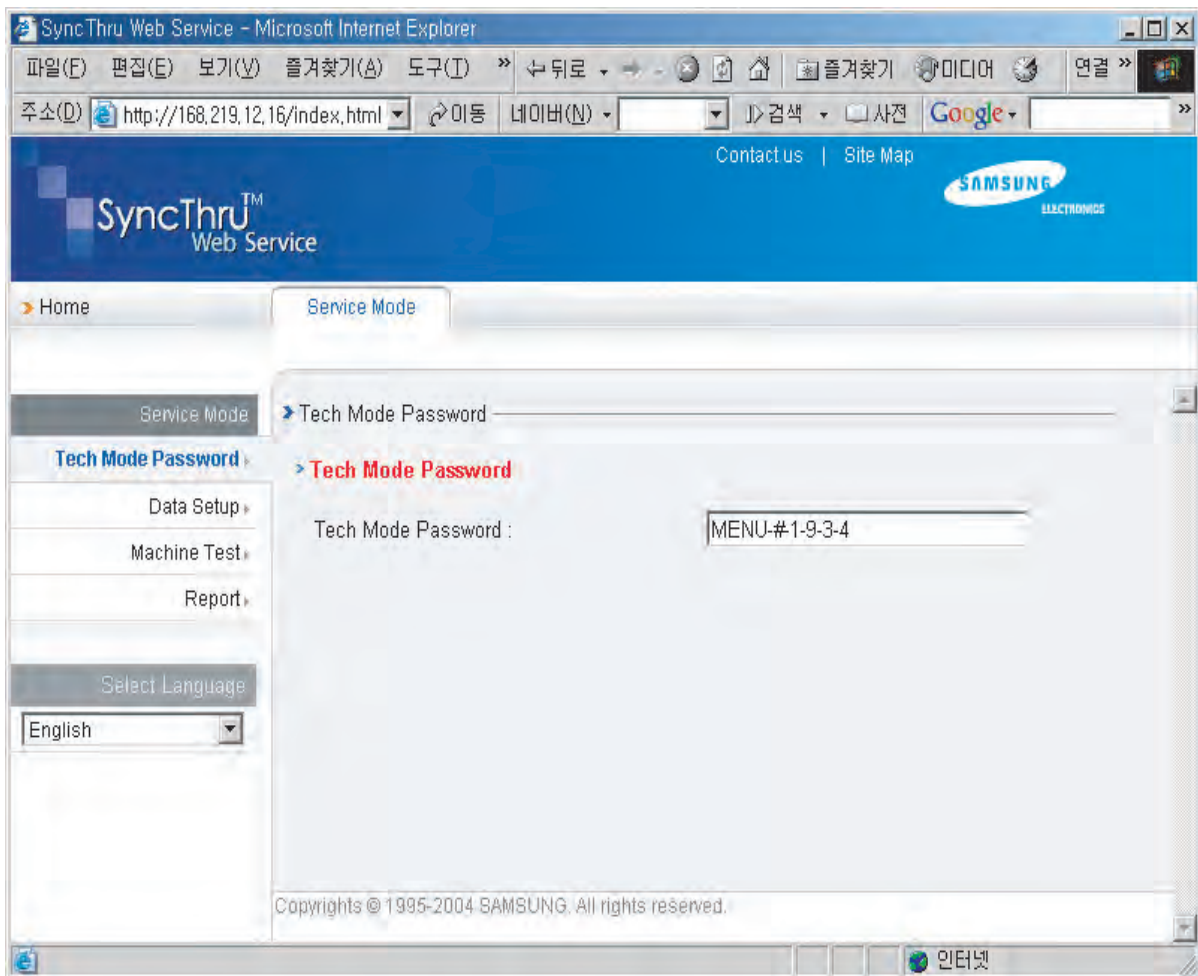
Copyrights © 1995-2005 SAMSUNG. All rights reserved.

Trusted sites

2.5.11 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Service (MFP)

Service

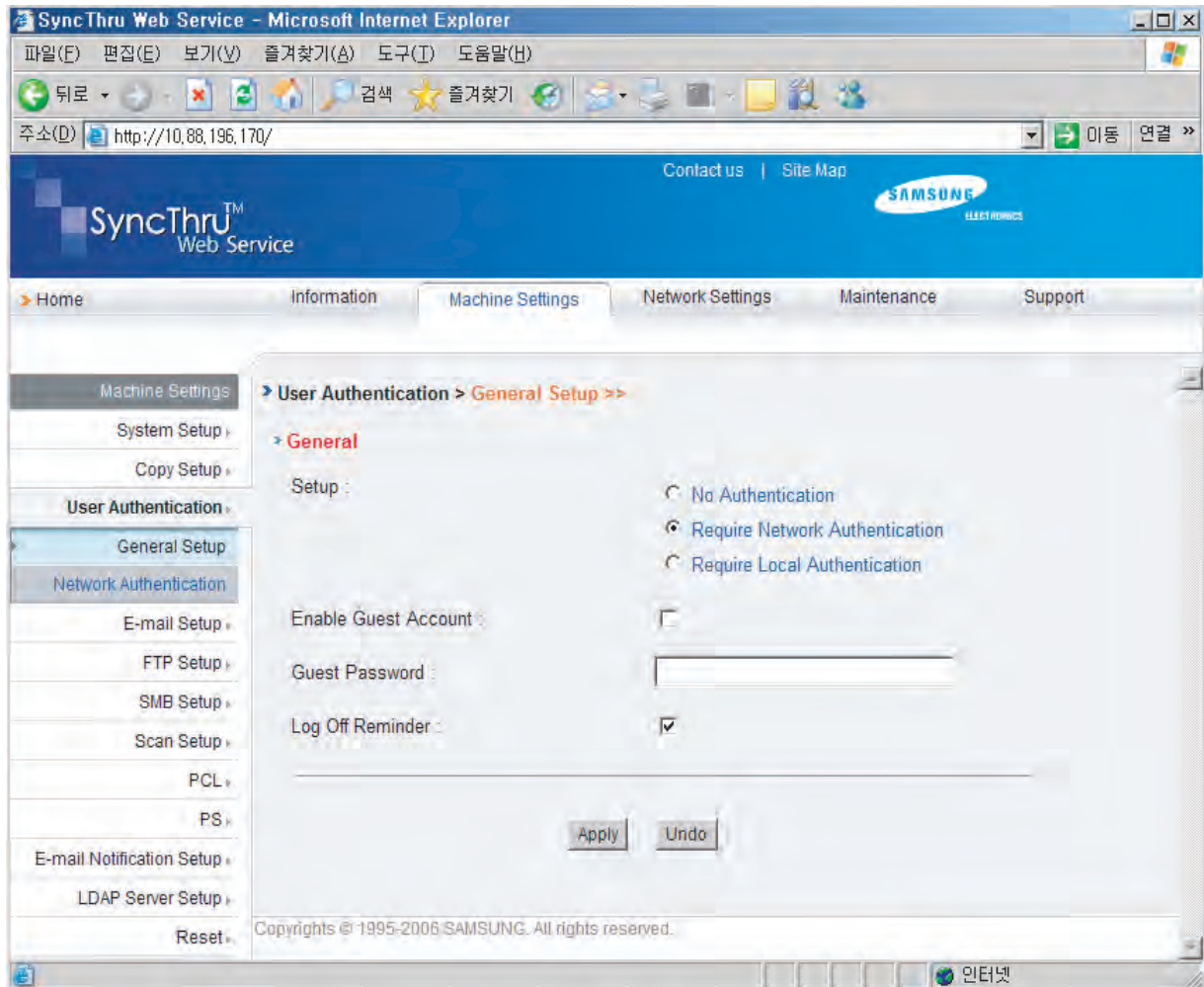
- http://NPC-IP-Address/service.html
- Tech Mode Password
- Data Setup
- Machine Test
- Report



2.5.12 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication

General Setup

- Setup
- Enable Guest Account
- General Password
- Log Off Reminder



2.5.13 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication (Local authentication)

Local Authentication

- Index
- User Name
- Auth ID
- Password
- E-mail Address
- Phone Number

The screenshot shows the Samsung SyncThru Web Service interface. The browser address bar displays the URL `http://10.88.196.170/`. The page header includes the Samsung logo and navigation links for 'Contact us' and 'Site Map'. The main navigation menu includes 'Home', 'Information', 'Machine Settings', 'Network Settings', 'Maintenance', and 'Support'. The 'Machine Settings' section is expanded, showing 'System Setup', 'Copy Setup', 'User Authentication', 'E-mail Setup', 'FTP Setup', 'SMB Setup', 'Scan Setup', 'PCL', 'PS', 'E-mail Notification Setup', 'LDAP Server Setup', and 'Reset'. The 'User Authentication' section is further expanded to show 'General Setup' and 'Local Authentication'. The 'Local Authentication' section is selected, displaying the 'Add User List' form. The form includes the following fields:

- Index: 1
- User Name: bjang
- Auth ID: auth1
- Password: [masked]
- Retype password: [masked]
- Select to save new password.
- E-mail Address: bjay@naver.com
- Phone Number: 011-222-4444

At the bottom of the form, there are 'Apply' and 'Undo' buttons.

2.5.14 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: Authentication (Network authentication)

Network Authentication (Kerberos Setup)

- Default Realm
- IP address or Host Name
- Kerberos Server and Port
- Backup Realm
- IP address or Host Name
- Kerberos Backup Server and Port

주소(D) http://10.88.196.170/ 미동 연결 >>

Contact us | Site Map **SAMSUNG** ELECTRONICS

Home Information Machine Settings Network Settings Maintenance Support

Machine Settings

- System Setup
- Copy Setup

User Authentication

- General Setup
- Network Authentication**
- E-mail Setup
- FTP Setup
- SMB Setup
- Scan Setup
- PCL
- PS
- E-mail Notification Setup
- LDAP Server Setup
- Reset

Select Language

English

Authentication > Network Authentication >>

General

Authentication Type:

- Kerberos (Unix, Linux)
- Kerberos (Windows ADS)
- SMB (Windows NT 4)
- SMB (Windows ADS)
- LDAP

Required Information

Default Realm: captiva

IP Address or Host Name: IP Address Host Name

Kerberos Server and Port: 10.88.194.128 : 88

Additional Information

Backup Realm: fds

IP Address or Host Name: IP Address Host Name

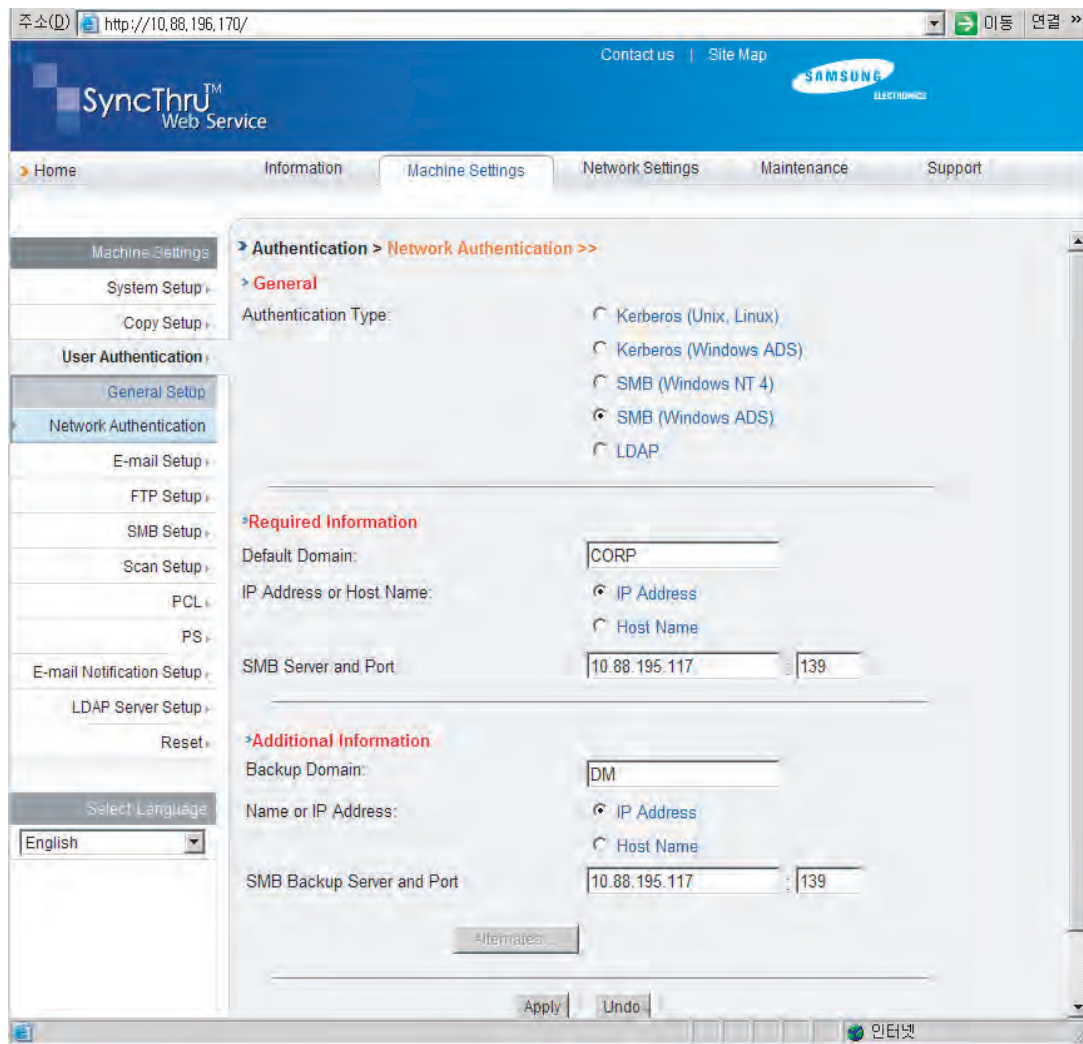
Kerberos Backup Server and Port: 1.1.1.1 : 88

Alternates...

Apply Undo

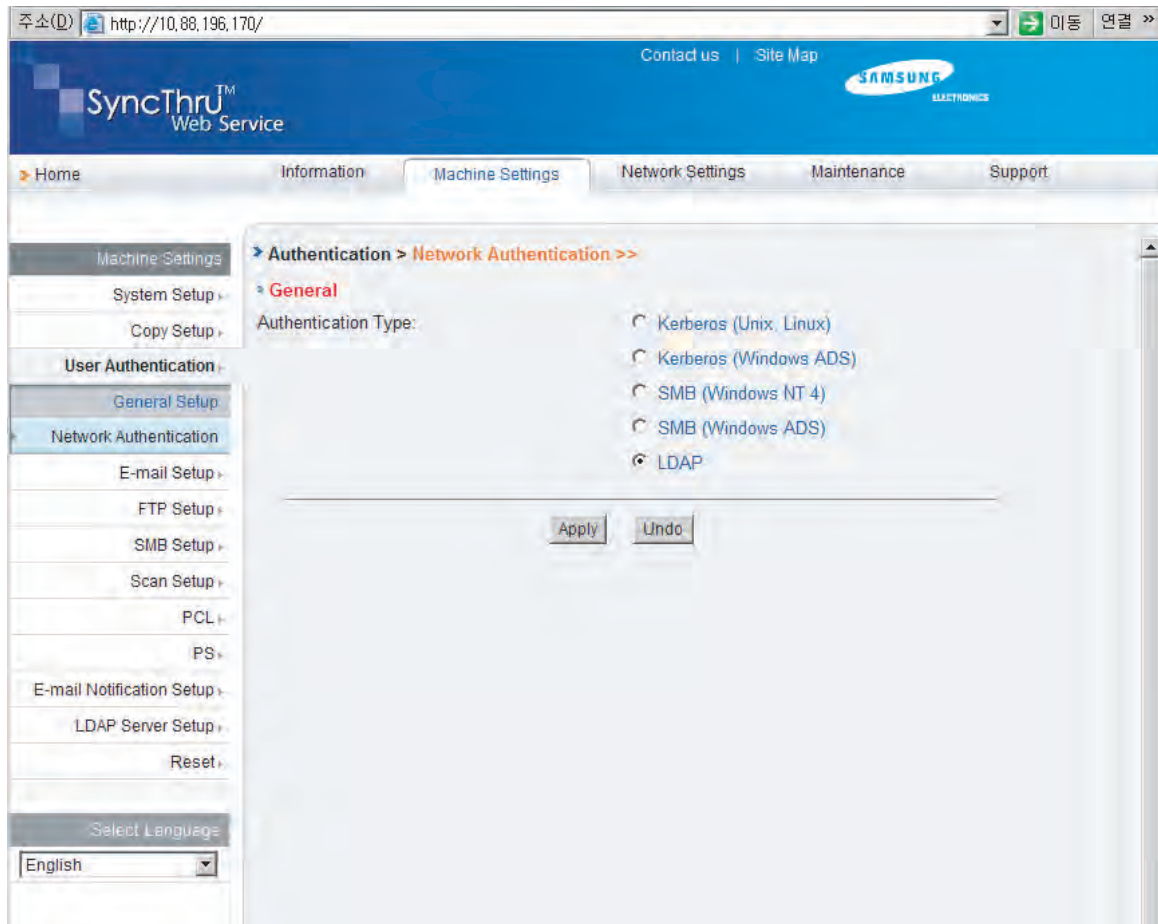
Network Authentication (SMB Setup)

- Default Domain
- IP address or Host Name
- SMB Server and Port
- Backup Domain
- IP address or Host Name
- SMB Backup Server and Port



Network Authentication (LDAP Setup)

- There is no setup of LDAP Server
 - Server configuration of LDAP Server item is used to Auth Login



2.5.15 Samsung SyncThru Web Service: LDAP Server Setup

LDAP Server Setup_1

- IP address or Host Name
- LDAP Server and Port
- Search Root Directory
- Authentication Method
- Match User's Login ID to the Following LDAP attribute:

The screenshot shows the 'LDAP Server Setup' configuration page. It is divided into two main sections: 'LDAP Server' and 'Optional Information'.

LDAP Server Section:

- IP Address or Host Name:** Radio buttons for 'IP Address' (selected) and 'Host Name'.
- Note:** If Host Name is selected, the DNS Server Address should be mentioned in TCP/IP settings page.
- LDAP Server and Port:** Text input for IP (10.88.194.139), port input (389), and a range note (1~65535).

Optional Information Section:

- Search Root Directory:** Text input (dc=example,dc=com).
- Authentication method:** Radio buttons for 'Anonymous' and 'Simple' (selected).
- Match User's Login ID to the following LDAP attribute:** Dropdown menu (CN).
- Append Root to Base DN:** Checked checkbox (Enable).
- Login Name:** Text input (cn=jimbob).
- Password:** Password input field (masked with asterisks).
- Maximum Number of Search Results:** Text input (25) with range note (0, 5~100).
- Search Timeout:** Text input (30) with range note (0, 5~100) second(s).
- LDAP Referral:** Unchecked checkbox.

LDAP Server Setup_2

- Append Root to Base DN
- Login Name
- Password
- Maximum Number of Search Result
- Search Timeout
- LDAP Referral

[E-mail Setup](#) > [LDAP Server Setup](#) >>

[LDAP Server](#)

IP Address or Host Name :

 IP Address

 Host Name

Note: If Host Name is selected, the DNS Server Address should be mentioned in TCP/IP settings page.

LDAP Server and Port :

 (1~65535)

[Optional Information](#)

Search Root Directory :

Authentication method :

 Anonymous

 Simple

Match User's Login ID to the following LDAP attribute :

Append Root to Base DN: Enable

Login Name :

Password :

Maximum Number of Search Results : (0, 5~100)

Search Timeout : (0, 5~100) second(s)

LDAP Referral :

LDAP Server Setup_3

- Search Name Order
- From: Field Security Options

> **Search Name Order**

Search Name Order :

Common Name

Email Address

Surname Given Name

> **From: Field Security Options**

Perform LDAP query to Populate "From:" Field: Enable

2.5.16 Samsung SetIP

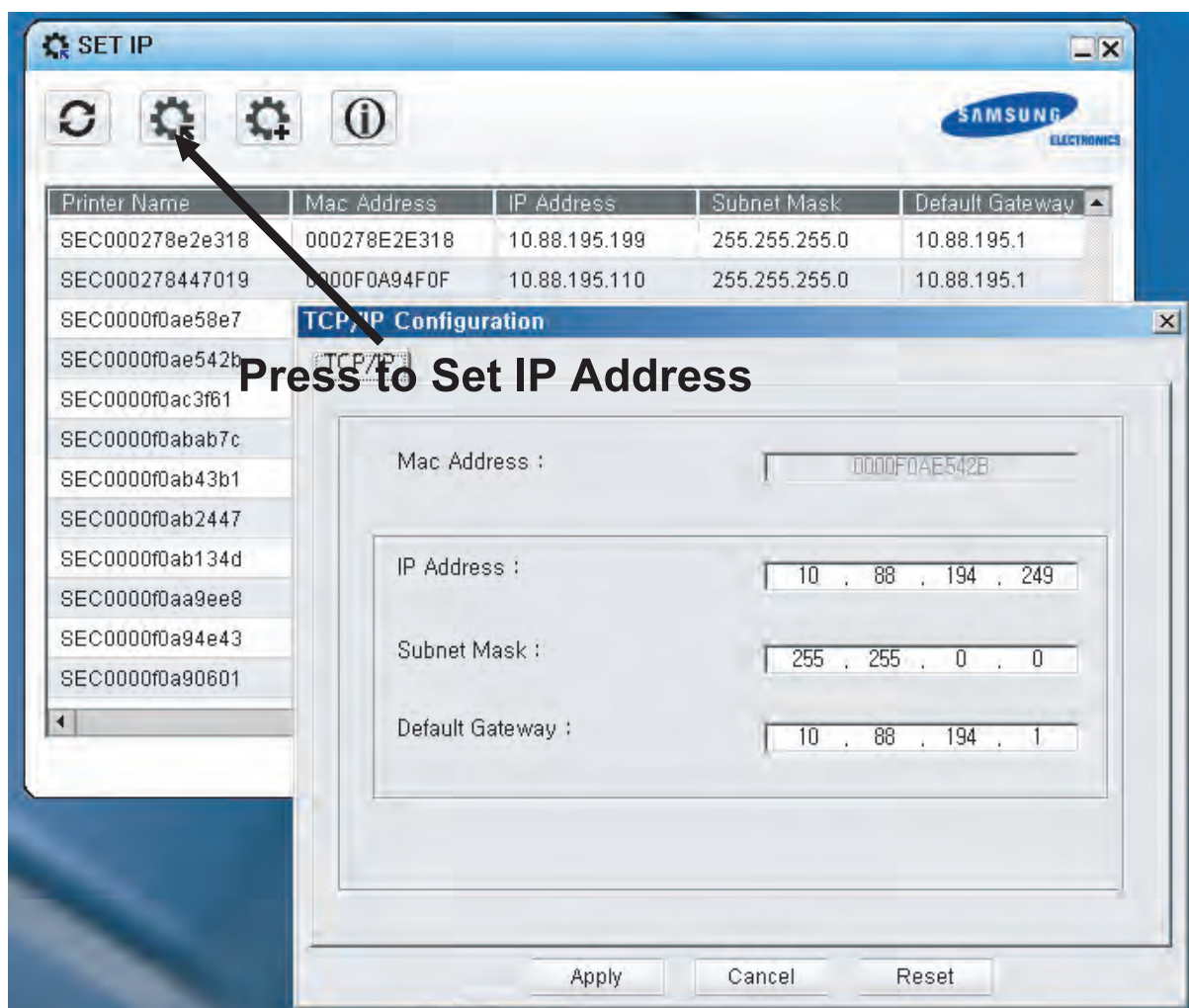
Configuration of IP Address

- Mostly used at first installation of network printer
- IP address setting with MAC address only
- MAC address is written on printer's backside

Samsung SetIP Utility

- Running on Microsoft Windows OS only
- Automatic detection of Samsung network printers
- Manual setting of undetected network printers

Samsung SetIP: Application



2.5.17 TCP/IP Printing Protocol

Samsung Network Printer Port Printing

- TCP Port : 2000
- Port Monitor installation
- OS : Windows95/98/NT/ME

LPD (Line Printer Daemon) Printing

- TCP Port : 515
- OS : Unix, Linux, Windows OS (Win NT, 2K ~)

Microsoft Standard TCP/IP Printing

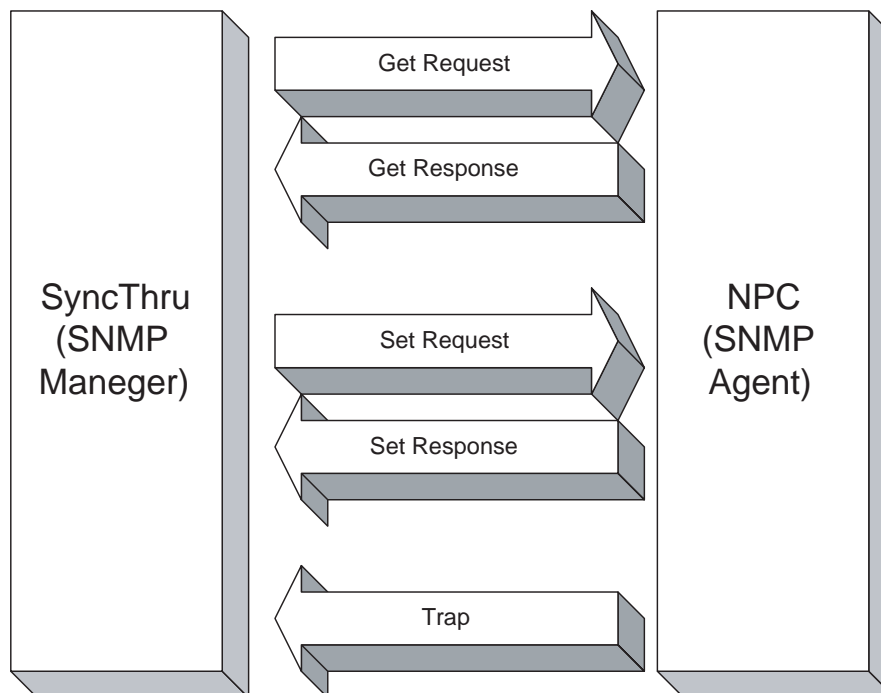
- TCP Port : 9100
- OS : Windows OS (Win 2K~)

IPP Printing Protocol

- TCP Port : 631
- OS : Windows OS (Win 2K~), Mac OS (MAC 10.3~)

2.5.18 Management Protocol

SNMP means Simple Network Management Protocol



2.5.19 HTTP

Web Server Protocol

- Used in Samsung SyncThru Web Admin Service
- Used in SyncThru Web Service (Embedded Web Server)
- Used in IPP 1.1 Protocol

3. Disassembly and Reassembly

3.1 General Precautions on Disassembly

When you disassemble and reassemble components, you must use extreme caution. The close proximity of cables to moving parts makes proper routing a must.

If components are removed, any cables disturbed by the procedure must be restored as close as possible to their original positions. Before removing any component from the machine, note the cable routing that will be affected.

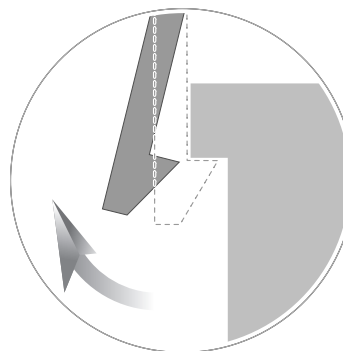
Whenever servicing the machine, you must perform as follows:

1. Check to verify that documents are not stored in memory.
2. Be sure to remove the toner cartridge before you disassemble parts.
3. Unplug the power cord.
4. Use a flat and clean surface.
5. Replace only with authorized components.
6. Do not force plastic-material components.
7. Make sure all components are in their proper position.

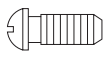
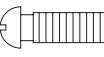
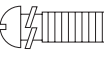

Releasing Plastic Latches

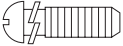

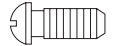
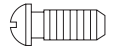
Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches break easily; release them carefully.

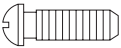
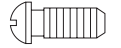
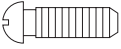
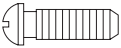
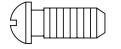



To remove such parts, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.



3.1.1 Screws used in the printer

SEC CODE	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION & SPEC	QT'Y	SNA
6001-000130 	ELA HOU-SIDE	SCREW-MACHINE;BH,+,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-,-	2	SNA
	ELA HOU-HDD MAIN	SCREW-MACHINE;BH,+,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-,-	4	SNA
6001-000485 	ELA HOU-GUIDE SIDE	SCREW-MACHINE;PH,+,-,M2.6,L4,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,FP,-	2	SNA
6002-000440 	ELA HOU-GUIDE SCAN	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
	MEA-TX STACKER	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
	ELA UNIT-SCAN UPPER	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
	ELA HOU-FUSER	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	3	SNA
	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	5	SNA
	MEA UNIT-LIFTING GEAR	SCREW-TAPPING;PWH,+,-,2,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
6003-000196 	ELA HOU-OPE	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	ELA HOU-OPE COVER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	CARTRIDGE-TONER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	MEA UNIT-TONER WTB	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	ELA HOU-DADF	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	ELA HOU-COVER PLATEN	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	14	SA
	ELA HOU-COVER JAM	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	ELA HOU-DADF SUB	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	14	SA
	ELA HOU-GUIDE SCAN	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	ELA HOU-COVER OPEN	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	5	SA
	MEA-EXIT	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	2	SA
	MEA-GUIDE PICKUP	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	4	SA
	MEA-TX STACKER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	3	SA
	ELA HOU-PLATEN	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	6	SA
	ELA UNIT-SCAN UPPER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	2	SA
	MEA UNIT-DUMMY UPPER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	ELA HOU-SCAN LOWER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	12	SA
	ELA HOU-FRAME TOP	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	11	SA
	ELA HOU-FRAME MAIN	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	36	SA
	ELA HOU-TERMINAL	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	MEA UNIT-F DR	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	ELA HOU-BASE FRAME	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	13	SA
	ELA HOU-MP	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	4	SA
	ELA HOU-BASE RIGHT	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	6	SA
ELA HOU-PLATE UPPER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	3	SA	

SEC CODE	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION & SPEC	QT'Y	SNA
	ELA HOU-SIDE DUPLEX	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	19	SA
	ELA HOU-GUIDE SIDE	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SA
	ELA HOU-DUPLEX	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	12	SA
	ELA HOU-EXIT	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	15	SA
	ELA HOU-ENGINE	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	35	SA
	ELA HOU-FAN DUCT	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	1	SA
	ELA HOU-FUSER	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	20	SA
	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	6	SA
	MEA UNIT-COVER FRONT	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,B,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	3	SA
6003-000264 	MEA UNIT-TRAY	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,-,B,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	1	SNA
6003-000266 	ELA UNIT-CST SENSOR	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
6003-000269 	ELA HOU-OPE	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	4	SA
	ELA HOU-DADF	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	8	SA
	DADF MOTOR	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	4	SA
	ELA HOU-DUPLEX MOTOR	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
	ELA HOU-GUIDE SCAN	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	1	SA
	ELA HOU-SCAN LOWER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	4	SA
	ELA UNIT-SCAN MOTOR	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
	ELA HOU-FRAME TOP	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	16	SA
	ELA HOU-BASE FRAME	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	11	SA
	ELA HOU-BASE PLATE R	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	7	SA
	MEA UNIT-RETARD	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
	ELA HOU-PLATE UPPER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	8	SA
	MEA-SUPPORT SCAN	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	16	SA
	ELA HOU-DRIVE MAIN	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	14	SA
	ELA HOU-EXIT	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
	ELA HOU-DRIVE FUSER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	6	SA
	ELA HOU-ENGINE	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	18	SA
6003-000282 	ELA HOU-DEVE UNIT	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	9	SNA
	ELA HOU-DEVE	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	8	SNA
	ELA HOU-OPC	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	7	SNA
	CARTRIDGE-TONER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	3	SNA
	MEA UNIT-TONER WTB	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
	ELA UNIT-LSU	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	8	SNA
	ELA UNIT-LD	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+ ,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA

SEC CODE	LOCATION	DESCRIPTION & SPEC	QT'Y	SNA
	ELA UNIT-CCDM HC	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	10	SNA
	ELA HOU-SIZE SENSOR	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
6003-000301	MEA-SUPPORT SCAN	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,S,M4,L6,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	1	SNA
				
6003-001001	MEA UNIT-COVER FRONT	SCREW-TAPTITE;FH,+,-,B,M3,L8,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A	1	SNA
6003-001086	ELA HOU-FUSER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M3,L12,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,-	2	SNA
				
6003-001256	ELA HOU-DADF	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	5	SNA
	ELA HOU-SCAN LOWER	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	14	SNA
	ELA HOU-FRAME TOP	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	2	SNA
	ELA HOU-BASE FRAME	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	7	SNA
	ELA HOU-ENGINE	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A	19	SNA
6003-001324	ELA HOU-COVER PLATEN	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M4,L16,NI PLT,SWRCH18A,-	8	SNA
				
6003-001474	ELA HOU-BASE PLATE R	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,B,M3,L30,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	3	SNA
				
6006-001078	ELA HOU-ENGINE	SCREW-TAPTITE;PH,+,-,WSP,B,M3,L10,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	4	SNA
				
6006-001193	ELA HOU-DEVE	SCREW-MACHINE;PH,+,-,WSP,M3,10,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
		,WD8,TEMPERED		
	ELA HOU-FUSER	SCREW-MACHINE;PH,+,-,WSP,M3,10,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	2	SA
		,WD8,TEMPERED		
	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	SCREW-MACHINE;PH,+,-,WSP,M3,10,ZPC(WHT),SWRCH18A,-	1	SA
		,WD8,TEMPERED		
6009-001390	ELA HOU-SCAN	SCREW-SPECIAL;SPECIAL,±,-,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A,B-	1	SNA
		TITE,D9, L13.5, DIME		
	ELA HOU-ENGINE	SCREW-SPECIAL;SPECIAL,±,-,M3,L10,NI PLT,SWRCH18A,B-	2	SNA
		TITE,D9, L13.5, DIME		
6009-001396	ELA HOU-FRAME MAIN	SCREW-SPECIAL;PH,+,-,M3,L10.3,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,B	2	SNA
		TITE,-		
	ELA HOU-BASE PLATE R	SCREW-SPECIAL;PH,+,-,M3,L10.3,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,B	2	SNA
		TITE,-		
	ELA HOU-HDD MAIN	SCREW-SPECIAL;PH,+,-,M3,L10.3,ZPC(BLK),SWRCH18A,B	4	SNA
		TITE,-		
JC67-00164A	ELA HOU-PLATEN	CAP-HOLE SCREW;SCX-6345N/XRX,SILICON 60,T1.2,W11,	5	SA
		L4.5,IVORY,-		
	MEA-COVER	CAP-HOLE SCREW;SCX-6345N/XRX,SILICON 60,T1.2,W11,	2	SA
		L4.5,IVORY,-		

3.2 Customer Replaceable Units

There are 3 replaceable Customer Replaceable Units (CRUs) on the machine:

- Toner Cartridge
- Drum Cartridge
- Staples
- Fuser Unit

The machine will display a message on the touch screen when any of the above need to be reordered. This message is a warning that the unit is nearing the end of its life. Only replace the unit when a message actually instructs you to do so.

To replace a CRU, follow the instructions on the User Interface or refer to the relevant sections below.

CAUTION: When replacing consumables, DO NOT remove the covers or guards that are fastened with screws.



You cannot maintain or service any of the parts that are behind these covers and guards. DO NOT attempt any maintenance procedure unless specifically described in the documentation supplied with your machine.

3.2.1 Toner Cartridge

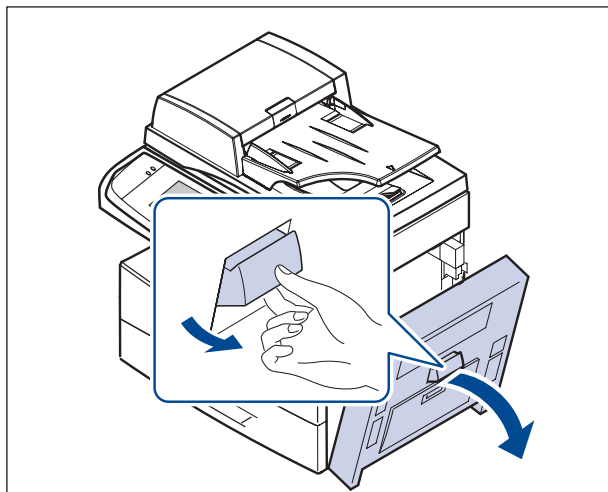
This procedure shows you how to remove a used toner cartridge and replace it with a new toner cartridge. New toner cartridges have a capacity of approximately 25,000 images with an average area coverage of ISO19752 Std..

The machine will indicate the percentage of toner used and the number of days remaining. When the notification message is enabled, the machine will tell you when you will need to order a new cartridge and when to fit it.

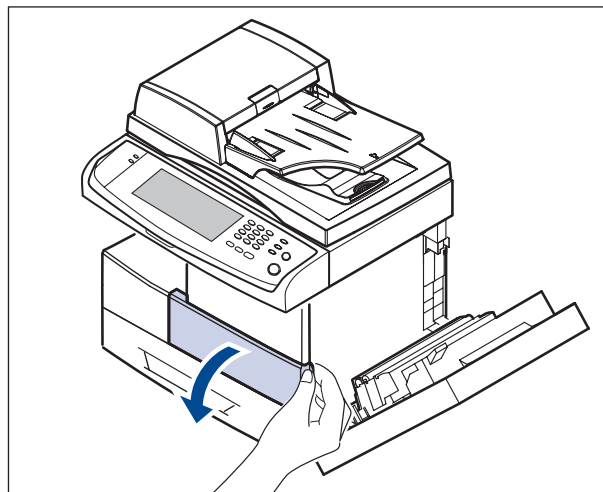
If the feature is enabled, a message will appear on the display screen advising you to replace the toner cartridge. If you want to replace the toner cartridge now, open the front door. The instructions on the screen will tell you how to fit a new cartridge.

If you do not want to replace the toner cartridge now you can select the Abort button. The machine will continue to operate but will NOT make copies or prints.

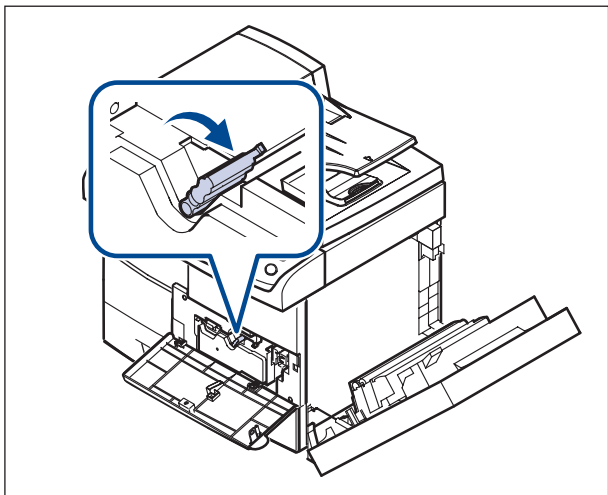
1. Open the side cover.



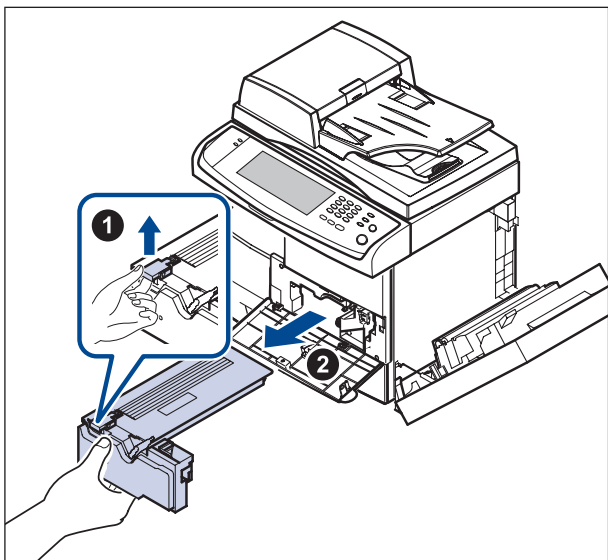
2. Open the front cover.



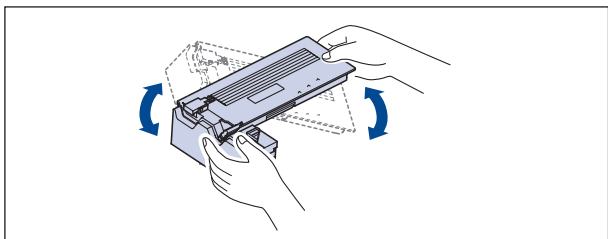
3. Turn the cartridge locking lever toward the right until you hear a 'click', to release the toner cartridge.



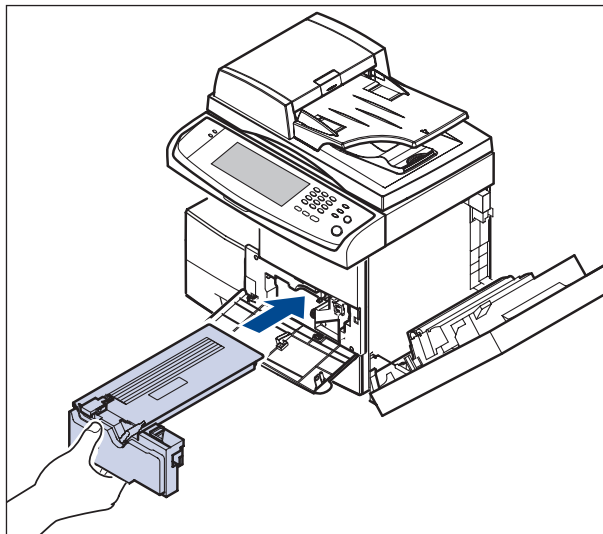
4. Lift the locking lever and pull the toner cartridge out.



5. Remove the new toner cartridge from its bag.
6. Thoroughly roll the cartridge five or six times to distribute the toner evenly inside the cartridge.

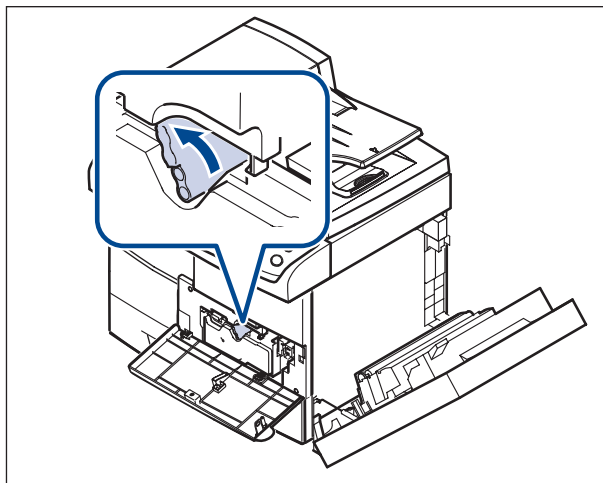


7. Hold the toner cartridge by the handle and slowly insert the cartridge into the opening in the machine.



8. Slide the new toner cartridge in until it locks in place.

9. Turn the cartridge locking lever toward the left until you hear a 'click'.



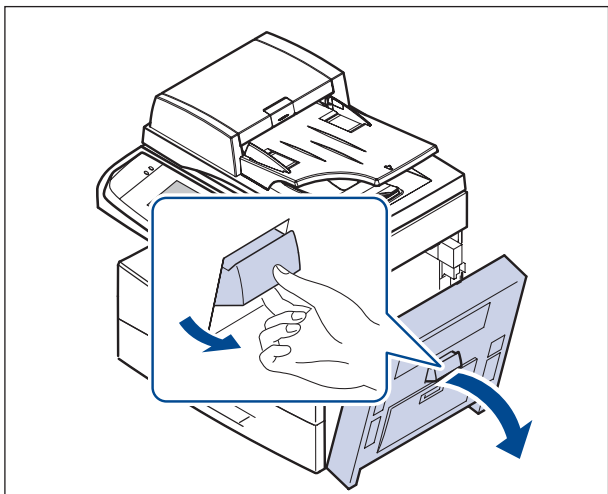
10. Close the front cover, then the side cover.

3.2.2 Replacing the Drum Cartridge

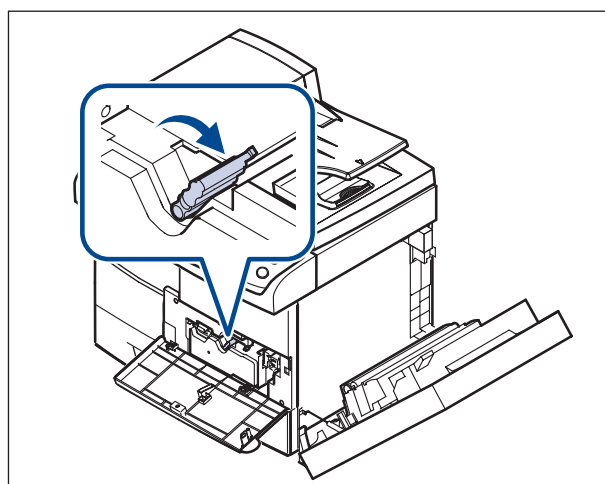
This procedure shows you how to remove a used Drum Cartridge and replace it with a new one. Depending on the type of Drum Cartridge, approximately 80,000 images are provided. The machine will tell you when you need to order a new cartridge and when to replace the cartridge. The Drum Cartridge can be recycled so please follow the disposal instructions you receive with the new items.

⚠ WARNING: Remove the toner cartridge before attempting to remove the ^M Drum Cartridge.

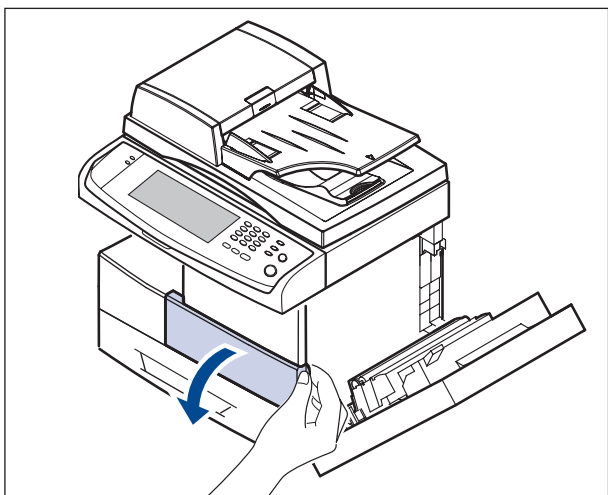
1. Open the side cover.



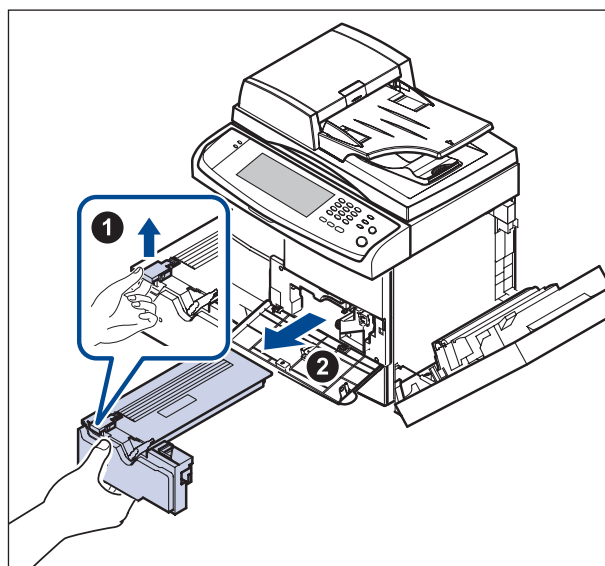
3. Turn the cartridge locking lever toward the right until you hear a 'click', to release the toner cartridge.



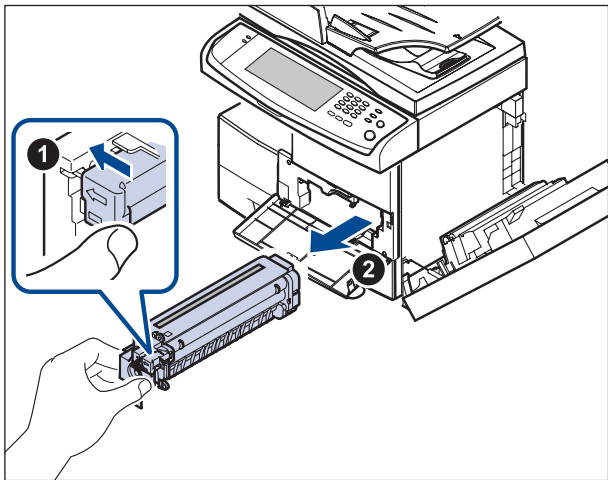
2. Open the front cover.



4. Lift the locking lever and pull the toner cartridge out.



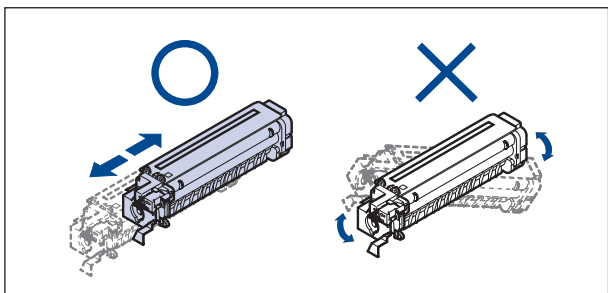
5. Pull the used drum cartridge out.



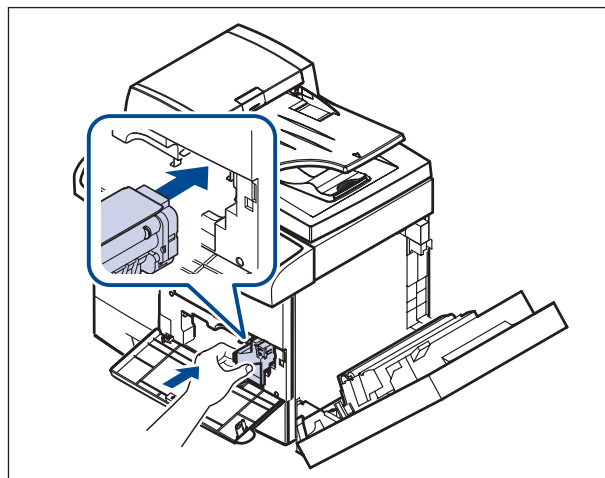
6. Remove the new drum cartridge from its bag.

7. Open the seal tape and carefully pull the seal tape out of the cartridge.

8. Thoroughly shake the drum cartridge side to side five or six times.



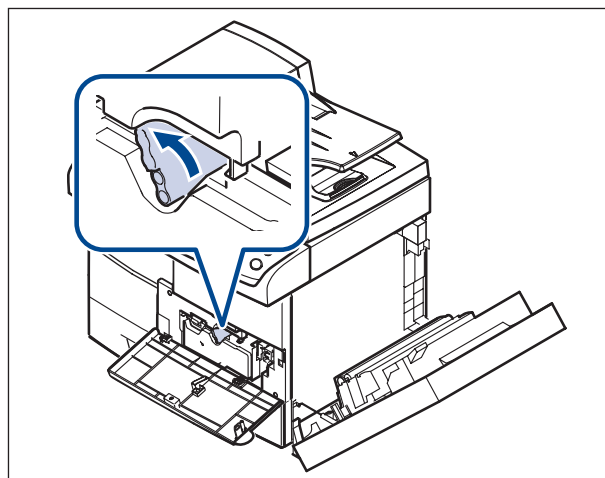
9. Unpack the new drum cartridge and slide it into place, making sure not to touch the surface of



the drum.

10. Slide the toner cartridge in until it locks in place.

11. Turn the cartridge locking lever toward the left



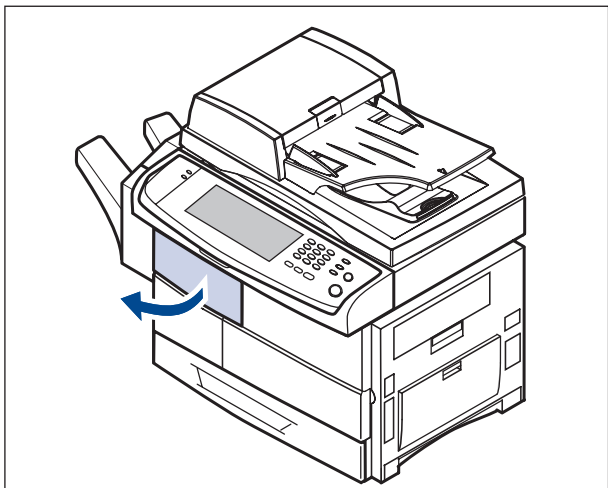
until you hear a 'click'.

12. Close the front cover, then the side cover.

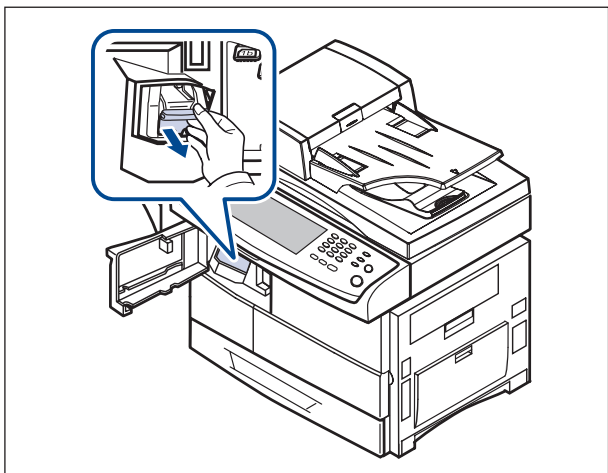
3.2.3 Replacing The Stapler

When the stapler is completely empty, the message for installing the staple cartridge appears on the display screen.

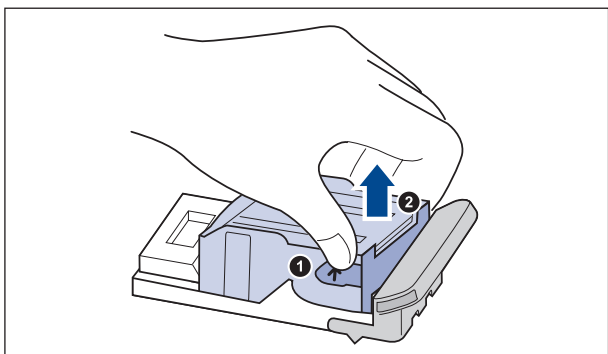
1. Open the finisher cover.



2. Pull the stapler unit out.

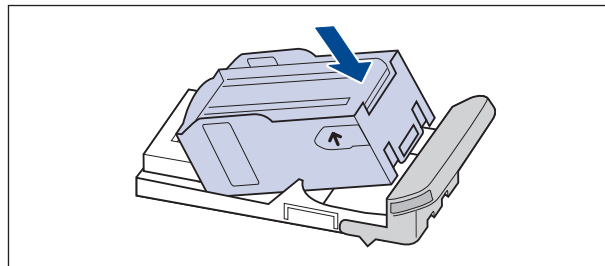


3. Lift the empty staple cartridge from the stapler unit.

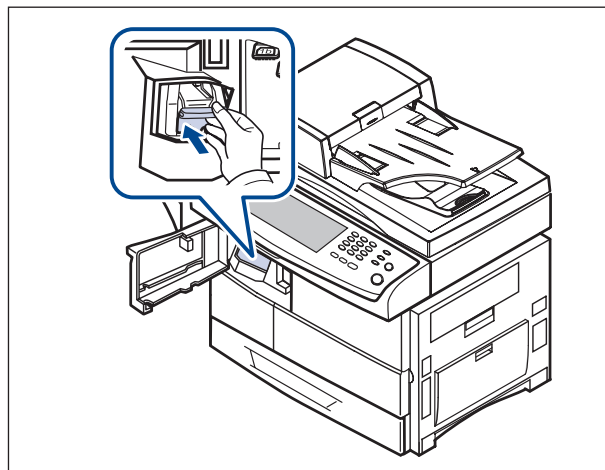


4. Unpack the new staple cartridge.

5. Place the staple cartridge back into the stapler unit.



6. Slide the stapler unit in until it locks in place.



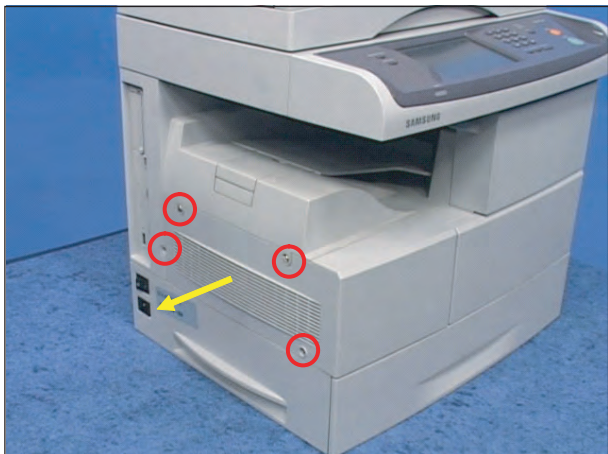
7. Close the finisher cover.

3.3 General Disassembly

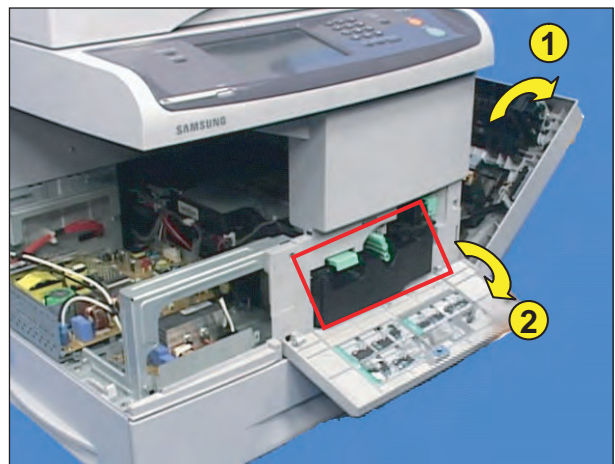
3.3.1 Cover



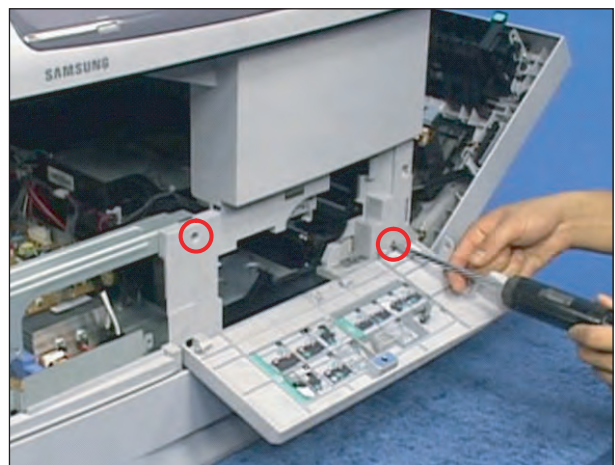
1. Remove the 4 screw. And remove the side cover.



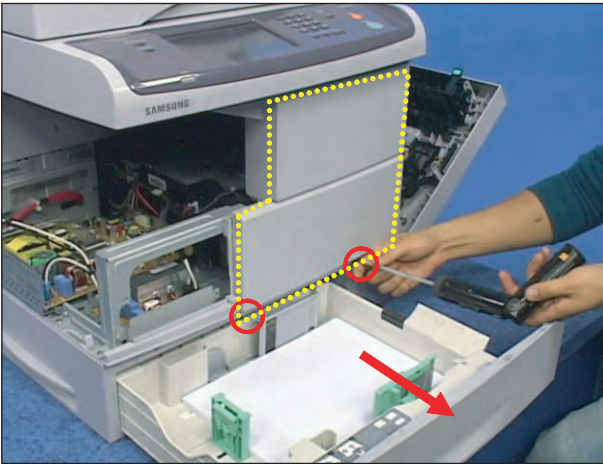
2. Open the side duplex and front cover in sequence. Remove the toner cartridge.



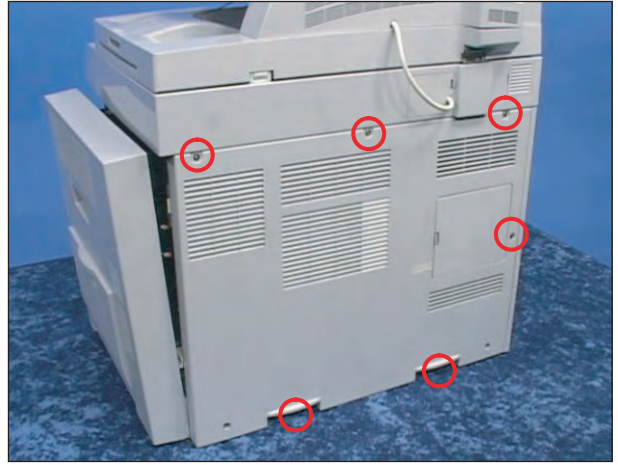
3. Remove the 2 screws securing the Deve cover.



4. Take out the cassette. And remove the front cover after remove the 2 screws.

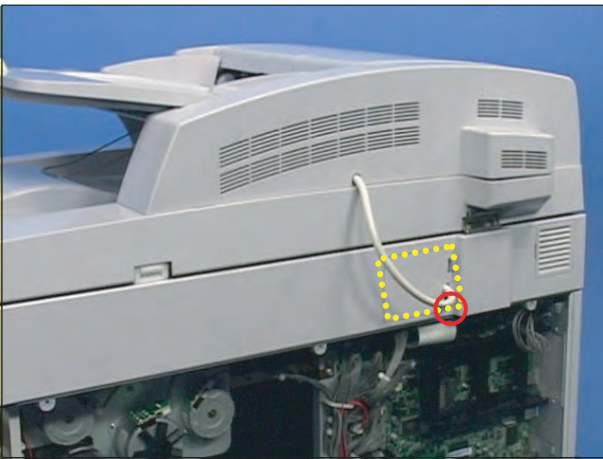


5. Remove the 6 screw and remove the rear cover.

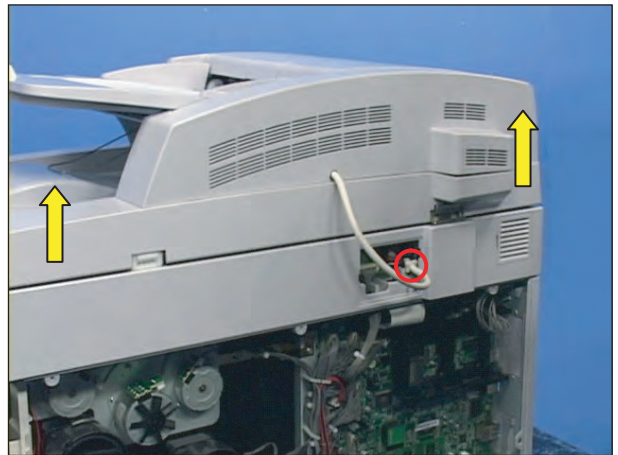


3.3.2 DADF

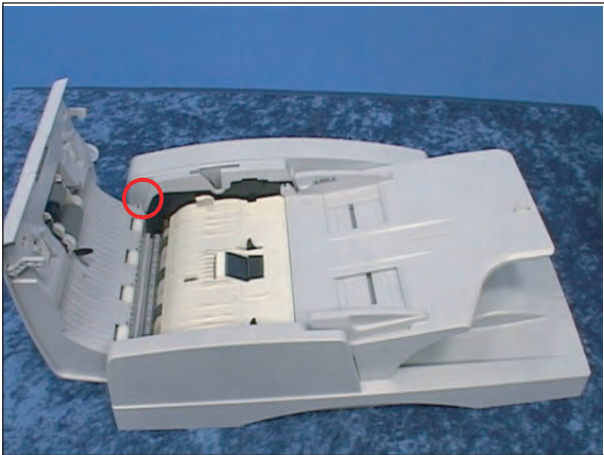
1. Remove one screw, and disassemble the cover.



2. Unplug the cable, and lift up the DADF from the SET in the direction of arrow



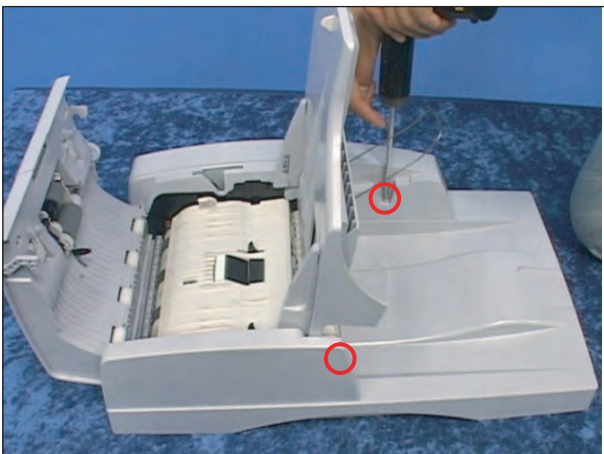
3. Open the DADF cover, and remove the one screw.



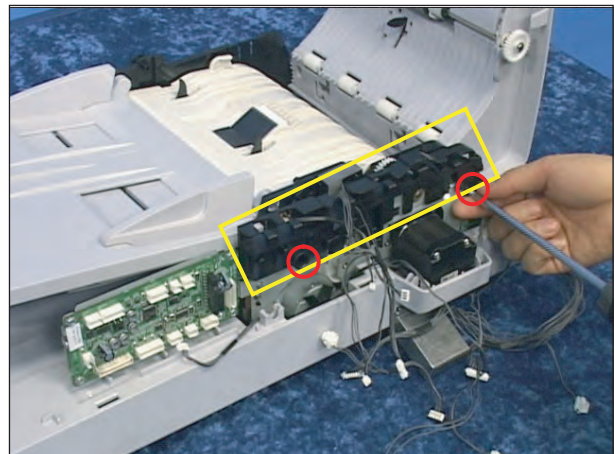
6. Unplug the all harness from the DADF board.



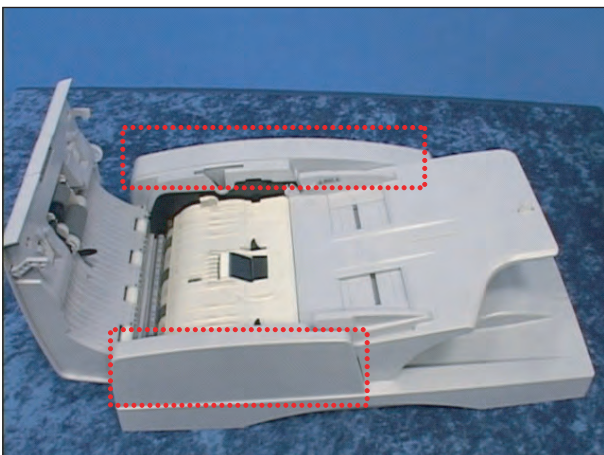
4. Lift up the stacker, and remove the two screws.



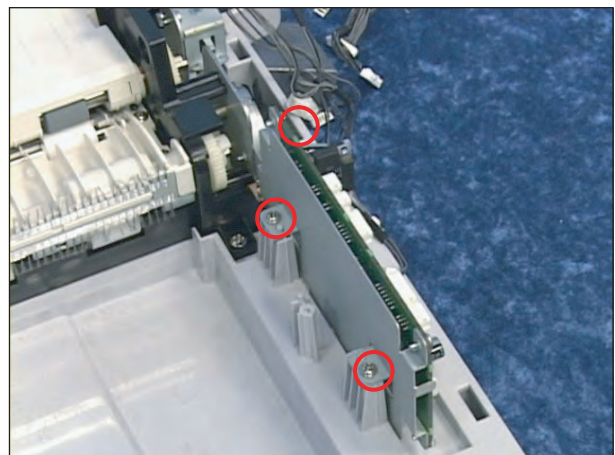
7. Remove the 2 screws, and then remove the harness holder.



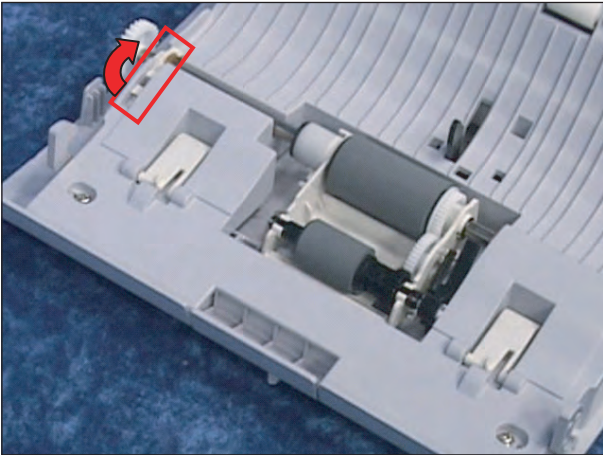
5. Remove the front/rear cover of the DADF.



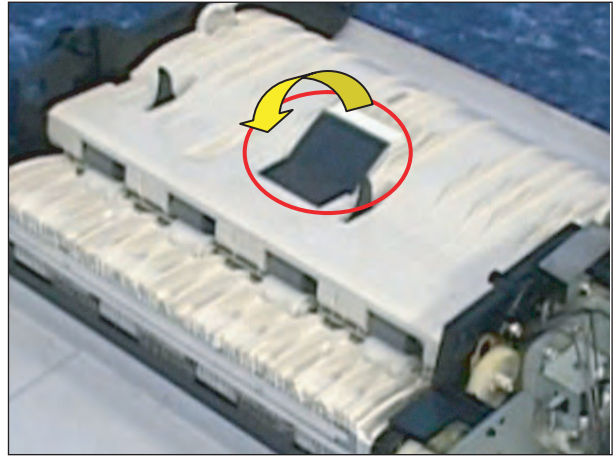
8. Remove the 3 screws, and then remove the DADF board.



9. Pull the bush in the direction of arrow. Then lift the DADF pick up roller out.



10. Remove the DADF pad unit.

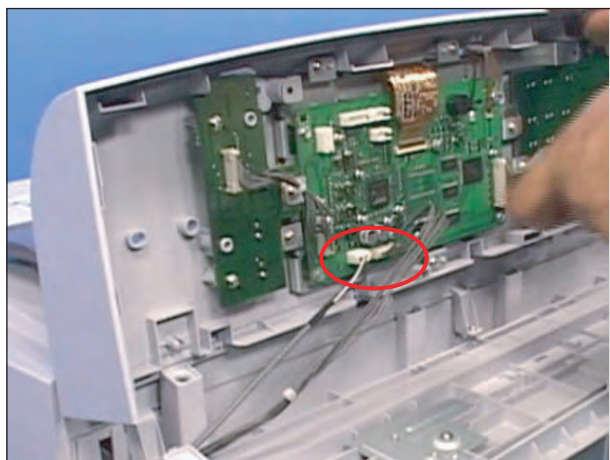


3.3.3 OPE

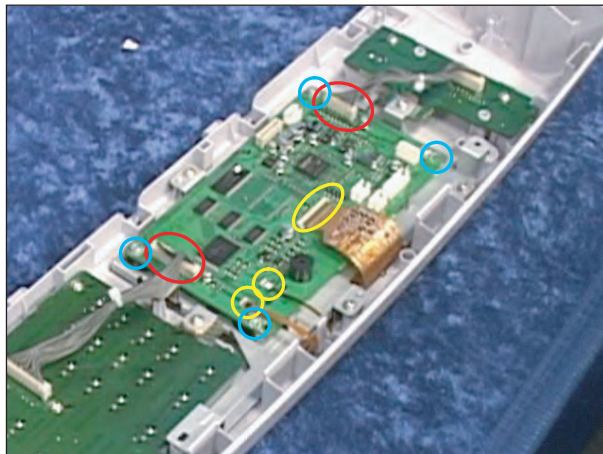
1. Remove the OPE cover. And remove the 3 screws.



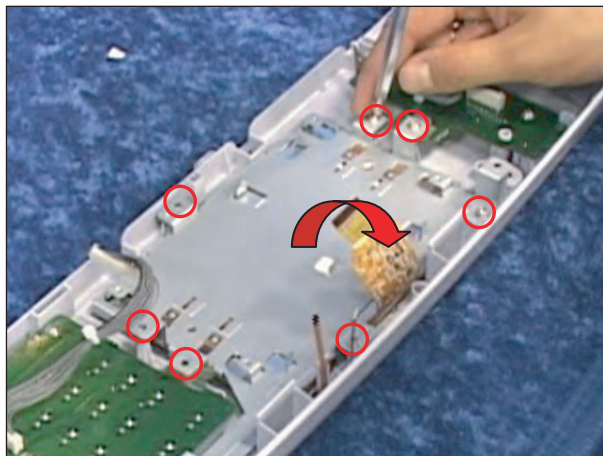
2. Lift up the OPE assy as shown below, and Unplug the connector. And release the OPE assy from set.



3. Disconnect the 2 harness, 3 flexible pcb, and remove the 4 screws. And then remove the OPE PBA.

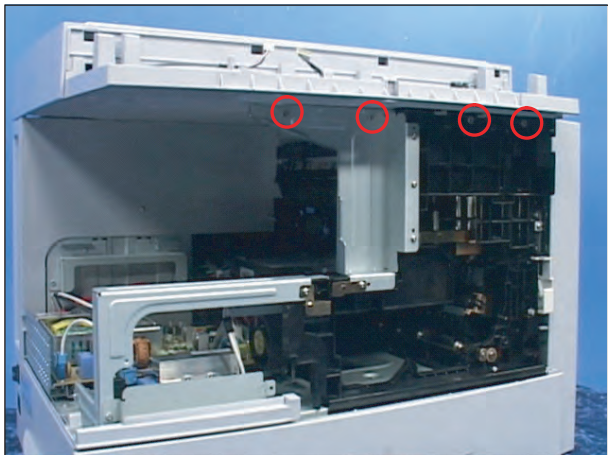


4. To remove the LCD panel, remove the 7 screws. Take out the LCD panel after remove the LCD panel shield.

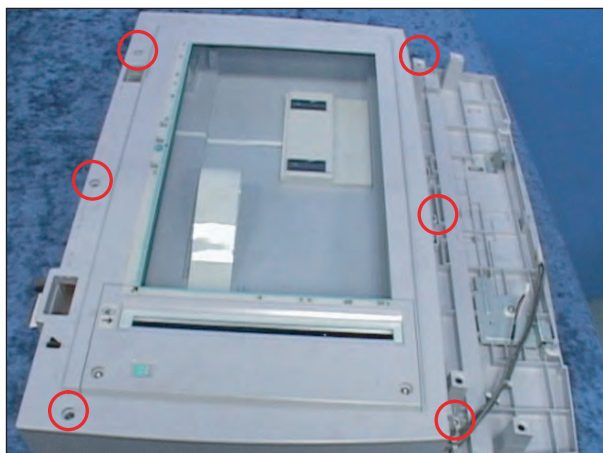


3.3.4 Scan Assy

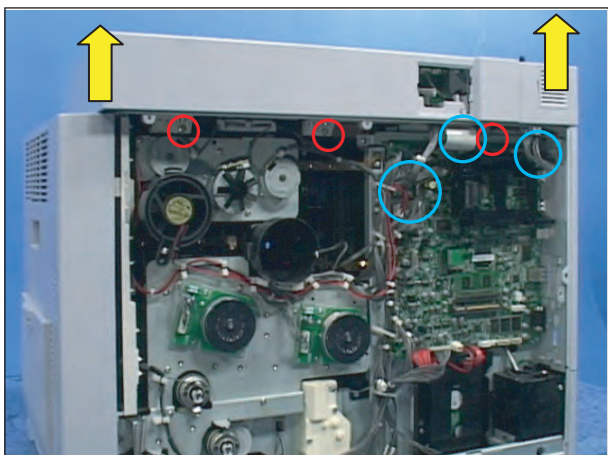
1. Remove the 4 screws.



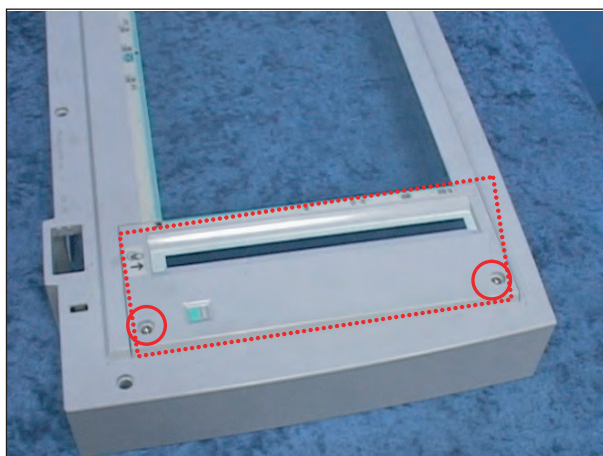
3. Release the Scan upper from the Scan lower after remove the 6 screws.



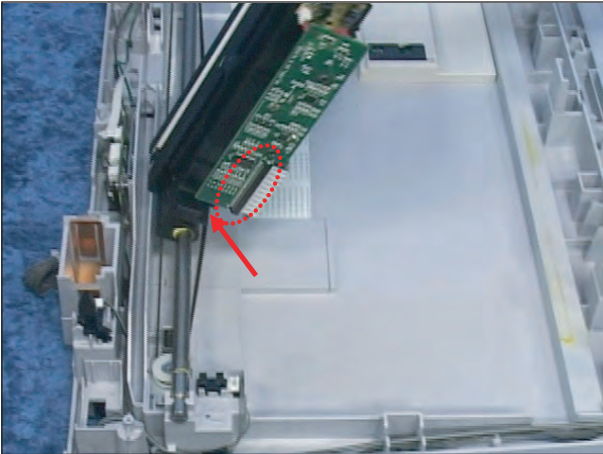
2. Remove the 3 screws and harness. And lift the Scan assy up.



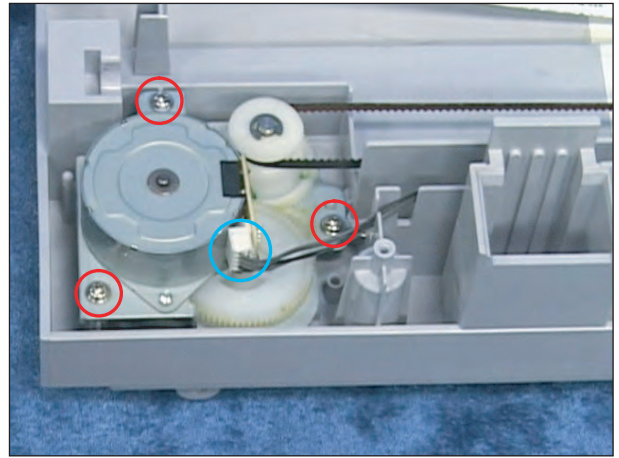
4. Release the Lever-locker from the scan upper after remove the 2 screws.



5. Remove the flat cable and the belt from CCDM. And release the CCDM.

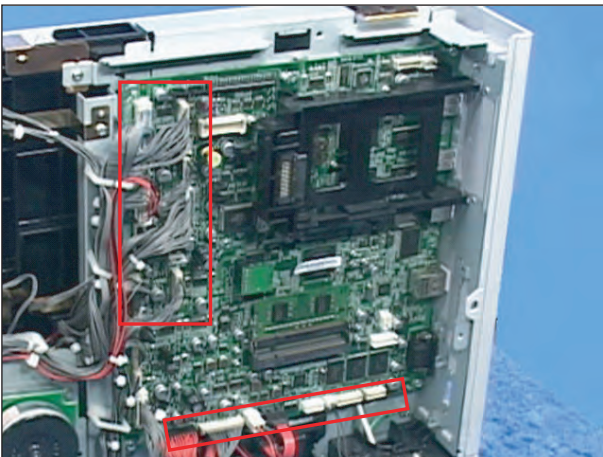


6. Remove the Scan motor after remove the 3 screws and 1 connector.

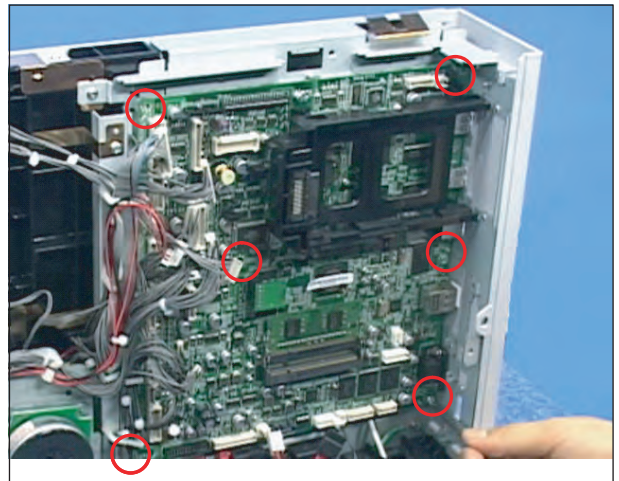


3.3.5 Main board

1. Remove the all harness.

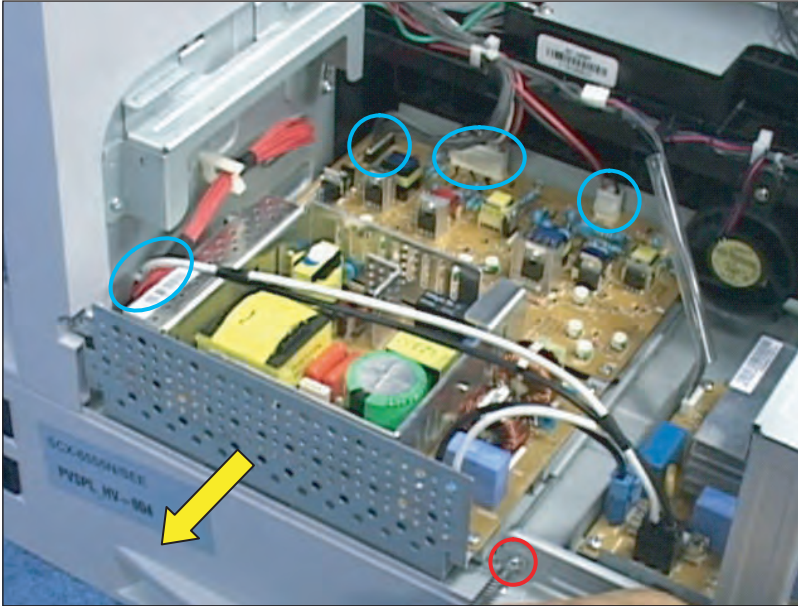


2. Remove the 6 screws.



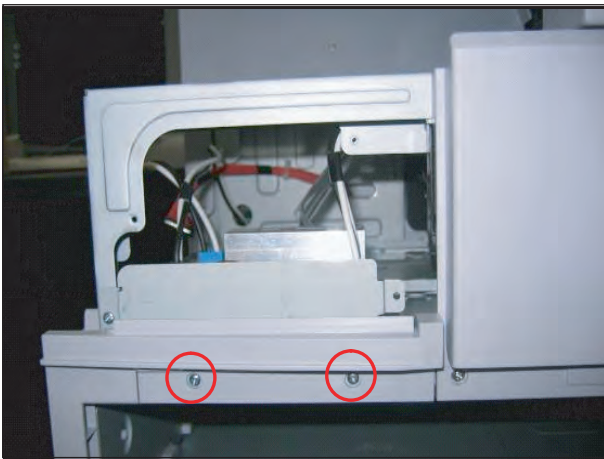
3.3.6 SMPS board

1. Remove the one screw and 4 connector. And take out the SMPS board shield.

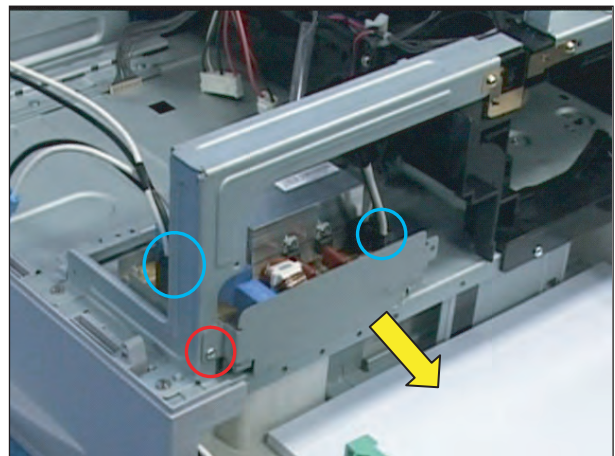


3.3.7 FDB (Fuser Drive board)

1. Remove the 2 screw as shown below.

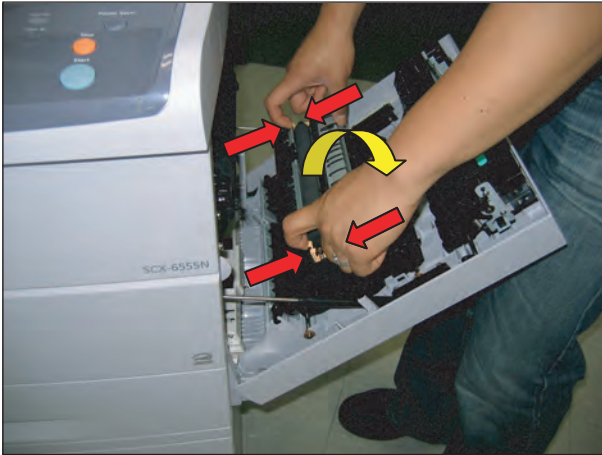


2. Take out the Fuser Drive board after remove the 1 screw and 2 connector.



3.3.8 Transfer roller

1. Open the Side Cover. Push the latch in the two direction and pull the Transfer Roller.



3.3.9 ELA HOU-ID SENSOR

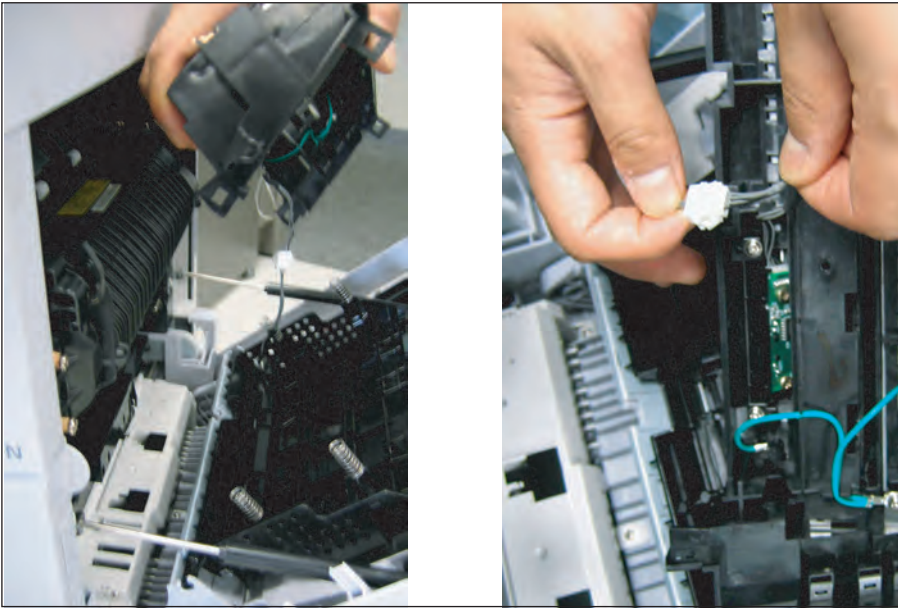
1. Press the GUIDE-DUPLEX with one hand and pull the GUIDE-FEED up with other hand.



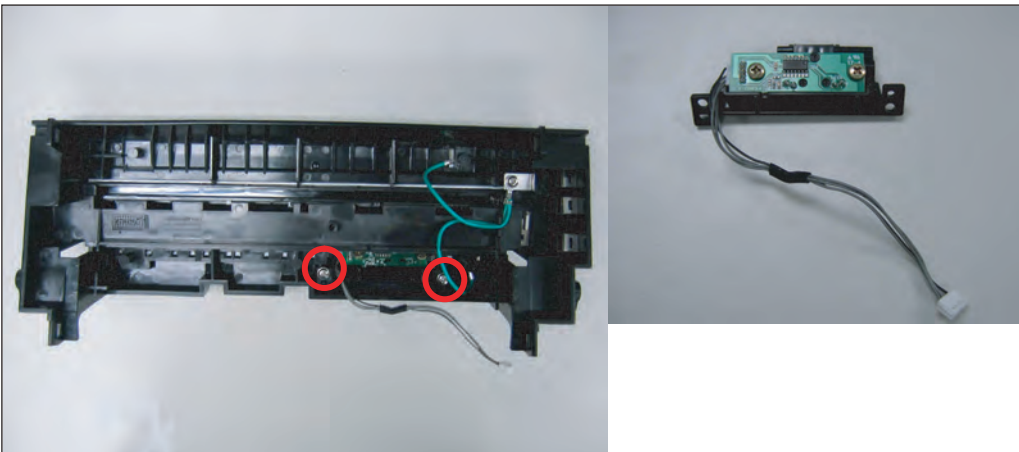
2. Separate the GUIDE-FEED.



3. Upset the GUIDE-FEED and remove the harness.

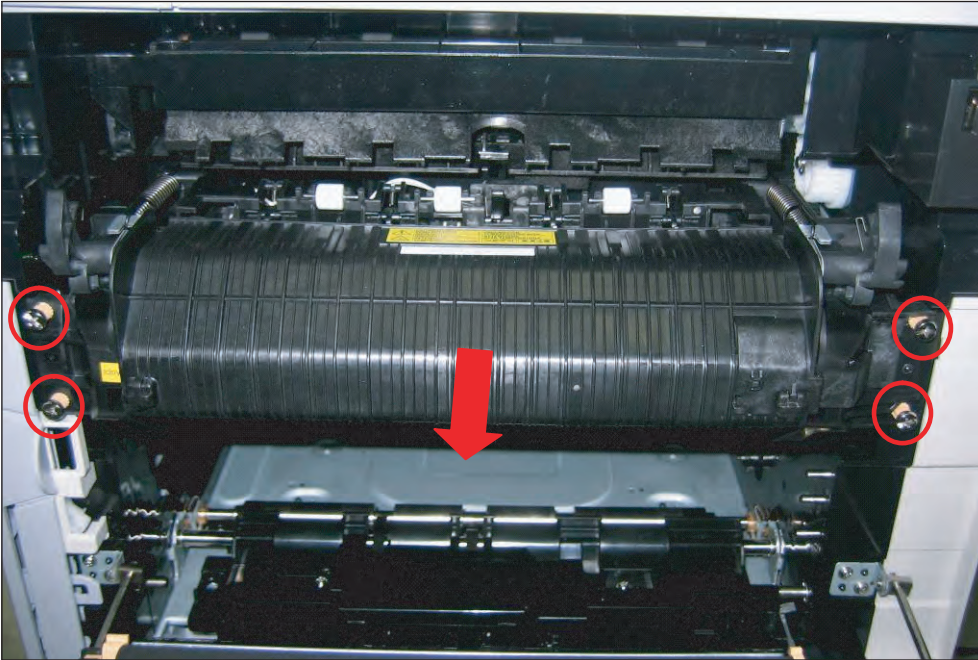


4. Separate the ELA HOU-ID SENSOR from the GUIDE-FEED after remove the 2 screws.



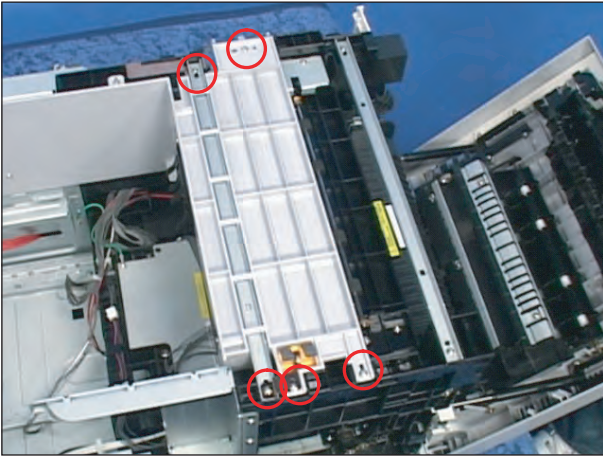
3.3.10 Fuser

1. Open the Side cover.
2. Remove the four thumb screws, and pull the Fuser Ass'y in the direction of arrow

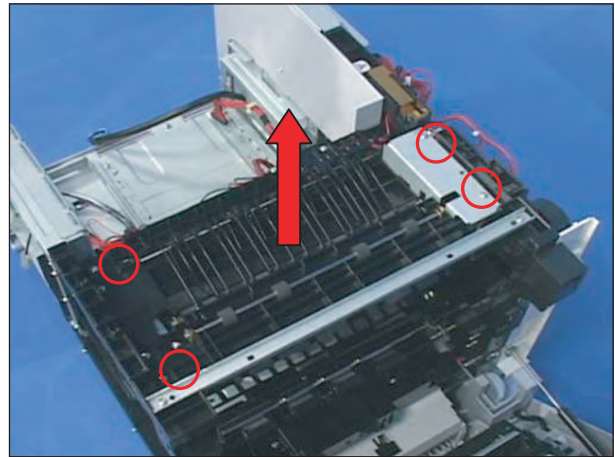


3.3.11 Exit Assy

1. Remove the 4 screw as shown below.

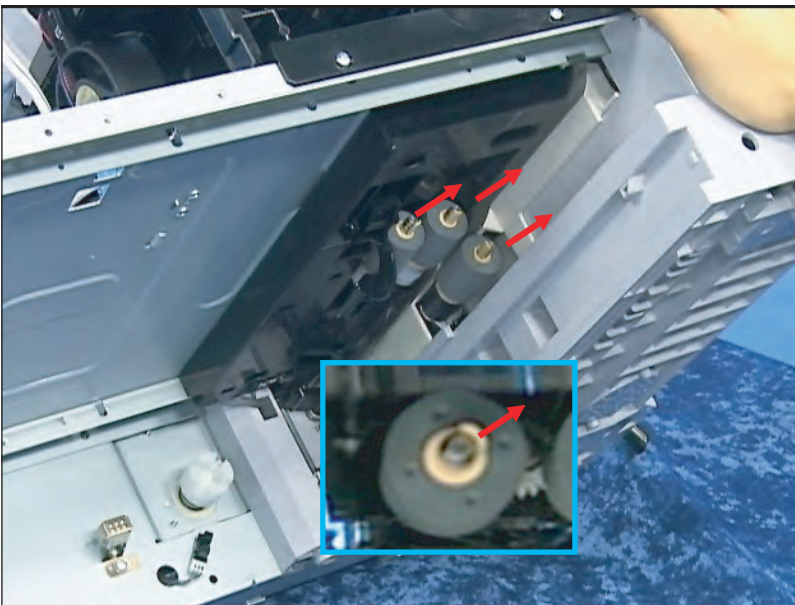


2. Remove the 4 screws and pull the Exit Assy in the direction of arrow.



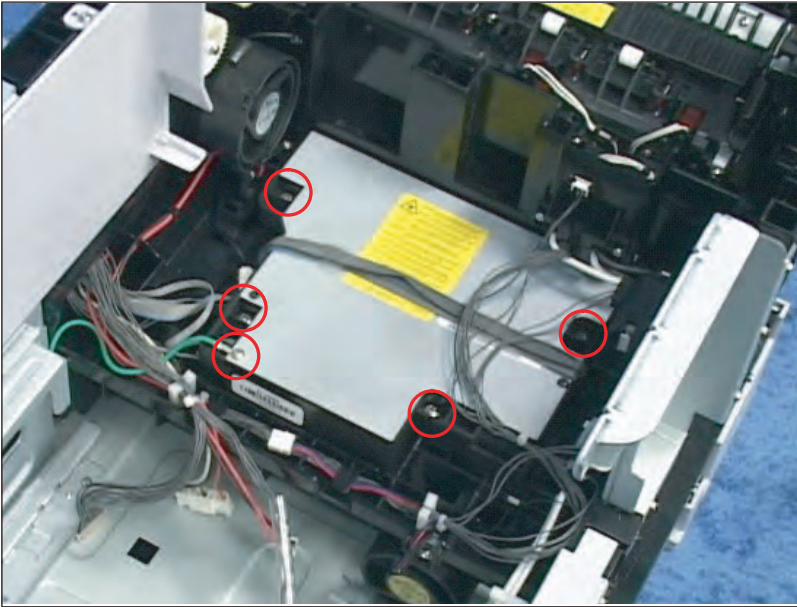
3.3.12 Pick up roller

1. After taking out the cassette, remove the pick up roller by pulling the hook.



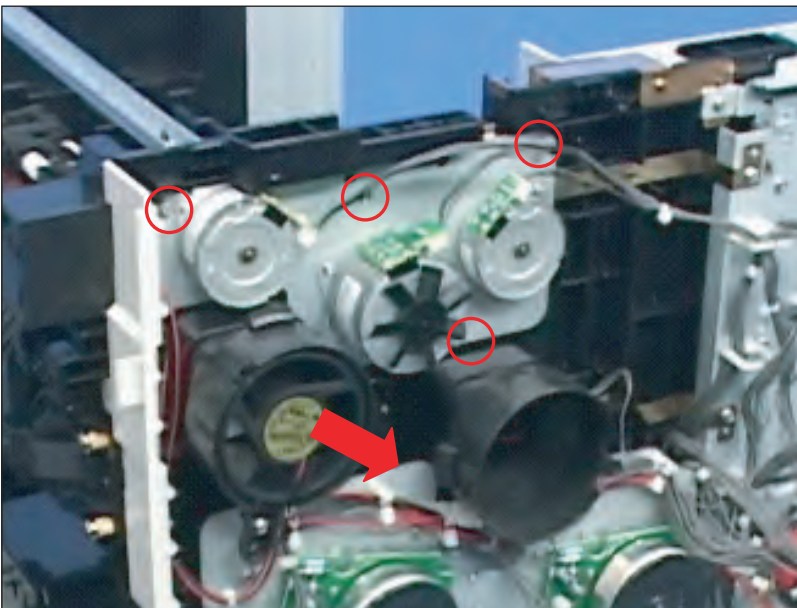
3.3.13 LSU

1. To remove the LSU, remove the Exit Assy .(refer to 3.3.10)
2. Lift up the LSU after remove the 5 screws.



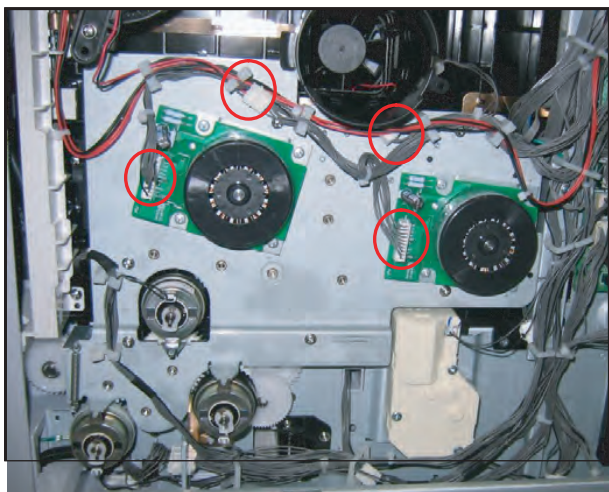
3.3.14 Drive Exit Assy

1. Remove the 4 screws. And remove the Drive Exit Assy after pull the Fan in the direction of arrow.

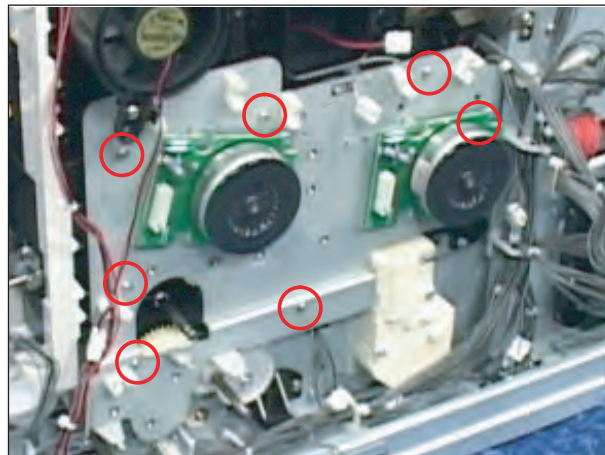


3.3.15 Main Drive Assy

1. Unplug the 4 connectors and release the harness from harness holder.

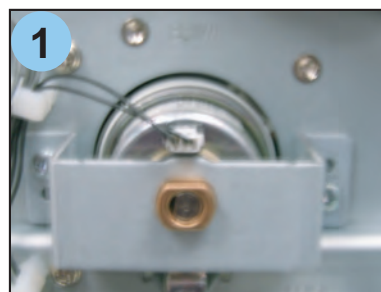
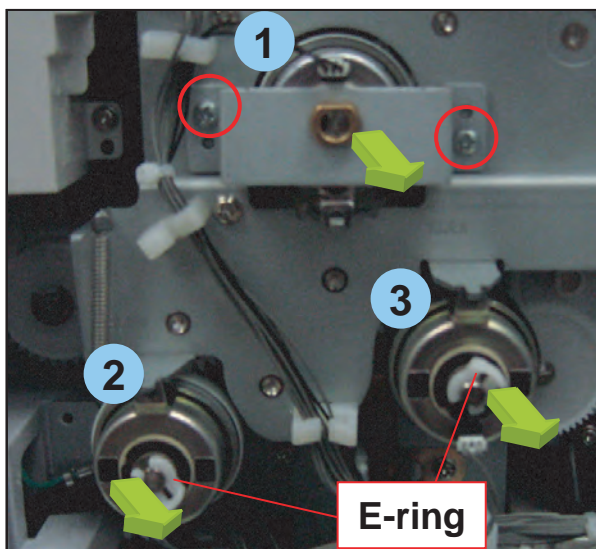


3. Remove the 7 screws.



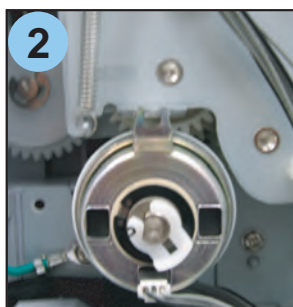
2. Remove the 2 screw from the shield of MP clutch. Remove the 2 E-rings. And remove the 3 clutch without unplugging harness.

Note - When you want to replace the clutch, unplug the harness. When reassembling clutch and harness, consult the below information about the harness and clutch colors.



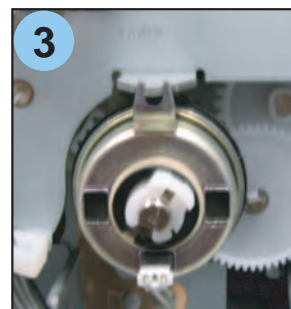
Registration Clutch

1. Clutch gear color : White
2. Harness color : Black / Black



MP Clutch

1. Clutch gear color : White
2. Harness color : Black / Gray

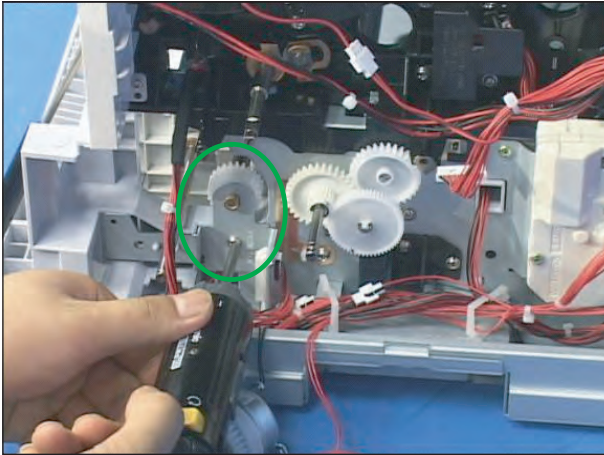


Pick-up Clutch

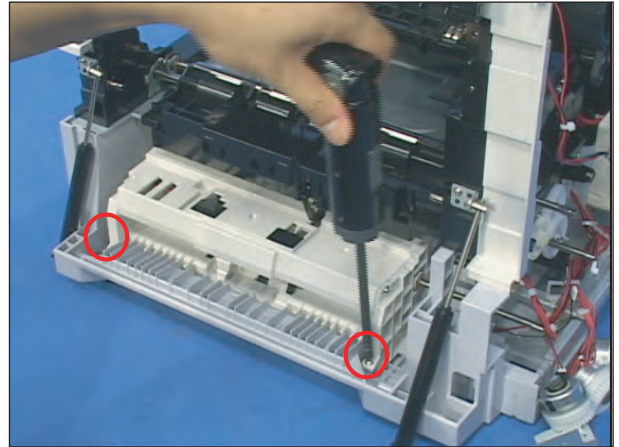
1. Clutch gear color : Black
2. Harness color : Gray / Gray

3.3.16 MP Assy

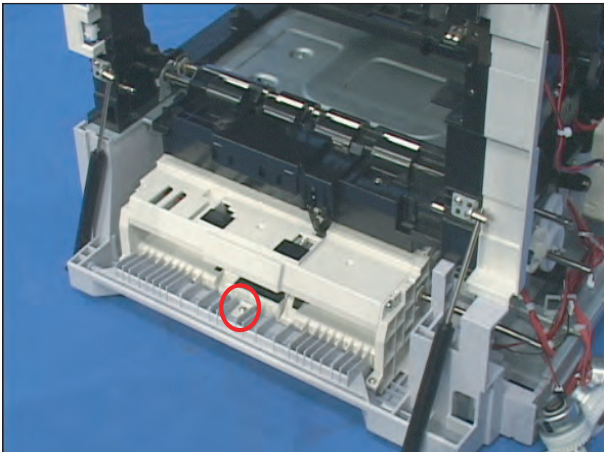
1. Remove the one screw, and release the one gear.



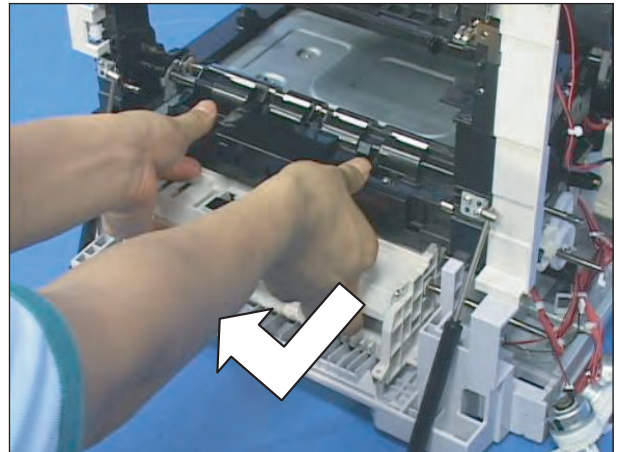
3. Remove the 2 screw and release the MP Assy.



2. Remove the one screw and friction pad.



4. Release the MP Ass'y from the SET in the direction of arrow (pull & up)



4. Alignment & Troubleshooting

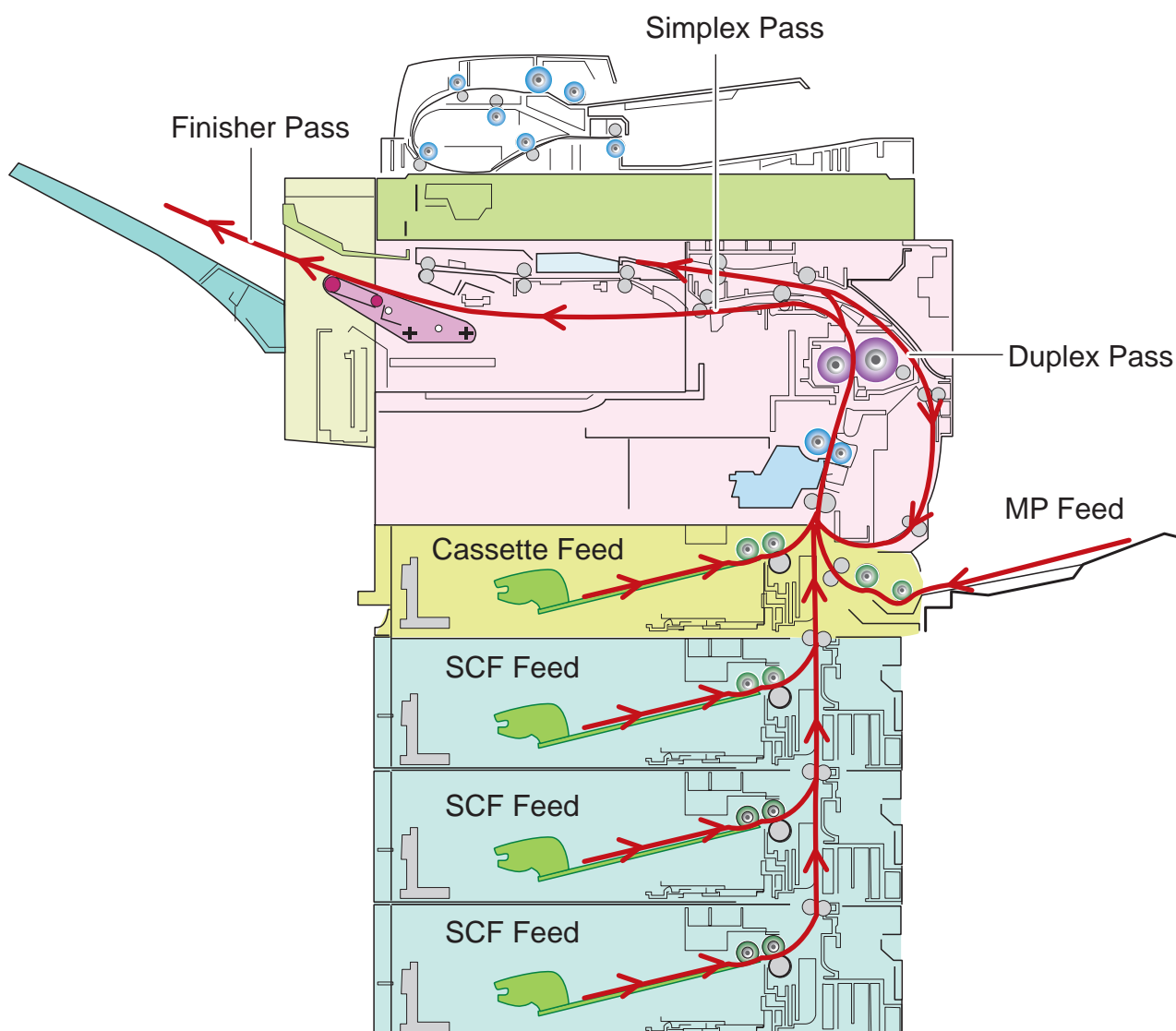
This chapter describes some of the main service procedures including:

Using the Tech mode; Clearing paper jam and test patterns.

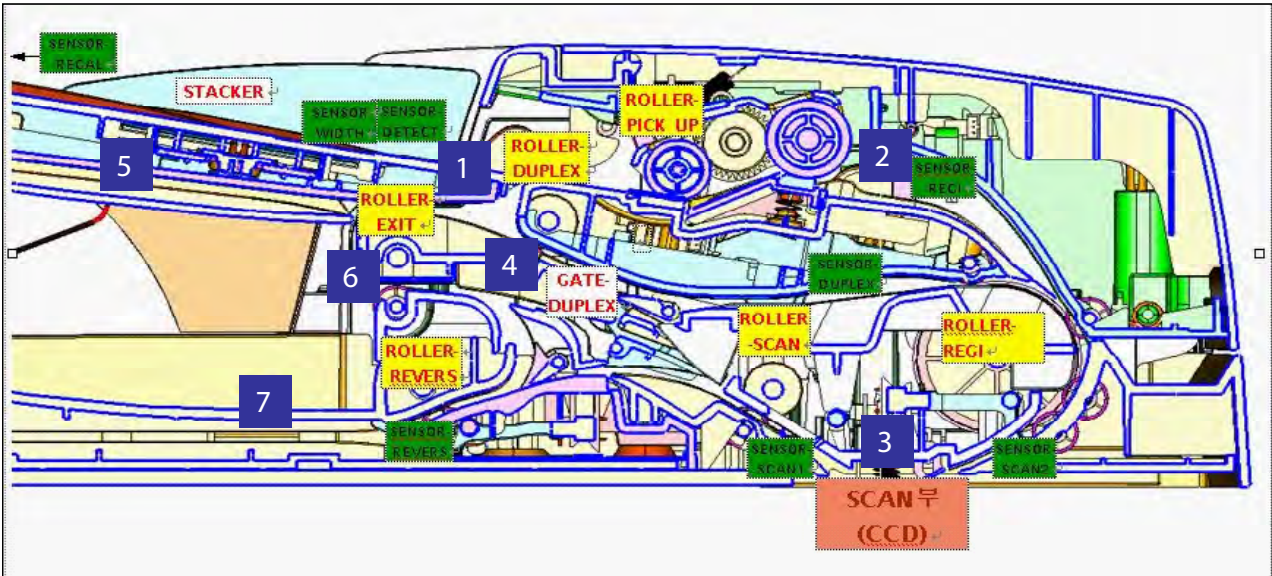
- Tips for avoiding paper jams, Clearing paper jams.
- Solving other problems.

4.1 Alignment and Adjustments

4.1.1 Paper path



< DADF Document Path >



DOCUMENT PATH	SIMPLEX	1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 6
	DUPLEX	1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 5 → 4 → 3 → 7 → 6

4.1.2 Clearing Paper Jams

If a paper jam occurs an error message appears in the LCD display.

Find and remove the jammed paper.

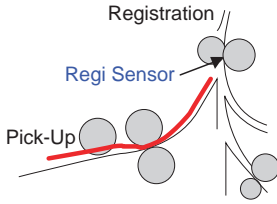

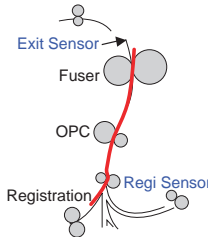

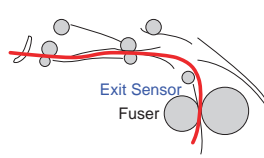

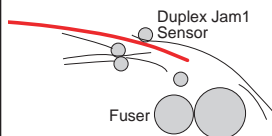

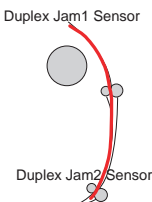

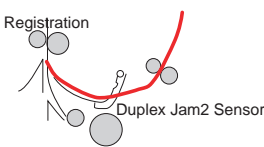

If you don't see the paper, open the covers.

Do not use a tweezers, pincers or other metal tools when clearing a paper jam.

This could damage the internal mechanism causing print quality problems or possibly electrical shock.

(The description of table below is same like a SCX-6345N series.)

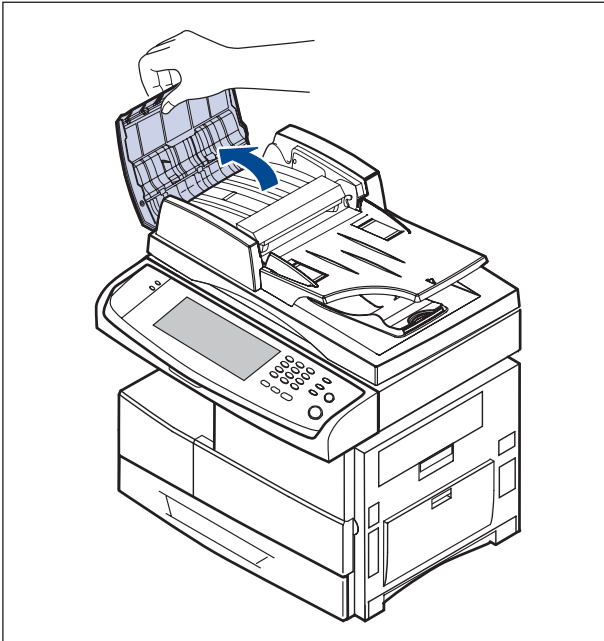
[Engine Jam Type]

Type	Case	Jam Removal	Jam Layout	Photo
Feed Jam at Tray 1,2,3,4	Leading edge of media does not arrive at registration within a certain time after pick-Up(If fails at a time, it tries pick-up again)	1. Pull out cassette 2. Remove jammed paper		
Jam 1	Leading edge of media does not arrive at Exit Sensor within a certain time after registration	1. Open side cover 2. Remove jammed paper		
Jam 2	Trailing edge of media does not leave Exit Sensor within a certain time after touching Regi Sensor	1. Open side cover 2. Remove jammed paper Or 1. Remove jammed paper from exit		
Duplex Jam 1	Trailing edge of media leaves Exit Sensor, and does not arrive at Duplex Jam1 Sensor	1. Open side cover 2. Remove jammed paper Or 1. Remove jammed paper from exit		
Duplex Jam 2	Trailing edge of media does not arrive at Duplex Jam2 Sensor after touching Duplex Jam1 Sensor	1. Open side cover 2. Remove jammed paper		
Duplex Jam 0	Trailing edge of media does not arrive at Registration after touching Duplex Jam2 Sensor	1. Open side cover 2. Remove jammed paper		

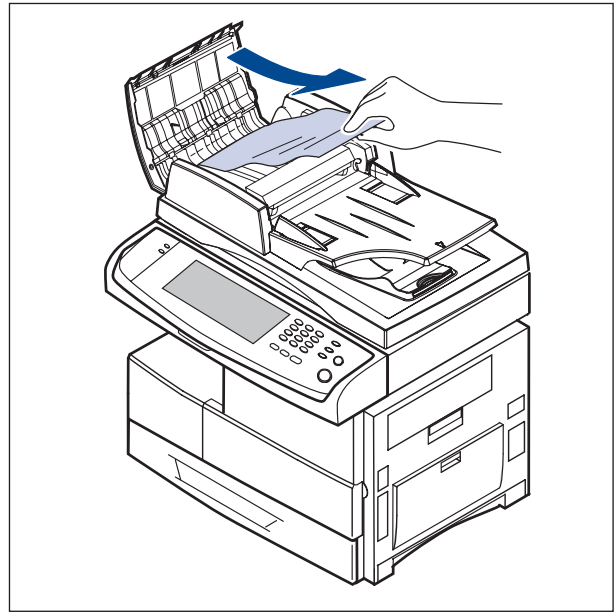
4.1.2.1 Clearing Document Jams

When an original jams while passing through the DADF, the warning message appears on the display screen.

1. Remove any remaining pages from the DADF.
2. Open the DADF cover.



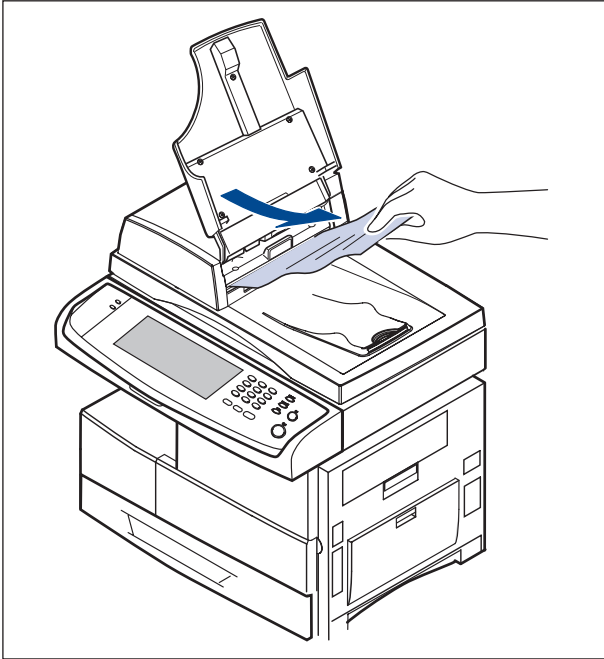
3. Gently remove the jammed paper from the DADF..



4. Close the DADF cover. Then reload the pages you removed, if any, in the DADF.

Misfeed of exiting paper

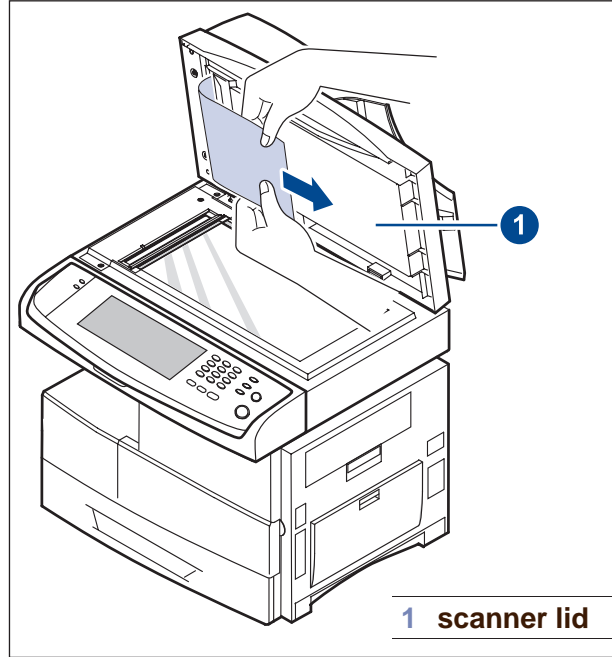
1. Remove the remaining documents from the DADF.
2. Open the document input tray upwards and pull the document gently out of the DADF.



3. Close the document input tray. Then place the documents back in the DADF.

Roller misfeed

1. Open the scanner lid.
2. Grasp the misfed paper, and remove the paper from the feed area by carefully pulling it to the right using both hands.



1 scanner lid

3. Close the scanner lid. Then load the removed pages back into the DADF.

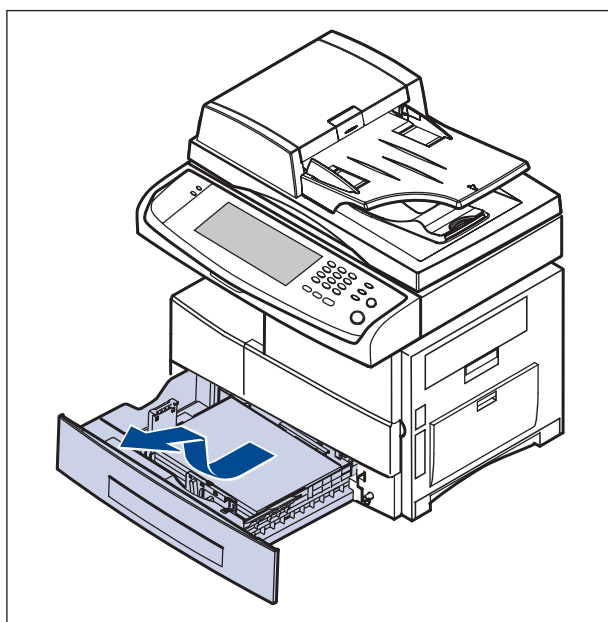
4.1.2.2 Clearing paper jams

When a paper jam occurs, the warning message appears on the display screen. Refer to the table below to locate and clear the paper jam.

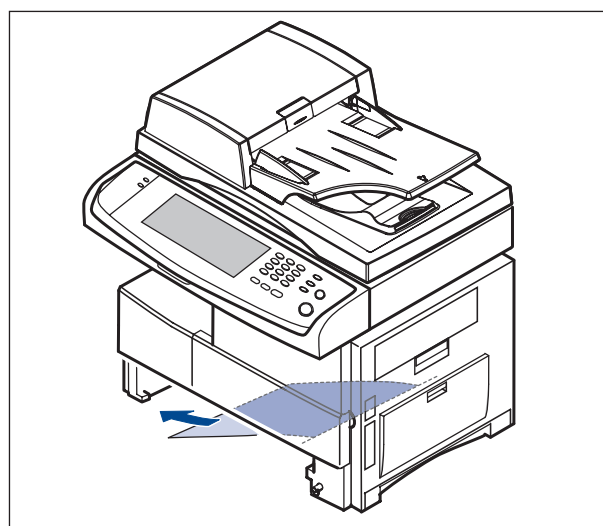
Message	Location of jam
Feed Jam at Tray 1, Feed Jam at Tray 2, Feed Jam at Tray 3, Feed Jam at Tray 4, Feed Jam at MP Tray	In the paper feed area (tray 1, optional tray, or multi-purpose tray)
Check Tray 2 Feed Area, Check Tray 3 Feed Area, Check Tray 4 Feed Area	In the paper feed area (optional tray)
Jam at Fuser	In the fuser area or around the toner cartridge
Registration Jam	In the paper exit area
Duplex Jam 0, Duplex Jam 1, Duplex Jam 2	In the duplex unit
Finisher Jam 0	In the stacker unit
Finisher Jam 1, Finisher Duplex Jam	In the stacker unit
Finisher Jam 2	In the stacker unit

In the tray 1

1. Pull out the paper tray to open. After you pull it out completely, lift the front part of the tray up slightly to release the tray from the machine.



2. Remove the jammed paper by gently pulling it straight out.

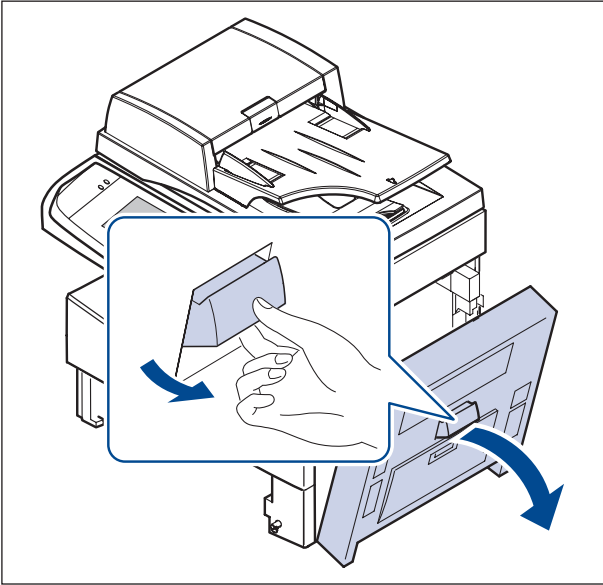


Once you remove the jammed paper here, open the side cover and then close it to clear the error message on the display.

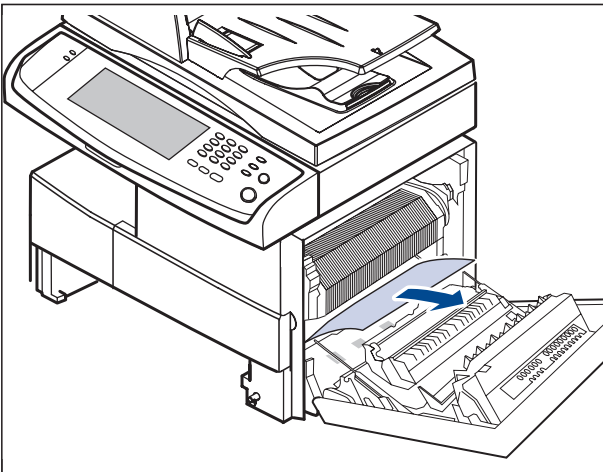
If there is any resistance, and the paper does not move immediately when you pull, stop pulling.

Then:

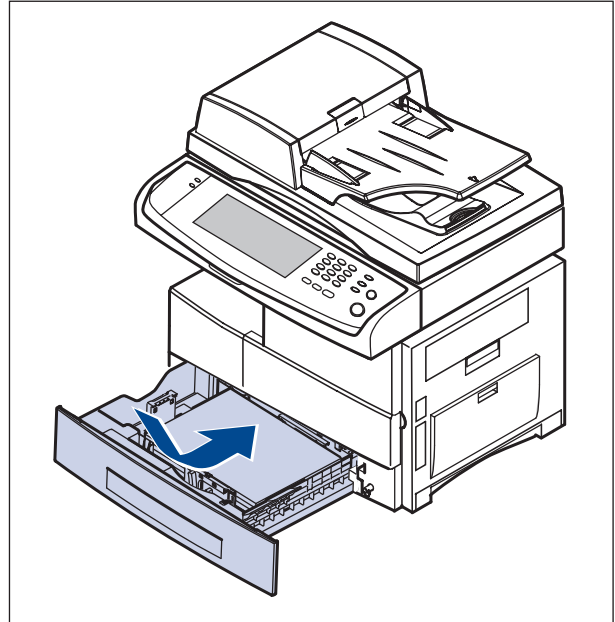
3. Open the side cover.



4. Carefully remove the misfed paper in the direction shown.

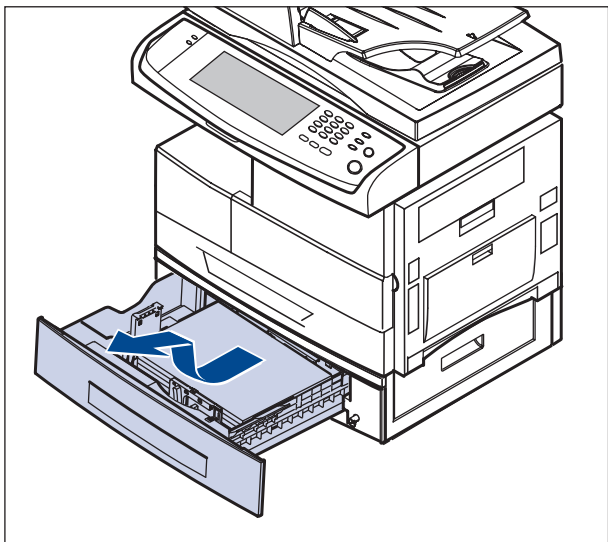


5. Close the side cover and insert the paper tray. Lower the rear part of the Tray to align the rear edge with the corresponding slot of the machine, then insert it completely.



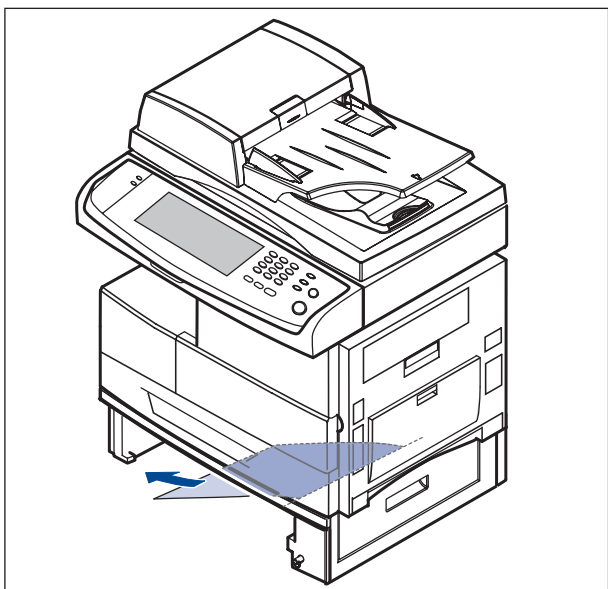
In the optional tray

1. Pull out the optional tray 2.
2. Lift the front part of the tray slightly up to release the tray from the machine.



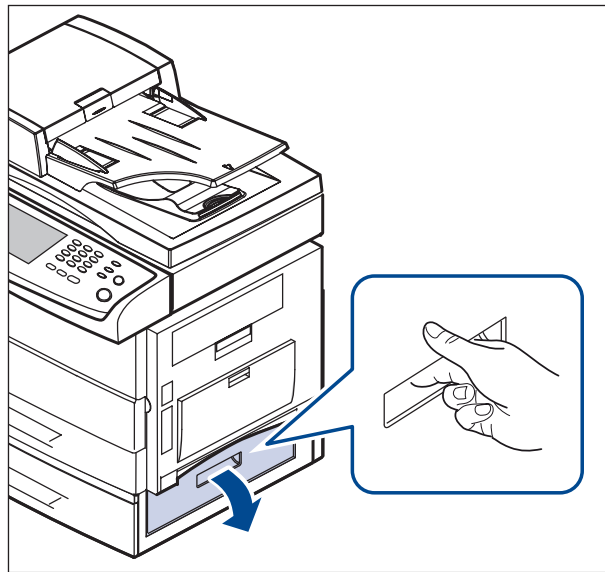
If the paper does not move when you pull, or if you do not see the paper in this area, stop and go to step 3.

3. Remove the paper in the direction shown. To avoid tearing the paper, pull it out gently and slowly.

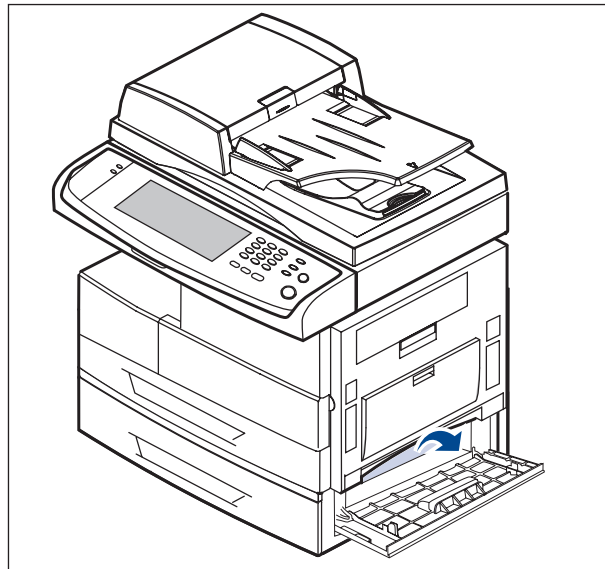


If you cannot find the jammed paper, or if there is any resistance when removing the paper, stop pulling and continue on step 5.

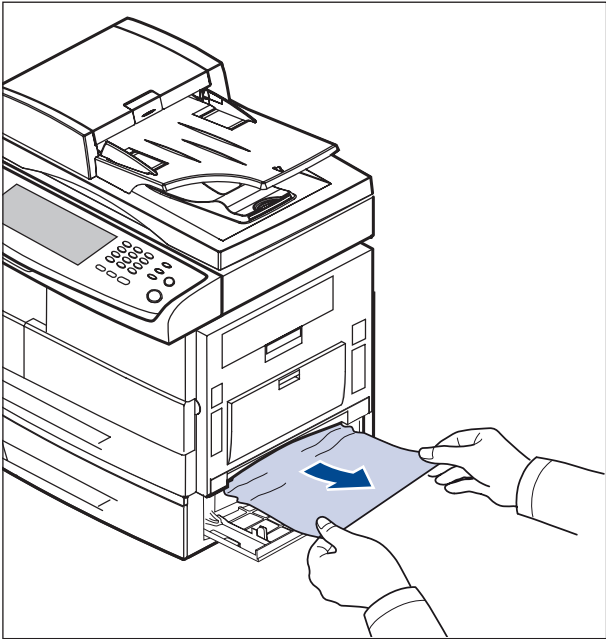
4. Open the outer cover in tray 2.



5. Open the inner cover of tray 2.

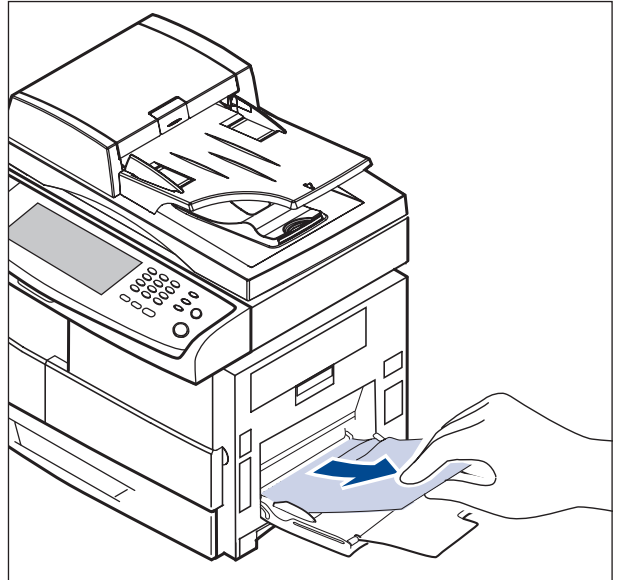


6. Pull the jammed paper out in the direction shown. To avoid tearing the paper, pull it out gently and slowly.

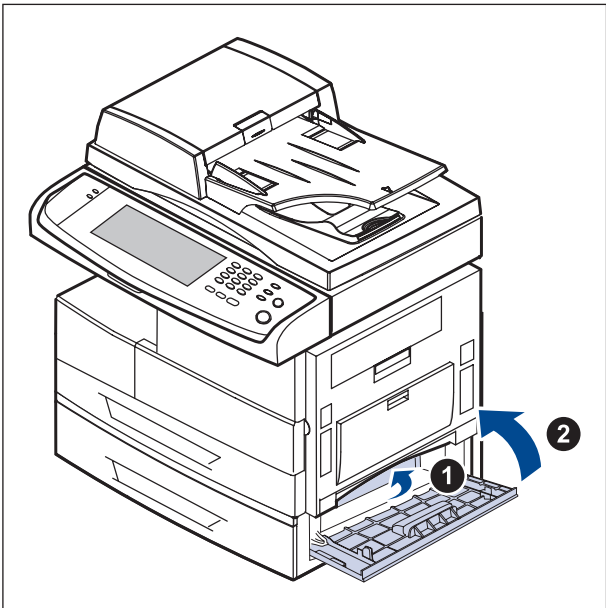


In the multi-purpose tray

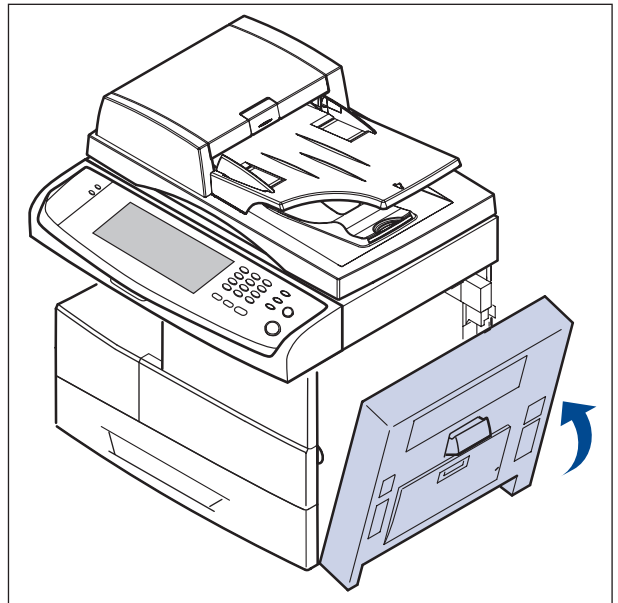
1. If the paper is not feeding properly, pull the paper out of the machine.



7. Close the two covers.

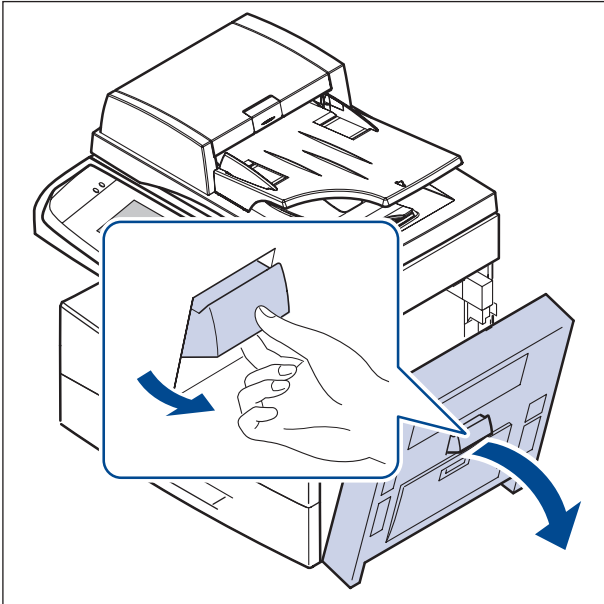


2. Open and close the side cover. Printing automatically resumes.

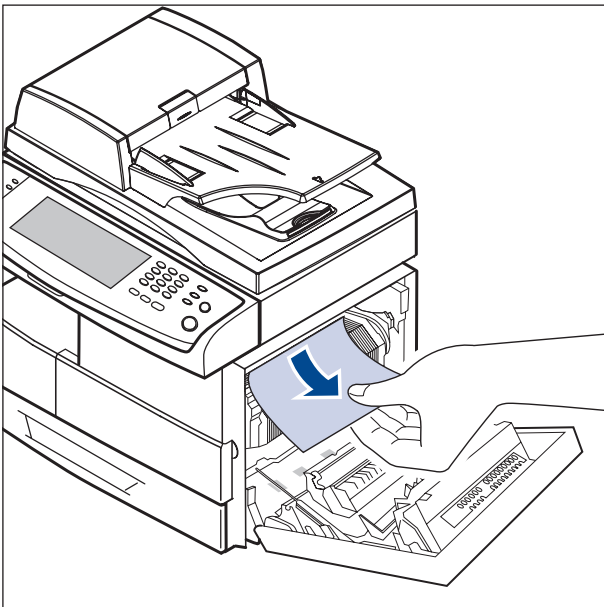


In the fuser area or around the toner cartridge

1. Open the side cover.



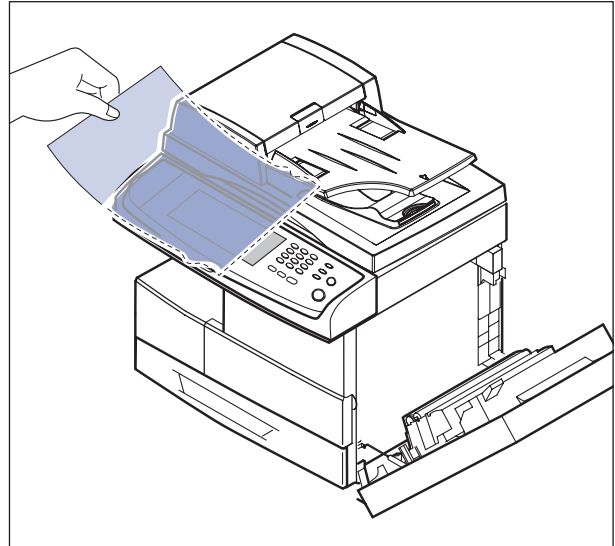
2. Remove the jammed paper, in the direction shown.



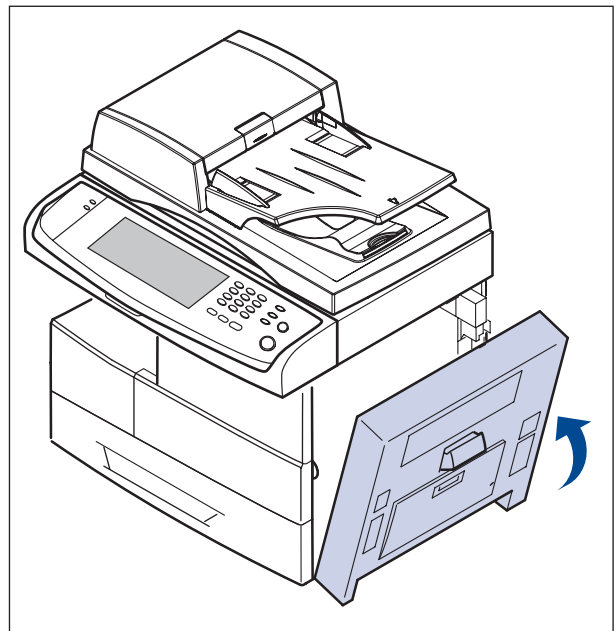
3. Close the side cover.

In the paper exit area

1. Open the side cover.
2. Gently pull the paper out through the exit area.



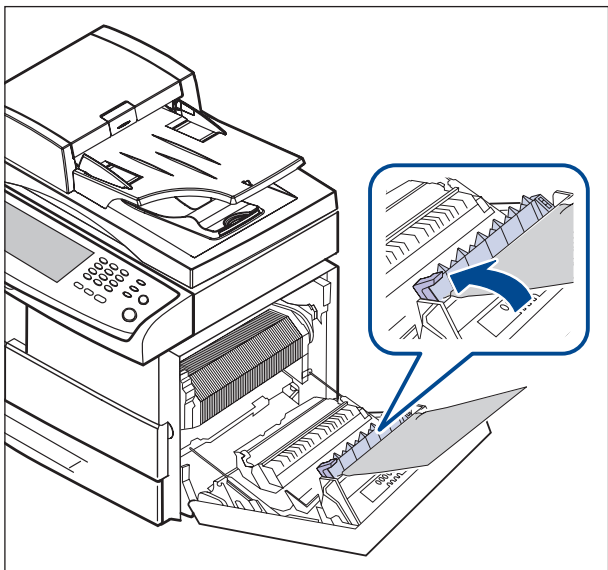
3. Close the side cover. Printing automatically resumes.



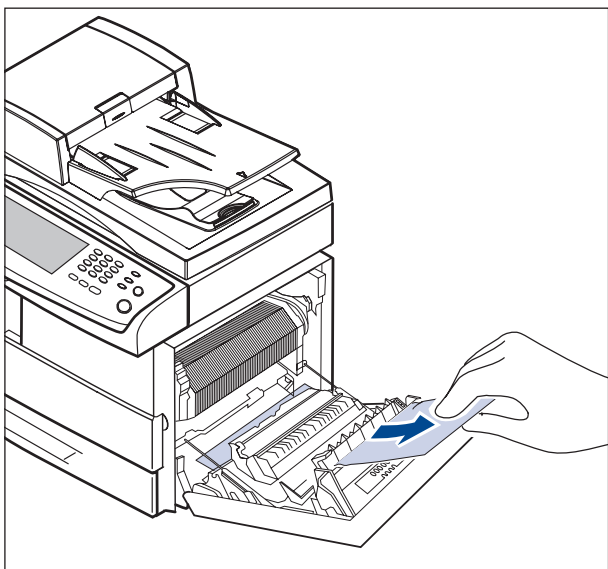
In the duplex unit area

If the duplex unit is not inserted correctly, paper jam may occur. Make sure that the duplex unit is inserted correctly.

1. Open the side cover.
2. Release the guide to pull the jammed paper easily.



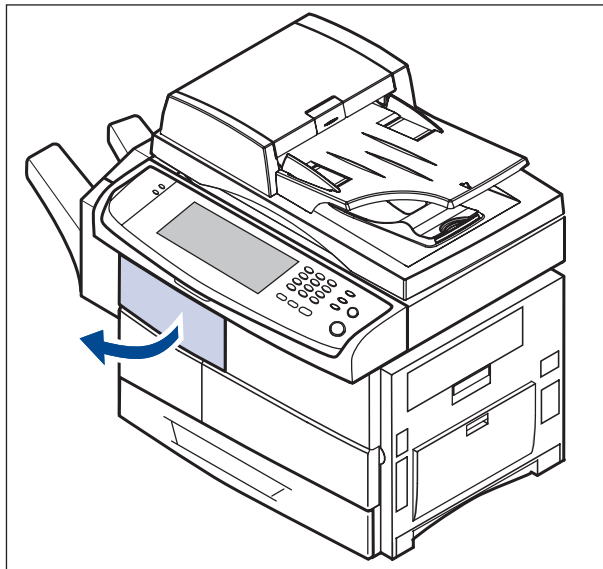
3. Remove the jammed paper.



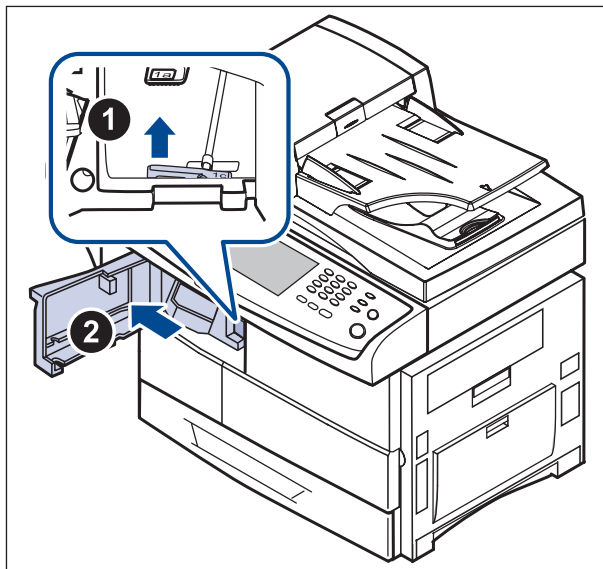
4. Close the side cover.

In the stacker (finisher) Finisher Jam 0

1. Open the stacker front cover.



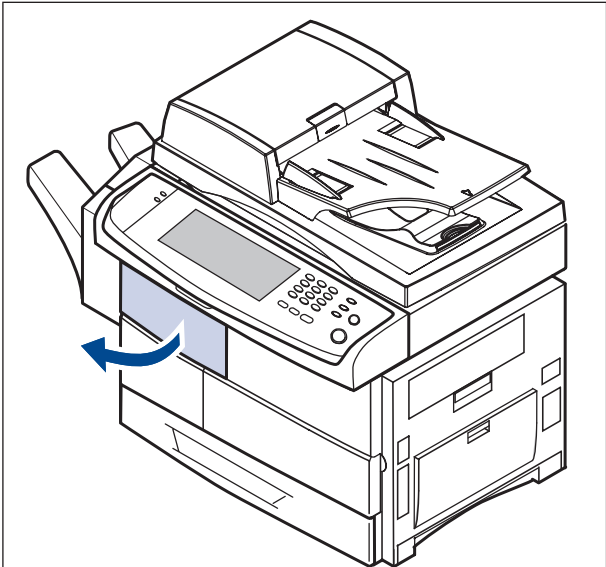
2. Pull out the stacker lifting the stacker lever 1c up.



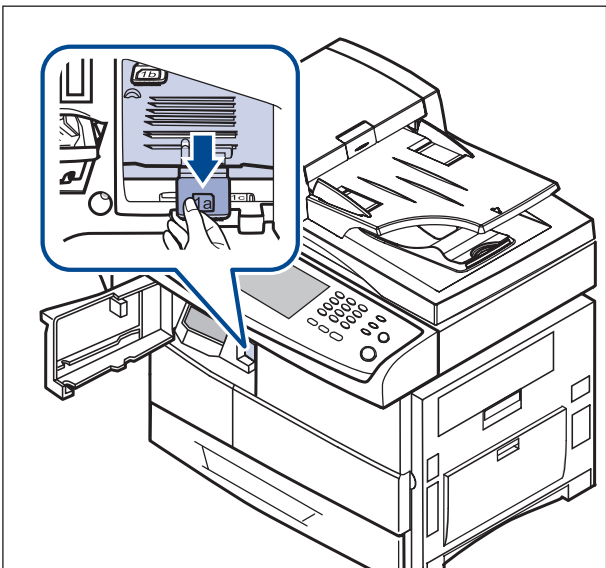
3. Remove the jammed paper.
4. Slide in the stacker until you hear the sound 'click'.
5. Close the stacker front cover.

Finisher Jam 1, Finisher Duplex Jam

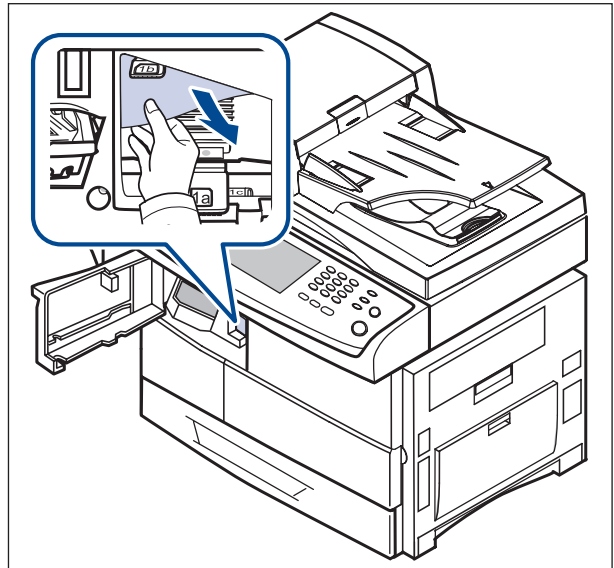
1. Open the stacker front cover.



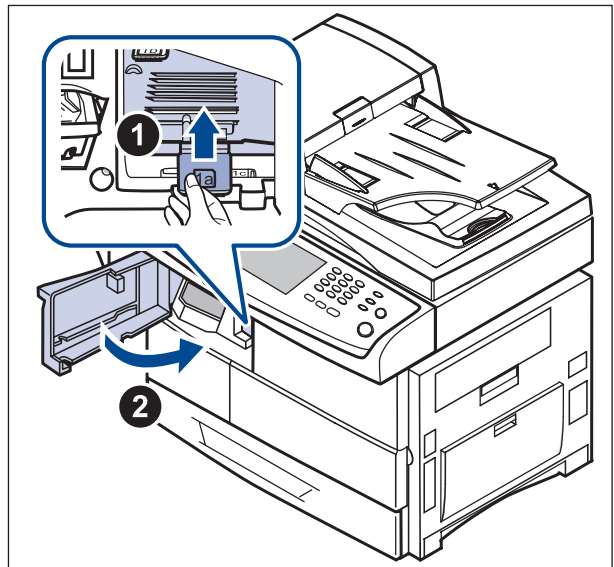
2. Pull the stacker lever 1a down. If necessary, pull the stacker lever 1b down as well.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

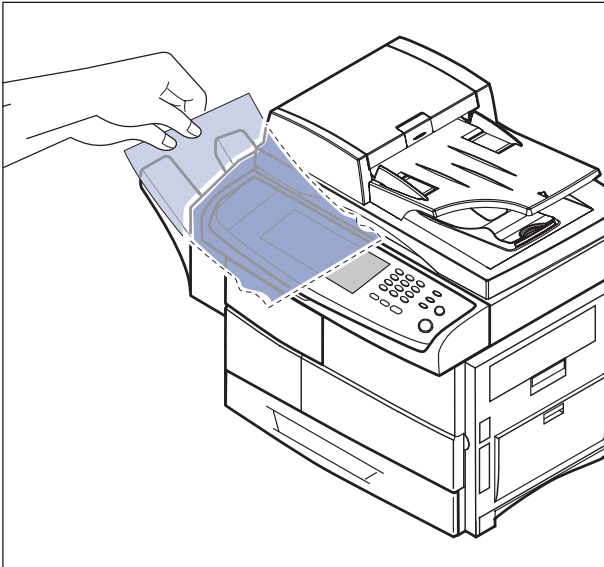


4. Pull up on the stacker lever and then close the stacker front cover.



Finisher Jam 2

1. Gently pull the paper out through the exit area.



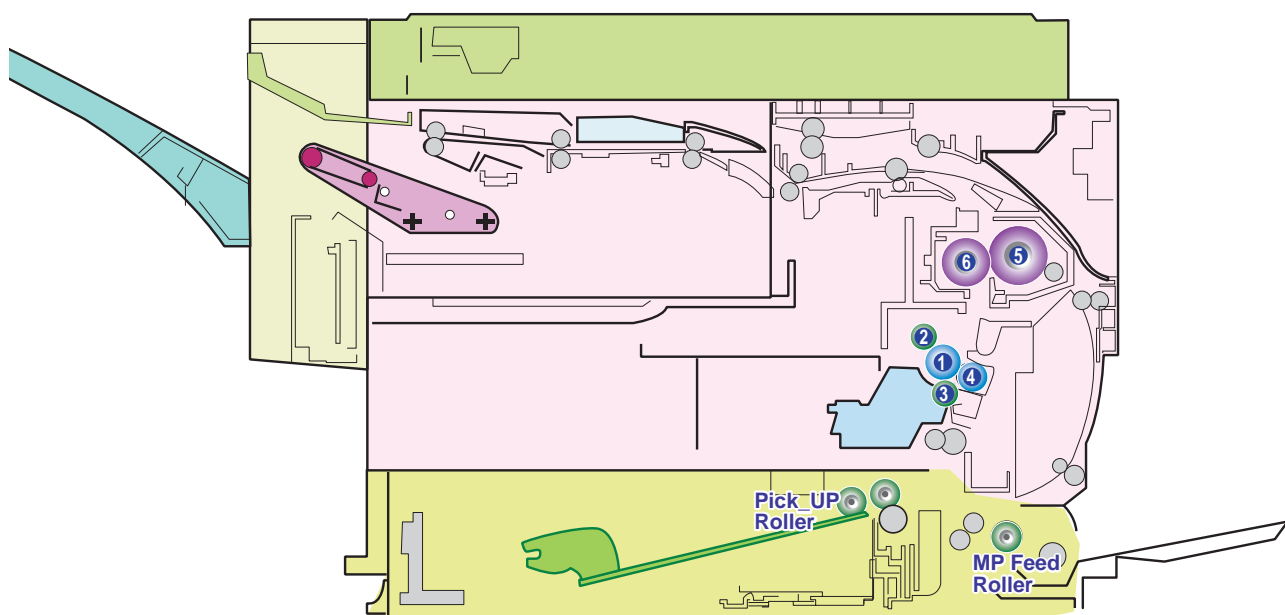
TIPS FOR AVOIDING PAPER JAMS

By selecting the correct media types, most paper jams can be avoided.

- Ensure that the adjustable guides are positioned correctly.
- Do not overload the tray. Ensure that the paper level is below the paper capacity mark on the inside of the tray.
- Do not remove paper from the tray while your machine is printing.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading.
- Do not use creased, damp, or highly curled paper.
- Do not mix paper types in a tray.
- Use only recommended print media.
- Ensure that the recommended side of the print media is facing down in the tray, or facing down in the multi-purpose tray.
- If paper jams occur frequently when you print on A5/B5-sized paper:
Load the paper into the tray with the long edge facing the front of the tray. If load the paper this way, printing both sides of the paper (Duplex) is not supported.
- Cleaning the Pickup roller, Forward roller, Retard roller with soft cloth

4.1.3 Abnormal Image Printing and Defective Roller

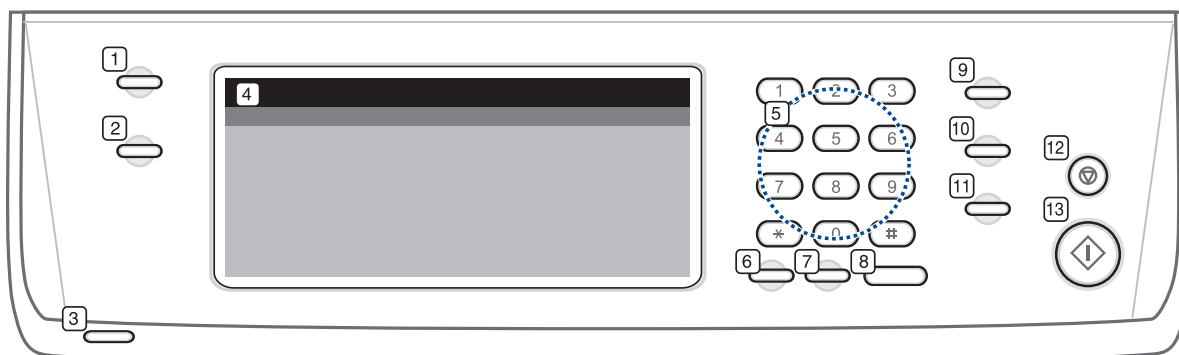
If a mark or other printing defect occurs at regular intervals down the page it may be caused by a damaged or contaminated roller. Measure the repetition interval and refer to the table below to identify the roller concerned.



- ① OPC Drum
- ③ Developing Roller
- ⑤ Heat Roller
- ② Charge Roller
- ④ Transfer Roller
- ⑥ Pressure Roller

No	Roller	Abnormal image period	Kind of abnormal image
1	OPC Drum	94.30mm	White spot, Block spot
2	Charge Roller	43.96mm	Black spot
3	Develop Roller	39.25mm	Horizontal density band
4	Transfer Roller	57.14mm	Black side contamination/transfer fault
5	Heat Roller	125.6mm	Black spot and fuser ghost
6	Pressure Roller	157mm	Black side contamination

4.1.4 Control Panel Overview



1	Machine Setup	Leads you to the machine setup and advanced settings.
2	Job Status	Shows the jobs currently running, queued jobs or completed jobs.
3	Status	Shows the status of your machine.
4	Display screen	Displays the current machine status and prompts during an operation. You can set menus easily using the touch screen.
5	number keypad	Dials fax number, and enters the number value for document copies or other options.
6	Clear	Deletes characters in the edit area.
7	Redial/Pause	In standby mode, redials the last number, or in edit mode, inserts a pause into a fax number.
8	On Hook Dial	Engages the telephone line.
9	Power Saver	Sends the machine into the power saver mode.
10	Interrupt	Stops a job in process to do an urgent copy job.
11	Clear All	Reverts the current settings to the default values.
12	Stop	Stops an operation at any time. The pop up window appears on the screen showing the current job that the user can stop or resume.
13	Start	Starts a job.

■ Status LED

The Status LED on the control panel shows the status of your machine. See the table below to know your machine's status.



ED or LED button	LED status		Description
Status (LED)	Off		Power Off
	Green On		Ready
	Green Blink		. Copy Mode : Copy job is in progress . Fax Mode : Fax job (RX, TX) is in progress . Scan / Email : Scan or Email job is in progress . Printing: - Slow Blinking : Data processing - Fast Blinking : Engine is printing
	Red On		Errors that need user's intervention such as paper jam, toner empty, tray empty, cover open
	Red Blink		Recoverable errors that user's intervention is not needed to recover happens such as paper mismatching. The machine is in the warning status such as end of consumables.
Power Saver (LED button)	Blue Off		The machine is not in power saver mode
	Blue On		The machine is in power saver mode
Interrupt (LED button)	Blue Off		The machine is not in interrupt printing mode
	Blue On		Then machine is in interrupt printing mode

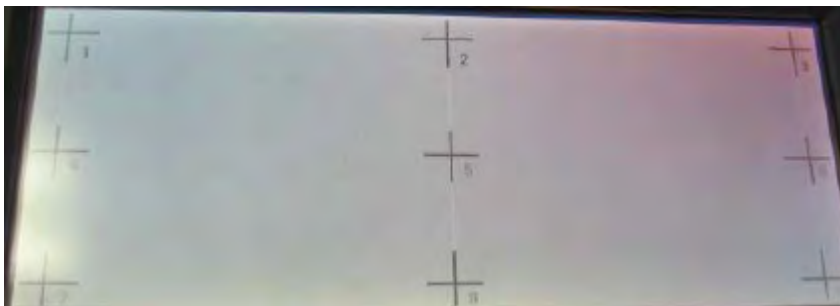
■ Touch Screen Error(Calibrating the Touch Screen)

● Symptom

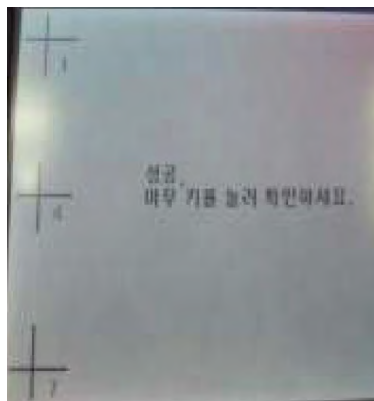
1. Touch is not input.
2. Touch point is not correct.

● Troubleshooting method

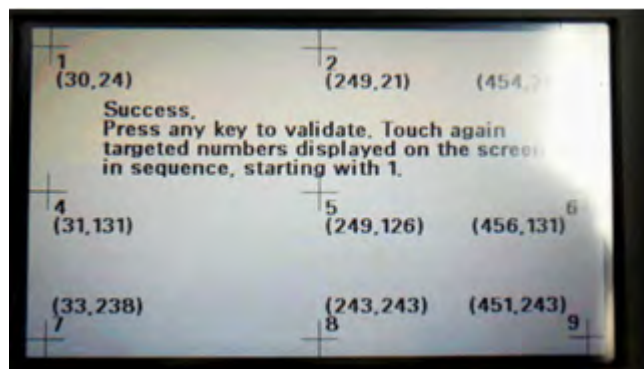
1. Turn the power off, then turn it on while pushing “0” of panel.



2. If the image above is seen, touch the number 1~9 in ascending order.



3. After checking the message above, push any button on LCD.
4. Touch the number 1~9 once again.



5. After checking the message above, reboot, then completion.

4.1.5 Menu overview

4.1.5.1 Menu Map

■ Main screen

Copy	Fax	Scan
Basic tab Original Size Reduce/Enlarge Duplex Output Original Type Darkness Paper Supply Advanced tab ID Copy N-Up Poster Copy Clone Copy Book Copy Booklet Covers Transparencies Image tab Erase Edge Erase Background Margin Shift	Basic tab Address Duplex Resolution Advanced tab Original Size Delay Send Priority Send Polling Mailbox Image tab Original Type Darkness Erase Background Color Mode	Scan to Email Basic tab Advanced tab Image tab Output tab NetScan Scan to Server Basic tab Advanced tab Image tab Output tab
Stored Documents	USB	
Public tab Detail Edit Delete Delete All Print Secured tab Detail Edit Delete Delete All Print	USB Format USB Print Scan to USB Basic tab Advanced tab Image tab Output tab	

■ Machine Setup button-Machine Status

<p>Supplies Life tab</p> <p>Toner Cartridge Imaging Unit Fuser Kit Feed Roller Kit Feed Roller Kit - Bypass Tray Document Feeder Roller BTR Kit DADF Friction Pad Kit</p>	<p>Machine Info tab</p> <p>Machine Details Customer Support Machine Serial Number Hardware Options Configuration Software Versions</p> <p>Tray Status Tray Status Paper Size Paper Type</p> <p>Print/Report System Report Scan Report Fax Report</p>	<p>Machine Info tab (Continued)</p> <p>Usage Counters Total Impressions Black Impressions Black Copied Impressions Black Printed Impressions Copied Sheets Copied Sheets Black Copied Sheets Printed Sheets Black Printed Sheets 2 Sided Sheets Copied 2 Sided Sheets</p>
<p>Machine Info tab (Continued)</p> <p>Black Copied 2-Sided Sheets Printed 2 Sided Sheets Black Printed 2-Sided Sheets Analog Fax Sheets Analog Fax 2-Sided Sheets Fax Image Received Analog Fax Images Sent Analog Fax Images Received Images Sent Network Scanning Images Sent</p>	<p>Machine Info tab (Continued)</p> <p>Email Images Sent Maintenance Impressions Black Maintenance Impressions</p>	

■ Machine Setup button-Admin Setting

General tab	Setup tab	Print/Report tab
Device Info Date & Time Default Settings Measurement Timers Language Power Saver Tray Management Altitude Adjustment Output Option Contention Management Sound Supplies Management Machine Test On Demand Overwrite HDD Spooling Stored Job File Policy Country	Copy Setup Fax Setup Network Setup Authentication Optional Service	Print Accounting Reports Report

■ Job Status button

Current Job tab	Completed Job tab	Active Notice tab
Detail Delete Delete All	Detail	Detail

4.1.5.2 Understanding the Copy Screen

When you press Copy on the Main screen, the Copy screen appears which has several tabs and lots of copying options. All the options are grouped by features so that you can configure your selections easily. If the screen displays an other menu, press Home button to go to the Main screen. If you want to know more information for copy screen, please consult the user manual.



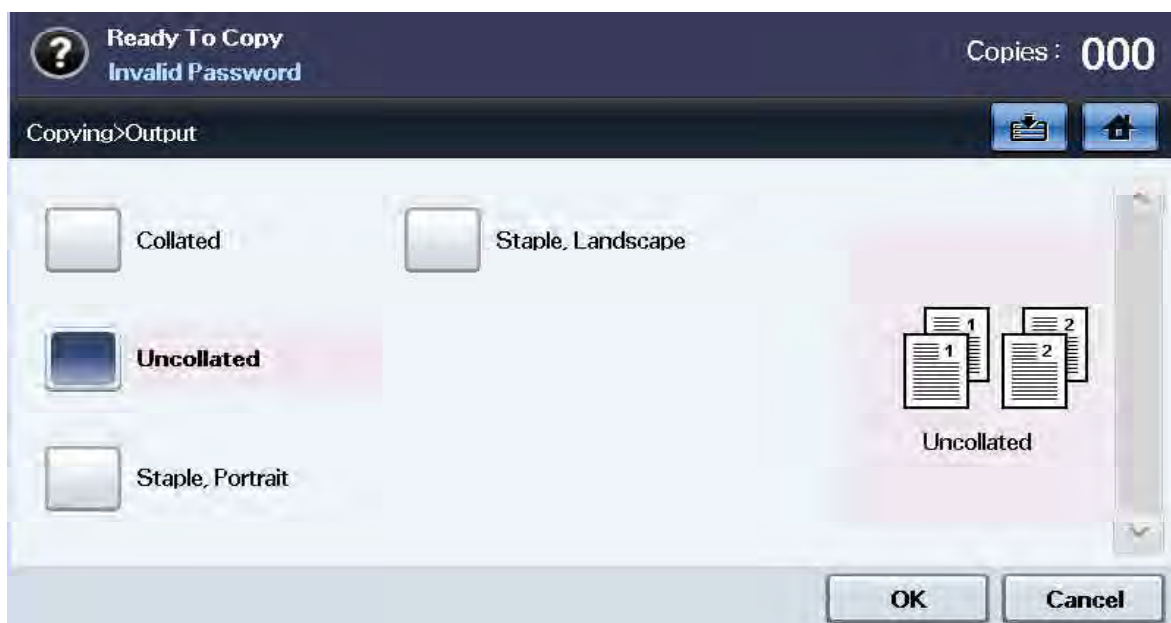
-Selects the size of the originals.

Copy > Basic Tab > Original Size > More



-Selects Collated or Uncollated copy options. If you install the optional stacker&stapler, then the staple related option appears.

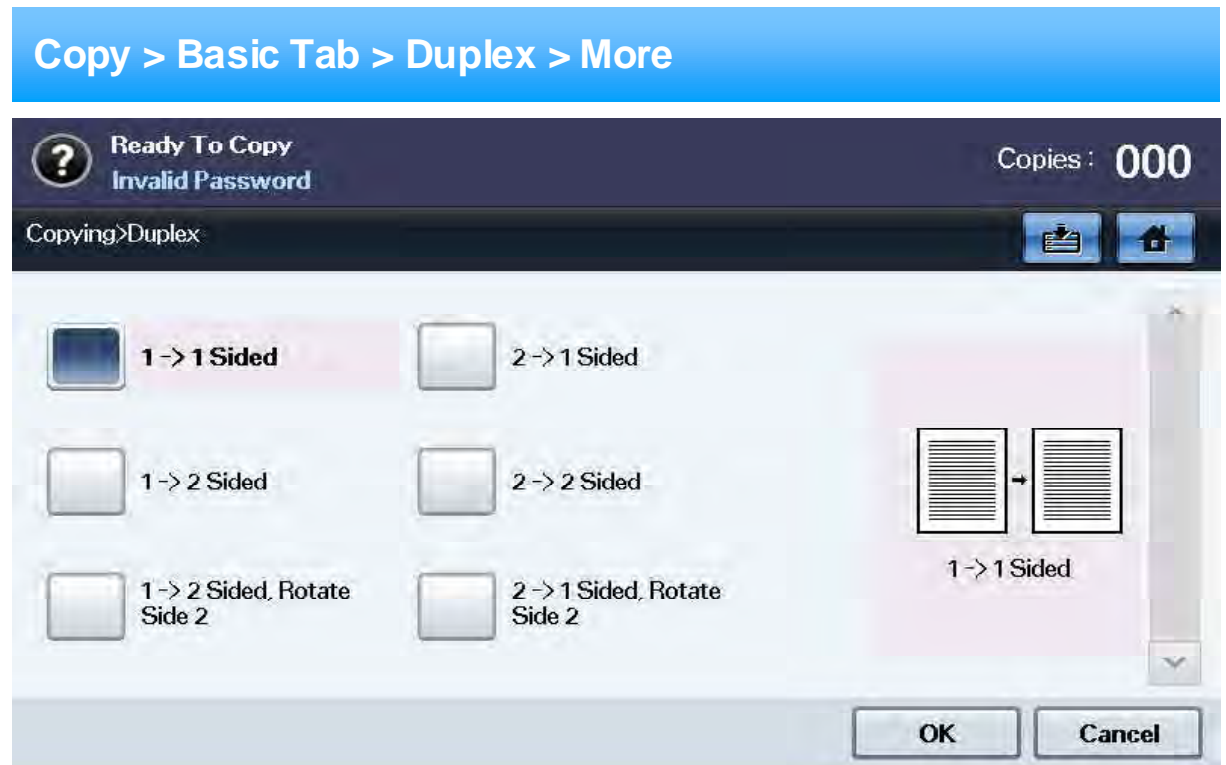
Copy > Basic Tab > Output > More



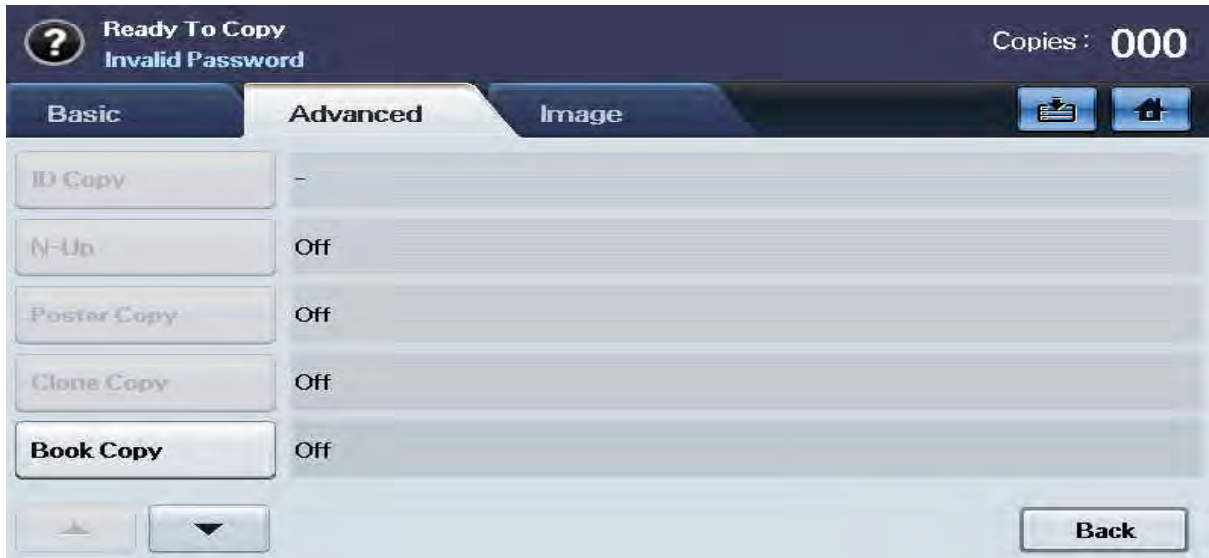
- Reduce/Enlarge: Reduces or enlarges the size of a copied image.



- Duplex: Sets the machine to print copies on both sides of the paper.



Copy > Advanced Tab >



- Book Copy: Allows you to copy an entire book.

Copy > Advanced Tab > Book Copy



- Transparencies: Adds a blank or printed divider between transparencies within a set.

Copy > Advanced Tab > Transparencies

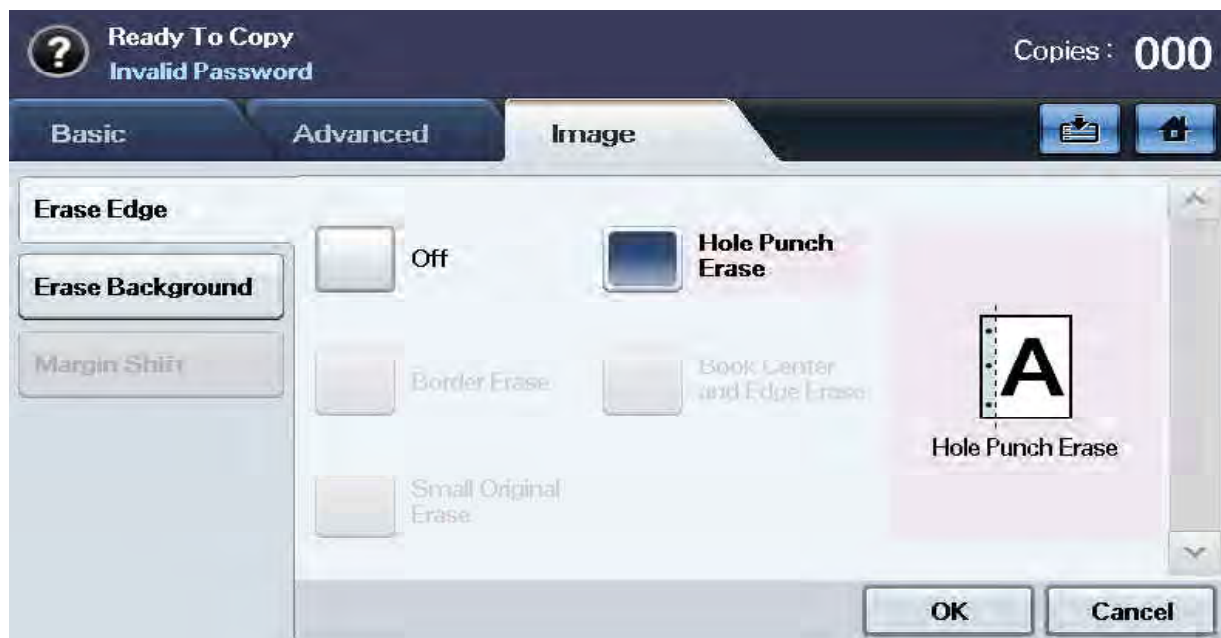


Copy > Advanced Tab > Transparencies > Blank Sheet



- Erase Edge: Allows you to erase punch holes, staple marks, and fold creases along any of the four documents edges.

Copy > Image Tab > Erase Edge> Hole Punch Erase



- Erase Background: Prints an image with no background.

Copy > Image Tab > Erase Background



4.1.5.3 Understanding the FAX Screen

To use the fax feature, press Fax on the Main screen. If the screen displays an other menu, press home button to go to the Main screen.

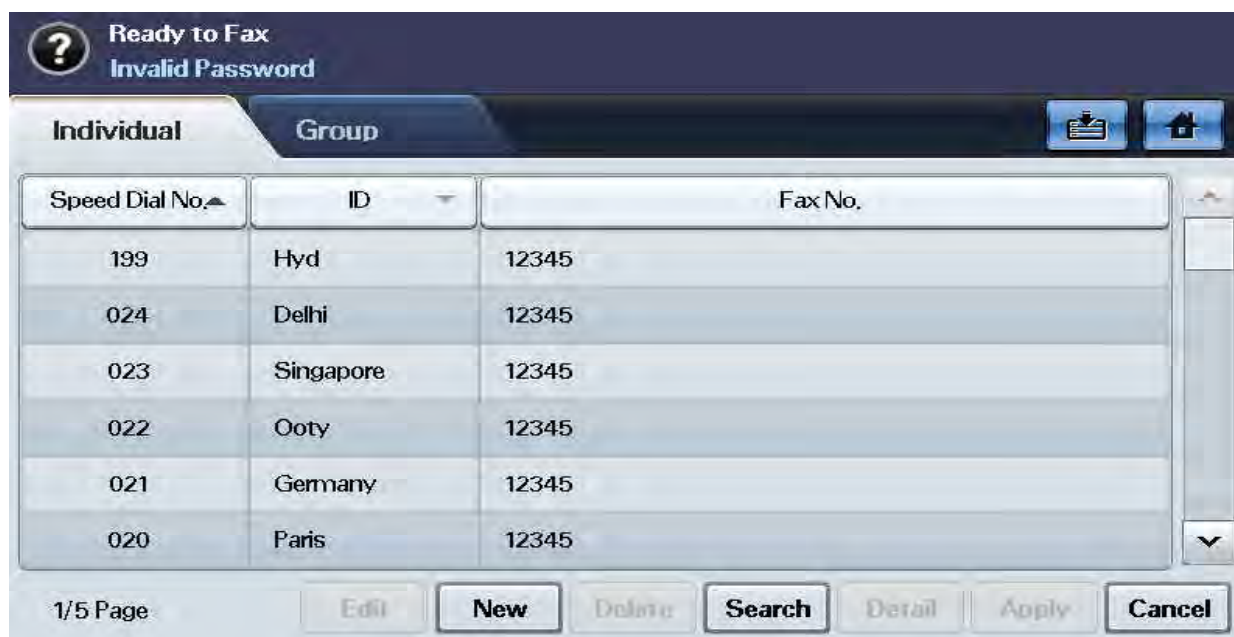
- You can add more destinations.

Fax > Basic Tab > Add No > Inputting digits



- Address: Picks up the frequently used fax numbers directly from your machine or from SyncThru Web Service.

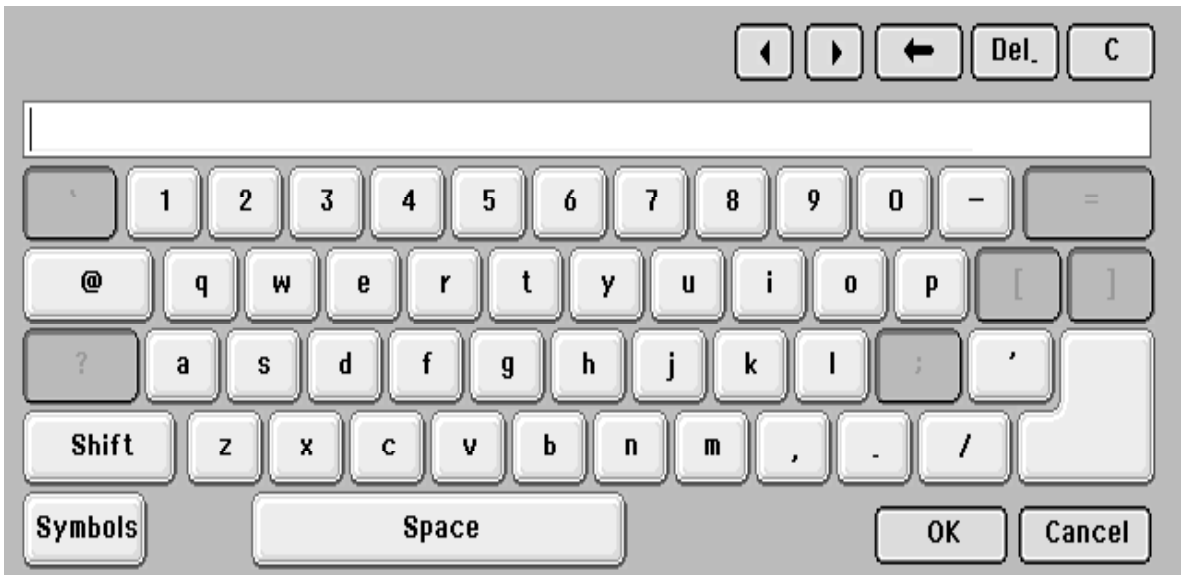
Fax > Basic Tab > Address Individual



Fax > Basic Tab > Address Individual > New



Fax > Basic Tab > Address Individual > Search



Fax > Basic Tab > Address Group>

Ready to Fax
Fax Number should have more than one digit

Individual **Group**

Group No.	Group ID	Total
G025	Grp25	199
G024	Grp24	12
G023	Grp23	12
G022	Grp22	5
G021	Grp21	12
G020	Grp20	2

1/5 Page Edit New Delete Search Detail Apply Cancel

Fax > Basic Tab > Address Group> New

Ready to Fax
Fax Number should have more than one digit

Individual **Group**

New

Group Dial ID :

Group Dial No :

OK Cancel

G020	Grp20	2
------	-------	---

1/5 Page Edit New Delete Search Detail Apply Cancel

Fax > Basic Tab > Address Group > New > Add



Fax > Advanced Tab >



- Delay Send: Sets the machine to send a fax at a later time without your intervention.

Fax > Advanced Tab > Delay Send > On



- Polling: Used when the receiver requests the document to be faxed remotely at sender's absence or vice versa. In order to use the polling function, the originals must be previously stored in the machine.

Fax > Advanced Tab > Polling > Delay Poll From Remote



- Original Type: Enhances the fax quality based on the type of the original document being scanned.
- Darkness: Adjusts the level of lightness or darkness of the fax.
- Erase Background: Reduces dark backgrounds or paper patterns as in newspaper originals.
- Color Mode: Selects whether the user sends the fax in mono or color.
- Back: Returns to the Basic tab.

※ Consult the user manual to get the more detail information.

Fax > Image Tab >



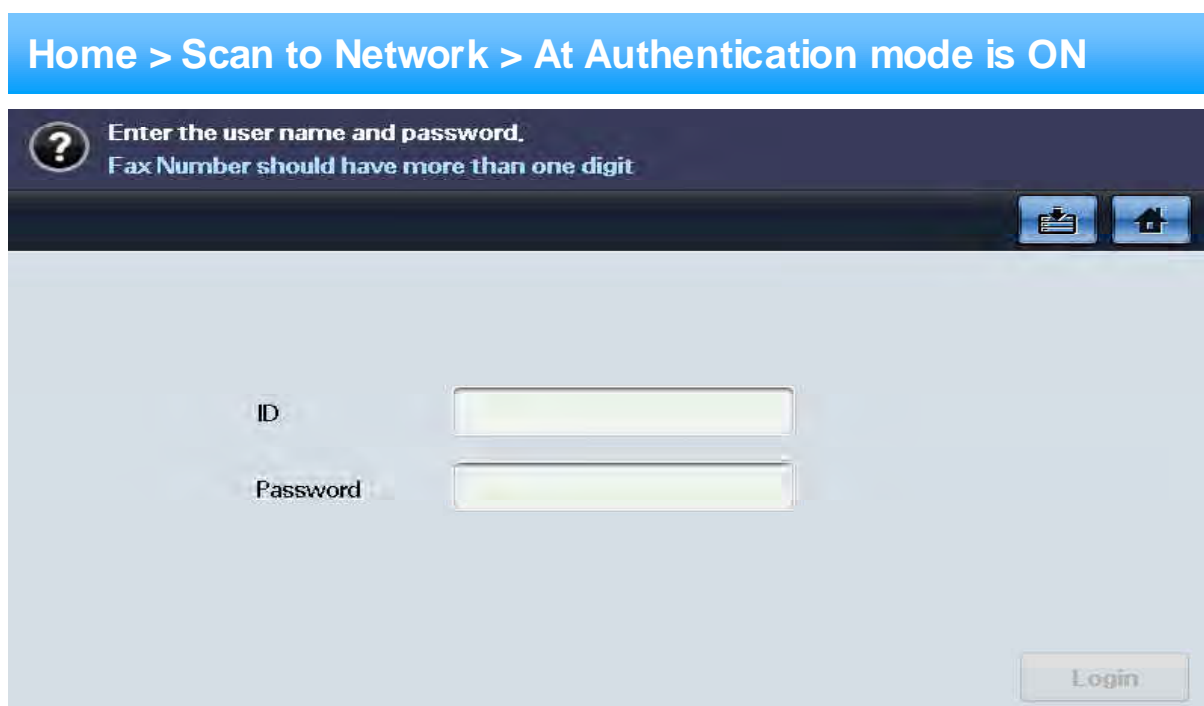
Fax > Image Tab > Darkness



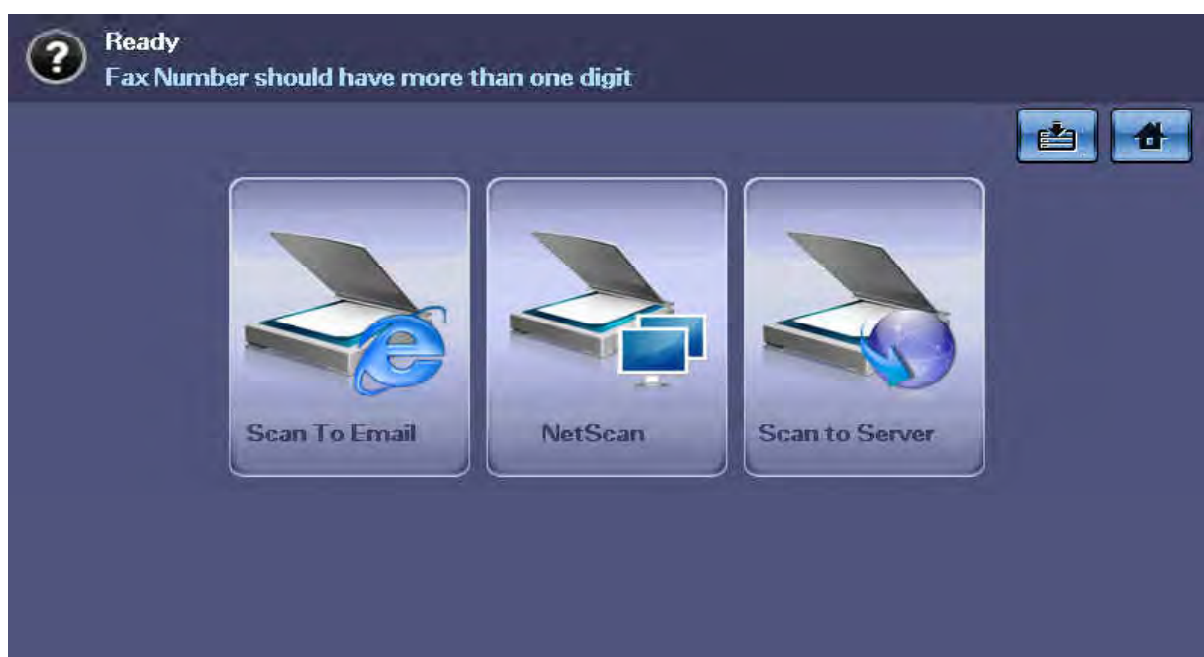
4.1.5.4 Understanding the SCAN Screen

To use the scanning feature, press Scan on the Main screen. If the screen displays an other menu, press home button to go to the Main screen.

If the message asking Auth. ID and Password, it means the network administrator has set the authentication in SyncThru Web Service.

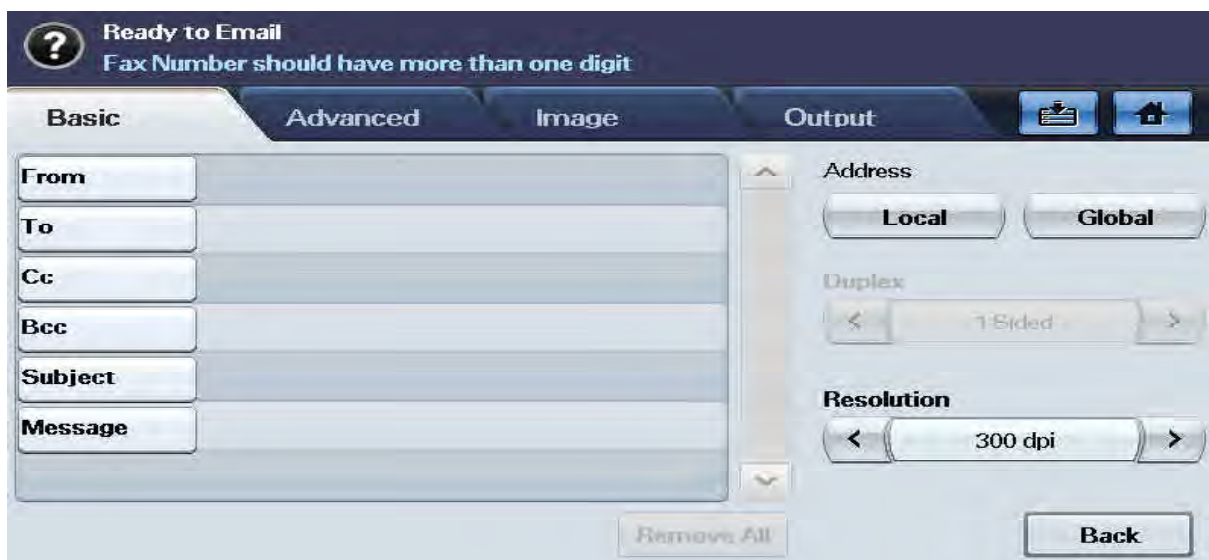


- Scan to Email: Scans and sends the scanned output to the destination by email.
- NetScan: Scans and sends the scanned output to the destination with the Network Scan program.
- Scan to Server: Scans and sends the scanned output to the destination with SMB and FTP.



- From: Sender's email address.
- To/Cc/Bcc: Recipients' addresses. Cc is for copies to an additional recipient and Bcc is for the same as Cc but without their name be displayed.
- Subject/Message: Subject and message of the email.
- Remove All: Erases everything in the input area.
- Address: Inputs the recipient's address just by pressing stored addresses.
- Back: Returns to the previous screen.

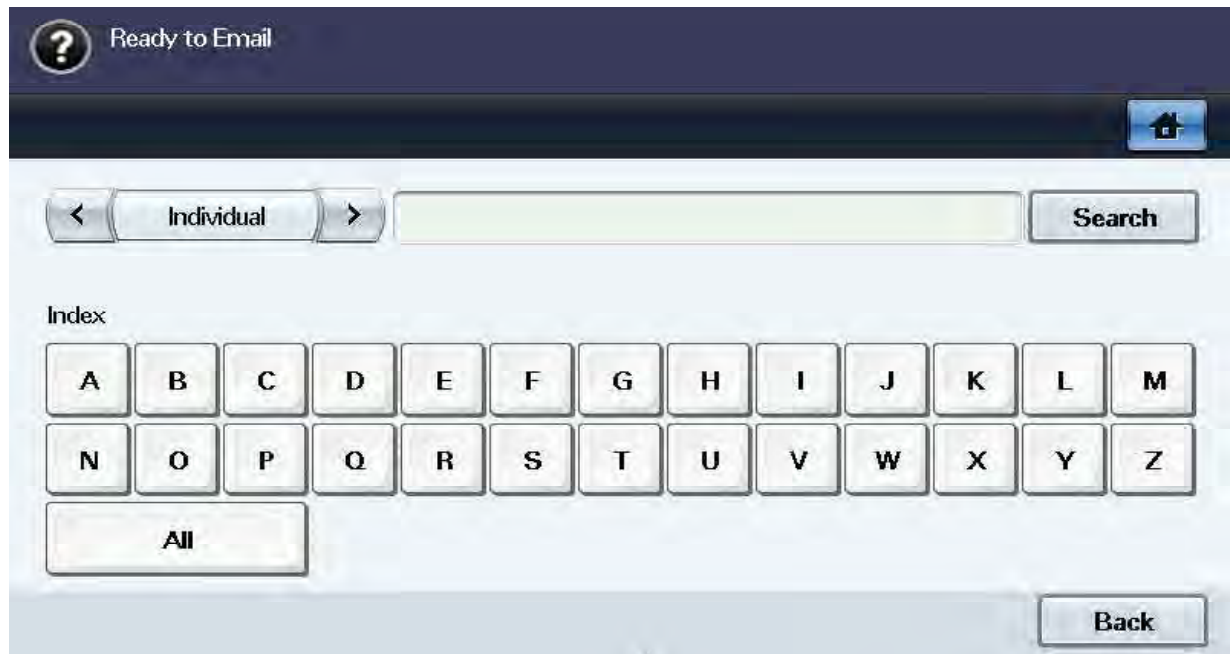
Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > Basic Tab



Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > E-mail Keyboard



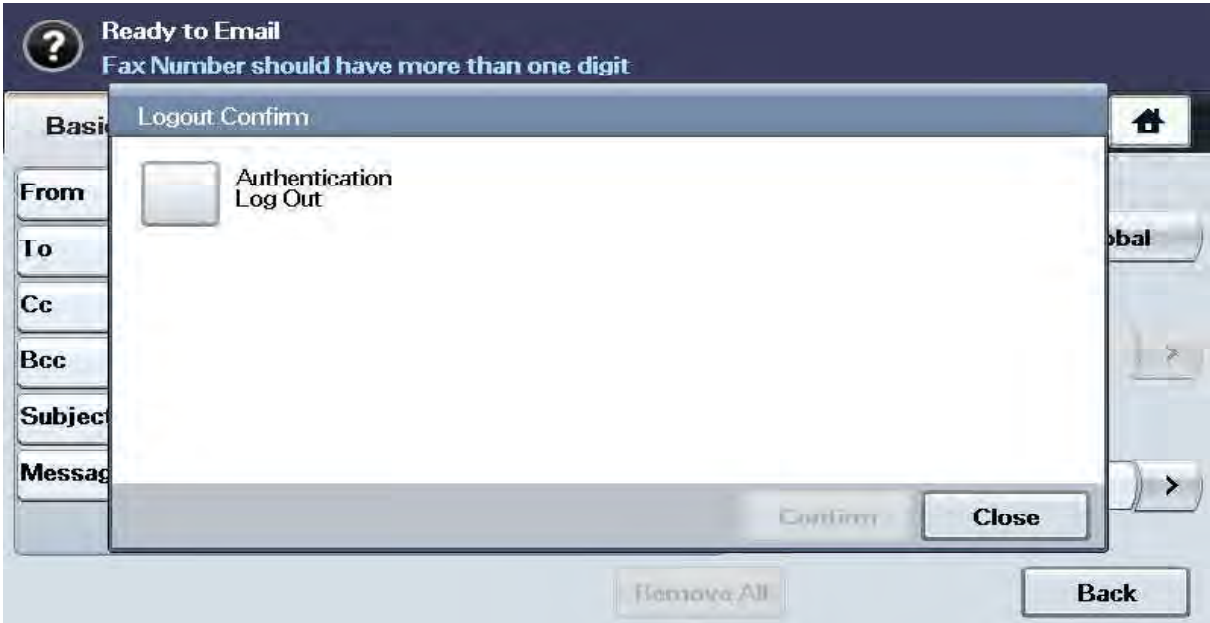
Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > Address Local



Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > Address Local > Search



Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > Log Out

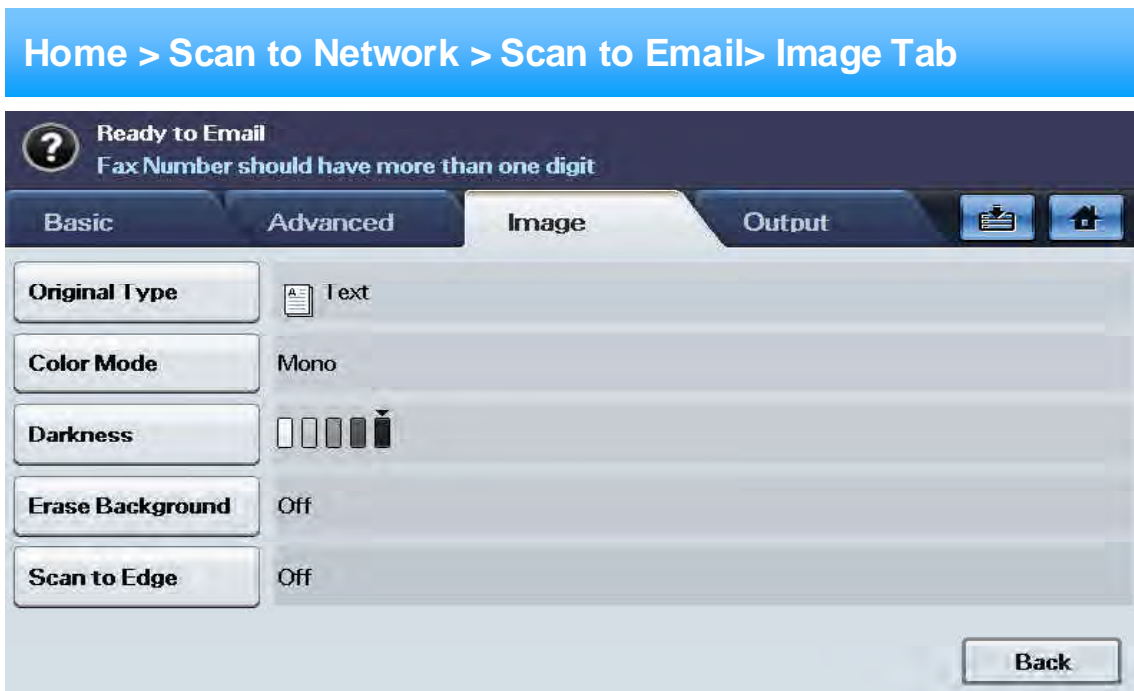


- Original Size: Sets the originals to a specific fixed size.

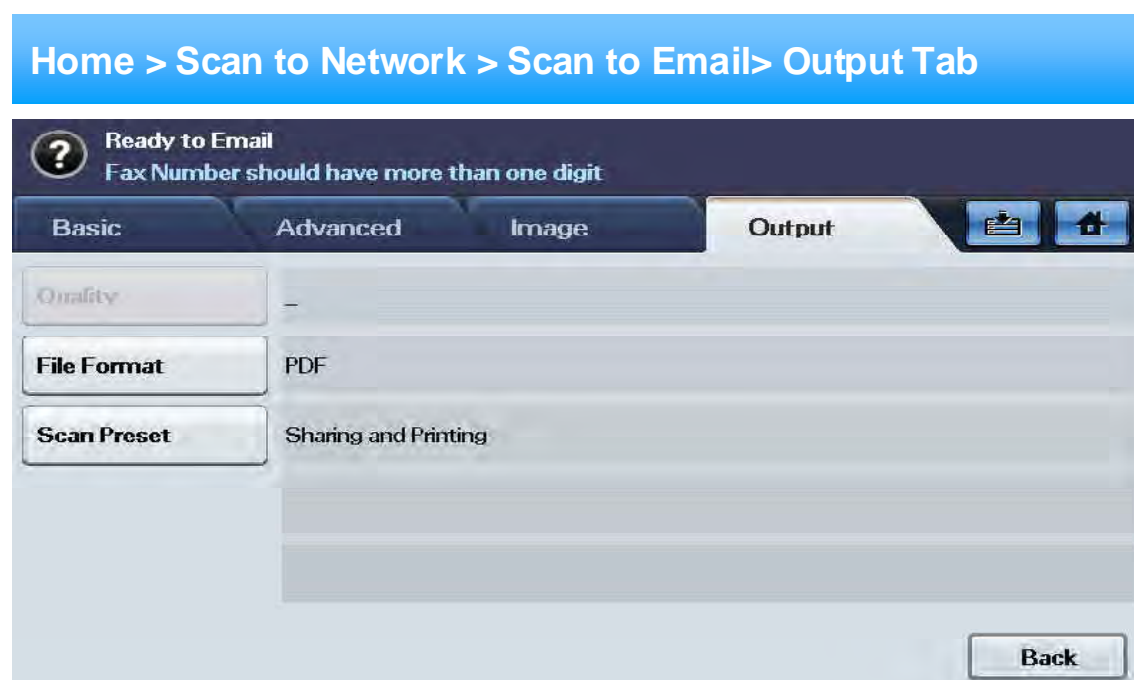
Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Email > Advanced Tab



- Original Type: Selects whether the original is text or photo.
- Color Mode: Adjusts the color options of the scan output. If the original is color and you want to scan in color, press Color Mode.
- Darkness: Adjusts the degree of darkness of the scan output.
- Erase Background: Erases backgrounds like paper patterns.
- Scan to Edge: Scans originals from edge-to-edge.



- Quality: Adjusts the display quality of the scan output.
- File Format: Selects the file format of the scan output.
- Scan Preset: Automatically changes some scan options such as file format, resolution, and more. You can adjust options to fit each specific purpose.



Home > Scan to Network > NetScan>

? Enter the user name and password.
Fax Number should have more than one digit

ID

Password

Login

Home > Scan to Network > NetScan > After Login

? NetScan
Fax Number should have more than one digit

NetScan Server Address:

No.	Application
1	Application
2	Application
3	Application
4	Application
5	Application
6	Application

Select Logout

Home > Scan to Network > Scan to Server > Basic Tab > Select Servers



4.1.5.5 Understanding the Stored Documents screen

Job List – Public, Secured

Job Action – Detail, Edit, Delete, Delete All and Print



- Public tab: Shows the job list of delay print and store print job.
- Secured tab: Shows the job list of secure print, secure receive, and secure store print job.
- User Name: Shows the user name who registered the job.
- File Name: Shows the job name which is registered as the job information. For the computer printing, the file name shows.
- Date: Shows the date of the job registered.
- Page: Shows the total page number of the job.
- Detail: Pops the separate message showing the basic job information with the file size, the paper size and the paper type, as well.
- Edit: Lets you to modify the file name.
- Delete: Deletes the selected list.
- Delete All: Deletes all the list.
- Print: Prints the selected list.

4.1.5.6 Understanding the USB screen

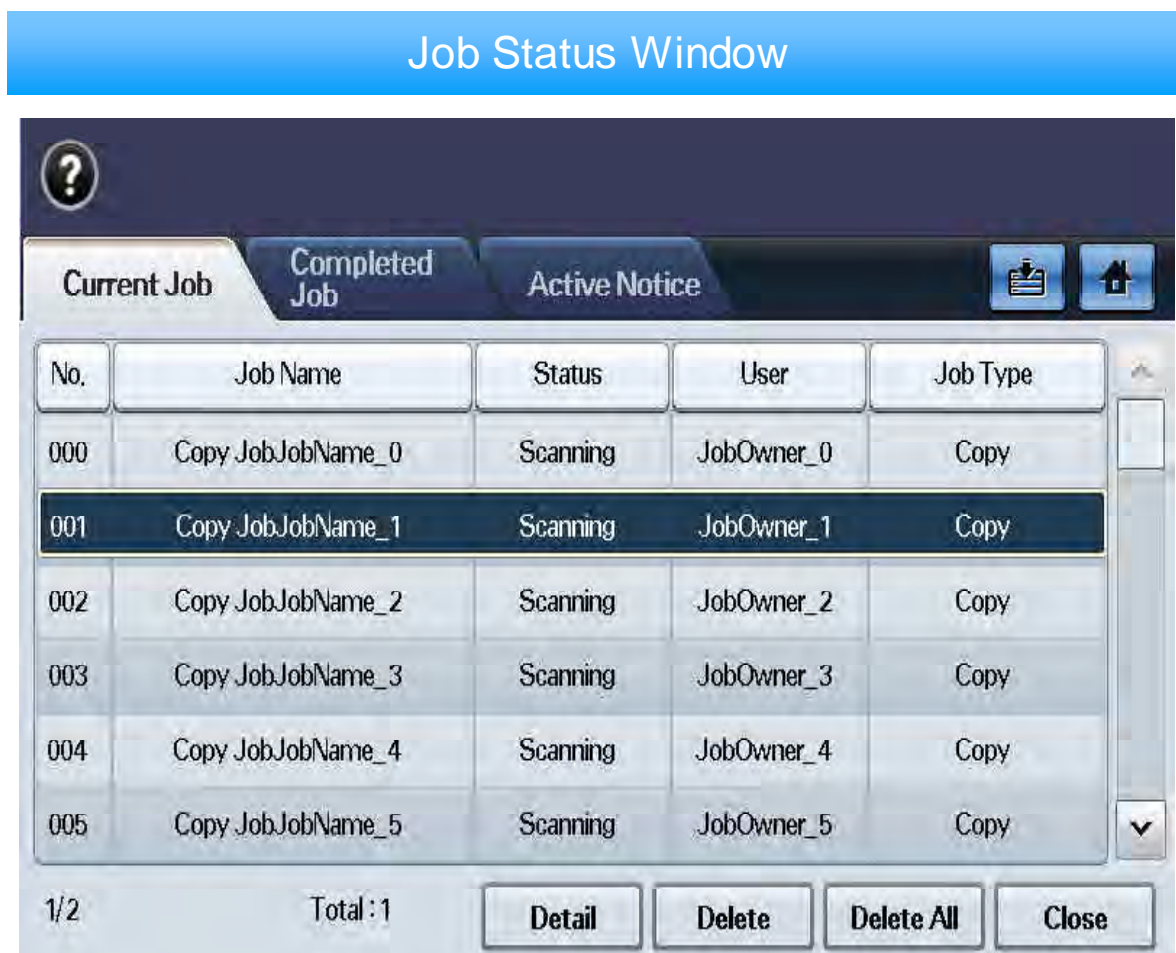
When USB memory is inserted into the USB memory port on your machine, USB icon shows on the display screen.



- USB Format: You can delete image files stored on an USB memory device one by one or all at once by reformatting the device.
- USB Print: You can directly print files stored on an USB memory device. You can print TIFF, BMP, JPEG, PDF, and PRN files.
- Scan to USB: You can specify image size, file format, or color mode for each scanning to USB job.

4.1.5.7 Understanding the Job status screen

Job List – Current Job, Completed Job
 Job Action – Detail, Delete, Hold, Promote
 System List – Active Notice



When you press Job status button , the screen shows the lists of currently running jobs, queued jobs and completed jobs.

- Current Job tab: Shows the list of jobs in progress and pending.
- Completed Job tab: Provides the list of completed jobs.
- Active Notice tab: Displays any error codes that have occurred.
- No.: Gives the order of jobs. The job in No. 001 is currently in progress.
- Job Name: Shows job information like name and type.
- Status: Gives the current status of each job.
- User: Provides user name, mainly computer name.
- Job Type: Displays details of the active job, such as job type, recipient phone number and other information.
- Delete: Removes the selected job from the list.
- Delete All: Removes all the jobs from the list.
- Detail: Shows the detailed information of the selected option on the Active Notice list.
- Close: Closes the job status window and switches to previous view.

4.1.6. Machine Setup

4.1.6.1 Understanding the Machine Setup Screen

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Select the appropriate item for your occasion.



- **Machine Status:** Shows the current machine status.
- **Admin Setting:** Allows administrator to set up the machine.
When you press Admin Setting, login message pops up. Enter password and press OK. (Factory setting is 1111.)
- **Usage Page Report:** You can print the report on the amount of printouts depending on the paper size and type.

Machine Status screen

Press Machine Setup on the control panel and press Machine Status.



- **Supplies Life tab:** Displays the remainders or the usage count of the machine supplies. Use up/down arrows to switch screens.
- **Machine Info tab:** Displays the detailed information about the machine, and some options allows for validating your machine.
- **Back:** Returns to the previous screen.

Admin Setting screen

Gives you access to detailed machine settings.

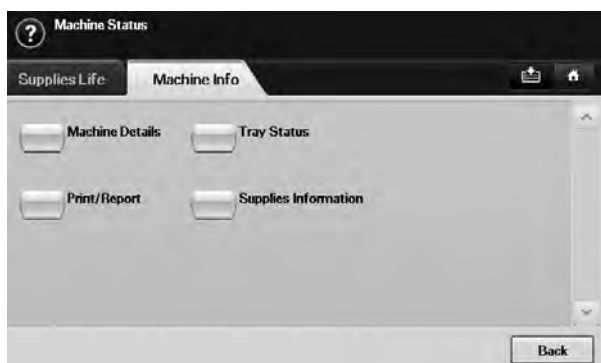


- **General tab:** Sets the basic parameters of the machine such as location, date, time, and more.
- **Setup tab:** Sets the values for fax, network and login. Also you can set to enable the feature listed on the screen.
- **Print/Report tab:** Prints configuration or font list and displays a report of machine features.
- **Back:** Returns to the previous screen.

4.1.6.2 Browsing The Machine's Status

You can browse the machine information and validate some features of the machine.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Machine Status > the Machine Info tab.



Option	Description
Machine Details	This option shows the customer support information on the email address and the phone number you stored from Admin Setting. Also, you can check the machine's serial number, or the hardware and software information specification.
Print/Report	You can print various helpful and informative reports such as System Report, Fax Report and Scan Report.
Tray Status	The screen shows the trays installed on your machine, and their current configurations.
Supplies Information	You can view the amount of each category that your machine has printed so far. To print this report.

4.1.6.3 General Settings

Before you get ready to using the machine, it is recommended to set up the machine parameters.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK. (Factory setting is 1111.)
3. Press the General tab.



Option	Description
Device Info	The sub-options available are Service Center Registration and Contact Info. You may enter information on service center and purchasing point.
Date & Time	You can set the date and time.
Default Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Default Window: Set the first window that will appear on the display screen after turning on the machine or waking up from the Low Power Mode to Sleep Mode. For example, if you select Fax as a default window, the first window will be the Basic tab of the Fax feature. In case you want to show ID Copy as a default window, you need to enable this feature in Default Option previously. • Default Option: Changes all the default values for copying, faxing, emailing, scanning and paper at once.
Measurements	This option lets you change the measurement unit to use (mm or inch), and set the numeric separation (comma or period).
Timers	<p>The machine cancels a printing job if data does not be received in specific time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System Timeout: The machine returns to the default value after certain time the machine waits. You can set a time for maximum 10 minutes. • Held Job Timeout: The machine holds a job for a specific time period. You can set a time period for at least an hour.
Language	It allows you to change the language that appears on the touch screen.
Energy Saver	You can reduce energy consumption by setting these features. Energy Saver has three options, first Low Power Mode to Sleep Mode turns off the scanner lamp under the glass. And Power Save turns off all the fans within the machine after a certain time. Standby to Low Power Mode turns off the fans within the machine except a core fan for the fuser unit.

Option	Description
Tray Management	<p>This feature allows you to select the tray and paper you use for a printing job. Paper size, paper type, and paper color options are adjusted here.</p> <p>Tray Confirmation Message is to activate the window asking whether you set the paper size and type for the just opened tray.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto Tray Switch: If tray1 and tray2 are filled with letter size paper, when tray1 is empty and this option is On, then the machine continues printing with paper in tray2. • Auto Continue: When the paper is mismatched, meaning that tray1 has filled with the letter size paper, but the printing job needs A4 size paper, the machine will wait for 30 seconds to paper in tray1 with proper sized paper. After 30 seconds, the machine automatically starts printing with Letter sized paper.
Altitude Adjustment	<p>Print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which atmospheric pressure is determined by the height of the machine above sea level. This feature lets you adjust the altitude in a height district. Higher altitude location need to set this feature to High 3, which affects print quality.</p>
Output Options	<p>Output Options is for, when the staples run out, you to let the machine stop processing and wait to refill the staples or continue the job. If you set Within Job Offsetting to On, the output paper is placed and sorted by printout-sets.</p>
Contention Management	<p>This feature lets you to select the priority between copy jobs and print jobs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Priority: Set the priority by numbering the job. The machine starts from the least to the highest number in order. • First In, First Out: The machine does an asked job in order.
Sound	<p>You can adjust the loudness of the machine sound. Press Fault to adjust the machine's error sound. Select Conflict if you pressed the wrong option. Press Selection to sound whenever you press the selection from your touch screen.</p>
Supplies Management	<p>The machine gives you the notification of the drum and toner to reorder, and resets the used fuser counter, bias transfer roller, feed roller and document feeder friction pad counter.</p>
Machine Test	<p>The machine prints the test image patterns using Image Quality Test Patterns.</p>
On Demand Overwrite	<p>You can set the machine to delete previous job information on HDD as you store new job information. To activate this feature, go to Admin Setting > the Setup tab > Optional Service and set the On Demand Image Overwrite option to Enable. After activating this feature you can overwrite a HDD by pressing Start in the display.</p>

4.1.6.4 Copy Setup

For copy output, you can set up several options in advance.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Copy Setup.



Option	Description
Page Number	If you select this option On, each copy will include the page number on the bottom of each page.
Time & Date	Set this option On in order to print the date and time on each copy, set from the General tab.
ID Stamp	This option is used to set words or a message to print on your copies. Set this option On and an input screen will be displayed, write your message using the pop up keyboard.

4.1.6.5 Fax Setup

This machine offers you with various options to you for setting up the fax system. You can change the default settings for your preferences and needs.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Fax Setup.



Option	Description
Terminal ID	Enter the machine ID and fax number which will be printed at the top of each page. Select the country name. This option usually pre-set for user.
Remote Code	This feature works best when you are using an extension telephone connected to the EXT socket on the back of your machine. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the extension telephone, without going to the fax machine.
Error Correction Mode	It helps with poor line quality and makes sure any faxes you send are properly transmitted to any other ECM-equipped fax machines. Sending a fax using ECM may take more time.
Fax Initial Setup	You can set Receive Mode for Telephone, Fax or Answering Machine/Fax, and Dial Type at either DP (Dial Pulse) or MF (Multi Frequency). When you select Answering Machine/Fax, you can receive a fax while the line is being used by the answering machine. Contact your local telephone company for Dial Type setting information.
Auto Answer Delay	You can specify the number of times the machine rings before answering an incoming call.
Receive Header	Use this option to automatically print the page number, date and time of fax reception at the bottom of each page.
Secure Receive	You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. This feature restricts printing of received faxes when the machine is unattended. If you select this option to On, all incoming faxes go into memory. A four-digit Passcode is used when you want to print out received faxes in memory.
Received Fax Printing	When receiving a fax containing pages longer than the paper loaded in the tray, the machine can reduce the size of the original to fit the size of the paper loaded in the machine. If this feature is set to Off, the machine cannot reduce the original to fit onto one page. The original will be divided and printed in actual size on two or more pages. If you set this option to On and set the discard size to 10mm and the received data is longer then the currently set paper in the tray, the machine minuses the data that would have been on the specified discard segment.
Redial	The machine can automatically redial a remote fax machine, if it was busy. You can set the number of redial attempts and an interval between attempts. Selecting 0 for Redial Attempts means that the machine will not use this feature.
Speaker Volume (Audio Line Monitor)	This controls the sound when a fax actually starts to transfer data. If this option is On, the machine sounds from a fax starts until a fax finishes. With Comm. the machine sounds only until the communication is succeeded. No sound with Off option.

Option	Description
Prefix Dial	This feature allows you to set a prefix of up to five digits. This number will be dialed before any automatic number is dialed. User may set this to access a PABXa (example 9) or area code number (example 02). When sending a fax, there may be a job which has same recipient's number in delay jobs. In this case, the machine can send faxes to the same recipient in a batch.
Junk Fax Number List	The machine does not accept faxes sent from remote stations if their numbers are stored in the memory as junk fax numbers. You can enter a maximum of 10 junk fax numbers. Press Junk Fax Number List and Edit and enter the last numbers (1~7 digit) of the fax number.
Ring Volume	This feature adjusts the ring volume. When you select Off, the machine does not ring.
Dial Tone Volume	When you press On Hook Dial to send a fax, you can hear a specific tone. To adjust the tone volume, you can use this feature. Value 1 volume is the lowest. Use left/right arrows to toggle the value.
Output Option	You can set the machine to print out the fax on both sides of the paper, or stapled.
Mailbox Setup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Document Policy: You can set the document stored in Mailbox to delete or retain documents after. Select On of each option to delete, Off to remain the data. • Mail Configuration: You can create, edit, or delete Mailbox. Enter Mailbox ID, Mailbox Name, Mailbox Passcode by pressing options.
Output Tray	This feature lets you select the paper tray to use for receiving a fax.
Toll Save	Set the machine to send a fax in the toll save time for saving.
Send Batch	The machine asks you whether you want to add the documents to the reserved delay fax, if the fax number you have dialed is same as the delay fax number.
Fax Forward Settings	You can forward a sent or received fax to other destination by a fax or an email.
Fax Ending Sound	Set whether you turn on or off the sound of an end of fax receiving.

4.1.6.6 Network Setup

You may set up the network with the machine's touch screen. Before doing that, you must have the information concerning the type of network protocols and computer system you use. If you are not sure which setting to use, contact your network administrator to configure this machine network.

For further explanation about network environment, refer to Network Printer User's Guide within Network Utilities CD.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Network Setup.



Option	Description
TCP/IP Protocol	Select appropriate protocol and configure parameters to use the network environment.
Apple Talk Protocol	For Macintosh network environments, select this option. This option provides packet transmission and routing functionality for networking.
Ethernet Speed	Configure the network transmission speed.

4.1.6.7 Authentication

This feature lets you control and lock all outgoing data, or change the password.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Authentication.



Option		Description
Authentication Mode	Network Accounting	It enables the authentication mode which can be used for Job Accounting Plug-in the SyncThru™ Web Admin Service.
	Foreign Device Interface	<p>When you install the optional FDI kit, select Foreign Device Interface Configuration Setup to activate it.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Job Timer: If there is not enough credit, you can set the machine to cancel a job right away or wait a designated amount of time for a deposit. • Print Job Control: When it is enabled, the both computer printing and copying are possible since the credit remains. With Disable, only the copy printing job needs the credit. (which means a computer printing a report or a fax job needs no credits) • Inhibit Services: When no credit is left, the machine disables the copy job only with Copy Only. With All Services, scanning service and copy job are disabled.
Authentication Mode (Continue)	Foreign Device Interface (Continue)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal Credits: It is used when you cancel the job or when the job is cancelled by the device due to insufficient credits (coin) or is canceled by user's request. If you select Enable, the machine deposits a credit equal to the number of sheets that did not print out correctly, then it prints next job for free (for the amount deposited). With Disable, even if you cancel the printing job, the machine includes jammed paper in the count and the cost of printing. • Image Counter: Depends on whether the machine counts blank white pages.
	No Authentication Mode	It disables Authentication Mode.
Change Admin. Password		You can change the password for the Admin Setting authentication.

4.1.6.8 Optional Service

When you want to add the optional features for this machine, you have to install the optional kit and then set the machine to enable and activate those features. Follow the next steps to enable those features.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Optional Service.



Option	Description
N/W Scan	If you are not using the network scan feature, select Disable, then the Scan icon on the display will be grayed out.
Analog Fax	After installing the fax kit, select this option Enable to use this machine as a fax machine.
On Demand Image Overwrite	You can set the machine to delete previous job information on HDD as you store new job information. Set this option to Enable, go to the General tab > On Demand Overwrite, press Start in the display to start the overwriting job.
Immediate Image Overwrite	If you select Enable, the machine renews the HDD memory when you save new job on it.

4.1.6.9 Remote Service

This option enables the machine send the notification to service representatives to inform them that the machine needs supplies such as a toner cartridge.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Setup tab > Remote Service.



Option	Description
Remote Service	Select On to use Remote Service.
Criteria Value	Sets the machine to count printed pages or the number of days the machine will be used. After setting up dates or number of pages, the machine will send a fax to the service representatives informing the machine has used over set date, or did print job more than set pages.
Service Number	Enter the fax numbers for the service representatives.

4.1.6.10 Printing a Report

You can print a report on the machine's configuration or font list, etcetera.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the Print/Report tab.

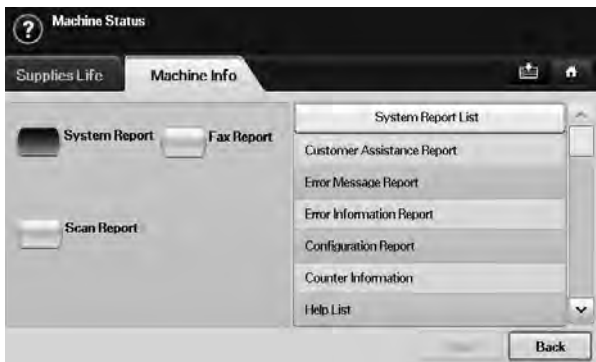


Option		Description
Print		You can print Network Configuration, PS3 Font List, PCL Font List and Schedule Jobs Report. Schedule Jobs Report shows the job list in pending, in delayed faxing or the Mailbox list as well.
Accounting Reports	Supplies Information	You can print the amount of each category that your machine has printed so far.
	Network Auth. Log Report	It displays user login IDs and emails.
	Usage Page Report	You can print the report on the amount of printouts depending on the paper size and type.
	Accounting Report	Prints the report of printing out count for each login user.
Report	Configuration Report	You can print a report on the machine's overall configuration.
	Fax Report	<p>You can set to print the information of a fax reports.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Multi Send Report: When you fax to several destination, set this option to print a transmission report. On is to print every time you send a fax, the machine prints a confirmation report. With On-Error, only when the transmission error occurred, the report will be printed out. • Fax Send Report Appearance: You can select whether the image on the confirmation report shows or not. • Fax Sent/Received Report: The machine stores the logs on each transmission and prints out every 50 logs with this option On. If you select Off, the machine stores the logs but does not print. • Fax Send Report: The machine prints the confirmation report after each fax job, only when you send a fax to one destination.
	E-mail Confirmation Report	<p>The report shows the job of scanning and sending it via Scan to Email.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On: The report is printed whether a job successfully completed or failed. • Off: No report is printed after completing a job. • On-Error: Only in case of error occurrence, the machine prints the report.
Report (Continue)	Scan to Server Confirmation	<p>The report shows the job of scanning and sending it via SMB and FTP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On: The report is printed whether a job successfully completed or failed. • Off: No report is printed after completing a job. • On-Error: Only in case of error occurrence, the machine prints the report.

4.1.6.11 Printing a Machine Report

You can print the machine's information and job report.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Machine Status > the Machine Info tab > Print/Report.
3. Select the report type, then the right side of the screen shows the list to print.
4. Select the list to print.



5. Press Print.

4.1.6.12 Monitoring The Supplies Life

If you want to view the supply life indicators, follow the next step.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Machine Status.
3. Scroll down to browse the entire supplies list view the percentage remaining.

4.1.6.13 Finding The Serial Number

If you want to check your serial number from the screen, follow the next steps.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Machine Status > the Machine Info tab > Machine Details.

4.1.6.14 Sending The Drum Reorder Notification

You can set the machine to alert you that the drum level is low and needs to be reordered.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the General tab > Supplies Management > Drum Cartridge Reorder Notification.
4. Press Drum Reorder at Life Remaining and select a percentage.
5. Press OK.


4.1.6.15 Sending The Toner Reorder Notification

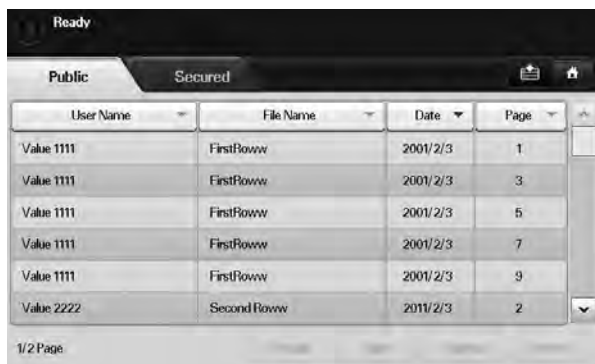
You can set the machine to alert you that the toner level is low and needs to be reordered.

1. Press Machine Setup on the control panel.
2. Press Admin Setting. When the login message pops up, then enter password and press OK.
3. Press the General tab > Supplies Management > Toner Cartridge Reorder Notification.
4. Press Toner Reorder at Life Remaining and select a percentage.
5. Press OK.

4.1.6.16 Checking Stored Documents

The machine shows the document list of the print or fax job.

Press Stored Documents on the Main screen. If the screen displays an other menu, press () to go to the Main screen.



User Name	File Name	Date	Page
Value 1111	FirstRoww	2001/2/3	1
Value 1111	FirstRoww	2001/2/3	3
Value 1111	FirstRoww	2001/2/3	5
Value 1111	FirstRoww	2001/2/3	7
Value 1111	FirstRoww	2001/2/3	9
Value 2222	SecondRoww	2011/2/3	2

1/2 Page

- Public tab: Shows the job list of delay print and store print job.
- Secured tab: Shows the job list of secure print, secure receive, and secure store print job.
- User Name: Shows the user name who registered the job.
- File Name: Shows the job name which is registered as the job information. For the computer printing, the file name shows.
- Date: Shows the date of the job registered.
- Page: Shows the total page number of the job.
- Detail: Pops the separate message showing the basic job information with the file size, the paper size and the paper type, as well.
- Edit: Lets you to modify the file name.
- Delete: Deletes the selected list.
- Print: Prints the selected list.

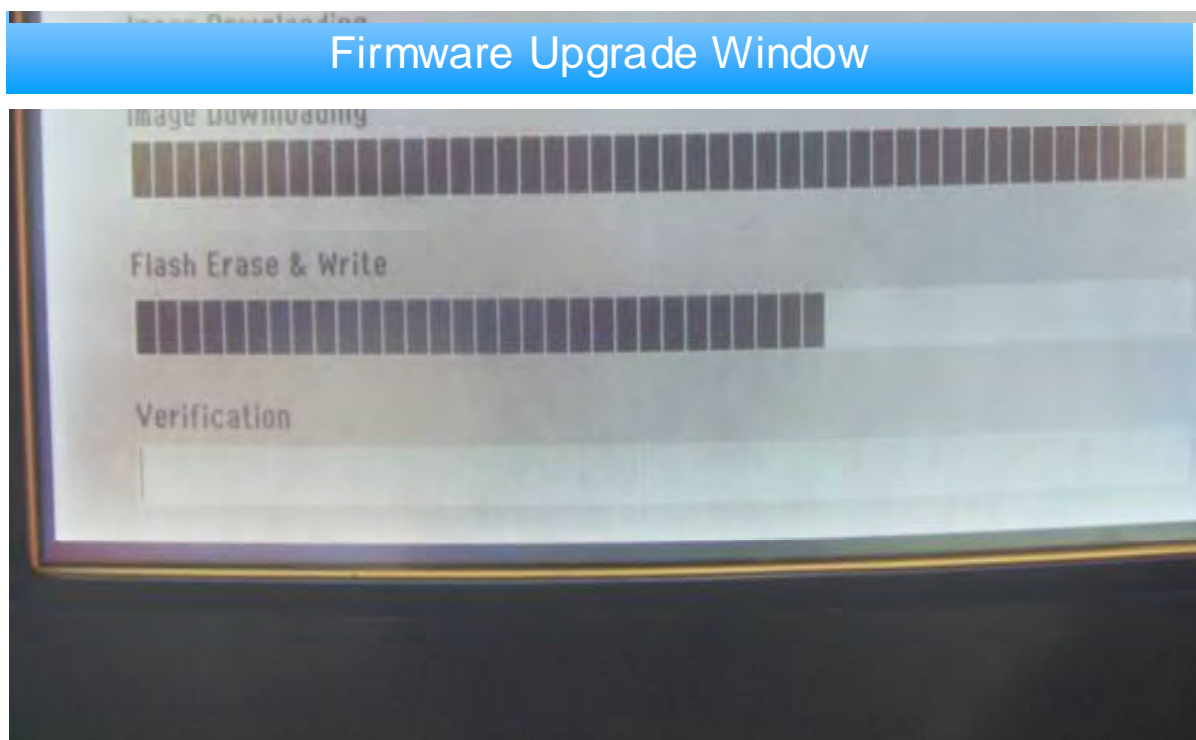
4.1.7 Firmware upgrade

4.1.7.1 The method for firmware upgrade

Step 1: Delete all current jobs from Job Status window

Step 2: Connect USB cable in the machine (idle state)

Step 3: Send firmware file(*.hd)



4.1.8 Diagnostics

4.1.8.1 Introduction

This document will capture the behavior specifications for the GUI Windows for Diagnostics. Each section of this document describes one feature with a step window image and script.

However, used window image is not fixed image from the specification point of view. Acquire detail information from script. Window image is just example image will be implemented.

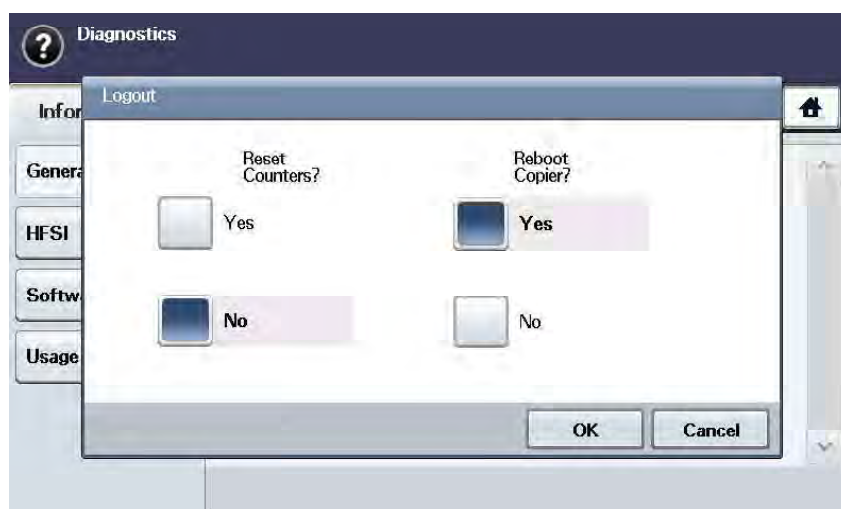
4.1.8.2 How to enter diagnostics mode

1. Press 3*4 key(1, 2, 3) simultaneously.
2. Enter password(1934).
3. Press 'OK' button.

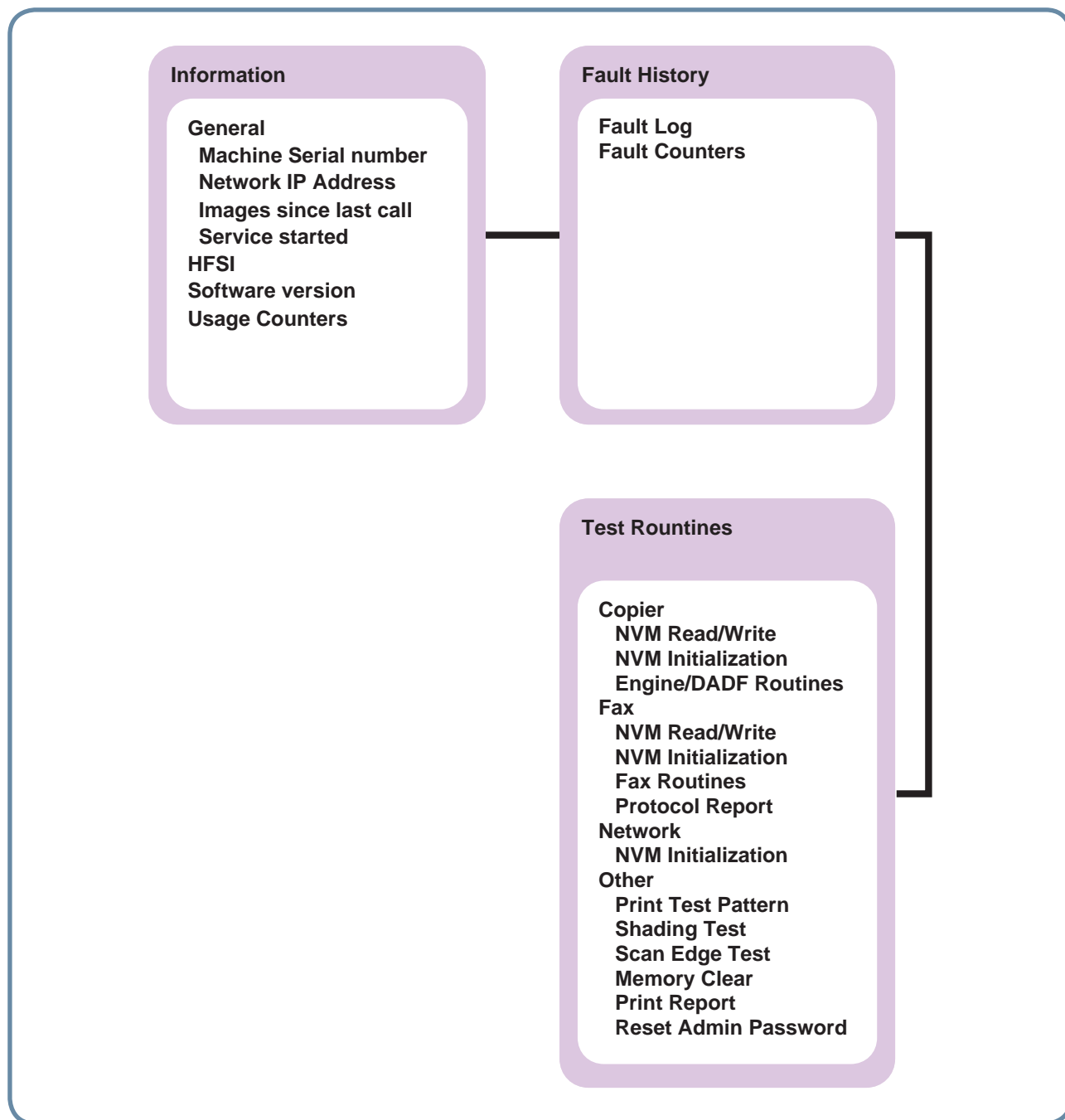


4.1.8.3 How to exit diagnostics mode

By pressing the Home button, exit Diagnostics mode.
When exit Diagnostics mode, a popup window shall display.
By default, Reset Counters is No, Reboot Copier is Yes.



4.1.8.4 Diagnostics Menu Map



4.1.8.5 Information Tab

Information tab provides detail information of the machine.

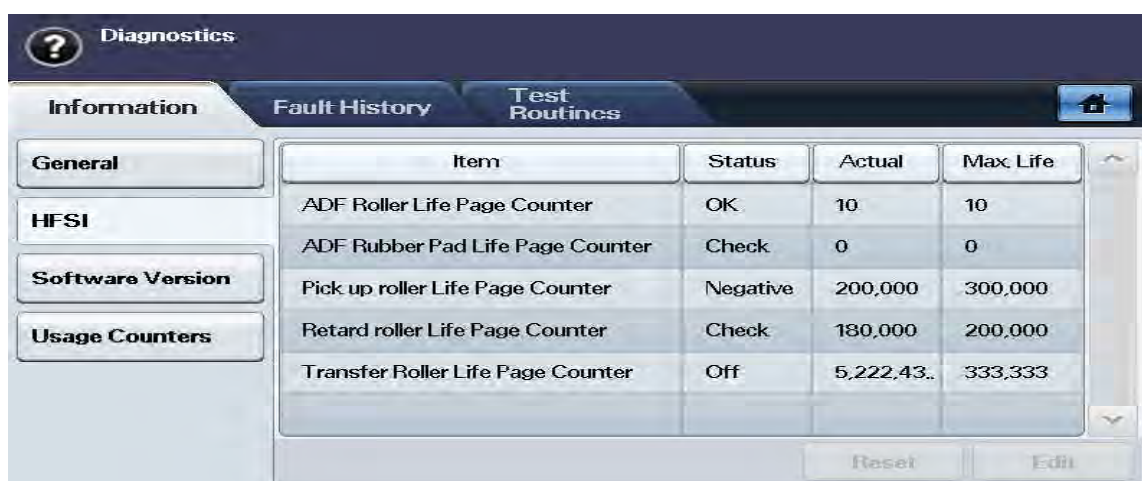
General

- Diagnostics>Information>General
- When user selects General, OP displays Machine Serial Number, Network IP Address and Images since last call.



HFSI (High Frequency Service Items)

- Diagnostics>Information>HFSI
- When user selects General, OP displays the list of HFSI(High Frequency Service Items) read from the MCB.
In the list, there are “ Item”, “Status”, “Actual”, and “Max Life”.



- User Behavior
 - User can select one item in the list to reset the counter using “Reset” button or to edit the Max.Life and threshold value using “Edit” button.
- Items in this column are:
 - DADF Roller / Rubber Pad Life Page
 - T1/T2/T3 P-up Roller Life Page
 - Retard Roller Life Page
 - Bypass Rubber Pad Life page
 - Transfer Roller Life Page
 - Fuser Roller / Fuser Unit Life Page
 - Heat Roller Life Page
 - Pressure Roller Life Page
- Status
 - The possible values in this column are ‘OK’, ‘Check’, ‘Negative’ and ‘Off’.
 - OK : Actual counter is smaller than the threshold value
 - Check : Actual counter is bigger than threshold value but smaller than Max.Life
 - Off : Actual counter exceeds Max.Life
 - Negative : There is no counter to display. In this case, it shall display ‘-’ in the Status and Max Life column.
- Actual
 - Values in this column are actual counts for HFSI usage
- Max. Life

Values in this column are maximum life limits set for HFSI.
- Reset

This button is used to reset the actual counter after replacing the HFSI unit.
 This button is disabled before user select one item in the list and enabled once user select any of the items in the list.
 Once user presses, a confirmation window shall display to user confirm again. The window is displayed as below.
 If user confirms reset, it will reset the counter to 0.
 If the counter of selected item is 0, ‘Reset’ button shall be disabled.



- Edit
 “Edit” button is disabled until user select one item in the list.
 Selecting “Edit” button causes edit window to be displayed.
 There are two input filed for ‘Maximum Life’ and for ‘Threshold’.



Each data field shall display default value or the last-saved value entered by the service engineer. The data field shall support the numeric characters of 0 to 9.
 The hard keypad characters of '#', 'phone' and '*' are not supported and shall generate an invalid entry message if selected.
 The hard keypad characters of 'c' shall delete all characters displayed within the selected data field. By selecting 'Cancel', window moves back to HFSI window without saving user's setting. By selecting 'OK' button, window moves back to HFSI window saving user's setting. Threshold value shall not be greater than Maximum Life.

Software Version

- Diagnostics>Information>Software Version
- When user selects Software version, OP displays the version of the Main Controller, Image Output Terminal, User Interface, Network Controller, Document Feeder, Tray 2 Firmware, Tray 3 Firmware



Usage Counter

- Diagnostics>Information>Usage Counter
- When user selects Usage Counter, OP displays the amount of the Items shown below.

Item	Amount
Total Impressions	0
Black Impressions	0
Black Copied Impressions	0
Black Printed Impressions	0
Sheets	0
Copied Sheets	0

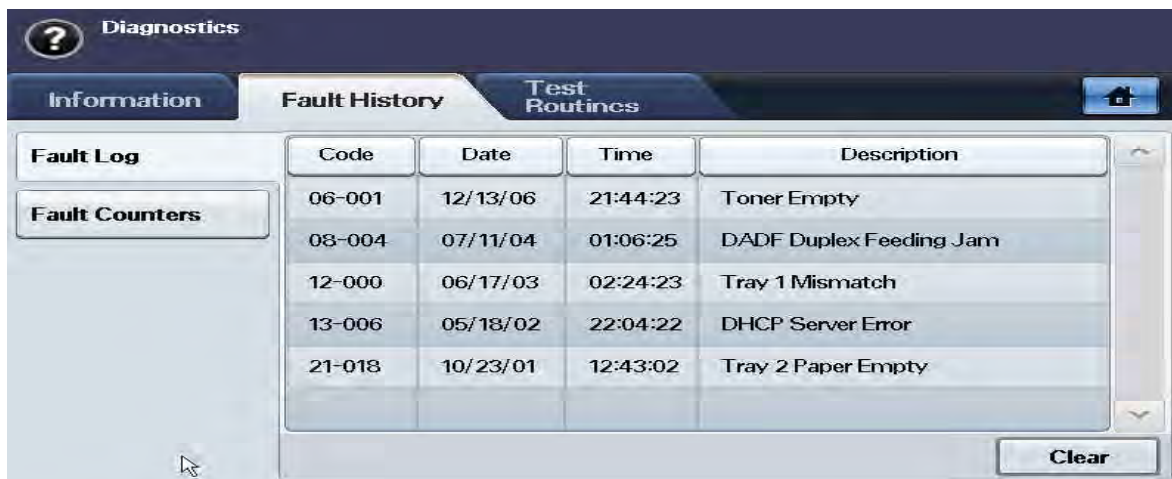
- Total Impressions
- Black Impressions
- Black Copied Impressions
- Black Printed Impressions
- Sheets
- Copied Sheets
- Black Copied Sheets
- Printed Sheets
- Black Printed Sheets
- 2 Sided Sheets
- Copied 2 Sided Sheets
- Black Copied 2 Sided Sheets
- Printed 2 Sided Sheets
- Black Printed 2 Sided Sheets
- Fax Images Received
- Images Sent
- Server Fax Images Sent
- Network Scanning Images Sent
- Email Images Sent
- Maintenance Impressions
- Black Maintenance Impressions
- Known Jams in the IOT
- Known Jams in Finishing Device(s)
- Attempted Sheet Feeds from Internal trays
- Actual sheet feeds from Internal trays
- Normal Level Power On Hours
- Power Save Hours
- Attempted Original Sheet Feeds in the DADF

4.1.8.6 Fault History Tab

Fault History provides an error information occurred.

Fault Log

- Diagnostics>Fault History>Fault Log
- Fault log window shall display errors occurred while the product was operating.



- Diagnostics>Fault History>Fault Log>Clear
- When selecting "Clear" button, Pop-up will be displayed. If you want to delete the Fault history, touch the "OK" button.



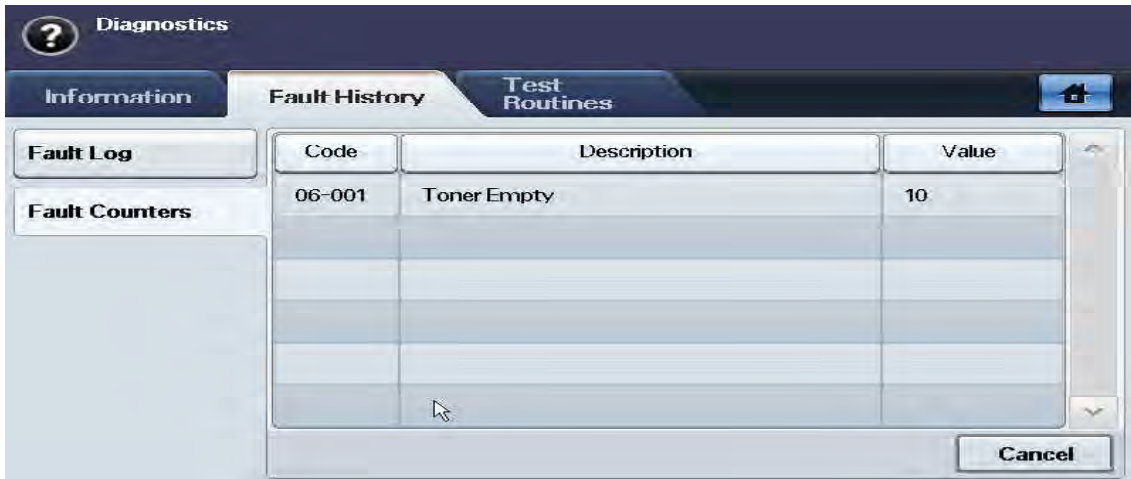
Fault Counters

- Diagnostics>Fault History>Fault Counters
- Fault counters window displays Fault group with number and name. They are

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| • 01 Feeder | • 09 FDI |
| • 02 Fuser | • 10 Controller |
| • 03 Motor Fan | • 11 Scanner |
| • 04 LSU | • 12 Mismatch Type |
| • 05 Option Interface | • 13 Network |
| • 06 CRU | • 14 Cloning |
| • 07 Finisher | • 18 Memory State |
| • 08 DADF | • 21 Tray |
| | • 24 MSOK |



User shall select one item in the list at a time and multiple selection shall not supported. User can select 'Non Zero' or 'All'. By default, 'Non Zero' shall be selected. When press 'OK', Fault Counters Detail Window shall be displayed.



Fault Counters Detail window shall display Fault code, description and value (counter) among the selected Fault Group. Items of displayed Fault codes are different based on the selection of 'Non Zero' or 'All'. When selected 'Non Zero', Fault codes in the selected Fault Group having non zero counter shall be displayed. When selected 'All', all Fault codes in the selected Fault Group shall be displayed. Display order of Fault code is upward.

4.1.8.7 Test Routines Tab

4.1.8.7(a) Copier

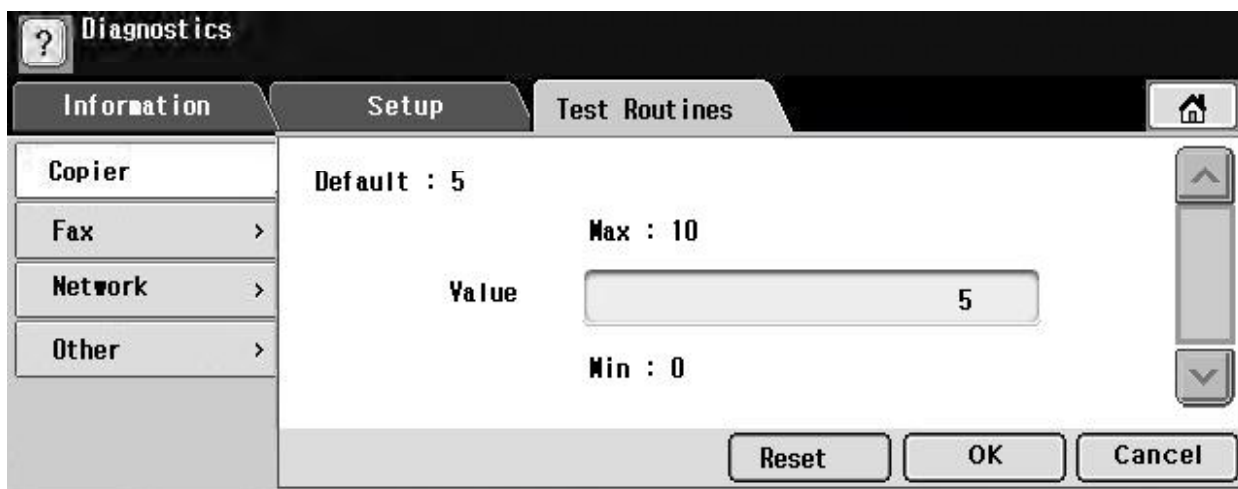
NVM Read/Write

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Copier>NVM Read/Write



“Edit” button shall be disabled until any NVM item is selected.
 “Edit” button shall be disabled when read only NVM is selected. Search edit box has 00-000 as a default. User shall input the whole number to find a specific NVM by pressing Find button. (Refer to NVM Read/Write table) If matching NVM is found, the page including the specified NVM shall be displayed and the NVM is shown as selected. If matching NVM is not found, error message such as “Invalid NVM number” shall be displayed on the status area and search edit box displays default number.

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Copier>NVM Read/Write>Edit



◆ Copier NVM Read/Write

1) Fuser

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
10-100	StandBy Temperature offset	Target Temperature during standby mode.	Engine	10	0 ~ 15 (4 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-105	Run Temperature offset	Target Temperature during run mode.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-110	Low Power Temperature offset	Target Temperature during Power save mode.	Engine	20	0 ~ 40 (9 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-115	101-185 mm Temperature offset	Offset temperature required on thermistor B for paper width.	Engine	5	0 ~ 15 (4 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-120	186-216 mm Temperature offset	Offset temperature required on thermistor B for paper width.	Engine	5	0 ~ 15 (4 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-125	60 gms Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 15 (4 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-130	90 gms Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-135	Bond Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-140	Transparency Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-145	Cardstock Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-150	Envelopes Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
10-155	Labels Temperature offset	Media type offset for fuser roll temperature.	Engine	5	0 ~ 10 (3 steps / 5 degrees interval)
10-200	Fuser Life Page Counter	[Read Only]Total fuser page count	Engine	0	Read Only
10-210	Heat Roll Life Page Counter	[Read Only]Heat roll page count	Engine	0	Read Only
10-220	Pressure Roll Life Page Counter	[Read Only]Pressure roll page count	Engine	0	Read Only
10-300	Pick-up interval delay	Change time interval for paper pick-up	Engine	0	0 ~ 100 (* 100 msec)
10-310	Pick-up interval delay [Special paper]	Change time interval for paper pick-up	Engine	0	0 ~ 100 (* 100 msec)
117-0001	Print CTD Check Page	Print CTD Check Page			

2) Print Margin

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
07-100	Top Registration Tray1 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray1 Top Registration in Simplex	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-200	Top Registration Tray2 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray2 Top Registration in Simplex	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-300	Top Registration Tray3 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray3 Top Registration in Simplex	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-400	Top Registration Tray4 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray4 Top Registration in Simplex	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-500	Top Registration Bypass Simplex	The changed dimension of Bypass Top Registration in Simplex	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-110	Side Registration Tray1 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray1 Side Registration in Simplex	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-210	Side Registration Tray2 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray2 Side Registration in Simplex	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-310	Side Registration Tray3 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray3 Side Registration in Simplex	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-410	Side Registration Tray4 Simplex	The changed dimension of Tray4 Side Registration in Simplex	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-510	Side Registration Bypass Simplex	The changed dimension of Bypass Side Registration in Simplex	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-120	Top Registration Tray1 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray1 Top Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-220	Top Registration Tray2 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray2 Top Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
07-320	Top Registration Tray3 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray3 Top Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-420	Top Registration Tray4 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray4 Top Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-520	Top Registration Bypass Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Bypass Top Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-130	Side Registration Tray1 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray1 Side Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-230	Side Registration Tray2 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray2 Side Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-330	Side Registration Tray3 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray3 Side Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-430	Side Registration Tray4 Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Tray4 Side Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-530	Side Registration Bypass Dup_long (2nd side)	The changed dimension of Bypass Side Registration of 2nd side in Duplex long	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-140	Top Registration Tray1 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray1 Top Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-240	Top Registration Tray2 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray2 Top Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-340	Top Registration Tray3 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray3 Top Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-440	Top Registration Tray4 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray4 Top Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-540	Top Registration Bypass Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Bypass Top Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-150	Side Registration Tray1 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray1 Side Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-250	Side Registration Tray2 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray2 Side Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-350	Side Registration Tray3 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray3 Side Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-450	Side Registration Tray4 Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Tray4 Side Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
07-550	Side Registration Bypass Duplex (1st side)	The changed dimension of Bypass Side Registration of 1st side in Duplex long and short	Print	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
06-100	Vertical Magnification	The changed dimension of the vertical direction Magnification	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)
06-110	Horizontal Magnification	The changed dimension of the horizontal direction Magnification	Engine	30	0 ~ 60mm (12 Steps / 5mm Seg.)

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
08-100	Pick up roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-110	Forward roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-120	Retard roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-130	Tray2 Pick-Up Roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-140	Tray3 Pick-Up Roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-150	Tray4 Pick-Up Roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only
08-160	Bypass Rubber Pad Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Engine	0	Read Only

3) Developer

Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
09-100	LD Light Level	600dpi Laser Light Level, Value in PWM	Engine	250	50~800 [250]
09-110	MHV Control Bias Control	Main Charge Bias Control Basic of Value(HVPS Setting is Value), Value in PWM	Engine	710	600~850 [710]
09-120	THV Control Bias Control	Transfer Bias Control Basic of Value(HVPS Setting is Value), Value in PWM	Engine	310	270~600 [310]
09-130	Deve Bias Control	DEVE Bias Control Basic of Value(HVPS Setting is Value), Value in PWM Standard Voltage : -500V(PWM 522)	Engine	512	400~650 [512]
09-140	Detach Bias Control	Detach Bias Control Basic of Value(HVPS Setting is Value), Value in PWM Standard Voltage : -1800V	Engine	508	200~730 [508]
09-200	Drum Life Page Counter	Display of drum pages Count.	Engine	0	Read Only
09-210	Toner Cartridge Life Page Counter	Display of toner cartridge pages Count.	Engine	0	Read Only
09-230	Transfer Roller Life Page Counter	Display value of Pages Count.	Engine	0	Read Only
09-240	Imaging Unit PWM	Value of Imaging Unit PWM	Engine	180	0 ~255 [180]

4) DADF

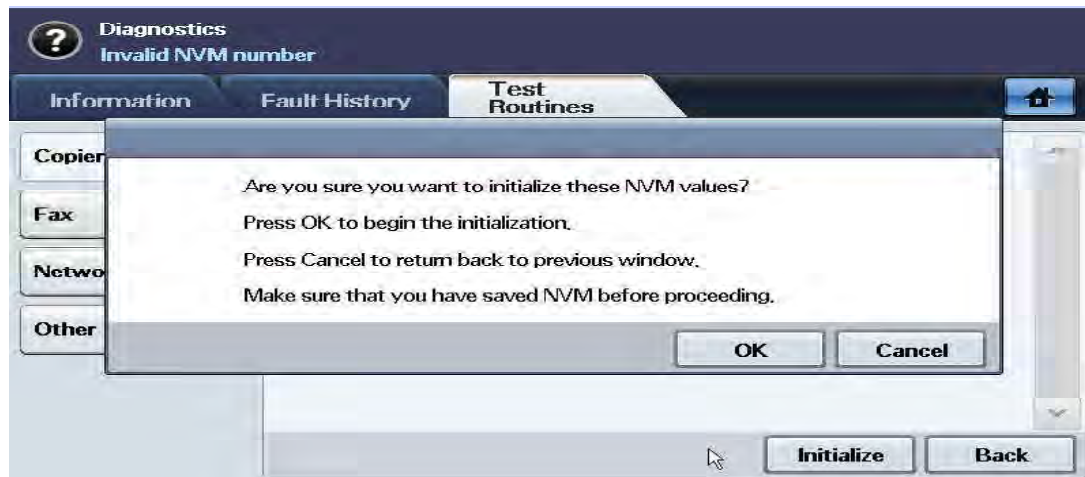
Code	NVM Description	Meaning	Component	Default	Maximum / Minimum
05-700	ADF Roller Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Scan	0	Read Only
05-710	ADF Rubber Pad Life Page Counter	[Read Only]	Scan	0	Read Only

NVM Initialization

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Copier>NVM Initialization
- By default, none of items is selected and Initialize button shall be disabled. There shall be Back button.



- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Copier>NVM Initialization>Initialize



If you want to initialize the NVM values, press OK button.
 When press OK button, SR shall show the initialization progress status and result.
 When the result is get, pop up window shall be disappeared.

Engine/DADF Test Routines

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Copier>Engine/DADF Test Routines.



When exit this window, OP shall send exit command. (CMD_COPY_COMP_EXITMODE)
 By default, all Test routines will be displayed.
 By default, search edit box has 00 .
 OK/Reset button shall be disabled until any test routine is selected.
 Maximum number of selection is 3.
 Reset will deselect all selected test routines.
 User select test routine by touching the row and deselect touching it again.
 User input chain number in search edit box and only all test routines in the chain shall be displayed.



By default, Start/Stop/Stop All shall be disabled.
 Start button shall be enabled when selected item is not running.
 Multiple selection shall not be supported.
 Stop shall be enabled only when the selected item is running.
 Stop All shall be enabled when there is any running test item.
 Back button shall be disable when there is any running test item.

◆ Copier Test Routines Table

1) Cover

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
01-100	Side Cover Interlock	Detect if the Front Cover/Side Cover is open or closed.	Opened[Closed]
01-200	Exit Cover Present Sensor	Detect when Exit Cover is in place.	Install[Not Install]

2) Motor

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
04-100	Main BLDC Motor	Main BLDC Motor On/Off	On[Off]
04-110	Main BLDC Motor Ready	Detects if Main BLDC motor runs at normal speed.	High[Low]
04-200	Exit Motor Forward Fast	Exit Motor Forward Fast On/Off	On[Off]
04-210	Exit Motor Forward Slow	Exit Motor Forward Slow On/Off	On[Off]
04-300	Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex Motor Forward On/Off	On[Off]
04-310	Duplex Motor Backward	Duplex Motor Backward On/Off	On[Off]
04-400	Duplex Fan1,2 Run	Start/Stop Duplex Fan1,2 run	On[Off]
04-410	Duplex Fan1 Run Ready	Detects if Duplex Fan1 runs at normal speed.	High[Low]
04-510	T1 Elevating Motor	T1 Elevate Motor On/Off	On[Off]
04-520	T2 Elevating Motor	T2 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)	On[Off]
04-530	T3 Elevating Motor	T3 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)	On[Off]
04-540	T4 Elevating Motor	T4 Elevate Motor On/Off (Optional)	On[Off]

3) DADF

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
05-100	DADF Doc. Detect Sensor	Documemt Detect Sensor	High[Low]
05-110	DADF Paper Width Sensor	Paper Width Sensor	High[Low]
05-120	DADF Paper Length Sensor	Paper Length Sensor	High[Low]
05-130	DADF Registration Sensor	Doc. Registration Sensor	High[Low]
05-140	DADF Scan Sensor	Doc. Scan Start Sensor	High[Low]
05-150	DADF Gate Sensor	Doc. Gate Sensor	High[Low]
05-160	DADF Door Open Sensor	DADF Door Open Switch	High[Low]
05-170	DADF Duplex Sensor	Doc. Duplex[or Exit] Sensor	High[Low]
05-180	DADF Exit Open Sensor	DADF Exit Door Open Sensor	High[Low]
05-200	DADF Scan Motor Forward	Scan Motor Forward Run On/Off	On[Off]
05-210	DADF Duplex Motor Forward	Duplex Motor Forward Run On/Off	On[Off]

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
05-220	DADF Duplex Motor Backward	Duplex Motor Forward Backward On/Off	On[Off]
05-300	DADF Pick-Up Solenoid	Doc Pick-Up Solenoid	On[Off]
05-310	DADF Regi. Solenoid	Doc Regi. Solenoid	On[Off]
05-400	Platen Cover Switch	Platen Cover Open/Close Switch	High[Low]

4) LSU

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
06-100	LSU Motor Run	LSU Motor On/Off	On[Off]
06-110	LSU Motor Ready	Detects if LSU motor runs at normal speed.	High[Low]
06-200	LSU LD Power	LSU LD 1/2 Power On/Off	On[Off]
06-300	LSU Fan Run	Start/Stop LSU Fan Run	On[Off]

5) Tray Sensor

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
07-100	Tray1 Home Position	Detect when tray1 is closed.	Closed[Opened]
07-110	T1 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray1.	High[low]
07-120	T1 size1 sensor	Detects whether auto size1 sensor of tray1 is high or low.	High[low]
07-130	T1 size2 sensor	Detects whether auto size2 sensor of tray1 is high or low.	High[low]
07-140	T1 size3 sensor	Detects whether auto size3 sensor of tray1 is high or low.	High[low]
07-150	T1 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in tray1 is elevated to the sensor.	High[low]
07-160	T1 Paper Low Sensor	Detects when the stack height of tray1 is less than 25%.	High[low]
07-200	Tray2 Home Position	Detect when tray2 is closed.	Closed[Opened]
07-210	T2 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray2. (Optional)	High[low]
07-220	T2 size1 sensor	Detects whether auto size1 sensor of tray2 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-230	T2 size2 sensor	Detects whether auto size2 sensor of tray2 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-240	T2 size3 sensor	Detects whether auto size3 sensor of tray2 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-250	T2 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in tray2 is elevated to the sensor. (Optional)	High[low]
07-260	T2 Paper Low Sensor	Detects when the stack height of tray2 is less than 25%. (Optional)	High[low]
07-300	Tray3 Home Position	Detect when tray3 is closed.	Closed[Opened]
07-310	T3 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray3. (Optional)	High[low]

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
07-320	T3 size1 sensor	Detects whether auto size1 sensor of tray3 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-330	T3 size2 sensor	Detects whether auto size2 sensor of tray3 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-340	T3 size3 sensor	Detects whether auto size3 sensor of tray3 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-350	T3 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in tray3 is elevated to the sensor. (Optional)	High[low]
07-360	T3 Paper Low Sensor	Detects when the stack height of tray3 is less than 25%. (Optional)	High[low]
07-400	Tray4 Home Position	Detect when tray4 is closed.	Closed[Opened]
07-410	T4 Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Tray4. (Optional)	High[low]
07-420	T4 size1 sensor	Detects whether auto size1 sensor of tray4 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-430	T4 size2 sensor	Detects whether auto size2 sensor of tray4 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-440	T4 size3 sensor	Detects whether auto size3 sensor of tray4 is high or low. (optional)	High[low]
07-450	T4 Stack Height Sensor	Detects if paper in tray4 is elevated to the sensor. (Optional)	High[low]
07-460	T4 Paper Low Sensor	Detects when the stack height of tray4 is less than 25%. (Optional)	High[low]
07-510	Bypass Paper Empty Sensor	Detect when paper is in Bypass Tray.	High[low]

6) Feed Sensor, Motor, Clutch

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
08-100	Feed Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Feed sensor.	High[low]
08-200	T2 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detect when a paper is at T2 Feed sensor. (optional)	High[low]
08-300	T3 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detect when a paper is at T3 Feed sensor. (optional)	High[low]
08-400	T4 Feed Sensor (or Door Open)	Detect when a paper is at T4 Feed sensor. (optional)	High[low]
08-500	Regi. Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Regi. sensor.	High[low]
08-600	Fuser Exit Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Exit sensor.	High[low]
08-700	Duplex Jam1 Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Duplex Jam1 sensor.	High[low]
08-710	Duplex Jam2 Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Duplex Jam2 sensor.	High[low]
08-720	Out-Bin Full Sensor	Detect when a paper is at Duplex Ready sensor.	High[low]

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
08-800	Bypass Feed Clutch	Engages drive to pick up a paper from bypass.	On[Off]
08-810	T1 Pick-Up Clutch	Engages drive to pick up a paper from tray1.	On[Off]
08-820	T2 Pick-Up Clutch	Engages drive to pick up a paper from tray2. (Optional)	On[Off]
08-830	T3 Pick-Up Clutch	Engages drive to pick up a paper from tray3. (Optional)	On[Off]
08-840	T4 Pick-Up Clutch	Engages drive to pick up a paper from tray4. (Optional)	On[Off]
08-850	Registration Clutch	Engages drive to registartion rolls.	On[Off]
08-860	Duplex Feed Clutch	Engages drive to feed a paper into duplex path.	On[Off]
08-870	Duplex Gate Clutch	Engages drive to ready a paper into duplex path.	On[Off]
08-920	T2 Feed Motor Run	T2 Feed Motor On/Off	On[Off]
08-930	T3 Feed Motor Run	T3 Feed Motor On/Off	On[Off]
08-940	T4 Feed Motor Run	T4 Feed Motor On/Off	On[Off]

7) Developer

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
09-100	MHV Bias	MHV bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]
09-110	MHV Bias Read	Detect what the MHV value is on the MHV Roller	Numeric 3 digits
09-200	Dev Bias	Dev bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]
09-300	THV(+) Bias	THV plus bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]
09-310	THV Bias Read	Detect what the THV value is on the THV Roller	Numeric 3 digits
09-400	THV(-)Bias	THV minus bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]
09-500	SMPS Fan Run	Start/Stop Deve. Fan run	On[Off]
09-510	SMPS Fan Run Ready	Detects if Deve Fan runs at normal speed.	High[Low]
09-600	Toner Dispense Motor	Toner Dispense Motor On/Off	On[Off]
09-700	Toner Sensor	TC sensor in developer tank.	Numeric 3 digits
09-800	Detach Bias	Detach bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]

8) Fuser

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
10-100	Fuser Power On	It controls temperature of fuser as 180 degrees.	On[Off]
10-200	Fuser Temperature A	Detects what the temperature A is on fuser.	Numeric 3 digits
10-210	Fuser Temperature B	Detects what the temperature B is on fuser.	Numeric 3 digits
10-300	Fuser Unit Fault	Detects if the IH board for controlling fuser is normal.	Normal/Fault
10-400	Fuser Motor Forward	Fuser Motor Forward On/Off	On[Off]
10-500	Fuser Fan Run	Start/Stop Fuser Fan run	On[Off]
10-600	Fuser Bias	Fuser bias voltage on at normal drive level	On[Off]

9) Finisher

Code	Displayed Name	Meaning	State Displayed
12-100	Entrance Motor	Entrance Motor run as IOT Speed <about 5 sec>	On[Off]
12-110	Exit Motor	Exit Motor run as IOT Speed <about 5 sec>	On[Off]
12-200	Paddle Motor	Paddling	On
12-300	Front Jog Home	Front Jogger move Home	On
12-310	Front Jog Stand	Front Jogger move to Stand	On
12-320	Rear Jog Home	Rear Jogger move Home	On
12-330	Rear Jog Stand	Rear Jogger move to Stand	On
12-400	Support Finger Home	Supporter move Home	On
12-410	Support Finger Stand	Supporter move to Stand	On
12-500	Ejector Motor	Ejecting	On
12-600	Stacker Down	Stacker down to bottom	On
12-610	Stacker Up	Stacker up to Stacking position	On
12-700	Stapler	Staple when no cartridge	On
12-800	Entrance Sensor	Detect paper at paper feeding area.	High[Low]
12-805	Exit Sensor	Detect paper at paper exit area.	High[Low]
12-810	Paddle Home Sensor	Detect Paddle Home position	High[Low]
12-815	Front Jog Home Sensor	Detect Front Jog Home position	High[Low]
12-820	Rear Jog Home Sensor	Detect Rear Jog Home position	High[Low]
12-825	Support Finger Home Sensor	Detect Support-Finger Home position	High[Low]
12-830	Ejector Home Sensor	Detect Ejector Home position	High[Low]
12-835	Ejector Encoder Sensor	Detect Ejector Encoder sensor	High[Low]
12-840	Stacker Top Sensor	Detect Stacker Top position	High[Low]
12-845	Stacker Bottom Switch	Detect Staple Bottom position	High[Low]
12-850	Staple Home Sensor	Detect Staple Home position	High[Low]
12-855	Staple Ready Sensor	Detect Staple Ready to clinching.	High[Low]
12-860	Low Staple Sensor	Detect Staple Low	High[Low]
12-865	Paper Detector Sensor	Detect paper in stapler area	High[Low]
12-870	Finisher Door Switch	Detect Finsher Door Open or Close	High[Low]
12-875	IOT Set Sensor	Detect Finisher is connected with IOT.	High[Low]
12-880	Duplex Paper Sensor	Deetct Duplex Paper feeding from IOT.	High[Low]

4.1.8.7(b) Fax

NVM Read/Write

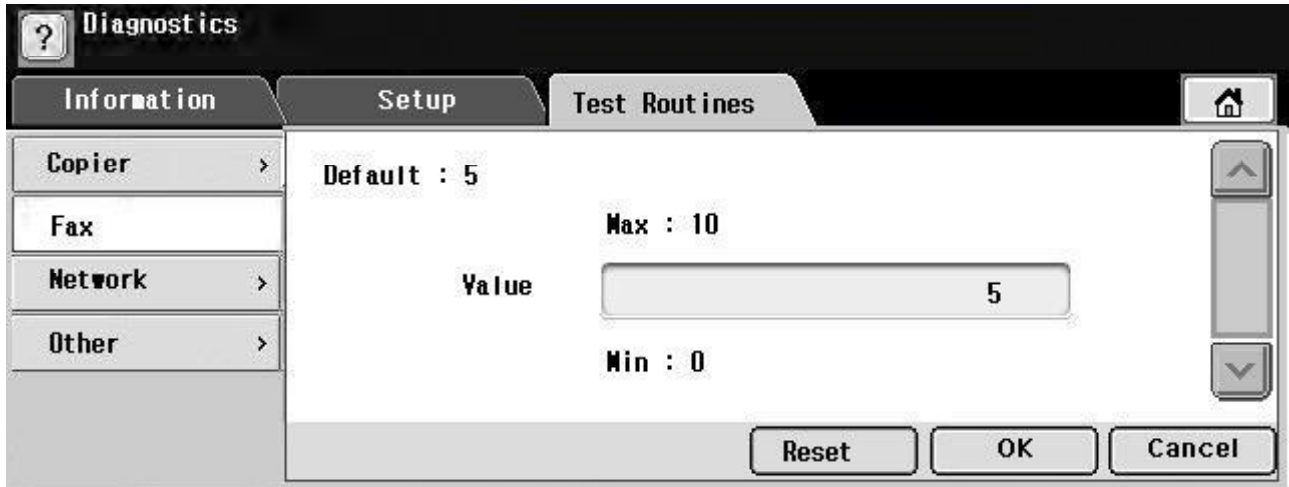
- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Fax>NVM Read/Write



For the behavior, refer to Copier-NVM Read/Write.



For the behavior, refer to Copier-NVM Read/Write-Edit.



◆ Fax NVM Read/Write

Code	NVM Name	Default
20-100	Redial Times	7
20-110	Redial Interval	3
20-200	Pause Dial Time	3
20-300	Ring On Time	17
20-310	Ring Off Time	56
20-400	DTMF High-Freq Level	8
20-410	DTMF Low-Freq Level	11
20-500	Dial Mode	0
20-210	Dial Pulse M/B ratio	0
20-220	Auto Dial Start Pause Time	3

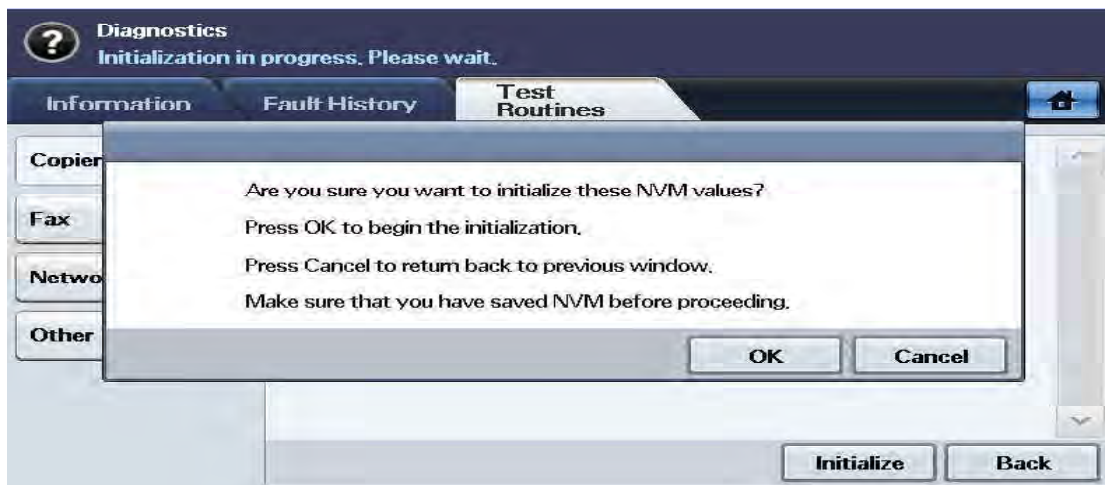
Code	NVM Name	Default
20-510	ECM Mode	1
20-520	Error Rate	2
20-700	Line Monitor Setting	0
20-800	Modem Speed	24
20-810	Fax Transmission Level	12
20-830	Auto Dial Timeout	55
20-900	FAX Total Send Counter	0
20-910	FAX Total Receive Counter	0
20-840	FAX Batch Send Enable	0

NVM Initialization

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Fax>NVM Initialization
- By default, none of items is selected and Initialize button shall be disabled. There shall be Back button.



- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Fax>NVM Initialization>Initialize



If you want to initialize the NVM values, press OK button.
 When press OK button, SR shall show the initialization progress status and result.
 When the result is get, pop up window shall be disappeared.

Protocol Report

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Fax>Protocol Report
- When selecting Protocol Report, the sub-item will be displayed. By pressing the print, you can print the protocol report.



Fax Routines

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Fax> Fax Routines
- For the behavior, refer to Engine/DADF Test Routines



◆ Fax Test Routines

Code	Test Name
20-012	Sngl Tone 1100Hz Ln1
20-014	Sngl Tone 1650Hz Ln1
20-015	Sngl Tone 1850Hz Ln1
20-016	Sngl Tone 2100Hz Ln1
20-020	DTMF # Line1
20-021	DTMF * Line1
20-022	DTMF 0 Line1
20-023	DTMF 1 Line1
20-024	DTMF 2 Line1
20-025	DTMF 3 Line1
20-026	DTMF 4 Line1
20-027	DTMF 5 Line1
20-028	DTMF 6 Line1

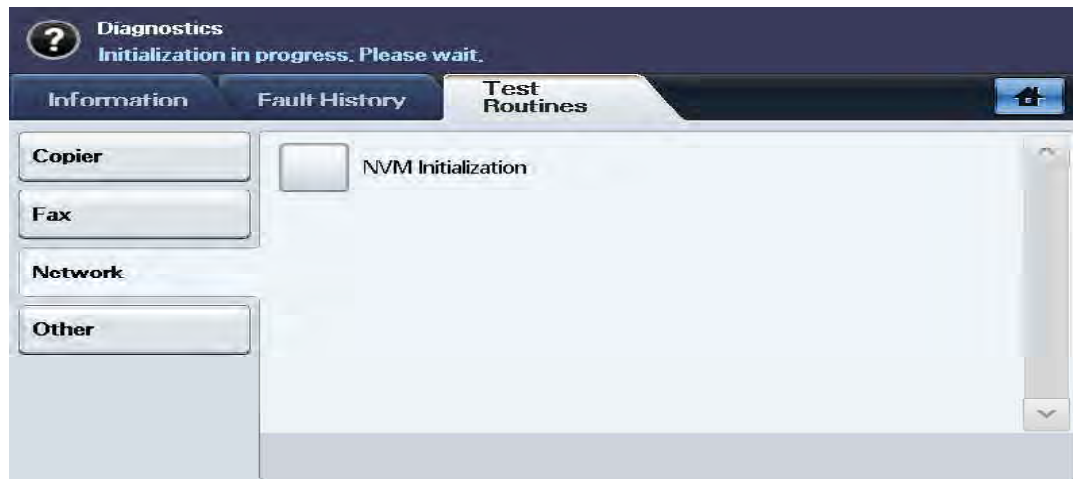
Code	Test Name
20-029	DTMF 7 Line1
20-030	DTMF 8 Line1
20-031	DTMF 9 Line1
20-040	V.21 300 bps Line1
20-041	V.27ter 2400 bps Line1
20-042	V.27ter 4800 bps Line1
20-043	V.29 7200 bps Line1
20-044	V.29 9600 bps Line1
20-045	V.17 7200 bps Line1
20-046	V.17 9600 bps Line1
20-047	V.17 12000 bps Line1
20-048	V.17 14400 bps Line1
20-049	V.34 2400 bps Line1

Code	Test Name
20-050	V.34 4800 bps Line1
20-051	V.34 7200 bps Line1
20-052	V.34 9600 bps Line1
20-053	V.34 12000 bps Line1
20-054	V.34 14400 bps Line1
20-055	V.34 16800 bps Line1
20-056	V.34 19200 bps Line1
20-057	V.34 21600 bps Line1
20-058	V.34 24000 bps Line1
20-059	V.34 26400 bps Line1
20-060	V.34 28800 bps Line1
20-061	V.34 31200 bps Line1
20-062	V.34 33600 bps Line1

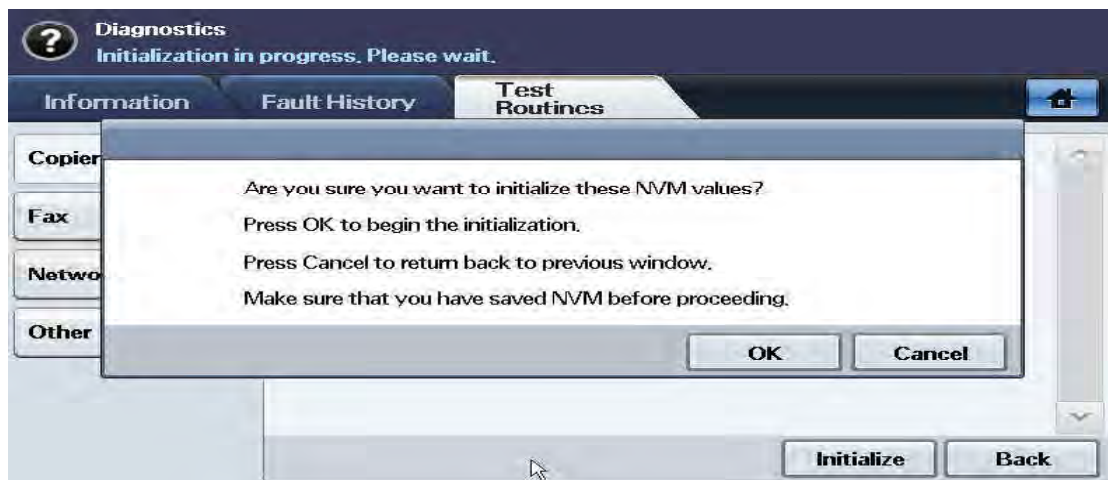
4.1.8.7(c) Network

NVM Initialization

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Network>NVM Initialization



- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Network>NVM Initialization>Initialize



If you want to initialize the NVM values, press OK button.
 When press OK button, SR shall show the initialization progress status and result.
 When the result is get, pop up window shall be disappeared.

4.1.8.8 Other

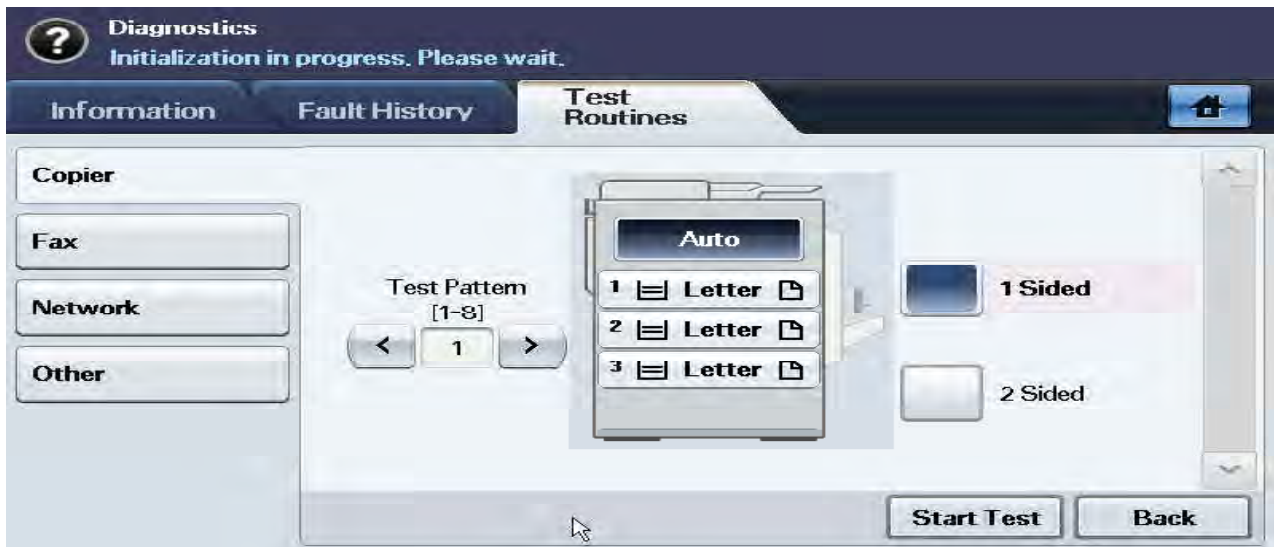
- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other



◆ Test Routines Other

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Print Test Pattern	Test Pattern	[1] S600 - A4 [2] S600 - Letter [3] 1 x 4 Pattern [4] 2 x 2 Pattern [5] Ghosting [6] Black [7] Skew [8] Character Test
	Tray Sided	Tray1, Tray2, Tray3, MP 1, 2
Shading Test	Shade and Print Report Print Last Shade Report	
Scan Edge Test	Print Scan Edge Test	
Memory Clear	Countries	
Print Report	Toner Information	
	Imaging Unit Information	
	Protocol Dump List	
Reset Admin Password	Reset Admin. Password	
Format HDD	Format HDD	
ID Sensor Calibration		
DADF Speed	Normal	
	50%	

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Print Test Pattern



You can print the test pattern by pressing the start test button.

By default, Test Pattern number shall be 1.

You can select paper source by selecting tray of the image.

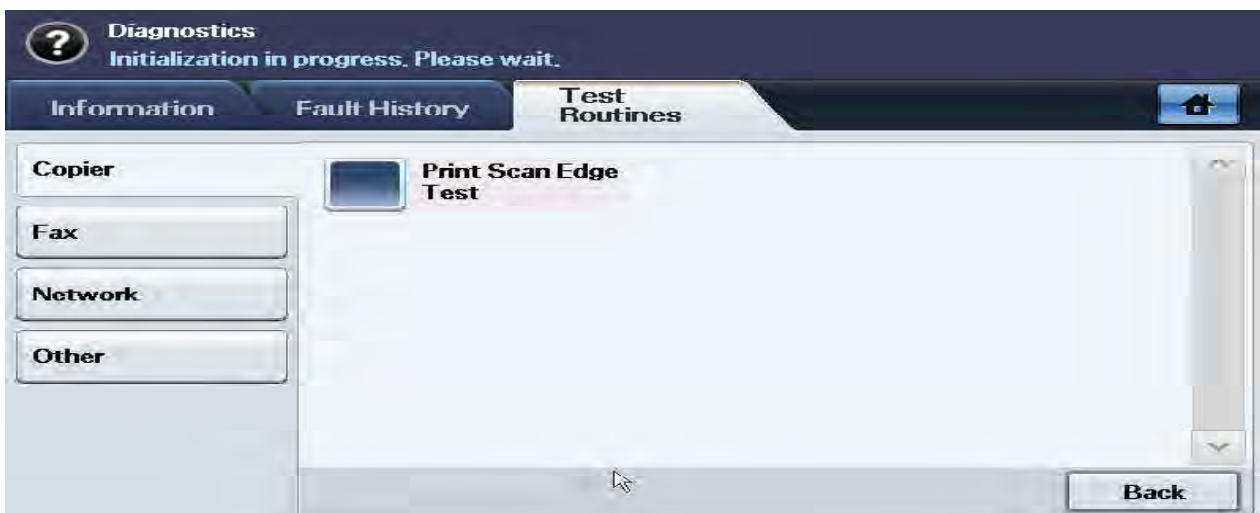
You can select simplex/duplex printing option by selecting 1 sided /2 sided button.

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Shading Test



The function is used to set the optimum scan quality determined by the specific characteristics of the CCD (Charge Coupled Device). If copy image quality is poor perform this function to check the condition of the CCD unit.

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Scan Edge Test



- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Memory Clear



The function resets the system to factory default settings. This function is used to reset the system to the initial value when the product is functioning abnormally. All the values are returned to the default values, and all the information which was set by the user will be erased. When select memory clear, user can select the country.

- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Print Report



- Diagnostics>Test Routines>Other>Reset Admin. password



4.1.9 Cleaning Your Machine

To maintain print and scan quality, follow the cleaning procedures below each time the toner cartridge is replaced or if print and scan quality problems occur.

- ⚠ • Cleaning the cabinet of the machine with cleaning materials containing large amounts of alcohol, solvent, or other strong substances can discolor or distort the cabinet.
- If your machine or its surrounding is contaminated with toner, we recommend you to use cloth or tissue dampened with water to clean it. If you use a vacuum cleaner, toner blows in the air and might be harmful to you.

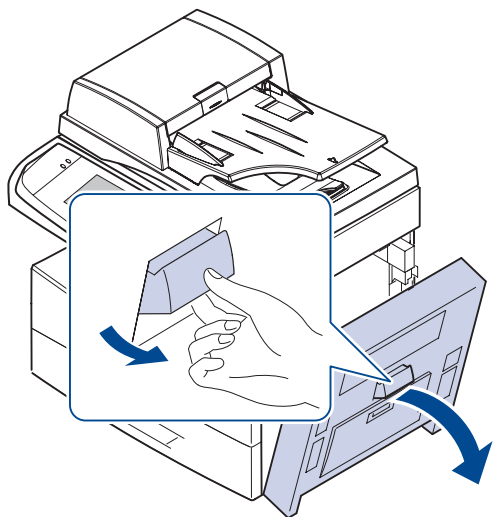
Cleaning the outside

Clean the machine cabinet with a soft lint-free cloth. You can dampen the cloth slightly with water, but be careful not to let any water drip onto or into the machine.

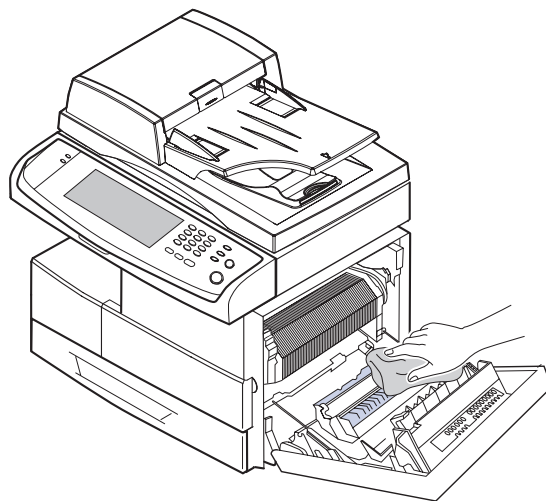
Cleaning the transfer unit

The cleaning the transfer unit within this machine is recommended for its printing quality. The cleaning period is best once a year or once 10,000 pages printing.

1. Prepare a soft lint-free cloth.
2. Turn off the machine.
3. Unplug the power cable.
4. Open the side cover.



5. Wipe the surface of the transfer unit.

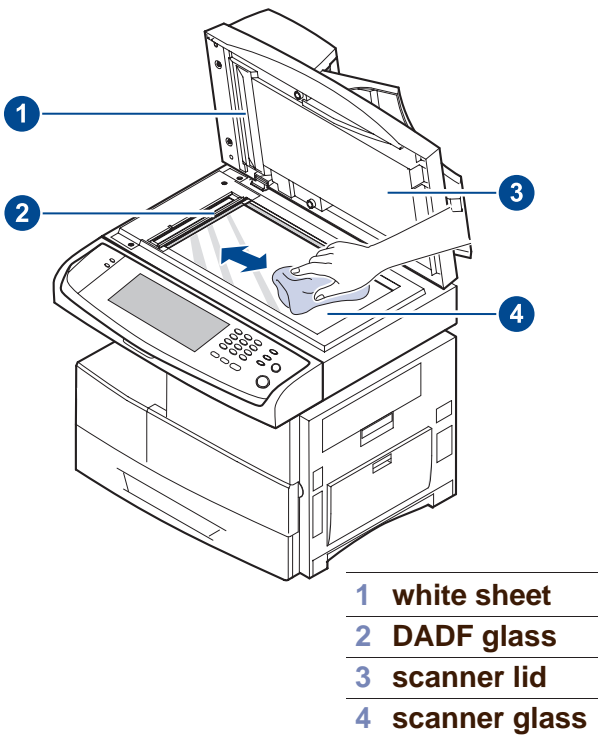


6. Close the side cover.
7. Plug the power cable and turn the machine on.

Cleaning the scan unit

Keeping the scan unit clean helps ensure the best possible copies. We suggest that you clean the scan unit at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

1. Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
2. Open the scanner lid.
3. Wipe the surface of the scanner glass and DADF glass until it is clean and dry.



4. Wipe the underside of the scanner lid and white sheet until it is clean and dry.

5. Close the scanner lid.

Cleaning the inside

- ▣ Clean every 10,000 sheets or every 6 months to maintain in good condition.
(When the Transfer Roller expires due to long usage.)
- ▣ Clean in following order; Paper Path Parts, Transfer Roller, Toner Cartridge and Drum Cartridge in the Inner Frame.
- ▣ Clean with Vacuum Cleaner and Dry rag or Soft cloth.

Cleaning Instructions

1. Paper Path Parts

- Cleaning Kit : Vacuum Cleaner and Dry rag or Soft cloth.
- Mal Affects : Dust particles from paper can be copied at worst making spot stains on the paper.
- Follow the display listed on the figure below.

2. Cleaning-Transfer Roller

- Cleaning Kit : Vacuum Cleaner and Dry rag or Soft cloth.
- Mal Affects : Dust particles from paper can be copied at worst making spot stains on the paper.
- When exchanging the Transfer Roller clean the area.
- Follow the display listed on the figure below.

3. Cleaning-Frame Inside

- Cleaning Kit : Vacuum Cleaner and Dry rag or Soft cloth.
- Mal Affects : The toner can leak and pollute the interior, affecting the print quality.
- Recommend an Engineer or highly experienced worker to clean.



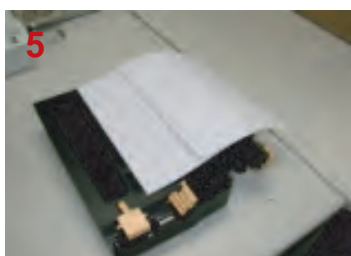
Open the Cover.



Remove the Cartridge.



Remove the Cartridge.



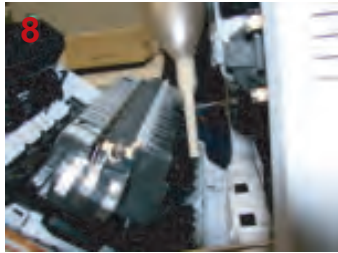
Cover with a piece of paper .
and lay it on a flat surface.



Clean the Paper Path Parts



Clean the Paper Path Parts.



Clean the Paper Path Parts.



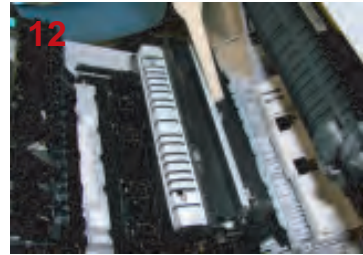
Release the Transfer Roller.



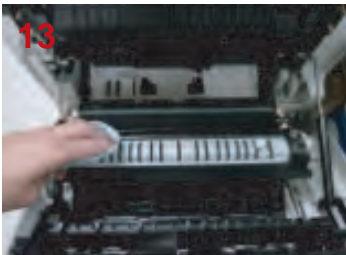
Clean the Transfer Roller Unit Parts.



Clean the Transfer Roller Unit Parts.



Clean the Transfer Roller Unit Parts.



Clean the Transfer Roller Unit Parts.



Reassemble the Transfer Roller.



Clean the Frame Inside.



Reassemble the Cartridge.



Reassemble the Cartridge.

4. Cleaning-Pickup/Forward/Retard roller

- Cleaning Kit : Dry rag or Soft cloth.
- Mal Affects : If Roller's surface will be polluted with dust particles from paper, affecting the paper feeding quality
- Follow the display listed on the figure below



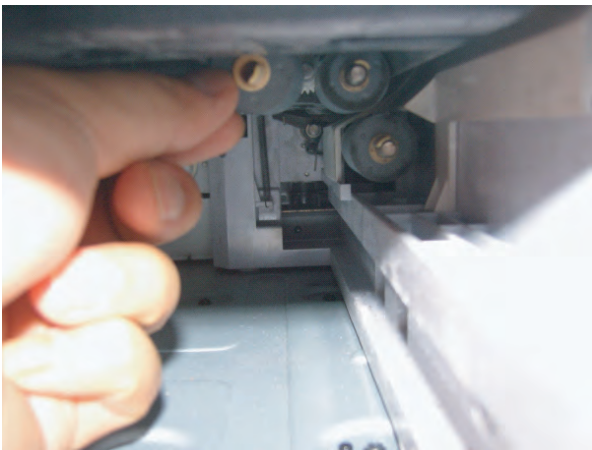
1. Take out the cassette



2. Remove the 3 pick up rollers.



3. Clean the pick up roller.



4. Reassemble the pick up roller after cleaning.



5. Reassemble the cassette.

Cleaning advisories of the parts.

1. Make sure the main cord is unplugged before the cleaning.
2. Do not use flammable liquid cleaner or spray products for cleaning.
3. Avoid making scratches while cleaning the parts.
4. Avoid direct contact by hand on the Transfer Roller.
5. Avoid exposing inner parts for a long duration of time.
The surface of OPC Drum can be affected by direct light if exposed for a long time.
(1~2 minutes is enough time for cleaning)
6. OPC surface must not be scratched.

4.1.10 Error Message

Messages appear on the Smart Panel program window or on the control panel display to indicate machine status or errors. Refer to the tables below to understand the messages meaning to correct the problem, if necessary.

Messages and their explanations are listed in alphabetical order.

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
[Side/Main] Door is open. Close it	The side door or main door is open.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open and close the door. If the message is not disappeared, check the below steps. 2. Check that the door switch is pushed. 3. Check that the Ui message is chaged by door switch action. 4. Check the door switch signal on EDC mode.
DC motor does not operate: #00-000	There is a problem in the control of DC motor unit.	Turn the machine off and turn it on again. If the problem persists, check the motor by EDC mode.
Did not supply enough toner. Please open/close door	Not supplied toner to the imaging unit.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Toner supply Motor is driving 2. Check the toner supply shutter is working out properly. 3. Check the toner supply entrance is closed. 4. Check the Toner supply pipe is closed. 5. Check the T/C sensor 6. Check TC sensor ADC of the Engine B/D
Exit door of scanner is open	DADA exit door is open	Close the DADF door.
Fax memory is almost full. Print or remove received fax job.	There is no more available fax memory. No more fax data can be received.	Delete the received fax data in the memory to secure memory.
Fax unit error: #10-002. Please turn off then on	Fax card is not installed properly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace the Fax card. 2. If the problem persists, replace the main board.
Fuser error: #02-001. Please turn off then on	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At warm up, the temperature keep up the lower temperature for regular time. 2. In case that the temperature has not reached warm up temperature after warm-up time. 3. At ready, Less than target temperature and for more than 10 sec. 4. At printing, Less than printing Ref. temp and for more than 10 sec. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Thermostat. If it is defective, replace it. 2. Check the Lamp. If it is defective , replace it. 3. Check the fuser connector. Reconnect it. 4. In case of printer input voltage lower than standard voltage. 5. Check the Thermistor. 6. If the Heat On signal is not occurred from Power supply, replace it.

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Fuser error: #02-002. Please turn off then on	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At warm up, the temperature keep up the lower temperature for regular time. 2. At warm up, after temperature checking time, more than regular temperature and for more 10 sec. 3. At standby or sleep, more than Top temp and for a few minutes. 4. At power save mode, the temperature keep up the constant for regular time. 	Replace Fuser or Fuser control board or Engine controller.
Fuser unit is not installed correctly. Install it.	The fuser unit is not installed or correctly	Install the fuser unit.
Hard disk drive error: #10-003. Please turn Off then On	Hard disk has some problems.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn off the power. Reconnect the Hard disk. And check the error message after turn on the power. 2. If the problem persists, replace the Hard disk. 3. If the problem persists, replace the main board.
Imaging unit error: #06-013~16. Please turn off then on	Imaging unit error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the T/C sensor Harness connection. 2. Check the T/C sensor output wave. 3. Check the Engine B/D TC Sensor ADC
Imaging unit is not installed. Install it	The imaging unit is not tinstalled, or the CRUM in the cartridge is not connected.	Replace the imaging unit.
Imaging unit is worn. Replace with new one	The imaging unit is at the end of its life.	Replace the imaging unit.
LSU error: #04-000. Please turn off then on	LSU motor does not operate.	After checking the LSU motor rotation noise, check the motor signal.
LSU error: #04-001. Please turn off then on	After LD on, the Laser beam detect signal is not occurred or irregular.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check the Beam Detect signal. If there is a BD signal, replace the Main board. If or not, check the LD contol signal. 2. Check the LD Power is normal. 3. If it is normal, check the light receving part.
LSU error: #04-002. Please turn off then on	LSU motor does not operate or the drive signal is abnormal.	After checking the LSU motor rotation noise, check the motor signal.
Memory failure: #10-001. Please turn off then on	At system booting, the memory is not read.	Replace the memory
Motor does not operate: #03-006. Please turn off then on	After Black OPC BLDC motor is operated, the ready signal is not occurred within 1 sec.	Take out the toner cartridge and shake it horizontally. And re-install it.

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Network cable is disconnected. Check it	Network cable is disconnected	Re-connect the Network cable. If the problem persists, replace it.
Original paper does not feed in scanner	The lead edge of the document failed to actuate the scan sensor within the correct time after actuating the registration sensor.	Remove the jammed paper in DADF
Original paper is too long for scanner. Check size	Oversized document or double-feeding of originals.	Use the proper paper.
Original paper jam in front of scanner duplex path	Paper has jammed during duplex printing in the DADF.	Remove the jammed paper in DADF
Original paper jam in front of scanner	The originals are jammed in DADF	Remove the jammed paper in DADF
Original paper jam inside of scanner duplex path	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The lead edge of the document failed to actuate the reverse stack sensor within the correct time after actuating the gate sensor. 2. The edge of the document failed to actuate the reverse stack sensor. 	Open the DADF cover and remove the jammed paper
Original paper jam inside of scanner	<p>The lead edge of the document failed to actuate the gate sensor within the correct time after actuating the scan sensor.</p> <p>When the machine is on, jammed paper is detected in the DADF.</p>	Remove the jammed paper in DADF
Original paper jam inside of scanner	After power on and initializing, the original is sensed by DADF inner sensor(Regi, Scan, Gate, Duplex, Reverse Stack)	Open the DADF cover and remove the jammed paper
Original paper jam while reversing paper in scanner	The lead edge of the document failed to actuate the duplex sensor within the correct time when the document was fed the wrong way.	Remove the jammed paper in DADF
Paper Jam at the bottom of duplex path	Paper has jammed during duplex printing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the duplex sensor. (Component Test)

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Paper Jam at the top of duplex path	Paper has jammed during duplex printing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the duplex sensor. (Component Test)
Paper Jam in exit area	Paper has jammed in the fuser area.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the Side door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Exit sensor. (Component Test ->Sensor Read -> Ex value)
Paper Jam in MP tray	Paper misfed from multi-purpose tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If pick up roller does not rotate , check the pick up clutch. 2. If Pickup roller is rotating but the paper is not feeding, replace the pick up rubber. 3. Check the feed sensor. If it is defective, replace it.
Paper Jam in tray1	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If pick up roller does not rotate , check the pick up clutch. 2. If Pickup roller is rotating but the paper is not feeding, replace the pick up rubber. 3. Check the feed sensor. If it is defective, replace it.
Paper Jam in tray2 or Paper Jam in tray2(HCF)	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and Tray2 door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Feed sensor or Hardware. 3. If the paper is feeding by rotating the pick up roller, check the clutch and clutch signal.
Paper Jam in tray2 or Paper Jam in tray2(HCF)	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and Tray2 door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Feed sensor or Hardware. 3. If the paper is feeding by rotating the pick up roller, check the clutch and clutch signal.
Paper Jam in tray2 or Paper Jam in tray2(HCF).	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If pick up roller does not rotate , check the pick up clutch. 2. If Pickup roller is rotating but the paper is not feeding, replace the pick up rubber. 3. Check the feed sensor. If it is defective, replace it.

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Paper Jam in tray3	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and Tray2/3 door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Feed sensor or Hardware. 3. If the paper is feeding by rotating the pick up roller, check the clutch and clutch signal.
Paper Jam in tray3	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and Tray2/3 door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Feed sensor or Hardware. 3. If the paper is feeding by rotating the pick up roller, check the clutch and clutch signal.
Paper Jam in tray3(HCF)	Paper has jammed in the feeding area of the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If pick up roller does not rotate , check the pick up clutch. 2. If Pickup roller is rotating but the paper is not feeding, replace the pick up rubber. 3. Check the feed sensor. If it is defective, replace it.
Paper Jam in tray4		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and Tray2/3/4 door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the Feed sensor or Hardware. 3. If the paper is feeding by rotating the pick up roller, check the clutch and clutch signal.
Paper Jam inside of duplex path	Paper has jammed during duplex printing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error message is occurred, check the duplex sensor. (Component Test)
Paper Jam inside of machine	Paper has jammed in the registration area	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the Side door and remove the jammed paper. 2. If there is not jammed paper but the error is occurred, Check the Registration Sensor (Component Test -> Sensor Read -> RG value) 3. If the paper stopped after actuating the Exit sensor, Check the Exit sensor (Component Test -> Sensor Read -> EX value)

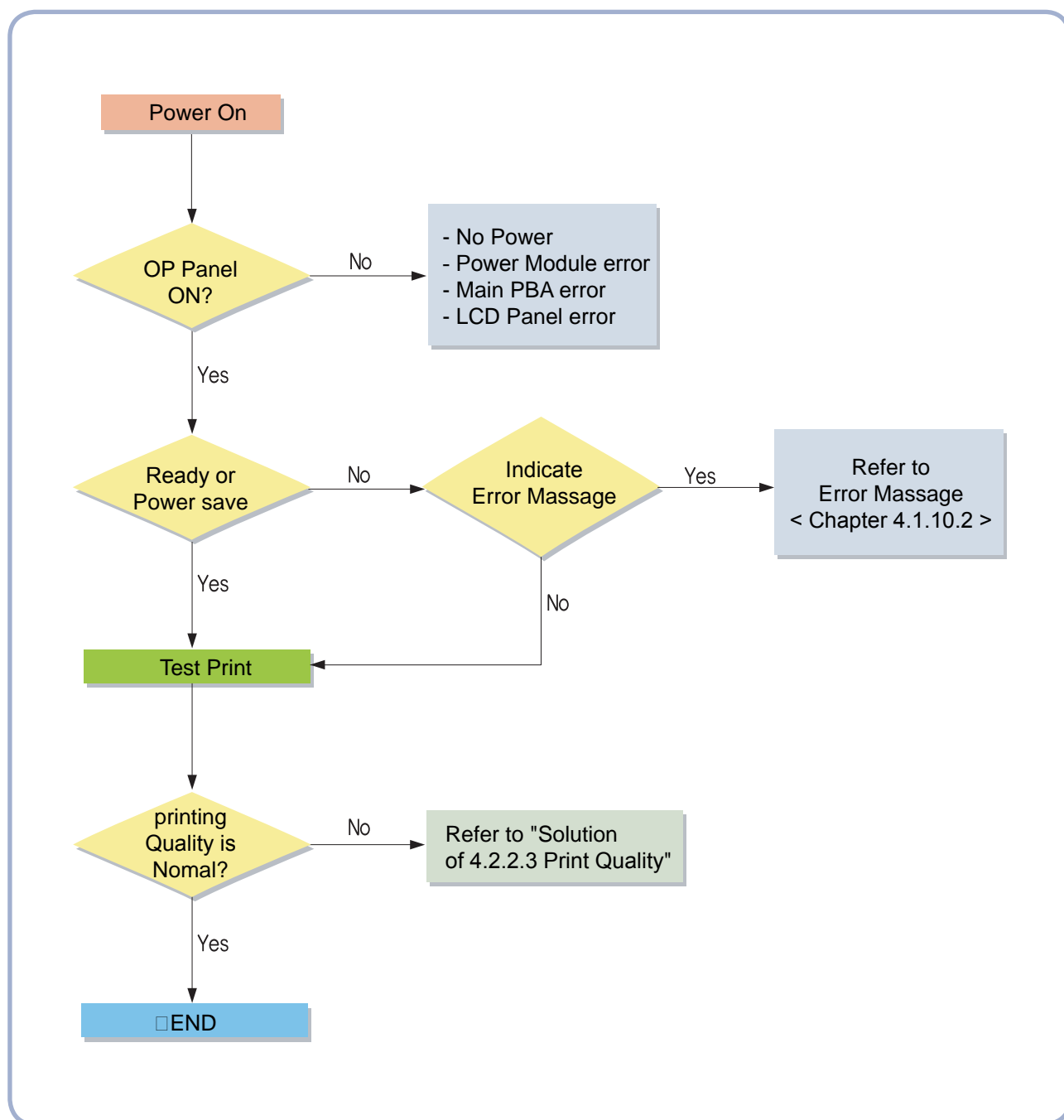
Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Scanner locking switch is locked or another problem occurred.	The CCD lock has been locked.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unlock the CCD Lock 2. Check the CCDM. Is it moving when scanning. Check the FFC cable. If there is defective, change it. 3. If the problem persists after removing the FFC cable, replace the DADF board. 4. Check the Scan-motor. If there is defective, change it.
System error: #02-000. Please turn off then on	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. At warm up, the temperature is less than reference temperature for 20 sec. 2. Abnormal ADC has occurred. 3. ZeroCross Signal detect error has occurred. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In case of meaning 1, replace the Fuser unit. 2. In case of meaning 3, replace the Engine control board or Fuser control board or SMPS.
Staple cartridge is empty. Replace it.	Stapler is run out.	Order Staple cartridge.
System error: #02-003. Please turn off then on	The communication error of the MEGA88 Micom	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the side cover and close it. 2. Check the envelope pressing device.
System error: #10-004. Please turn off then on	UI error	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. check the UI connector. 2. If the problem persists, replace the OPE board. 3. If the problem persists, replace the main board.
This IP address conflicts with an IP address already in use. Check it	The IP address is used in other place elsewhere.	Check the IP address or obtain a new IP address.
Toner cartridge is not compatible. Check user's guide	The toner cartridge you have installed is not for your machine.	Replace the toner cartridge.
Toner cartridge is not installed. Install it.	The toner cartridge is not installed or the CRUM in the cartridge is not properly connected.	Check the connection between the CRUM connector of the toner cartridge and Set.
Toner cartridge is worn. Replace with new one	The color toner cartridge has run out. The machine stops printing.	Replace the toner cartridge.
Toner cartridge: #06-006~7. Please turn off then on	Toner Cartridge Error	Replace the toner cartridge.
Toner is empty. Replace toner cartridge	The lifespan of the color toner cartridge which the arrow indicates is reached.	Replace the toner cartridge.
Toner is low. Order new toner cartridge	Toner Cartridge is almost empty.	Replace the toner cartridge.

Message	Description	Suggested solutions
Too much paper in output bin tray. Remove printed paper	The printed papers are full on the output tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Remove the paper on outbin tray. 2. Check the Outbin Full Senosr (Component Test -> Sensor Read -> OB value)
Top door of scanner is open	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. DADF door is open during DADF driving. 2. Platen Door is open during DADF driving. 	Close the DADF/Platen door
Top door of scanner is open	DADF door is open	Close the DADF door.
Tray 4 door is open. Close it	Tray4 door is open.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open and close the door. If the message is not disappeared, check the below steps. 2. Check that the door switch is pushed. 3. Check that the Ui message is chaged by door switch action. 4. Check the door switch signal on EDC mode.
Tray2 door is open. Close it or Tray2(HCF) door is open. Close it	Tray2 or Tray2 HCF door is open.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open and close the door. If the message is not disappeared, check the below steps. 2. Check that the door switch is pushed. 3. Check that the Ui message is chaged by door switch action. 4. Check the door switch signal on EDC mode.
Tray3 door is open. Close it	Tray3 door is open.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open and close the door. If the message is not disappeared, check the below steps. 2. Check that the door switch is pushed. 3. Check that the Ui message is chaged by door switch action. 4. Check the door switch signal on EDC mode.

4.2 Troubleshooting

4.2.1 Procedure of Checking the Symptoms

Before attempting to repair the printer first obtain a detailed description of the problem from the customer.



4.2.2 Solution

The following chart lists some conditions that may occur and the recommended solutions. Follow the suggested solutions until the problem is corrected. If the problem persists, please call for service.

4.2.2.1 Paper feeding problems


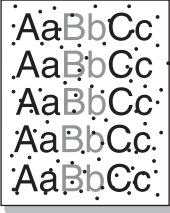

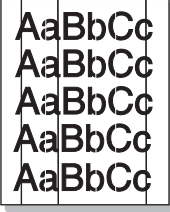
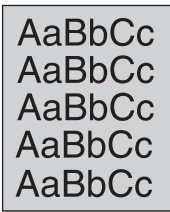
Condition	Suggested solutions
Paper is jammed during printing.	Clear the paper jam.
Paper sticks together.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the maximum paper capacity of the tray. • Make sure that you are using the correct type of paper. • Remove paper from the tray and flex or fan the paper. • Humid conditions may cause some paper to stick together.
Multiple sheets of paper do not feed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Different types of paper may be stacked in the tray. Load paper of only one type, size, and weight. • If multiple sheets have caused a paper jam, clear the paper jam.
Paper does not feed into the machine.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove any obstructions from inside the machine. • Paper has not been loaded correctly. Remove paper from the tray and reload it correctly. • There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray. • The paper is too thick. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine. • If an original does not feed into the machine, the DADF rubber pad may require to be replaced. .
The paper keeps jamming.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray. If you are printing on special materials, use the multi-purpose tray. • An incorrect type of paper is being used. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine. • There may be debris inside the machine. Open the front cover and remove the debris. • If an original does not feed into the machine, the DADF rubber pad may require to be replaced.
Transparencies stick together in the paper exit.	Use only transparencies specifically designed for laser printers. Remove each transparency as it exits from the machine.
Envelopes skew or fail to feed correctly.	Ensure that the paper guides are against both sides of the envelopes.

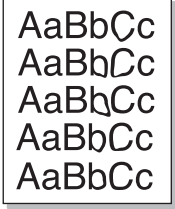


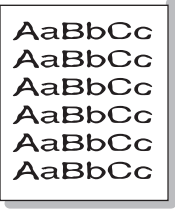
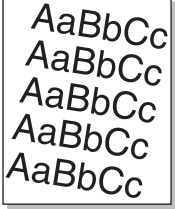
4.2.2.2 Printing problems

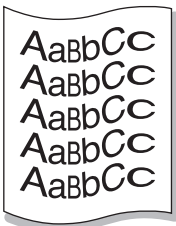
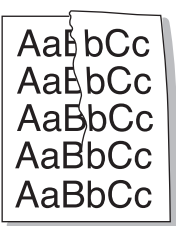
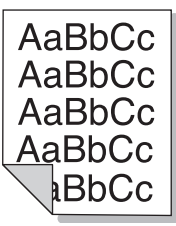

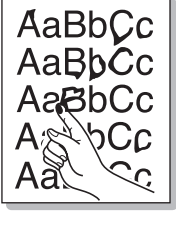
Condition	Possible cause	Suggested solutions
The machine does not print.	The machine is not receiving power.	Check the power cord connections. Check the power switch and the power source.
Paper sticks together.	The machine is not selected as the default printer.	Select Samsung SCX-6xx5 Series PCL 6 as your default printer in your Windows.
	Check the machine for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The front cover is not closed. Close the cover. • Paper is jammed. Clear the paper jam. • No paper is loaded. Load paper. • The toner cartridge is not installed. Install the toner cartridge. If a system error occurs, contact your service representative.	
	The connection cable between the computer and the machine is not connected properly.	Disconnect the printer cable and reconnect it.
	The connection cable between the computer and the machine is defective.	If possible, attach the cable to another computer that is working properly and print a job. You can also try using a different printer cable.
	The port setting is incorrect.	Check the Windows printer setting to make sure that the print job is sent to the correct port. If the computer has more than one port, make sure that the machine is attached to the correct one.
	The machine may be configured incorrectly.	Check the printer properties to ensure that all of the print settings are correct.
	The printer driver may be incorrectly installed.	Repair the printer software. See the Software Section.
	The machine is malfunctioning.	Check the display message on the control panel to see if the machine is indicating a system error.
	The document size is so big that the hard disk space of the computer is not enough to access the print job.	Get more hard disk space and print the document again.
The machine selects print materials from the wrong paper source.	The paper source selection in the printer properties may be incorrect.	For many software applications, the paper source selection is found under the Paper tab within the printer properties. Select the correct paper source. See the printer driver help screen.
A print job is extremely slow.	The job may be very complex.	Reduce the complexity of the page or try adjusting the print quality settings.
Half the page is blank.	The page orientation setting may be incorrect.	Change the page orientation in your application. See the printer driver help screen.


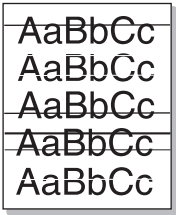
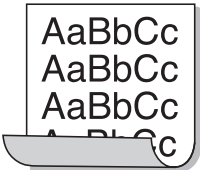
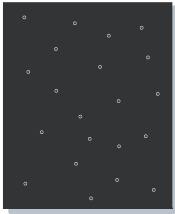
Condition	Possible cause	Suggested solutions
Half the page is blank.(continue)	The paper size and the paper size settings do not match.	Ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper in the tray. Or, ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper selection in the software application settings you use.
The machine prints, but the text is wrong, garbled, or incomplete.	The printer cable is loose or defective.	Disconnect the printer cable and reconnect. Try a print job that you have already printed successfully. If possible, attach the cable and the machine to another computer and try a print job that you know works. Finally, try a new printer cable.
	The wrong printer driver was selected.	Check the application's printer selection menu to ensure that your machine is selected.
	The software application is malfunctioning.	Try printing a job from another application.
	The operating system is malfunctioning.	Exit Windows and reboot the computer. Turn the machine off and then back on again.
Pages print, but are blank.	The toner cartridge is defective or out of toner.	Redistribute the toner, if necessary. If necessary, replace the toner cartridge.
	The file may have blank pages.	Check the file to ensure that it does not contain blank pages.
	Some parts, such as the controller or the board, may be defective.	
The printer does not print PDF file correctly. Some parts of graphics, text, or illustrations are missing.	Incompatibility between the PDF file and the Acrobat products.	Printing the PDF file as an image may enable the file to print. Turn on Print As Image from the Acrobat printing options. Note: <i>It Will take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image.</i>
Your machine has an odd smell during initial use.	The oil used to protect the fuser is evaporating.	After printing about 100 color pages, there will be no more smell. It is a temporary issue.
The print quality of photos is not good. Images are not clear.	The resolution of the photo is very low.	Reduce the photo size. If you increase the photo size in the software application, the resolution will be reduced.
The machine prints, but the text is wrong, garbled, or incomplete.	If you are under the DOS environment, the font setting for your machine may be set incorrectly.	Suggested solutions: Change the language setting.
Before printing, the machine emits vapor near the output tray.	Using damp paper can cause vapor during printing.	This is not a problem. Just keep printing.

4.2.2.3 Printing quality problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
<p>Light or faded print</p> 	<p>If a vertical white streak or faded area appears on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The toner supply is low. You may be able to temporarily extend the toner cartridge life. If this does not improve the print quality, install a new toner cartridge. • The paper may not meet paper specifications; for example, the paper is too moist or too rough. • If the entire page is light, the print resolution setting is too low or the toner save mode is on. Adjust the print resolution and turn the toner save mode off. • A combination of faded or smeared defects may indicate that the toner cartridge needs cleaning. • The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty.
<p>Toner specks</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The paper may not meet specifications; for example, the paper is too moist or too rough. • The transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine. • The paper path may need cleaning.
<p>Dropouts</p> 	<p>If faded areas, generally rounded, occur randomly on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A single sheet of paper may be defective. Try reprinting the job. • The moisture content of the paper is uneven or the paper has moist spots on its surface. Try a different brand of paper. • The paper lot is bad. The manufacturing processes can cause some areas to reject toner. Try a different kind or brand of paper.
<p>Vertical lines</p> 	<p>If black vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The surface(drum part) of the imaging unit inside the machine has probably been scratched. Remove the imaging unit and install a new one. <p>If white vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty. Clean the LSU.
<p>Gray background</p> 	<p>If the amount of background shading becomes unacceptable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change to a lighter weight paper. • Check the machine's environment: very dry (low humidity) or high humidity (higher than 80% RH) conditions can increase the amount of background shading. • Remove the old drum and toner cartridge and then, install a new one.

Condition	Suggested solutions
<p>Toner smear</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the inside of the machine. • Check the paper type and quality. • Remove the drum and toner cartridge and then, install a new one.
<p>Vertical repetitive defects</p> 	<p>If marks repeatedly appear on the printed side of the page at even intervals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The imaging unit may be damaged. If a repetitive mark occurs on the page, run a cleaning sheet through several times to clean the cartridge; After the printout, if you still have the same problems, remove the imaging unit and then, install a new one. • Parts of the machine may have toner on them. If the defects occur on the back of the page, the problem will likely correct itself after a few more pages. • The fusing assembly may be damaged.
<p>Background scatter</p> 	<p>Background scatter results from bits of toner randomly distributed on the printed page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The paper may be too damp. Try printing with a different batch of paper. Do not open packages of paper until necessary so that the paper does not absorb too much moisture. • If background scatter occurs on an envelope, change the printing layout to avoid printing over areas that have overlapping seams on the reverse side. Printing on seams can cause problems. • If background scatter covers the entire surface area of a printed page, adjust the print resolution through your software application or the printer properties.
<p>Misformed characters</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If characters are improperly formed and producing hollow images, the paper stock may be too slick. Try a different paper. • If characters are improperly formed and producing a wavy effect, the scanner unit may need service.
<p>Page skew</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the paper is loaded properly. • Check the paper type and quality. • Ensure that the paper or other material is loaded correctly and the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack.

Condition	Suggested solutions
<p>Curl or wave</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the paper is loaded properly. • Check the paper type and quality. Both high temperature and humidity can cause paper curl. • Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.
<p>Wrinkles or creases</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the paper is loaded properly. • Check the paper type and quality. • Turn over the stack of paper in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.
<p>Back of printouts are dirty</p> 	<p>Check for leaking toner. Clean the inside of the machine.</p>
<p>Black pages</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The imaging unit may not be installed properly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it. • The imaging unit may be defective and need replacing. Remove the drum cartridge and install a new one. • The machine may require repair.
<p>Loose toner</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the inside of the machine. • Check the paper type and quality. • Remove the imaging unit and then, install a new one. • If the problem persists, the machine may require repair.

Condition	Suggested solutions
<p>Character Voids</p> 	<p>Character voids are white areas within parts of characters that should be solid black:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you are using transparencies, try another type of transparency. Because of the composition of transparencies, some character voids are normal. • You may be printing on the wrong surface of the paper. Remove the paper and turn it around. • The paper may not meet paper specifications.
<p>Horizontal stripes</p> 	<p>If horizontally aligned black streaks or smears appear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The imaging unit may be installed improperly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it. • The imaging unit may be defective. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one. • If the problem persists, the machine may require repair.
<p>Curl</p> 	<p>If the printed paper is curled or paper does not feed into the machine:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn over the stack of paper in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.
<p>White Spots</p> 	<p>White spots appears on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The paper is too rough and a lot of dirt from a paper falls to the inner devices within the machine, so the transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine. • The paper path may need cleaning.
<p>An unknown image repetitively appears on a next few sheets or loose toner, light print, or contamination occurs.</p>	<p>You printer is probably being used at an altitude of 2,500 m(8,200 ft) or above. The high altitude may affect the print quality such as loose toner or light imaging. You can set this option through Printer Settings Utility or Printer Tab in printer driver's properties. Refer to the Software Section for detail.</p>

4.2.2.4 Copying problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
Copies are too light or too dark.	Use Light and Dark arrows to darken or lighten the background of the copies.
Smears, lines, marks, or spots appears on copies.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If defects are on the original, press Light and Dark arrows to lighten the background of your copies. • If no defects are on the original, clean the scan unit.
Copy image is skewed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the original is face down on the scanner glass or face up in the DADF. • Check that the copy paper is loaded correctly.
Blank copies print out.	Ensure that the original is face down on the scanner glass or face up in the DADF.
Image rubs off the copy easily.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace the paper in the tray with paper from a new package. • In high humidity areas, do not leave paper in the machine for extended periods of time.
Frequent copy paper jams occur.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fan the stack of paper, then turn it over in the tray. Replace the paper in the tray with a fresh supply. Check/adjust the paper guides, if necessary. • Ensure that the paper is the proper paper weight. 80 g/m² bond paper is recommended. • Check for copy paper or pieces of copy paper remaining in the machine after a paper jam has been cleared.
Toner cartridge produces fewer copies than expected before running out of toner.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Your originals may contain pictures, solids, or heavy lines. For example, your originals may be forms, newsletters, books, or other documents that use more toner. • The machine may be turned on and off frequently. • The scanner lid may be left open while copies are being made.

4.2.2.5 Scanning problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
The scanner does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that you place the original to be scanned face down on the scanner glass, or face up in the DADF. • There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Prescan function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate. • Check that the USB or parallel cable is connected properly. • Make sure that the USB or parallel cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable. • If you are using a parallel cable, ensure that it is compliant with IEEE 1284 standards. • Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check scan setting in the SmarThru Configuration or the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
The unit scans very slowly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the machine is printing received data. If so, scan the document after the received data has been printed. • Graphics are scanned more slowly than text. • Communication speed slows in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image. Set your computer to the ECP printer mode through BIOS setting. It will help to increase the speed. For details about how to set BIOS, refer to your computer user's guide.
<p>Message appears on your computer screen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want." • "Port is being used by another program." • "Port is Disabled." • "Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again." • "Invalid handle." • "Scanning has failed." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There may be a copying or printing job in progress. When that job is complete, try your job again. • The Selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again. • The printer cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off. You must use a parallel cable that supports IEEE 1284 bi-directional communications. • The scanner driver is not installed or the operating environment is not set up properly. • Ensure that the machine is properly connected and the power is on, Then restart your computer. • The USB cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off.

4.2.2.6 Network Scan problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
I cannot find a scanned image file.	You can check the scanned file's destination in the Advanced page in the Network Scan program's Properties screen.
I cannot find the scanned image file after scanning.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the scanned file's application is on your computer. • Check Send image immediately to the specified folder using an associated default application in the Advanced page in the Network Scan program's Properties screen to open the scanned image immediately after scanning.
I forgot my ID and PIN.	Check your ID and PIN in the Server page in the Network Scan program's Properties screen.
I cannot view the Help file.	To view the Help file, you need to have Internet Explorer 4 service pack 2 or above.
I cannot use the Samsung Network Scan Manager	Check your operating system. Supporting operating systems are Windows 2000/XP/2003/Vista.

4.2.2.7 Fax problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
The machine is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. • Ensure that there is power to the electrical outlet.
No dial tone sounds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the phone line is connected properly. • Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in memory do not dial correctly.	Make sure that the numbers are stored in memory correctly. Print a Phone Book list.
The original does not feed into the machine.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that the paper is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the original is the right size, not too thick or thin • Make sure that the DADF is firmly closed. • The DADF rubber pad may need to be replaced.
Faxes are not received automatically.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The receiving mode should be set to Fax. • Make sure that there is paper in the tray. • Check to see if the display shows any error message. If it does, clear the problem.
The machine does not send.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure that the original is loaded in the DADF or on the scanner glass. • Sending should show up on the display. • Check the fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.

Condition	Suggested solutions
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is of poor-quality.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. • A noisy phone line can cause line errors. • Check your machine by making a copy. • The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.
There are lines on the originals you send.	Check your scan unit for marks and clean it.
The machine dials a number, but a connection with the other fax machine fails.	<p>The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls.</p> <p>Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.</p>
Faxes do not store in memory.	There may not be enough memory space to store the fax. If the display shows the Memory Full message, delete from memory any faxes you no longer need and then try again to store the fax.
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. For details about paper settings.

4.2.2.8 Common Windows problems

Condition	Suggested solutions
“File in Use” message appears during installation.	Exit all software applications. Remove all software from the StartUp Group, then restart Windows. Reinstall the printer driver.
“General Protection Fault”, “Exception OE”, “Spool32”, or “Illegal Operation” messages appear.	Close all other applications, reboot Windows and try printing again.
“Fail To Print”, “A printer timeout error occurred.” messages appear.	These messages may appear during printing. Just keep waiting until the machine finishes printing. If the message appears in standby mode or after printing has been completed, check the connection and/or whether an error has occurred.

4.2.2.9 Common PostScript problems

The following situations are PS language specific and may occur when several printer languages are being used.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
PostScript file cannot be printed.	The PostScript driver may not be installed correctly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Install the PostScript driver, referring to the Software Section. • Print a configuration page and verify that the PS version is available for printing. • If the problem persists,
“Limit Check Error” message appears.	The print job was too complex.	You might need to reduce the complexity of the page or install more memory.
A PostScript error page prints.	The print job may not be PostScript.	Make sure that the print job is a PostScript job. Check to see whether the software application expected a setup or PostScript header file to be sent to the machine.
The optional tray is not selected in the driver.	The printer driver has not been configured to recognize the optional tray.	Open the PostScript driver properties, select the Device Settings tab, and set the Tray option of the Installable Options section to Installed.
The machine does not staple correctly when printing more than one copy from Acrobat Reader with a collate option. (only in Window/Macintosh)	It might take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image.	Try to print with the latest Adobe Reader program or print with turning on “Print as Image” option from Acrobat printing options. It might take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image.
The machine does not staple correctly when printing more than one copy with a collate option. (only in Linux)	Turning off collation options on applications (including CUPS pstops collation option) may solve this problem.	If you want to use the collation option, go to printer driver’s advanced option and turn the collation on.

4.2.2.10 Common Linux problems

Condition	Suggested Solutions
The machine does not print	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the printer driver is installed in your system. Open Unified Driver configurator and switch to the Printers tab in Printers configuration window to look at the list of available printers. Make sure that your machine is displayed on the list. If not, invoke Add new printer wizard to set up your device. • Check if the printer is started. Open Printers configuration and select your machine on the printers list. Look at the description in the Selected printer pane. If its status contains “(stopped)” string, press the Start button. After that normal operation of the printer should be restored. The “stopped” status might be activated when some problems in printing occurred. For instance, this could be an attempt to print document when port is claimed by a scanning application. • Check if the port is not busy. Since functional components of MFP (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different “consumer” application to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other “consumer” will encounter “device busy” response. You should open ports configuration and select the port assigned to your printer. In the Selected port pane you can see if the port is occupied by some other application. If this is the case, you should wait for completion of the current job or should press Release port button, if you are sure that the present owner is not functioning properly. • Check if your application has special print option such as “-oraw”. If “-oraw” is specified in the command line parameter then remove it to print properly. For Gimp front-end, select “print” -> “Setup printer” and edit command line parameter in the command item. • The CUPS (Common Unix Printing System) version distributed with SuSE Linux 9.2 (cups-1.1.21) has a problem with ipp (Internet Printing Protocol) printing. Use the socket printing instead of ipp or install later version of CUPS (cups-1.1.22 or higher).
Some color images come out all black.	<p>This is a known bug in Ghostscript (until GNU Ghostscript version 7.05) when the base color space of the document is indexed color space and it is converted through CIE color space. Because Postscript uses CIE color space for Color Matching System, you should upgrade Ghostscript on your system to at least GNU Ghostscript version 7.06 or later. You can find recent Ghostscript versions at www.ghostscript.com.</p>
Some color images come out in unexpected color.	<p>This is a known bug in Ghostscript (until GNU Ghostscript version 7.xx) when the base color space of the document is indexed RGB color space and it is converted through CIE color space. Because Postscript uses CIE color space for Color Matching System, you should upgrade Ghostscript on your system to at least GNU Ghostscript version 8.xx or later. You can find recent Ghostscript versions at www.ghostscript.com.</p>

Condition	Suggested Solutions
<p>The machine does not print whole pages and its output is half page printed.</p>	<p>It is a known problem that occurs when a color printer is used on version 8.51 or earlier of Ghostscript, 64-bit Linux OS, and reported to bugs.ghostscript.com as Ghostscript Bug 688252.</p> <p>The problem is solved in AFPL Ghostscript v. 8.52 or above. Download the latest version of AFPL Ghostscript from http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/ and install it to solve this problem.</p>
<p>I cannot scan via Gimp Front-end.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if Gimp Front-end has “Xsane: Device dialog.” on the “Acquire” menu. If not, you should install Xsane plug-in for Gimp on the your computer. You can find Xsane plug-in package for Gimp on Linux distribution CD or Gimp home page. For the detail information, refer to the Help for Linux distribution CD or Gimp Front-end application. <p>If you wish to use other kind of scan application, refer to the Help for application.</p>
<p>I encounter error “Cannot open port device file” when printing a document.</p>	<p>Avoid changing print job parameters (via LPR GUI, for example) while a print job is in progress. Known versions of CUPS server break the print job whenever print options are changed and then try to restart the job from the beginning. Since Unified Linux Driver locks port while printing, the abrupt termination of the driver keeps the port locked and therefore unavailable for subsequent print jobs. If this situation occurred, try to release the port.</p>
<p>The machine does not appear on the scanners list.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if your machine is attached to your computer. Make sure that it is connected properly via the USB port and is turned on. • Check if the scanner driver for your machine is installed in your system. Open Unified Driver configurator, switch to Scanners configuration, then press Drivers. Make sure that driver with a name corresponding to your machine’s name is listed in the window. <p>Check if the port is not busy. Since functional components of MFP (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different “consumer” application to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other “consumer” will encounter “device busy” response. This can usually happen while starting scan procedure, and appropriate message box appears.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To identify the source of the problem, you should open ports configuration and select the port assigned to your scanner. port’s symbol /dev/mfp0 corresponds to LP:0 designation displayed in the scanners’ options, /dev/mfp1 relates to LP:1 and so on. USB ports start at /dev/mfp4, so scanner on USB:0 relates to /dev/mfp4 respectively and so forth sequentially. In the Selected port pane you can see if the port is occupied by some other application. If this is the case, you should wait for completion of the current job or should press Release port button, if you are sure that the present port’s owner is not functioning properly.

Condition	Suggested Solutions
The machine does not scan.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if a document is loaded into the machine. • Check if your machine is connected to the computer. Make sure if it is connected properly if I/O error is reported while scanning. • Check if the port is not busy. Since functional components of MFP (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different “consumer” application to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other “consumer” will encounter “device busy” response. This can usually happen while starting scan procedure, and appropriate message box will be displayed. To identify the source of the problem, you should open ports configuration and select the port assigned to your scanner. port’s symbol /dev/mfp0 corresponds to LP:0 designation displayed in the scanners’ options, /dev/mfp1 relates to LP:1 and so on. USB ports start at /dev/mfp4, so scanner on USB:0 relates to /dev/mfp4 respectively and so forth sequentially. In the Selected port pane you can see if the port is occupied by some other application. If this is the case, you should wait for completion of the current job or should press Release port button, if you are sure that the present port’s owner is not functioning properly.

4.2.2.11 Common Macintosh problems

Condition	Suggested Solutions
The printer does not print PDF file correctly. Some parts of graphics, text, or illustrations are missing.	Incompatibility between the PDF file and the Acrobat products: Printing the PDF file as an image may solve this problem. Turn on Print As Image from the Acrobat printing options.
The document has printed, but the print job has not disappeared from the spooler in Mac OS 10.3.2.	Update your Mac OS to OS 10.3.3. or higher.
Some letters are not displayed normally during the Cover page printing.	This problem is caused because Mac OS can not create the font during the Cover page printing. English alphabet and numbers are displayed normally at the Cover page.
When printing a document in Macintosh with Acrobat Reader 6.0 or higher, colors print incorrectly.	Make sure that the resolution setting in your printer driver matches the one in Acrobat Reader.

4.2.2.12 General solution

Error	LCD NOT DISPLAY
[Description]	Engine is warming up properly but LCD does not display anything on.
[Wrong Part]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Main Controller 2. OPE 3. SMPS
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check 24V on Main controller. 2. If 24V from Main controller is normal, Check the CCFL inverter harness on OPE_Main. 3. If not, check the F 71 on SMPS.
[Solution]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 24V power and CCFL inverter harness connection are on normal, replace OPE_Main first and retry. 2. Keep on problem with 24V on, replace the Main controller. 3. Replace the SMPS.

Error	LSU Error
[Description]	LSU sync Error displays on LCD
[Wrong Part]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Drum Cartridge 2. Main Controller 3. Cover Open Connector
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Check LSU 5V/24VS 2. Main Controller LSU Part defect 3. Micro Switch Harness
[Solution]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace Drum Cartridge and retry 2. Replace Main Controller. 3. Replace Micro Switch Assy

Error	Cover Open
[Description]	The cover open message displays on even when the print cover is closed.
[Wrong Part]	1. Hook Lever in the side cover / Micro Switch
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Hook Lever in the top cover may be defective. 2. Check the CN8-4 on Main B°ØD and the micro switch on the rear side of set.
[Solution]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Replace the hook lever, if defective. 2. Check Cover Open harness. Replace Cover Open S/W 3. Replace the Main Control board.

Error	Fuser
[Description]	Fuser Error
[Wrong Part]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Thermostat Open 2. Check IH Fan 3. IH PBA 4. Main PBA
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Detach AC connector and measure the resistance between them whether it is below 10ohm. If it is over mega ohm, replace it. 2. Replace IH Fan. 3. Replace IH PBA 4. Replace main PBA.

Error	Vertical Black Line and Black Band
[Description]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Straight thin black vertical line occurs in the printing. 2. Dark black vertical band occur in the printing.
[Wrong Part]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cleaning blade 2. Charge roller
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Damaged cleaning blade in the drum cartridge 2. Contamination of the charge roller in the drum cartridge
[Solution]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If causes 1 and 2 occur in the drum Cartridge, replace the drum cartridge and try again to print out.

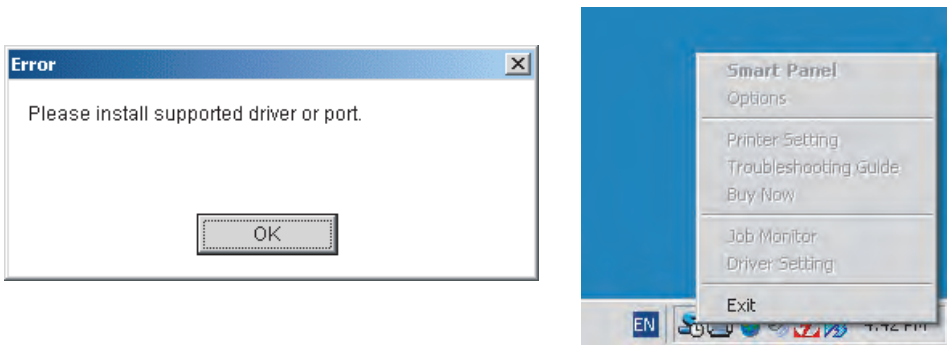
Error	Vertical White Line
[Description]	White vertical voids in the image.
[Wrong Part]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. LSU 2. Drum Cartridge
[Check and Cause]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Foreign matter stuck onto the window of internal lenses of LSU mirror. 2. Foreign matter or toner particles between the magnetic roller and doctor blade. 3. It may occur when Burr and foreign substances are on the window of the drum cartridge frame. 4. If the fuser is defective, voids occur periodically at the top of a black image.
[Solution]	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Foreign matter stuck onto the window : Clean the LSU window with recommended cleaner(IPA) Clean the window with a clean cotton swab. 2. Foreign matter in the LSU : Open the cover of LSU and clean with a cotton swab on the surface of the reflex mirror. 3. No 3. : Remove the foreign matter and burr of the exposure window. (the drum cartridge frame) 4. No. 4. : Open the front cover and check ribs that corresponds to the position of the voids. Remove if found. 5. If the problems are not solved, replace the drum cartridge.

Error	Dark Image or black
[Description]	The printed image is dark.
[Wrong Part]	1. HVPS
[Check and Cause]	1. No charge voltage in the HVPS board. 2. Charge voltage is not turned on due to the bad contacts between power supply in the side of the drum cartridge and charge terminal of HVPS.
[Solution]	1. Clean the high voltage charge terminal. 2. Check the state of the connector which connects the engine board and HVPS. 3. Replace the HVPS if not solved by the above direction 1 and 2.

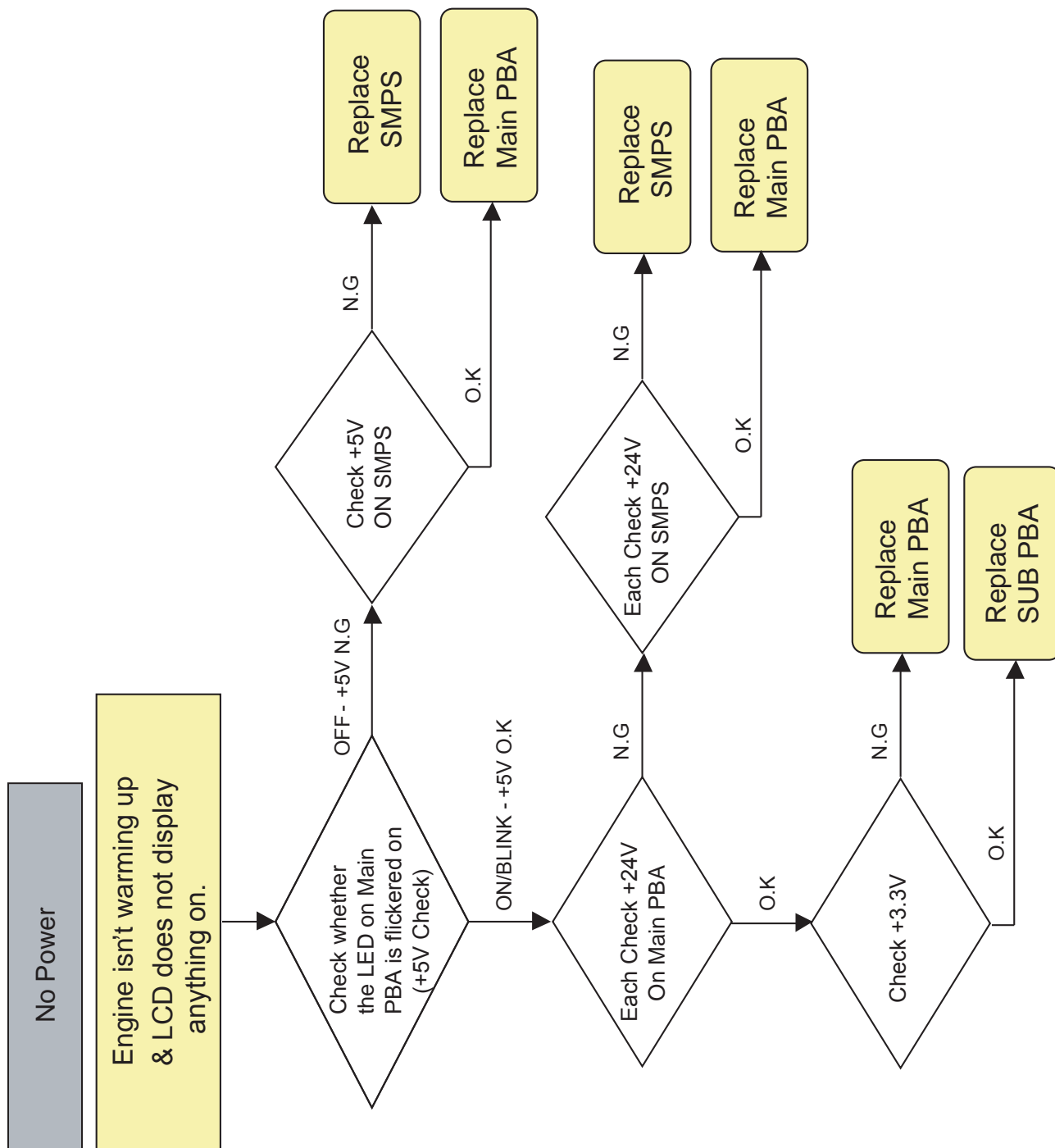
Error	Background
[Description]	Light dark background appears in whole area of the printing.
[Wrong Part]	1. HVPS 2. Low Q/M of developer (High T/C of developer)
[Check and Cause]	1. Does recycle paper be used? 2. Has the life of the developer(carrier+toner) ended? 3. Is the HVPS normal?
[Solution]	1. The Drum cartridge is basically designed to print 60K sheets with simplex mode. If it prints more than 60K sheets, (around 50K sheets) a background can be occurred. 2. The drum cartridge is not guaranteed if using recycle paper. 3. Replace the drum cartridge when the life of it has been ended. 4. Clean the bushing part of the transfer roller. 5. If the problem is still not solved, replace the drum cartridge.

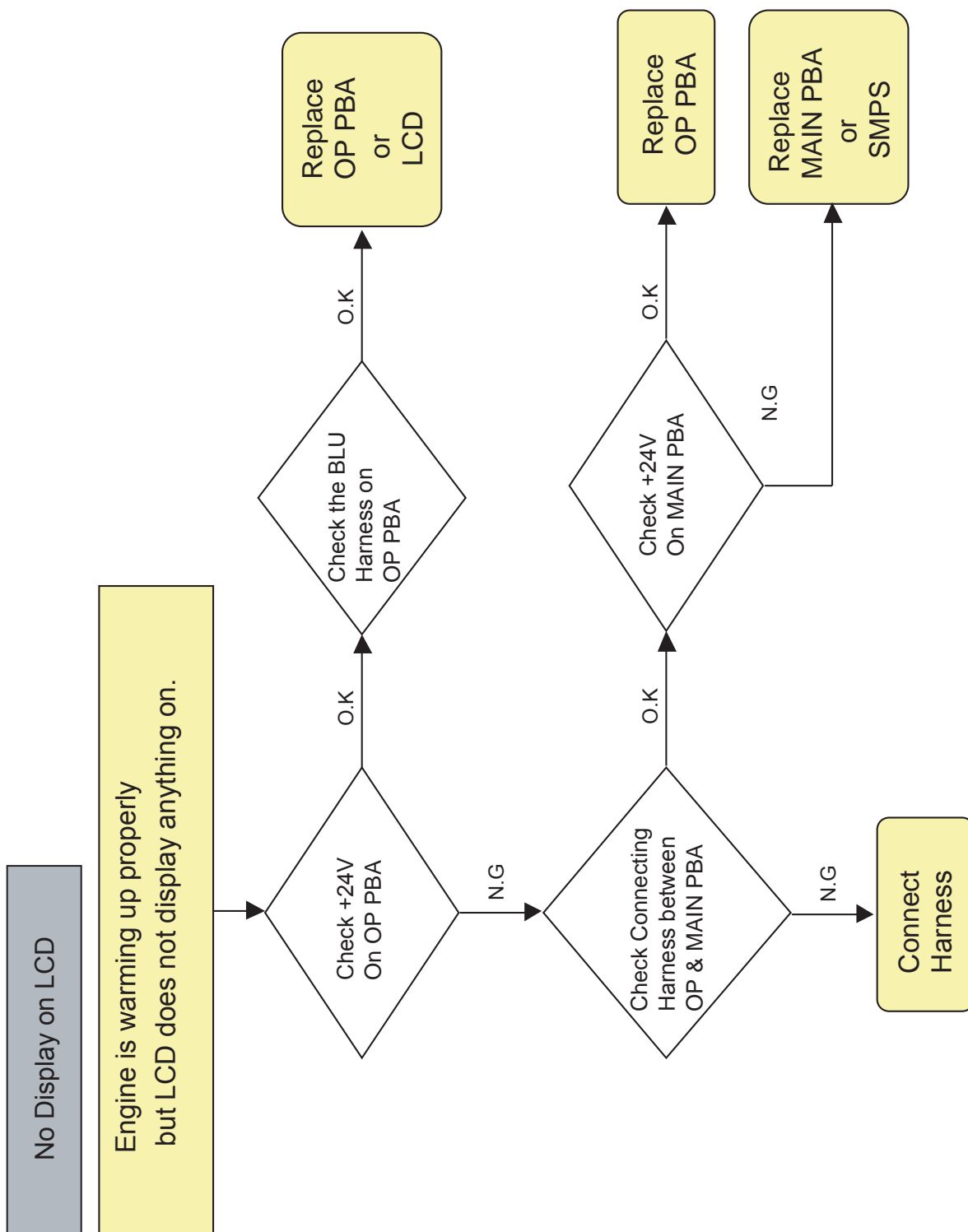
Error	Toner Supply Error
[Description]	The poor supply of toner in the printing.
[Wrong Part]	1. Toner feed roller 2. Toner supply DC motor
[Check and Cause]	1. The state of rotation of toner feed roller 2. Is the toner supply motor normal?
[Solution]	1. Replace the toner cartridge. 2. Replace the toner supply motor.

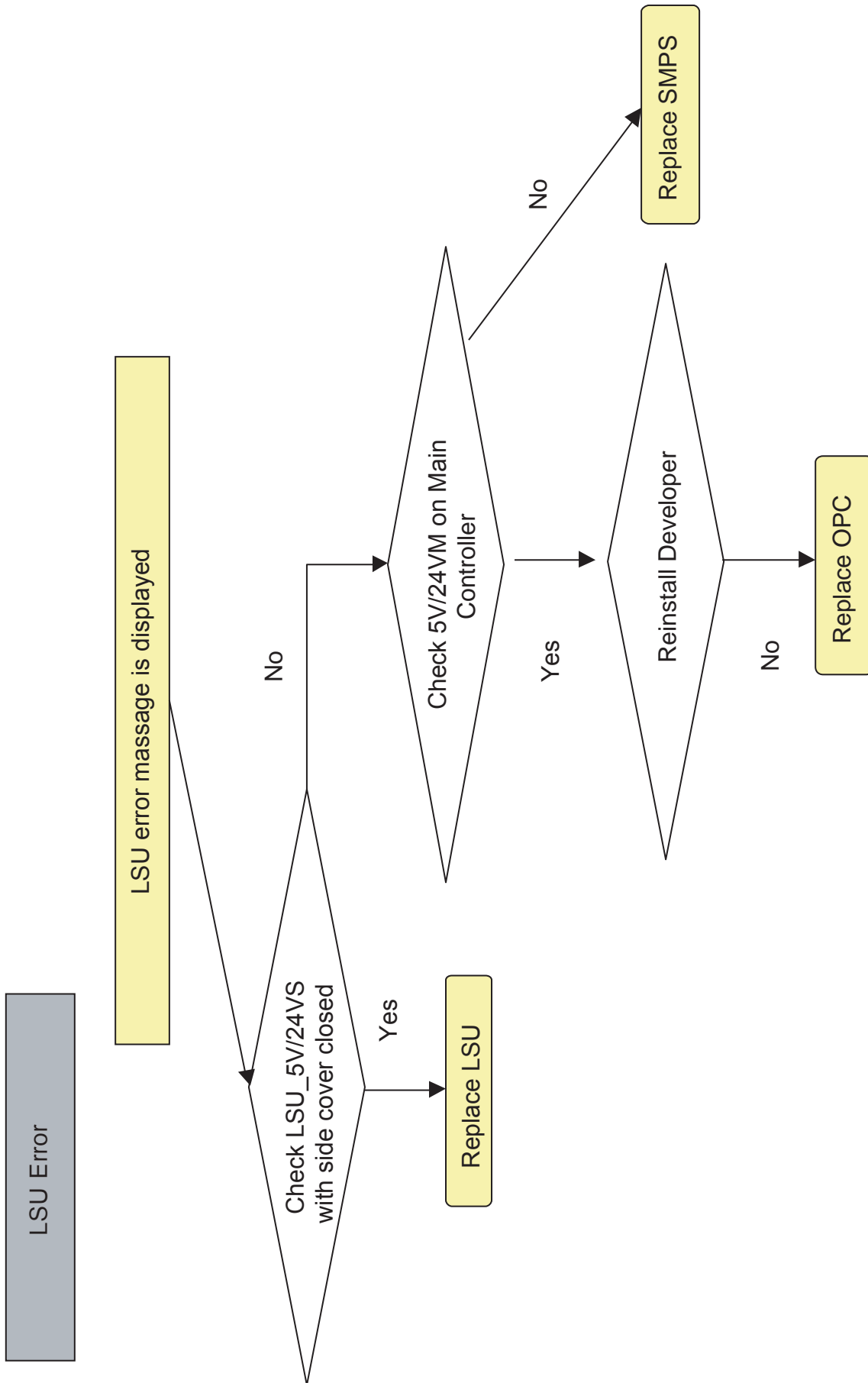
Error	RF_ID
[Description]	Drum Cartridge and Toner Container can't be detected
[Wrong Part]	1. RF_ID Coupler and Tag 2. Main PBA
[Check and Cause]	1. Check RF_ID Tag attached on Drum and Toner 2. Check the DEVE Harness and RF_ID coupler 3. Check Main PBA
[Solution]	1. Replace Drum cartridge and Toner container 2. Replace DEVE Harness and RF_ID coupler. 3. Replace Main PBA

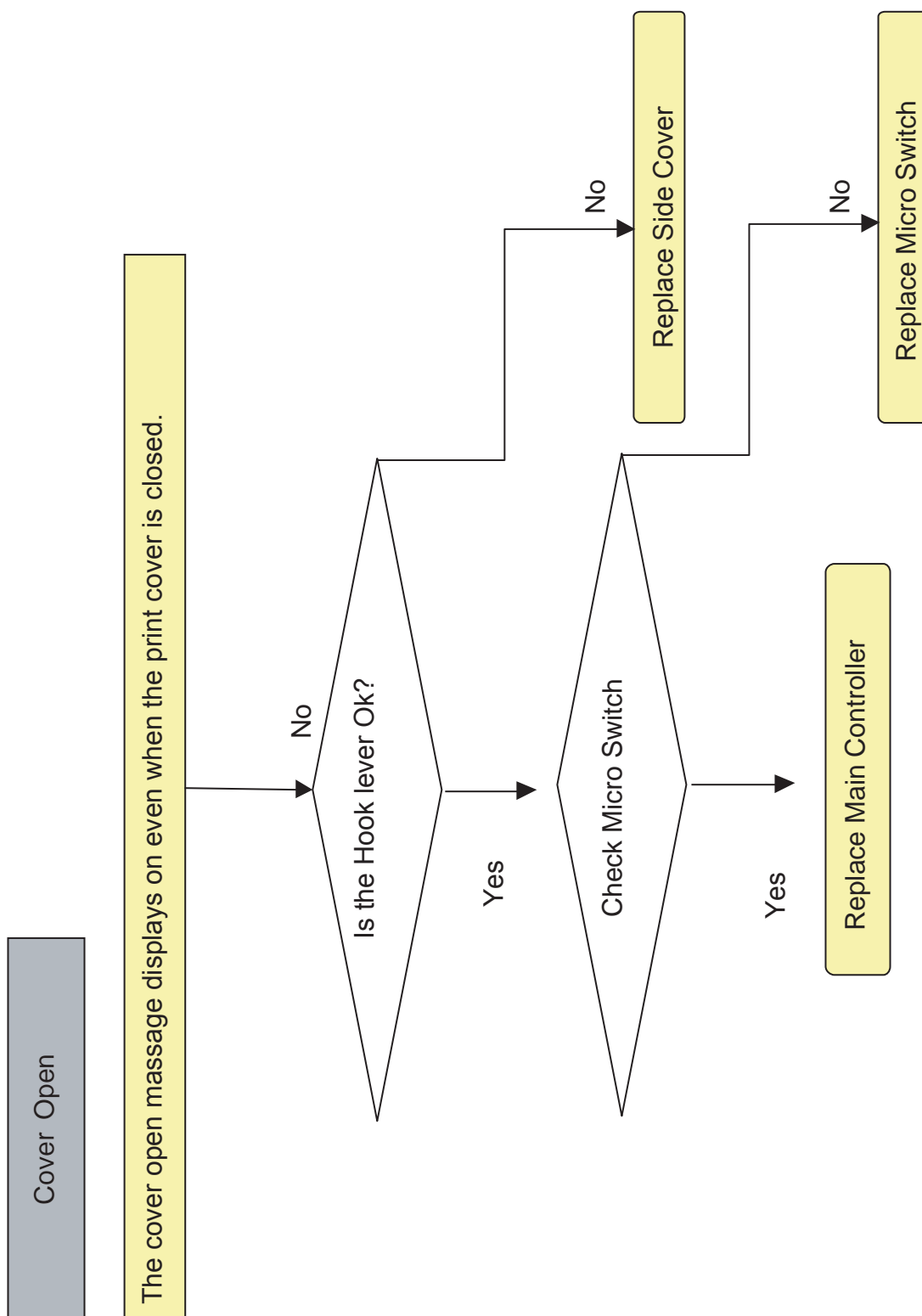
Error	Smart Panel not support
[Description]	Smart Panel only supports USB and Network port.
[Check and Cause]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If file is printer port, smart panel show below warning message when user try to launch smart panel. Also printer name is not displayed in the menu of tray icon.
	 <p>The image shows two screenshots. On the left is an error dialog box titled 'Error' with the message 'Please install supported driver or port.' and an 'OK' button. On the right is a screenshot of the 'Smart Panel' menu, which includes options like 'Options', 'Printer Setting', 'Troubleshooting Guide', 'Buy Now', 'Job Monitor', 'Driver Setting', and 'Exit'. The background shows a Windows taskbar with the system tray.</p>
[Solution]	If IP address or USB port name for model A is linked to printer port of model B, Smart Panel for model B works improperly because model B is not connected.

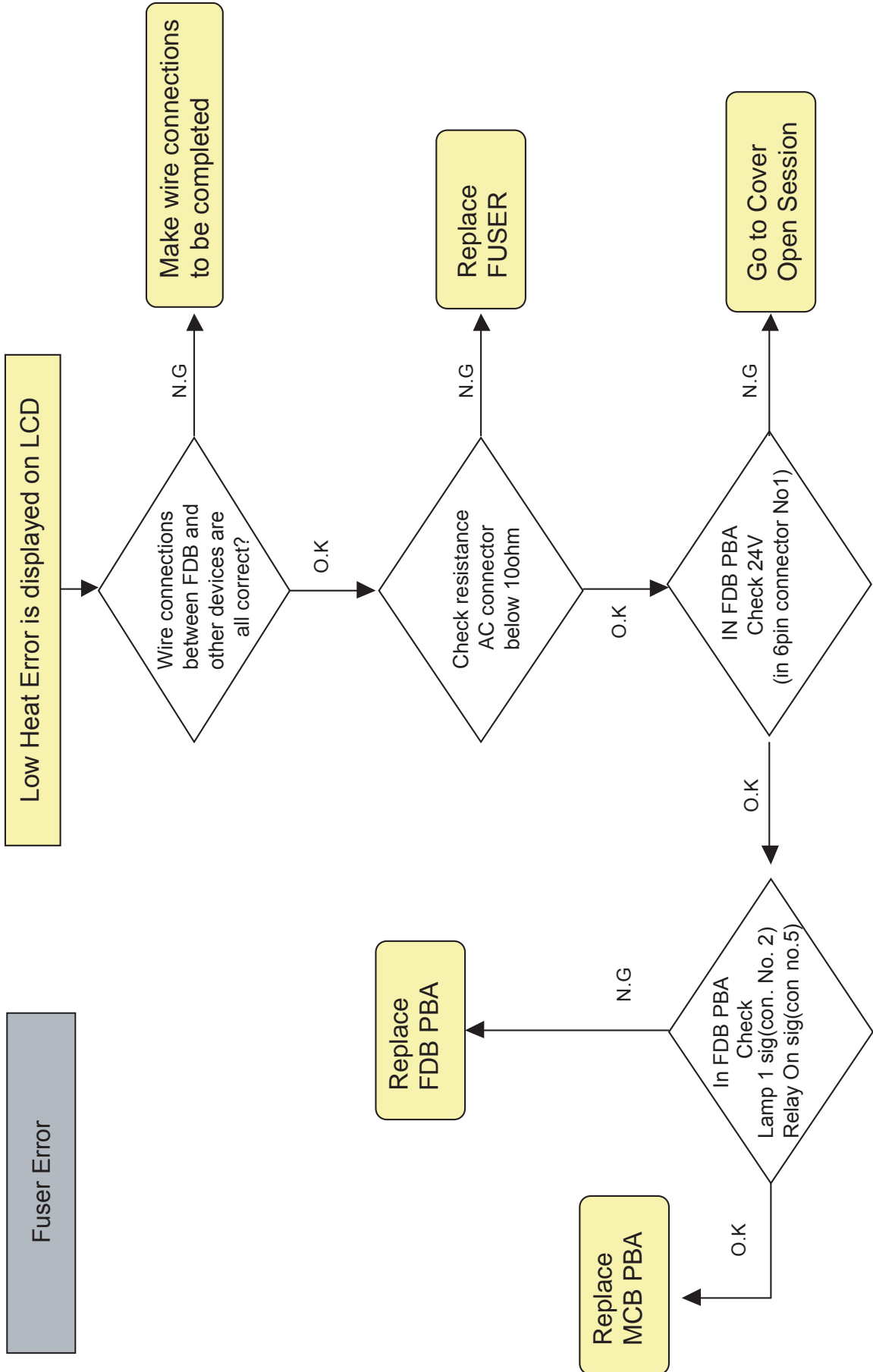
4.2.2.13 Troubleshooting flowchart

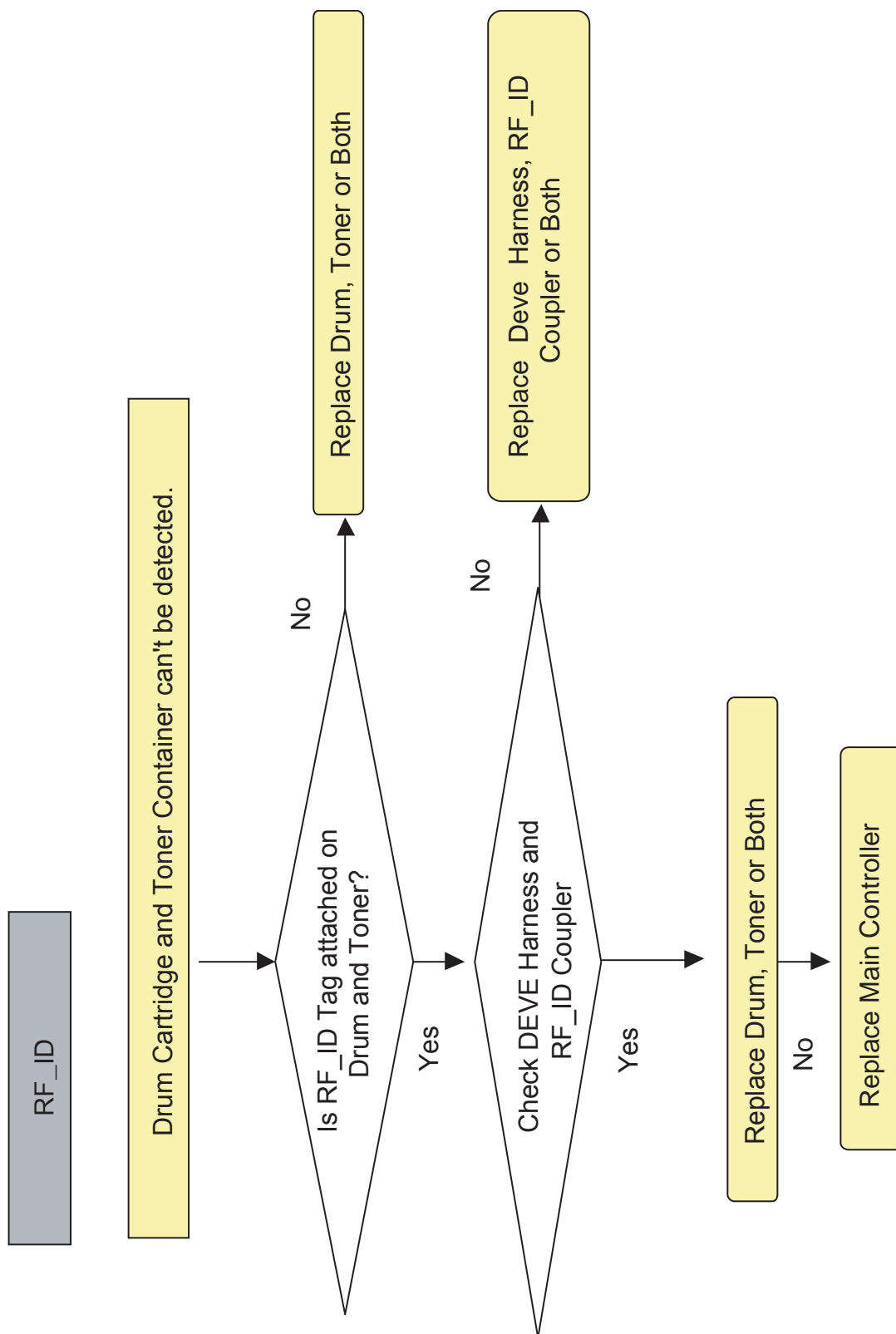


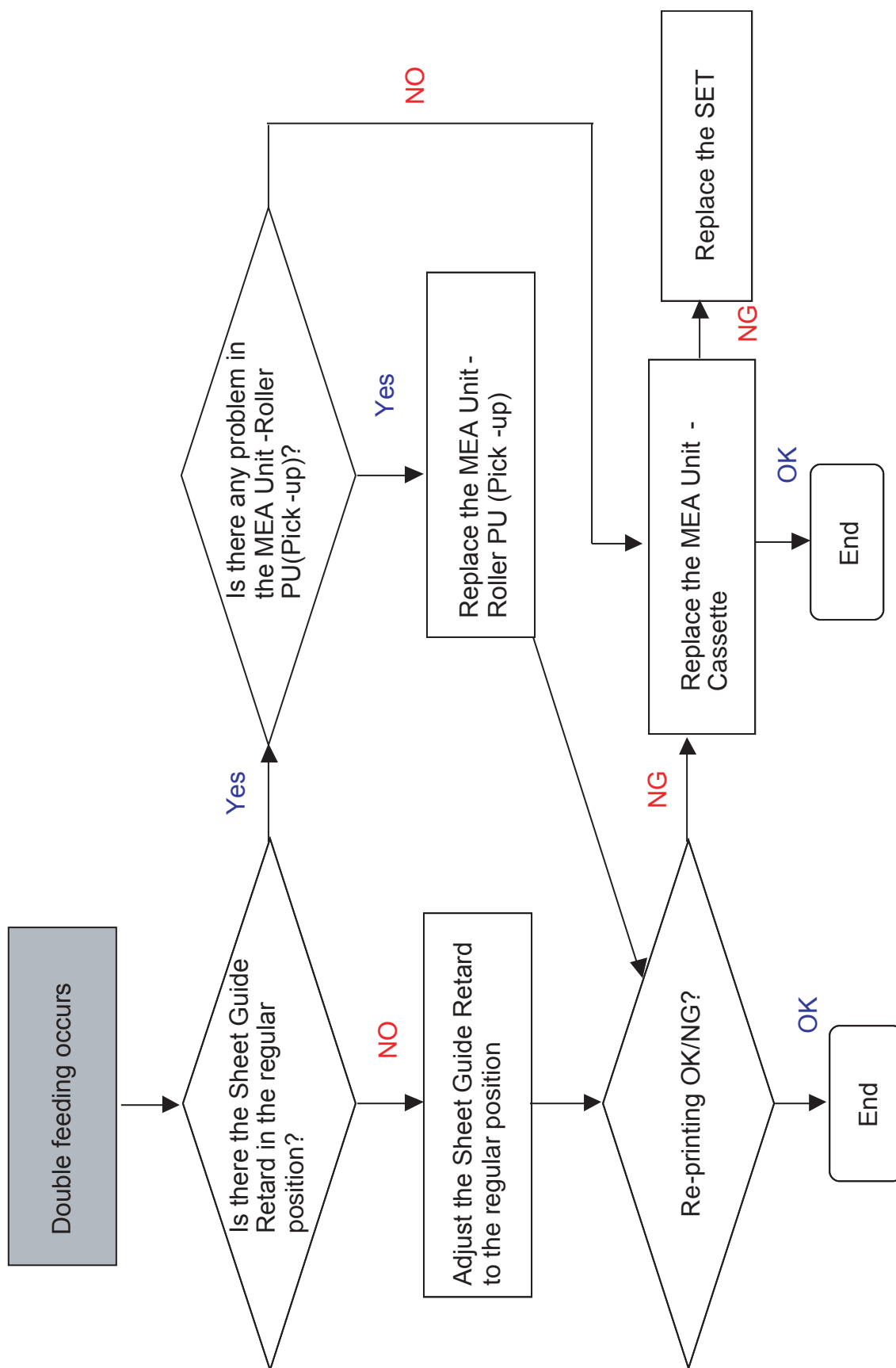


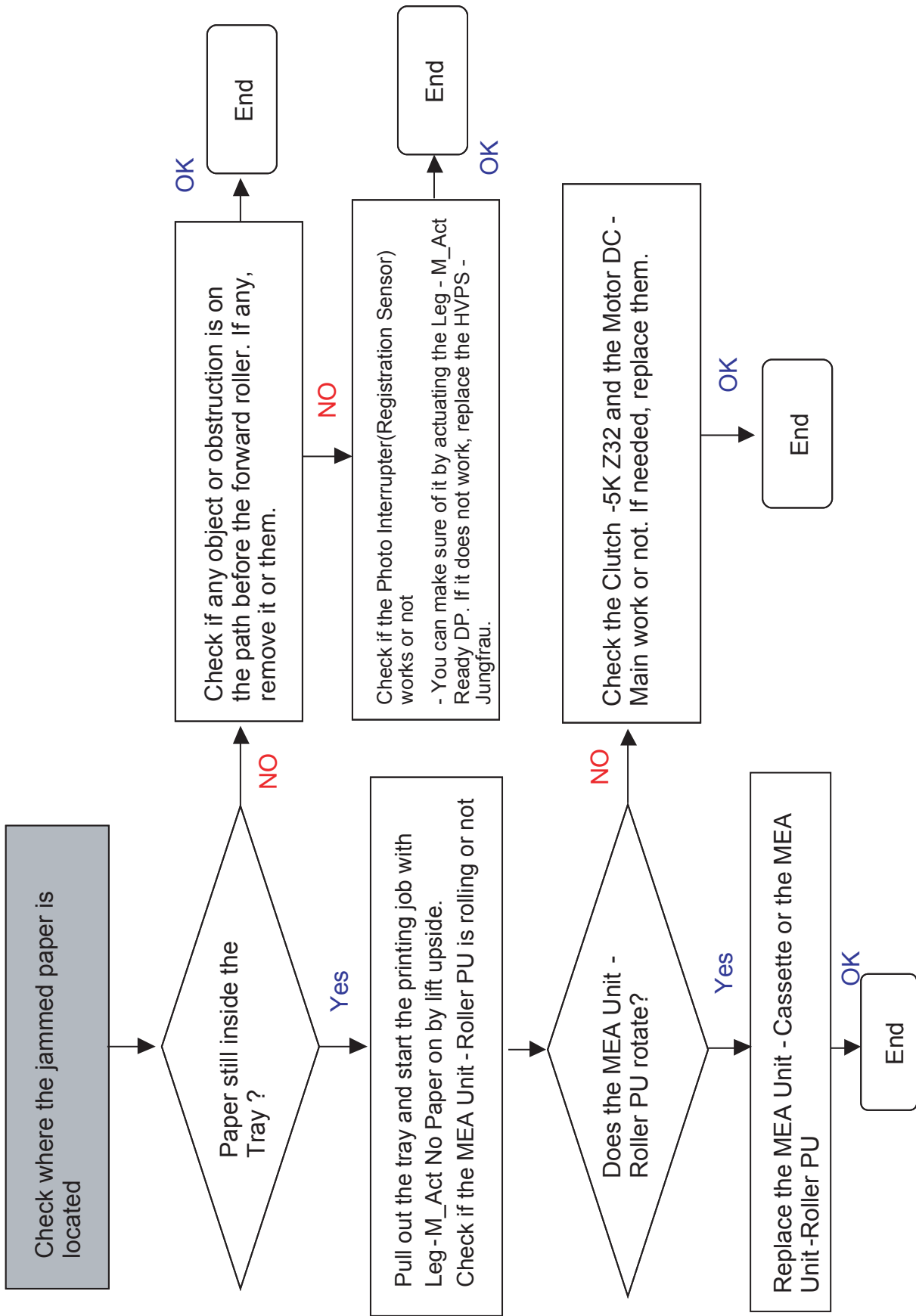


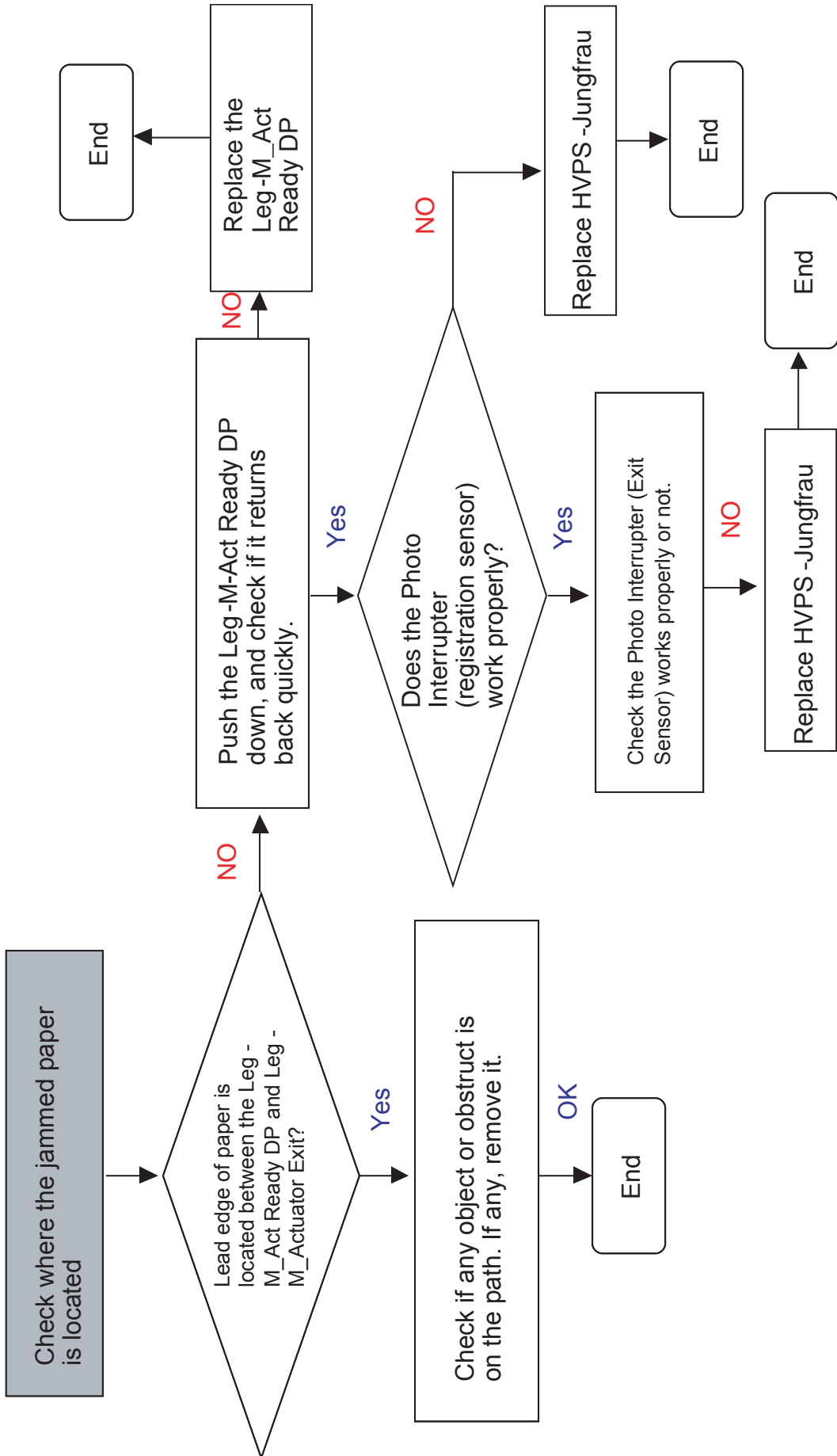


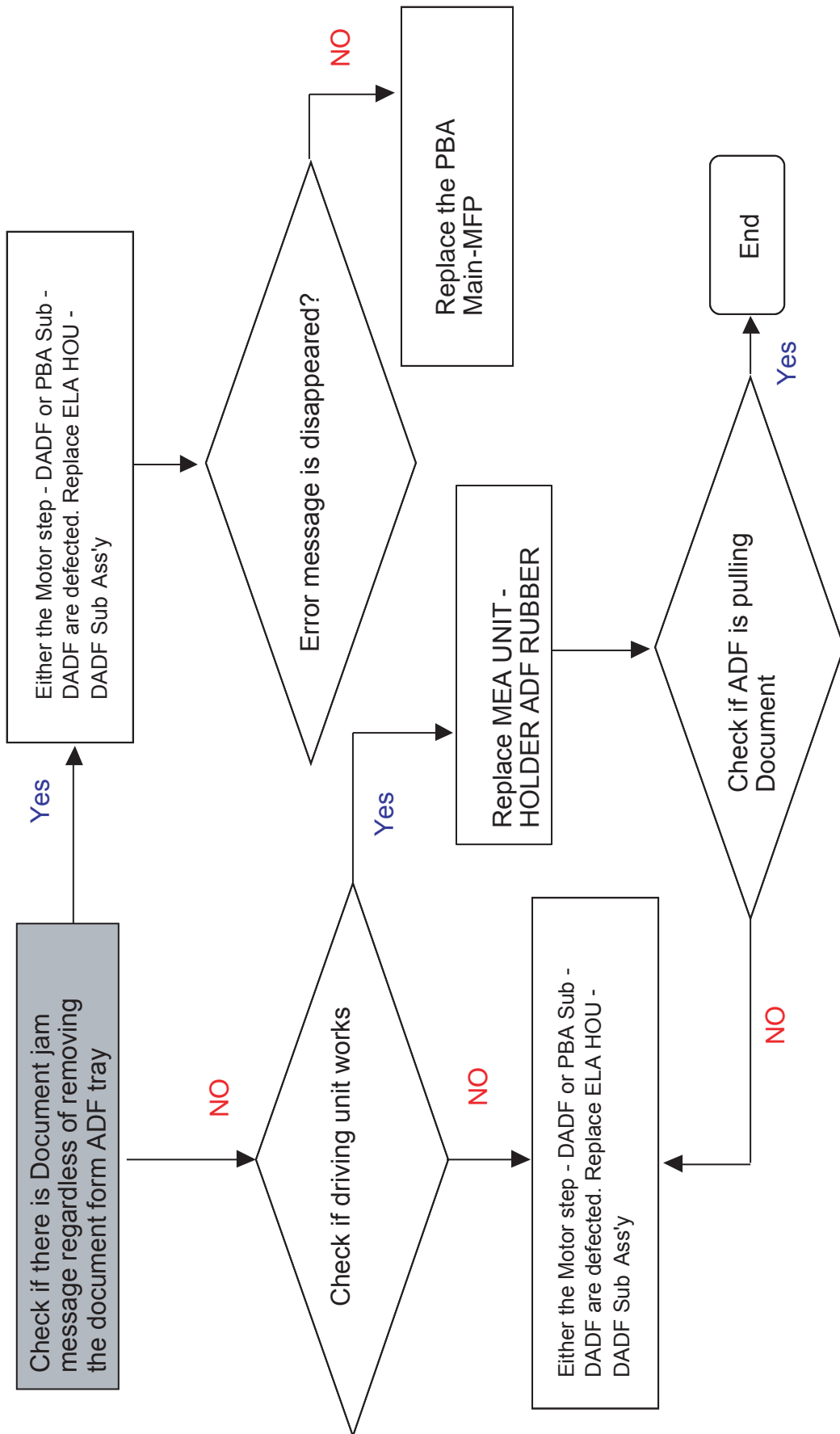


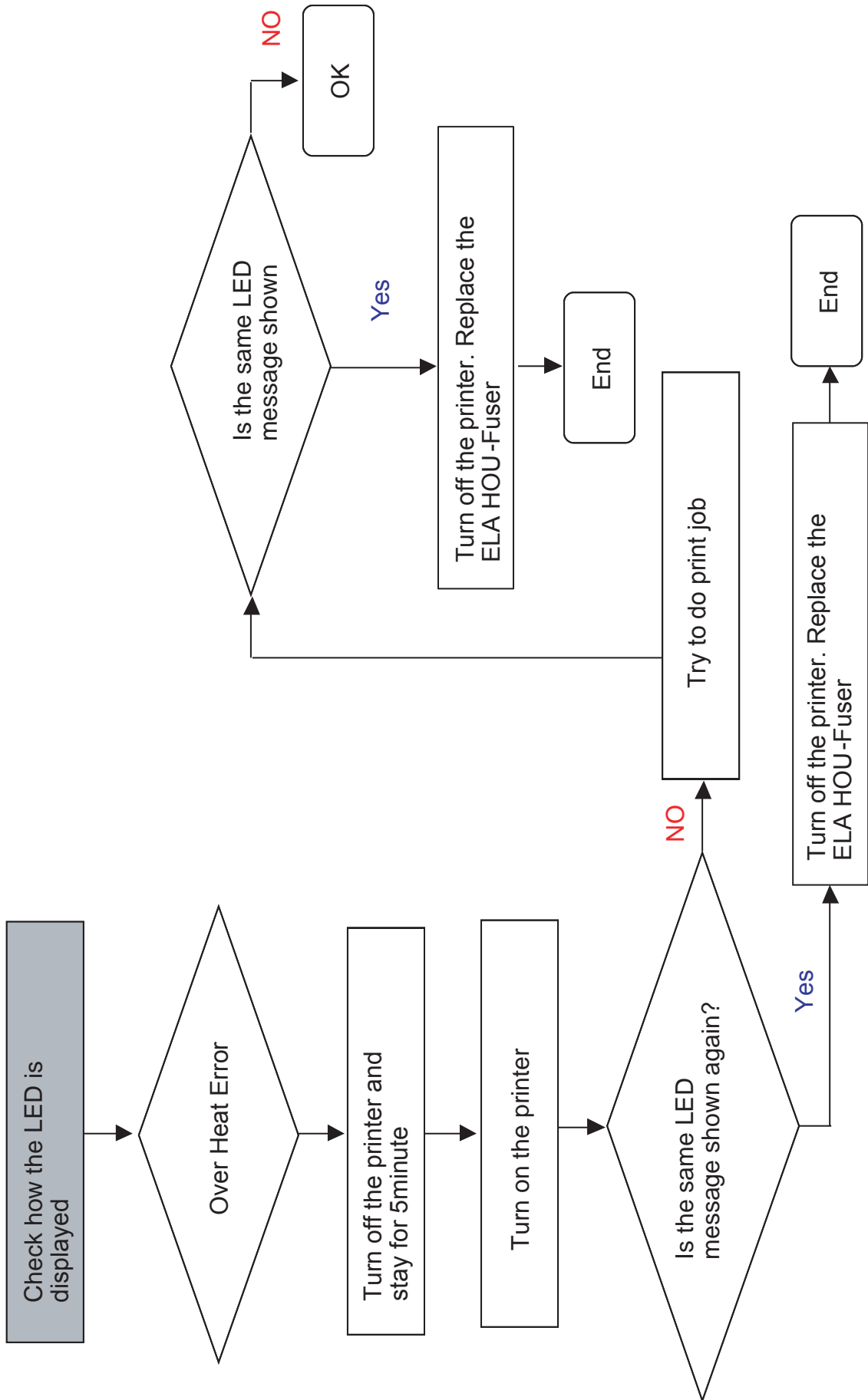


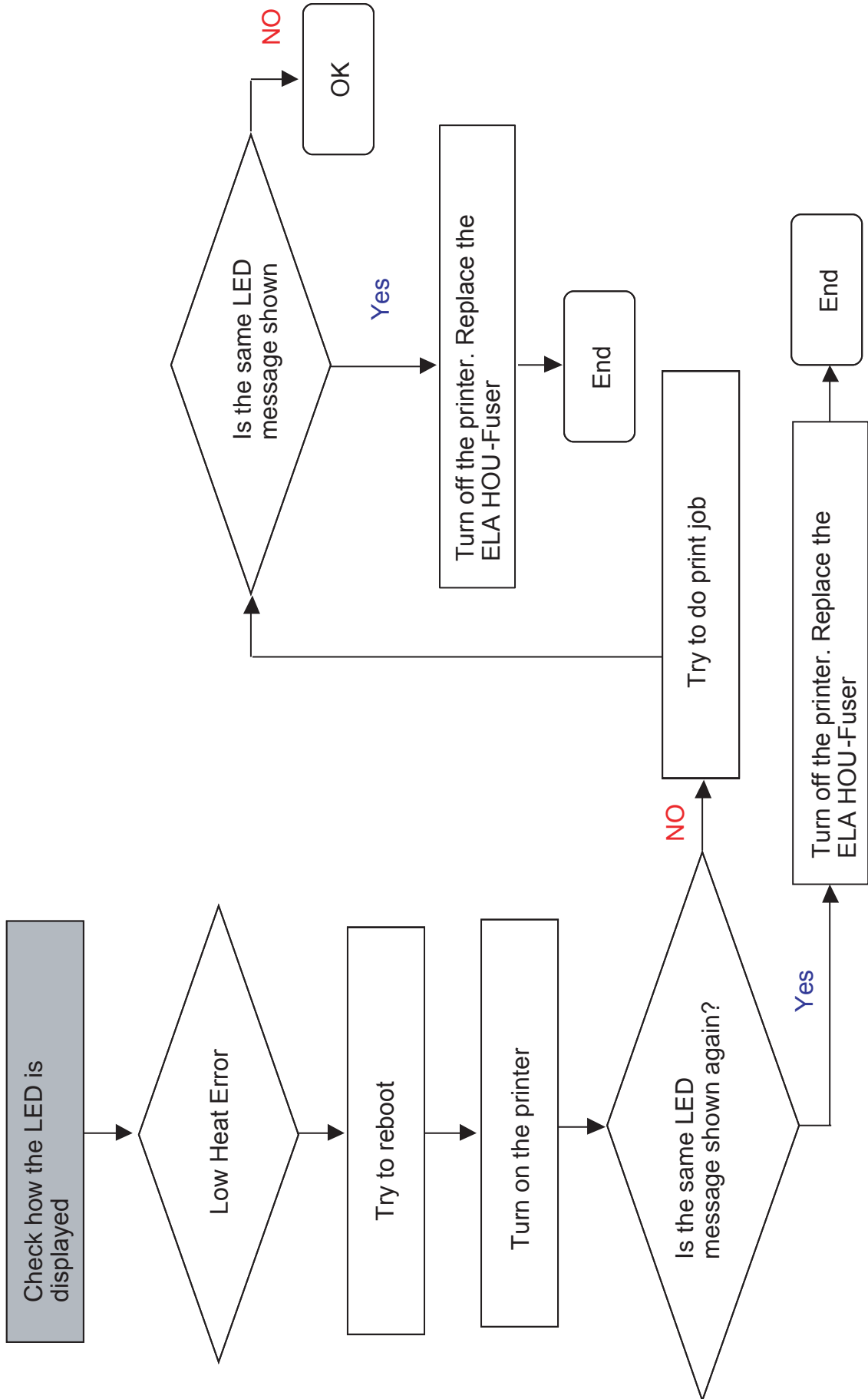


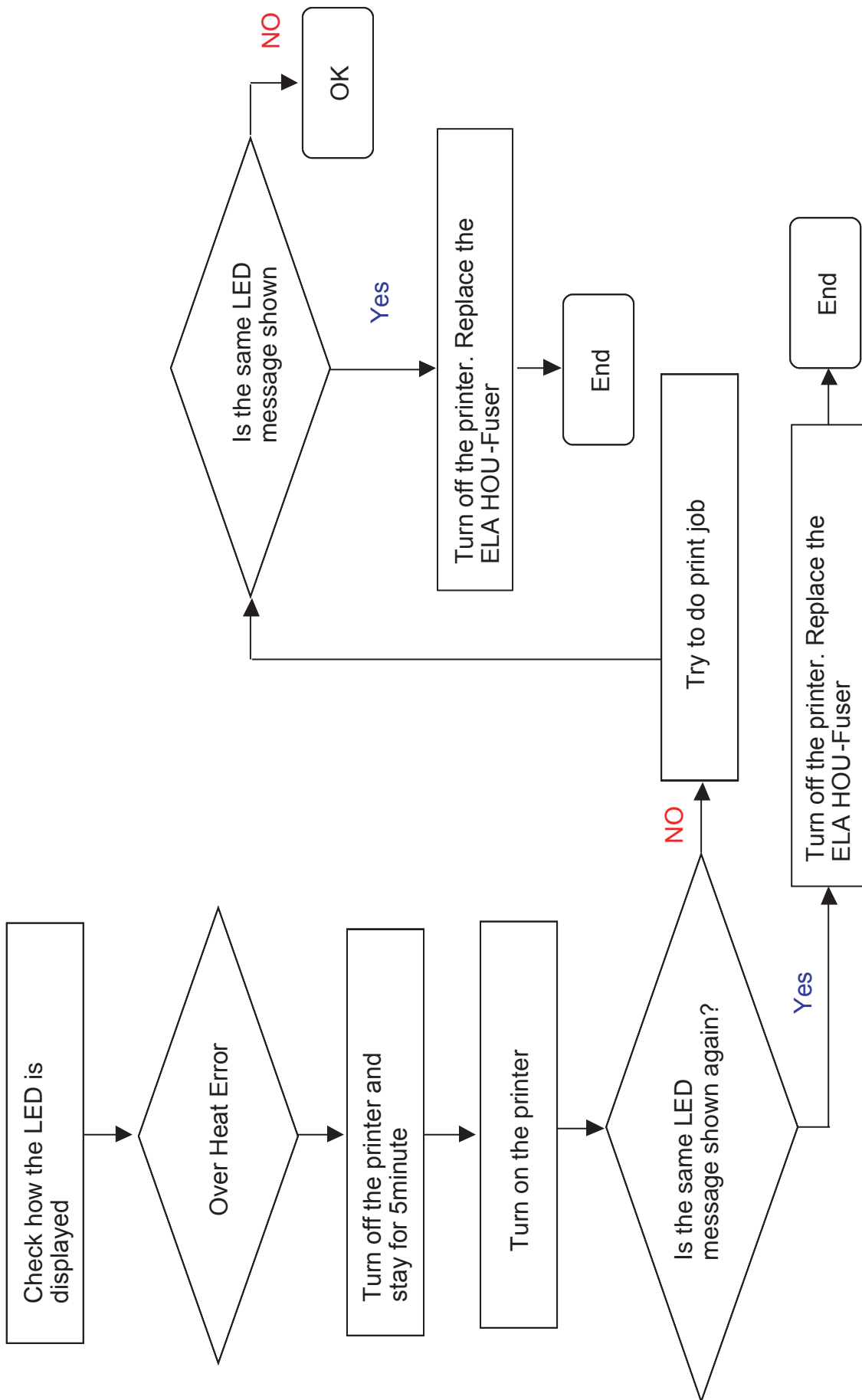


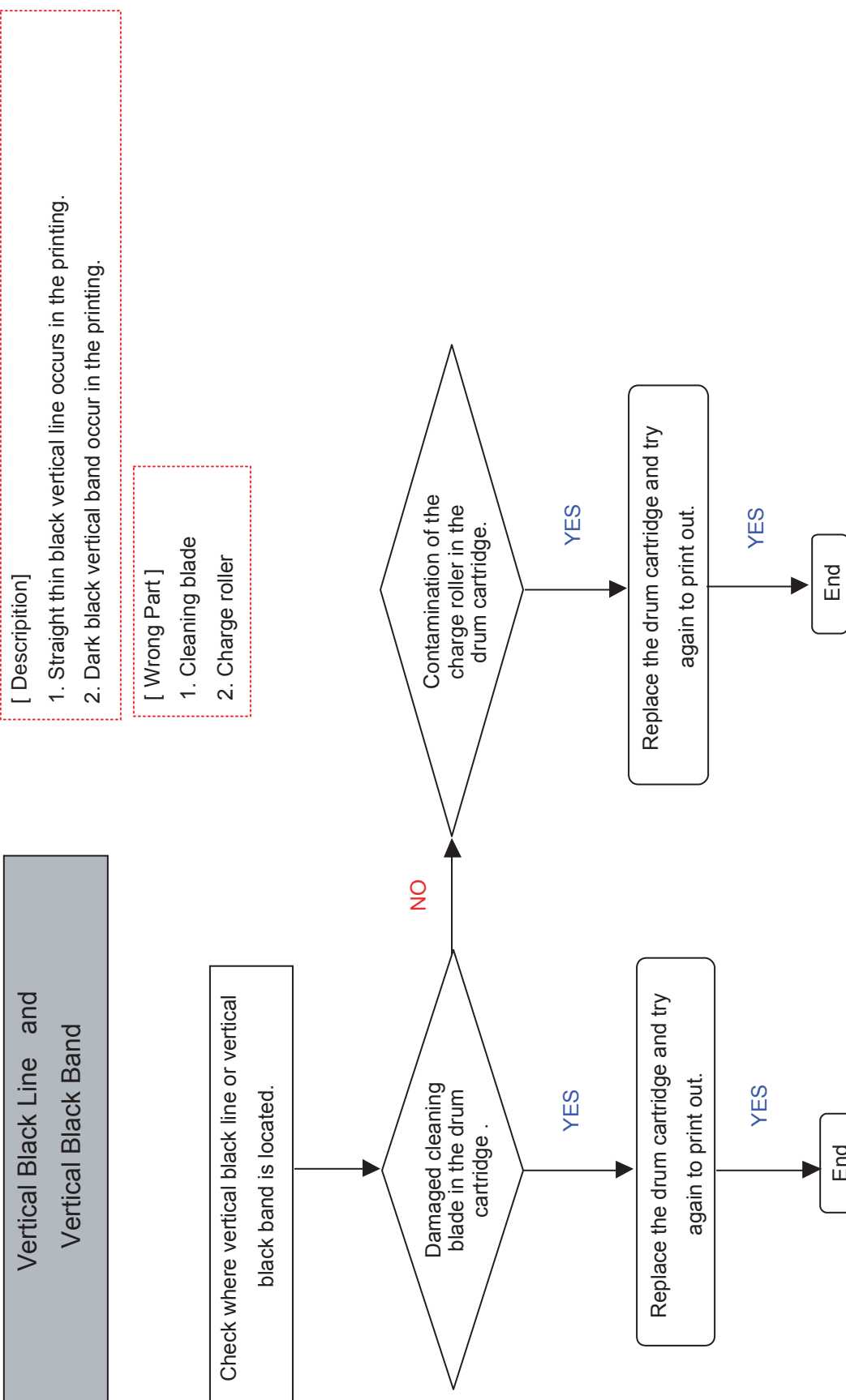


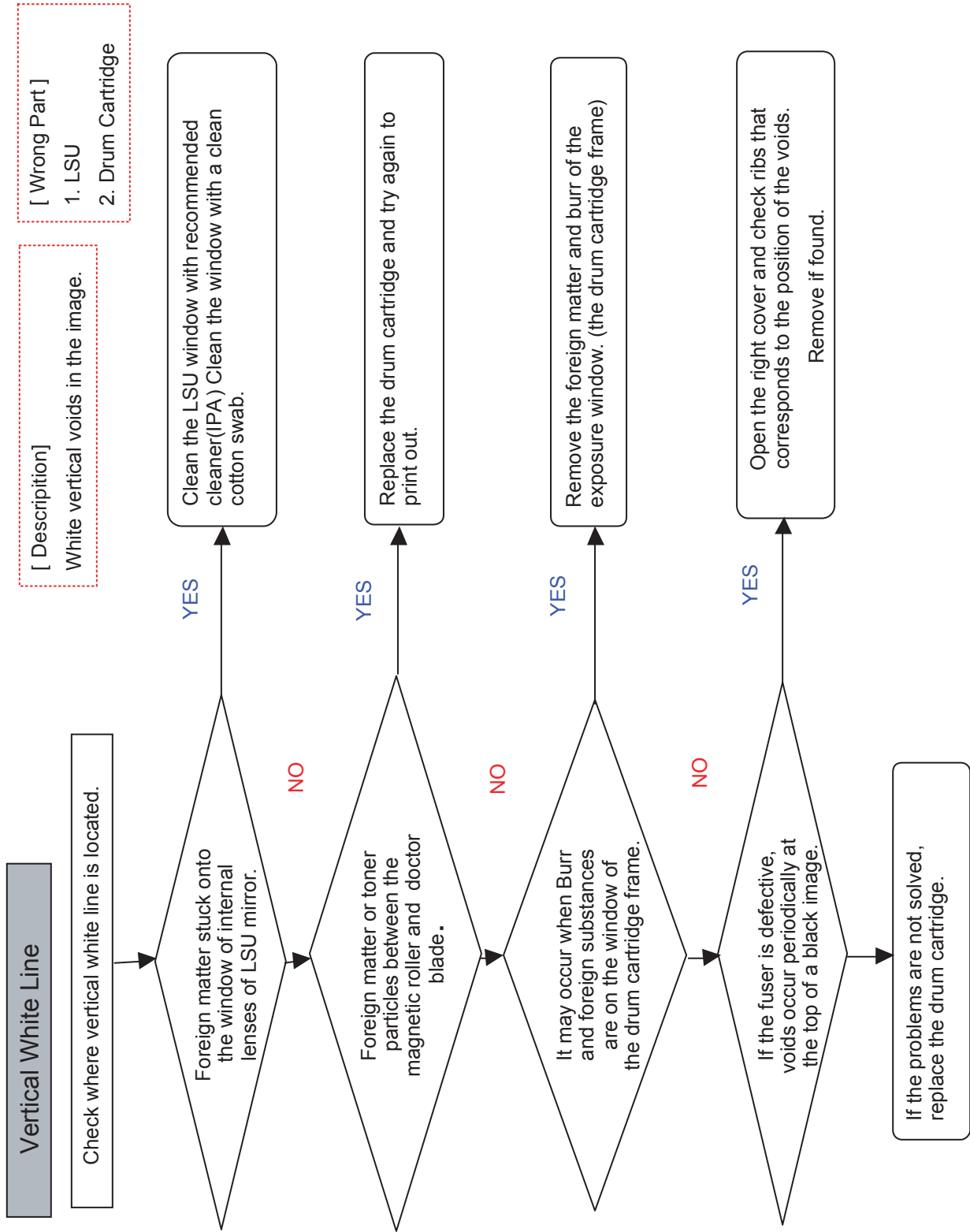


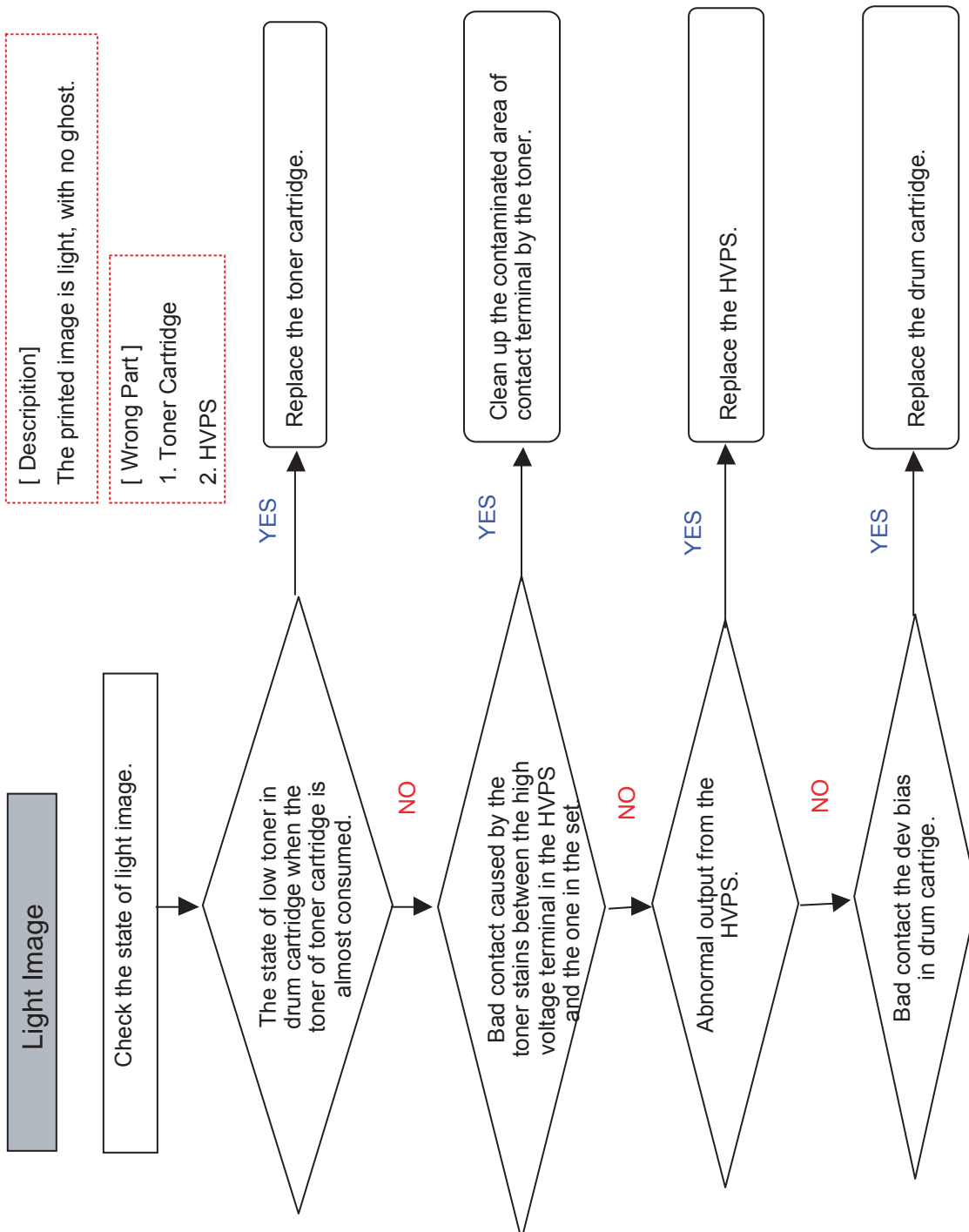


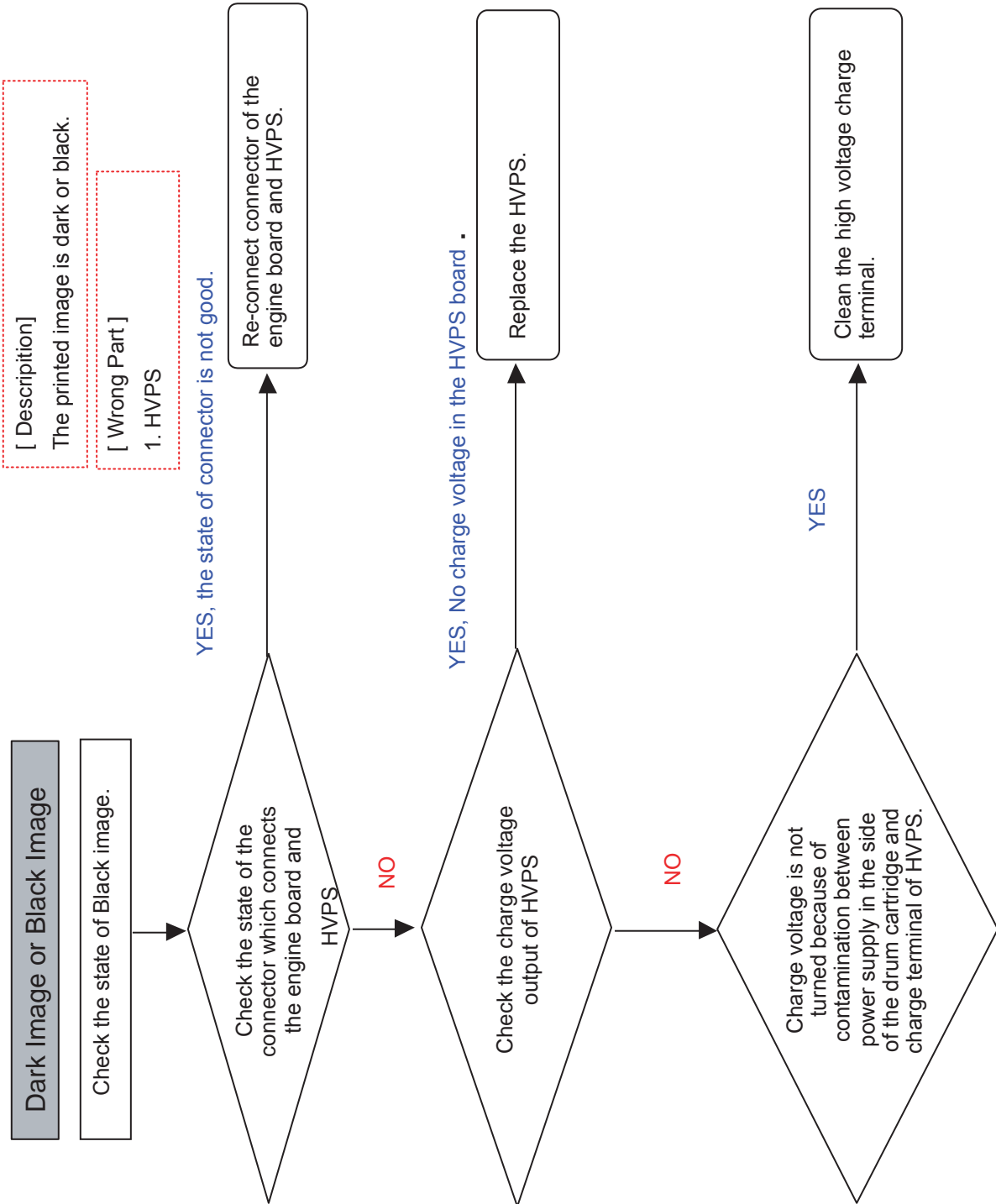


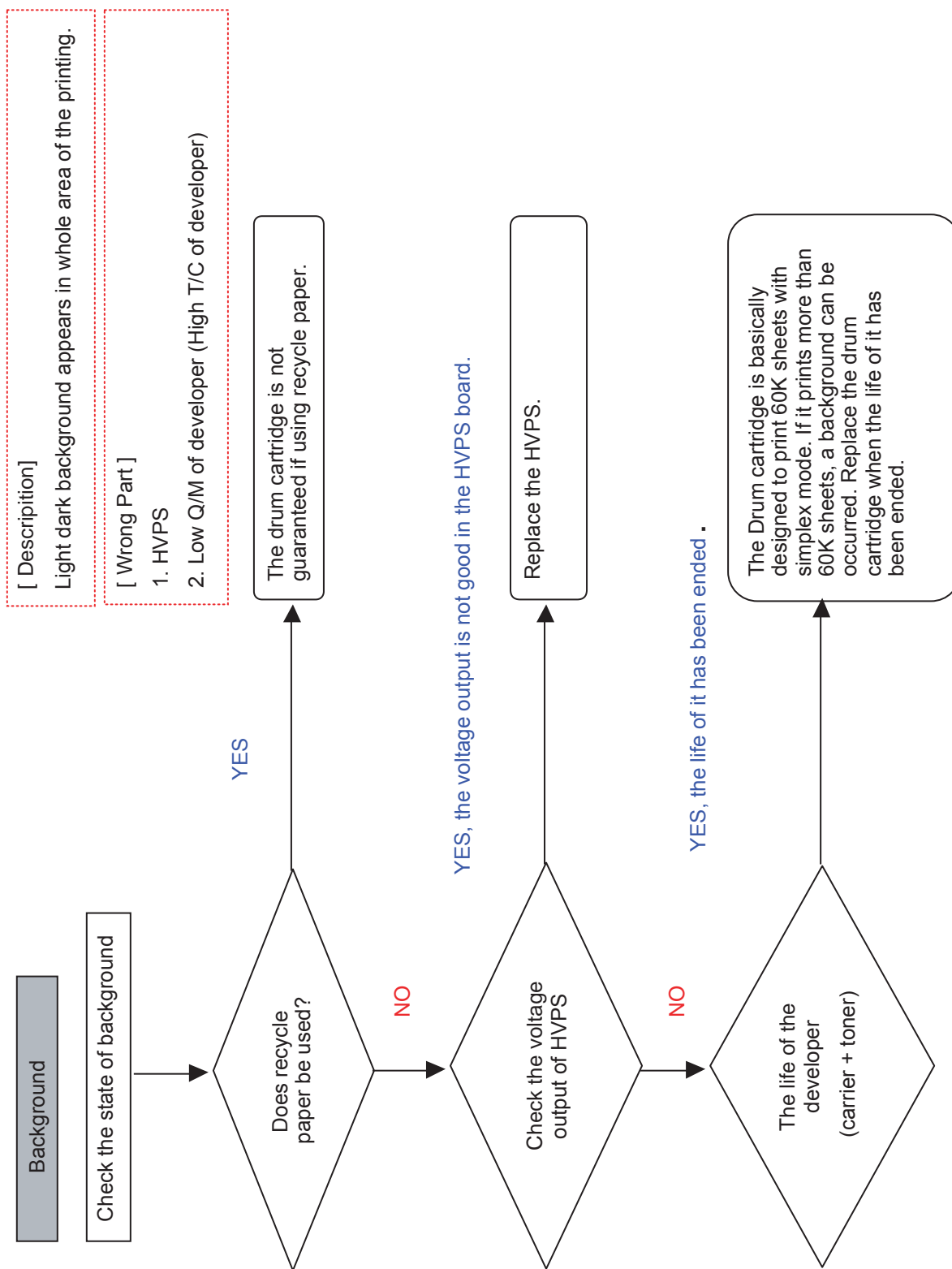


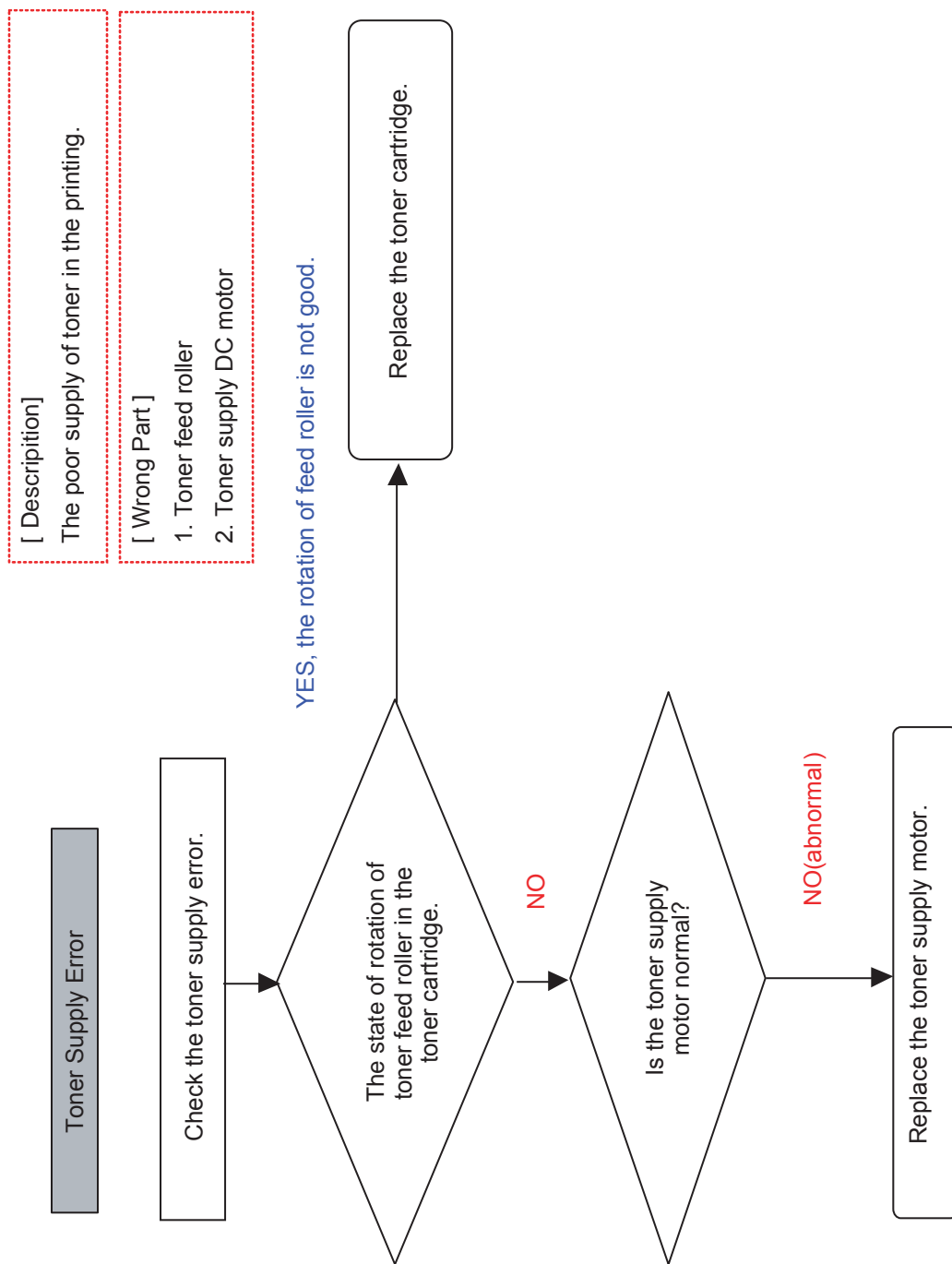












5. ExplodedView and Parts

Contents

Thumbnail	5-2	5.23 Exit Unit_DADF	5-60
5.1 Main	5-9	5.24 Cassette	5-62
5.2 Cover Unit	5-12	5.25 Fax Unit	5-64
5.3 Main Frame	5-14	5.26 SCF	5-66
5.4 Base Frame	5-17	5.27 FINISHER UNIT (Optional Unit) ...	5-70
5.5 Main Drive	5-20	5.27-1 Main_Finisher	5-70
5.6 Fuser Drive	5-22	5.27-2 Frame Unit	5-72
5.7 Exit Ass'y	5-24	5.27-3 Stacker Unit	5-75
5.8 Fuser Unit	5-26	5.27-4 Extension Tray Unit.....	5-77
5.9 Pick Up Ass'y.....	5-29	5.27-5 EjectorUnit	5-79
5.10 Side Duplex.....	5-31	5.27-6 Compile Unit.....	5-82
5.11 MP Unit.....	5-35	5.27-7 Feed Unit	5-84
5.12 MP Tray	5-37	5.28 HCF UNIT (Optional Unit).....	5-87
5.13 Scanner Ass'y	5-39	5.28-1 ELA HOU-HCF.....	5-87
5.14 OPE Unit	5-41	5.28-2 SUB PLATE-BOTTOM	5-89
5.15 Platen Ass'y.....	5-43	5.28-3 SUB UNIT-REAR.....	5-92
5.16 DADF Ass'y	5-46	5.28-4 AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT	5-94
5.17 DADF SUB Ass'y	5-48	5.28-5 ELA HOU-UPPER	5-96
5.18 Cover Platen_DADF	5-50	5.28-6 AS-UNIT CASSETTE	5-99
5.19 Cover Open_DADF	5-52	5.28-7 MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP	5-101
5.20 TX Stacker_DADF	5-54	5.28-8 MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R ...	5-103
5.21 Guide Scan_DADF.....	5-56	5.28-9 MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L.....	5-105
5.22 Guide Pickup_DADF	5-58	5.28-10 SUB GUIDE REAR	5-107

DIGITAL LASER MFP

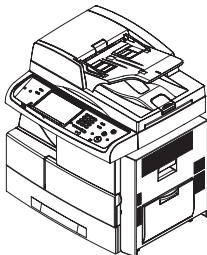
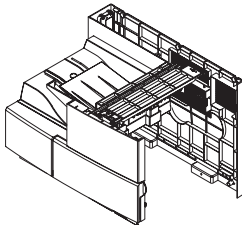
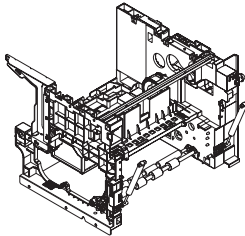
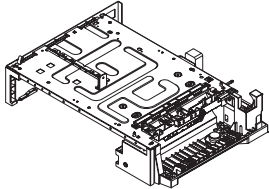
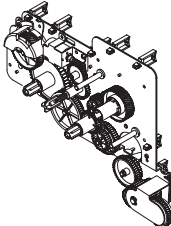
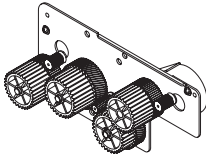
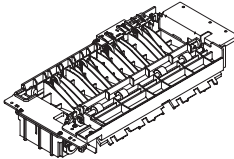
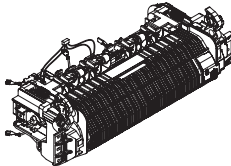
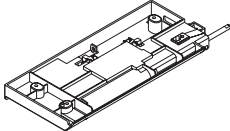
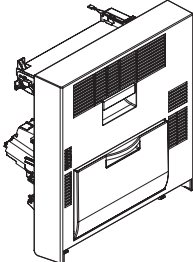
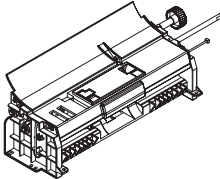
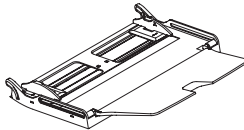
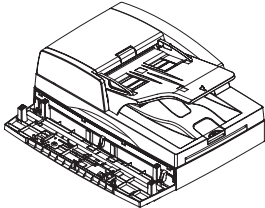
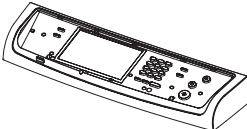
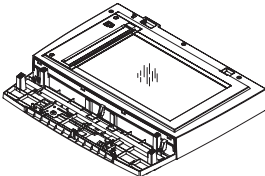
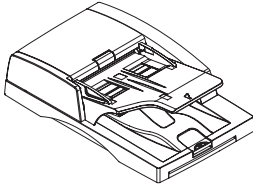


The keynote of Product

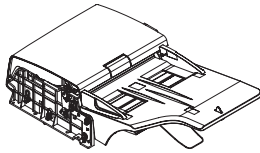
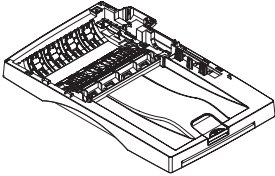
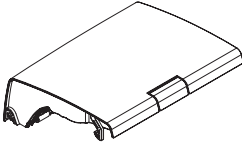
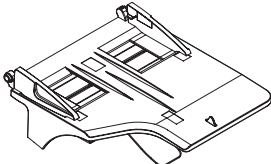
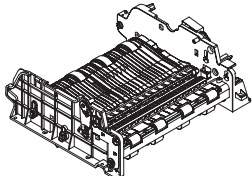
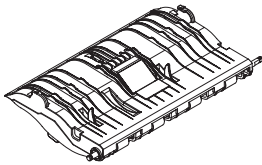
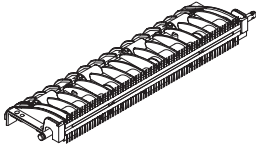
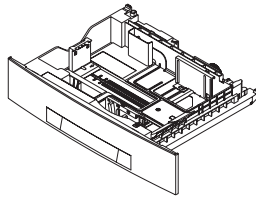
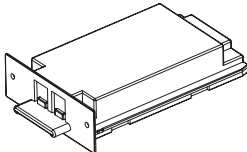
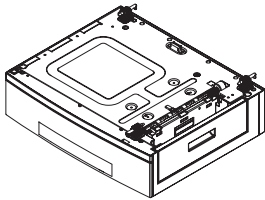
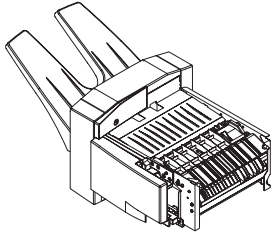
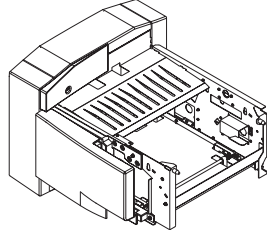
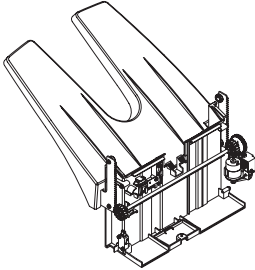
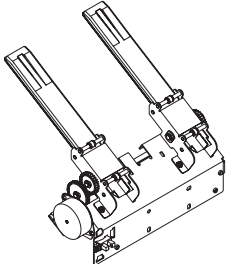
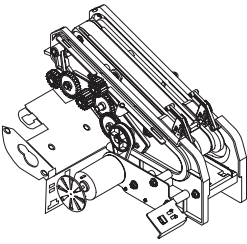
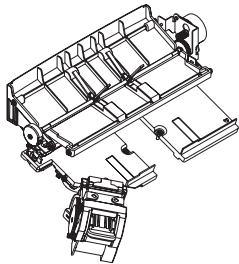
Copier based Multi-Function Laser printer (Print, Copy, FAX, Scan)

- 55ppm (Letter), 53ppm (A4)
- Max. 1200dpi effective output
- Ethernet 10/100/1000 Base TX
- USB 2.0
- CPU : 500MHz
- Max. paper capacity : 3,140sheets
- Drum Life :80K
- Toner yield : 25K
- HDD : 80G
- Option : Finisher, SCF, HCF, NW Scan Kit
- Machine Life : 1,500K

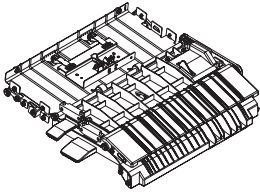
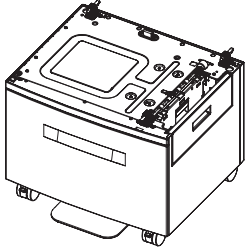
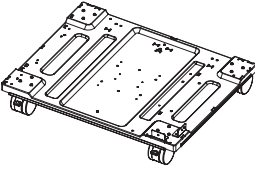
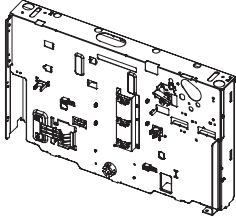
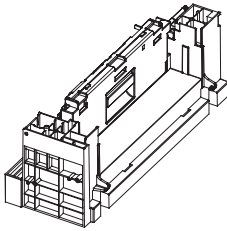
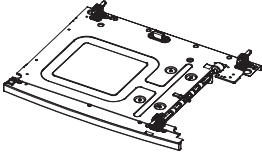
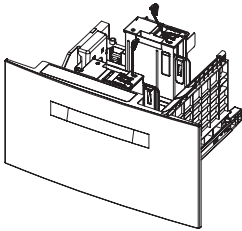
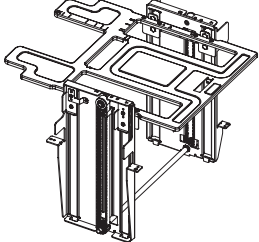
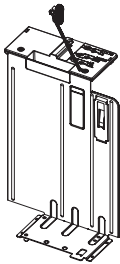
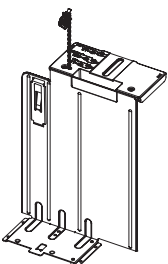
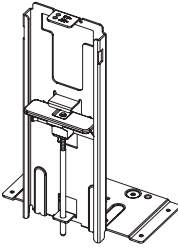
Thumbnail

			
5.1 Main	5.2 Cover Unit	5.3 Main Frame	5.4 Base Frame
			
5.5 Main Drive	5.6 Fuser Drive	5.7 Exit Ass'y	5.8 Fuser Unit
			
5.9 Pick Up Ass'y	5.10 Side Duplex	5.11 MP Unit	5.12 MP Tray
			
5.13 Scanner Ass'y	5.14 OPE Unit	5.15 Platen Ass'y	5.16 DADF Ass'y

Thumbnail

			
5.17 DADF SUB Ass'y	5.18 Cover Platen_DADF	5.19 Cover Open_DADF	5.20 TX Stacker_DADF
			
5.21 Guide Scan_DADF	5.22 Guide Pickup_DADF	5.23 Exit Unit_DADF	5.24 Cassette
			
5.25 Fax Unit	5.26 SCF	5.27-1 Main_Finisher	5.27-2 Frame Unit
			
5.27-3 Stacker Unit	5.27-4 Extension Tray Unit	5.27-5 EjectorUnit	5.27-6 Compile Unit

Thumbnail

			
<p>5.27-7 Feed Unit</p>	<p>5.28-1 ELA HOU-HCF</p>	<p>5.28-2 Sub Plate-Bottom</p>	<p>5.28-3 Sub Unit-Rear</p>
			
<p>5.28-4 AS-Unit Frame Right</p>	<p>5.28-5 ELA HOU-Upper</p>	<p>5.28-6 AS-Unit Cassette</p>	<p>5.28-7 MEA Unit-Knock Up</p>
			
<p>5.28-8 MEA Unit-Paper Side R</p>	<p>5.28-9 MEA Unit-Paper Side L</p>	<p>5.28-10 Sub Guide Rear</p>	

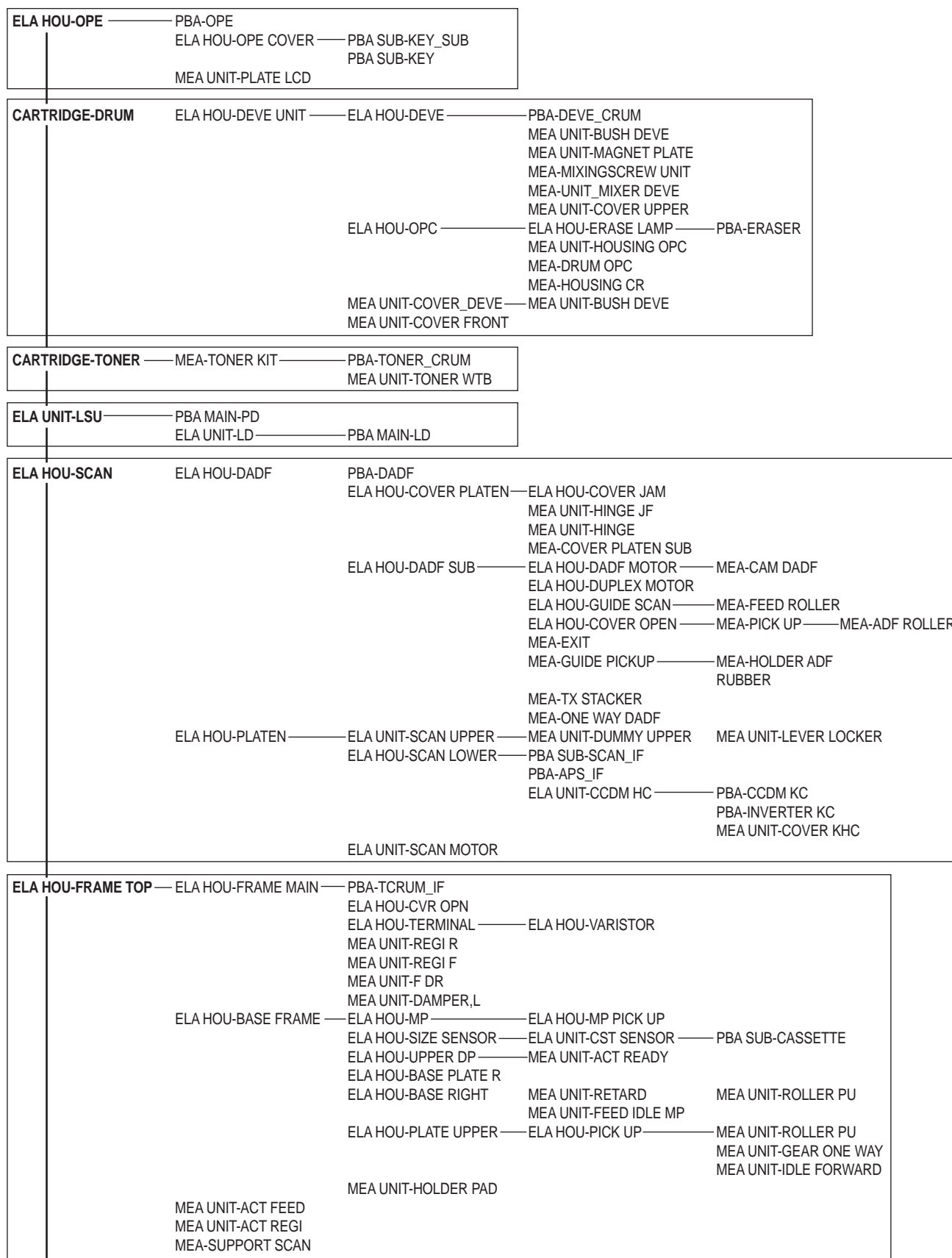
Thumbnail List

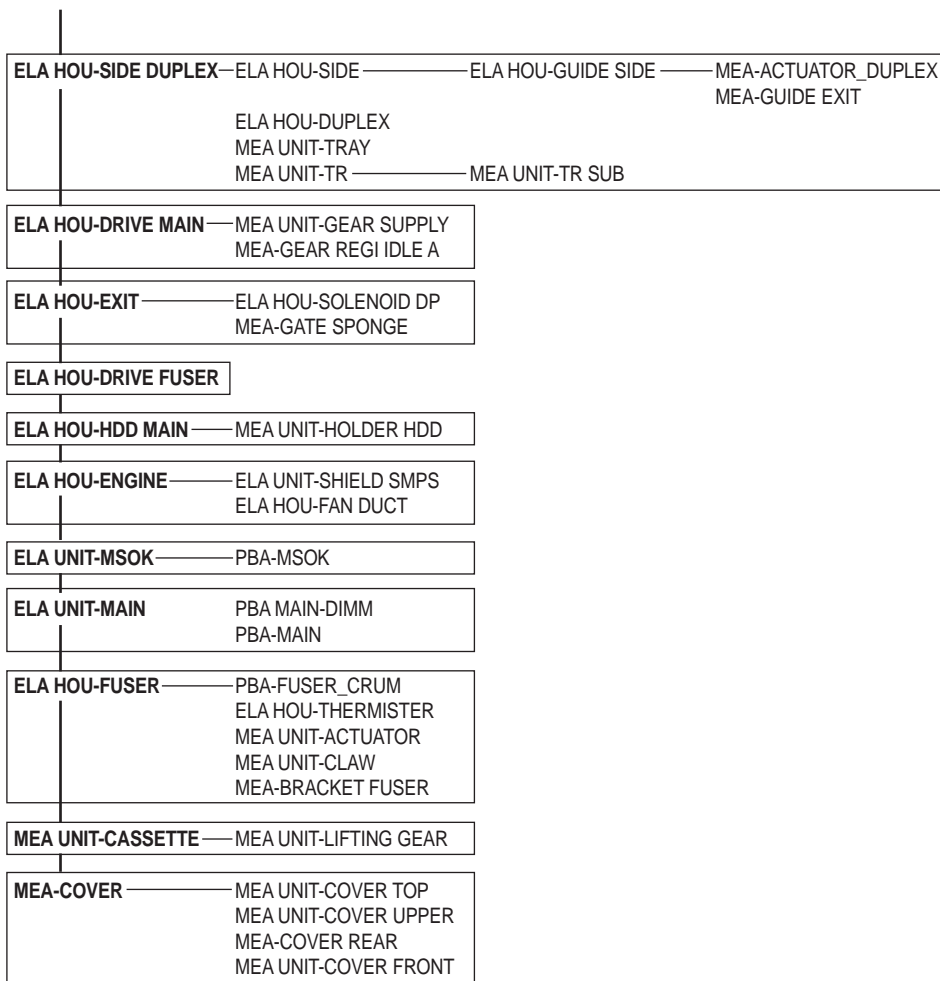
Item	SEC_Code	Description
5.1 Main	SCX-6555N	BASIC MACHINE
5.2 Cover Unit	JC97-03118A	COVER ASSEMBLY
5.3 Main Frame	JC96-04898A	MAIN FRAME ASSEMBLY
5.4 Base Frame	JC96-04903A	BASE FRAME ASSEMBLY
5.5 Main Drive	JC96-04891A	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY
5.6 Fuser Drive	JC96-04893A	FUSE DRIVE ASSEMBLY
5.7 Exit Ass'y	JC96-04892A	EXIT ASSEMBLY
5.8 Fuser Unit	110V: JC96-04991A 220V: JC96-04991B	FUSER UNIT
5.9 Pick Up Ass'y	JC96-05046A	PICK_UP ASSEMBLY
5.10 Side Duplex	JC96-04890A	DUPLEX ASSEMBLY
5.11 MP Unit	JC96-04905A	MP UNIT
5.12 MP Tray	JC97-02264B	MP TRAY ASSEMBLY
5.13 Scanner Ass'y	JC96-04863A	SCANNERS ASSEMBLY
5.14 OPE Unit	JC96-04666A	OPE UNIT
5.15 Platen Ass'y	JC96-04979A	PLATEN ASSEMBLY
5.16 DADF Ass'y	JC96-04855A	DADF ASSEMBLY
5.17 DADF SUB Ass'y	JC96-04858A	DADF_SUB ASSEMBLY
5.18 Cover Platen_DADF	JC96-04856A	DADF_COVER PLATEN
5.19 Cover Open_DADF	JC96-04862A	DADF_COVER OPEN
5.20 TX Stacker_DADF	JC97-03098A	DADF_TX STACKER
5.21 Guide Scan_DADF	JC96-04861A	DADF_GUIDE SCAN
5.22 Guide Pickup_DADF	JC97-03096A	DADF_GUIDE PICK_UP
5.23 Exit Unit_DADF	JC97-03095A	DADF_EXIT UNIT
5.24 Cassette	JC97-02273B	CASSETTE ASSEMBLY
5.25 Fax Unit	JC96-05173A	FAX UNIT
5.26 SCF	JC96-05221A	SCF UNIT
5.27-1 Main_Finisher	JC96-03908C	FINISHER UNIT PARTS
5.27-2 Frame Unit	-	-
5.27-3 Stacker Unit	-	-
5.27-4 Extension Tray Unit	-	-
5.27-5 EjectorUnit	JC81-03773A	-
5.27-6 Compile Unit	-	-
5.27-7 Feed Unit	-	-
5.28-1 ELA HOU-HCF	JC96-04852A	HCF UNIT PARTS
5.28-2 Sub Plate-Bottom	-	-
5.28-3 Sub Unit-Rear	-	-
5.28-4 AS-Unit Frame Right	JC81-06298A	-
5.28-5 ELA HOU-Upper	-	-
5.28-6 AS-Unit Cassette	JC81-06068A	-
5.28-7 MEA Unit-Knock Up	-	-

Thumbnail List

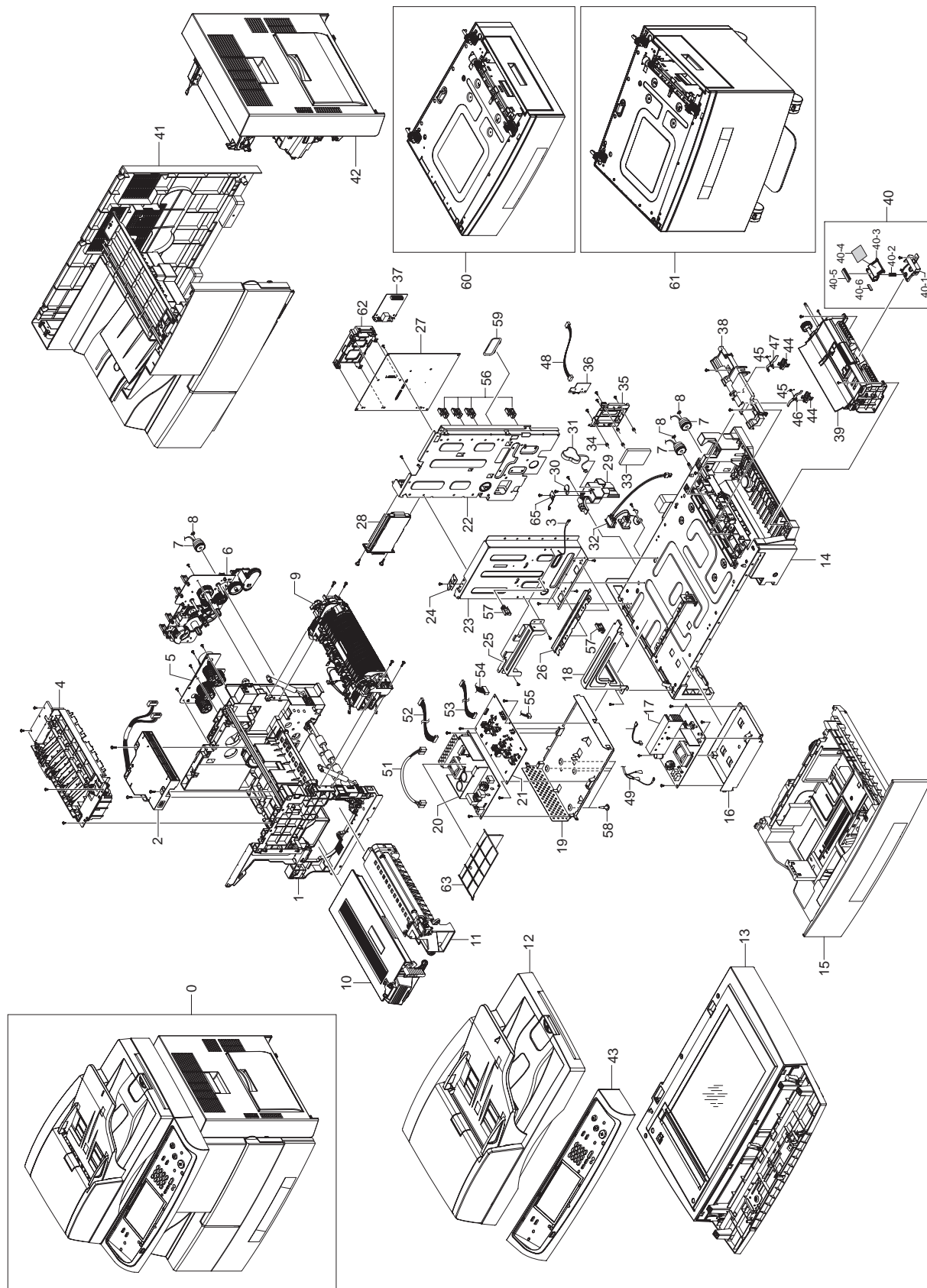
Item	SEC_Code	Description
5.28-8 MEA Unit-Paper Side R	-	-
5.28-9 MEA Unit-Paper Side L	-	-
5.28-10 Sub Guide Rear	-	-

Mech tree





5.1 Main



Main Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

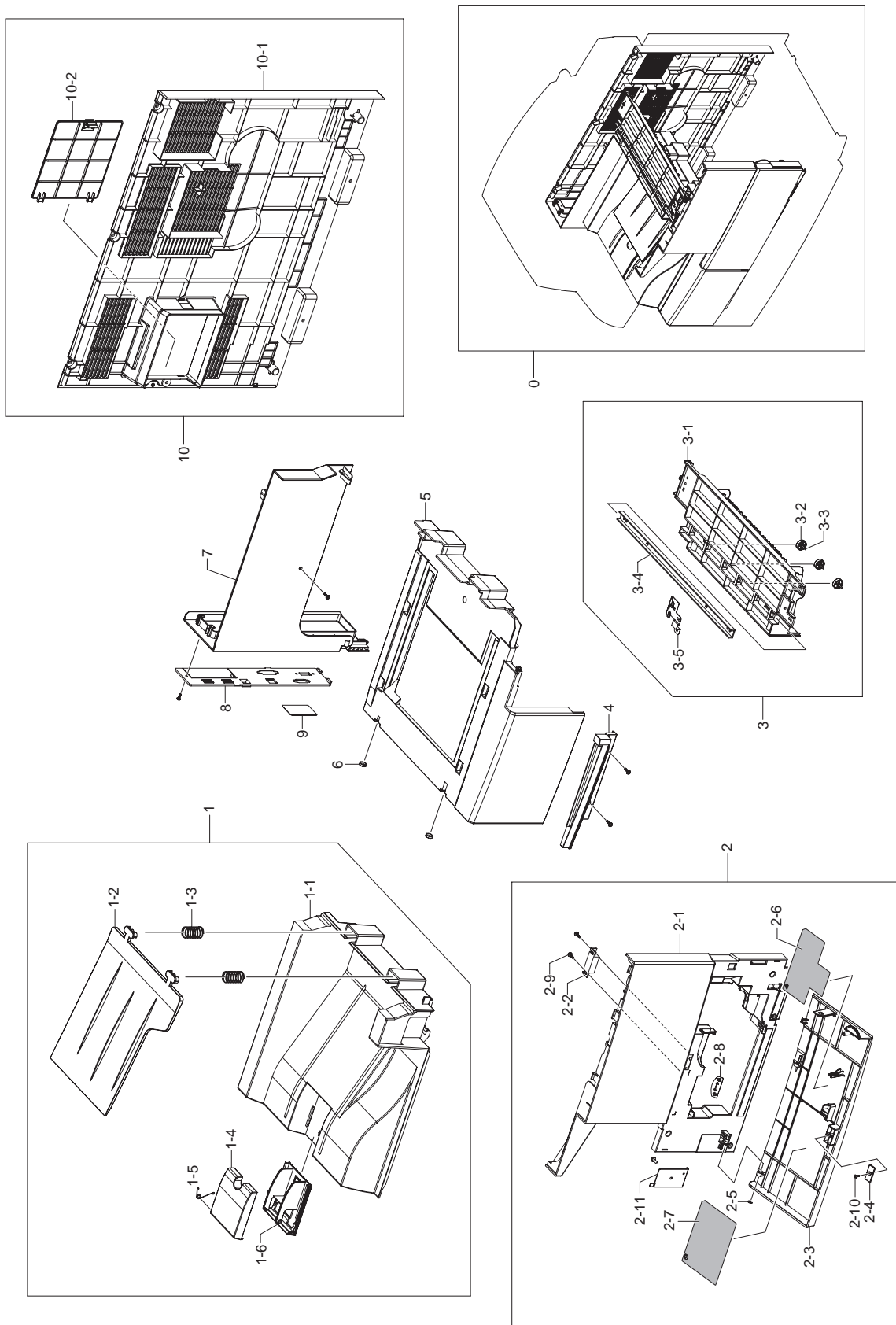
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	SCX-6555N	SET	-	-	-	
1	JC96-04898A	ELA HOU-FRAME MAIN	1	SNA	A	
2	JC96-04849A	ELA UNIT-LSU	1	SA	A	
3	JB39-00065A	CBF HARNESS-DRIVER GND	1	SNA	D	
4	JC96-04892A	ELA HOU-EXIT	1	SA	A	
5	JC96-04893A	ELA HOU-DRIVE FUSER	1	SA	A	
6	JC96-04891A	ELA HOU-DRIVE MAIN	1	SA	A	
7	JC66-00994A	CLUTCH-5K Z32 (SPUR)	2	SA	B	
7	JC66-00994B	CLUTCH-5K Z32 (HELICAL)	1	SA	B	
8	JC61-01367A	FIXER-M_E RING 4PI	2	SA	B	
8	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
9	JC96-04991A	ELA HOU-FUSER(110V)	1	SA	A	110V
9	JC96-04991B	ELA HOU-FUSER(220V)	1	SA	A	220V
10	JC96-04711A	CARTRIDGE TONER	1	SNA	A	Sales
11	JC96-04710A	CARTRIDGE DRUM	1	SNA	A	Sales
12	JC96-04855A	ELA HOU-DADF	1	SA	A	
13	JC96-04979A	ELA HOU-PLATEN	1	SA	A	
14	JC96-04903A	ELA HOU-BASE FRAME	1	SA	A	
15	JC97-02273B	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	1	SA	A	
16	JC63-00831A	SHIELD-P_BD INVERTER	1	SA	B	
17	JC44-00159A	FDB-MULTI TRIAC V1	1	SA	B	110V
17	JC44-00160A	FDB-MULTI TRIAC V2C	1	SA	B	220V
18	JC61-01309A	PLATE-P_FINISHER F	1	SA	D	
19	JC63-00832A	SHIELD-P_SMPS LOWER	1	SA	D	
20	JC44-00093A	SMPS-PSP_TYPE5_V1	1	SA	B	110V
20	JC44-00100A	SMPS-PSP_TYPE5_V2	1	SA	B	220V
21	JC44-00158A	HVPS	1	SA	A	
22	JC63-00827A	SHIELD-P_MAIN LOWER	1	SNA	D	
23	JC61-01310A	PLATE-P_SUPPORT SCAN	1	SNA	D	
24	JC63-00791A	GROUND-P_SPRING SCAN	1	SNA	D	
25	JC61-01311A	PLATE-P_FINISHER REAR	1	SNA	D	
26	JC61-01314A	GUIDE-P_SHIELD SMPS	1	SNA	D	
27	JC92-01941A	PBA-MAIN	1	SA	A	
28	JC96-04081B	ELA HOU-FAX; Option Unit	1	-	-	
29	JC67-00113A	CAP-M INLET	1	SNA	D	
30	JC61-00667A	STOPPER-M FAN80	1	SNA	D	
31	4301-001042	BATTERY-LI	1	SNA	B	
32	JC39-00834A	HARNESS-POWER_SW	1	SNA	D	
33	JC59-00028A	HDD;80G	1	SA	A	

Main Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
34	JC73-00215A	RUBBER-DAMPER HDD	4	SNA	D	
35	JC61-01389A	HOLDER-M_HDD	1	SNA	D	
36	JC92-01946A	PBA-MSOK	1	SA	D	
37	JC96-03659A	ELA HOU-NPC3_HIGH	1	SA	-	
38	JC61-01295A	PLATE-M_FEED UPPER	1	SNA	D	
39	JC96-04905A	ELA HOU-MP	1	SA	A	
40	JC97-02260A	MEA UNIT-HOLDER PAD	1	SA	D	
40-1	JC61-01415A	GUIDE-M_PAD LOWER	1	SNA	D	
40-2	JC61-00387A	SPRING ETC-PAD	1	SNA	D	
40-3	JC61-00744A	HOLDER-M-ADF RUBBER UPPER	1	SNA	D	
40-4	JC63-01085A	SHEET-GUIDE MP	1	SNA	D	
40-5	JB73-00052A	RMO-ADF RUBBER	1	SNA	D	
40-6	JC73-00079A	RPR-SEAL SIDE	1	SNA	D	
41	JC97-03118A	MEA-COVER	1	SNA	A	
42	JC96-04890A	ELA HOU-SIDE DUPLEX	1	SA	A	
43	JC96-04666A	ELA HOU-OPE	1	SA	A	
44	JC61-01421A	HOLDER-M_ACT FEED	2	SA	D	
45	6107-001261	SPRING TS	2	SA	D	
46	JC61-01426A	LEG-M_ACT FEED BASE	1	SA	D	
47	JC61-01408A	LEG-M_ACTUATOR REGI	1	SA	D	
48	JC39-00835A	HARNESS DADF IF	1	SNA	D	
49	JC39-00832A	HARNESS-FUSER_FR	1	SNA	D	
51	JC39-00779A	HARNESS FUSER_AC	1	SNA	D	
52	JC39-00460A	HARNESS-SMPS	1	SA	A	
53	JC39-00779A	HARNESS FUSER-FR	1	SNA	D	
54	JC39-00544A	CBF HARNESS_HVPS(8P)	1	SNA	D	
55	JC39-00545A	CBF HARNESS_HVPS(3P)	1	SNA	D	
56	6502-001101	CABLE CLAMP LARGE	4	SA	D	
57	6502-000132	CABLE CLAMP	2	SA	D	
58	6103-000101	STOPPER CLAMP	4	SA	D	
59	JC61-01012A	GUIDE-M_BUSH HARNESS	1	SA	D	
60	JC96-03530A	ELA HOU-SCF	1	SNA	D	Sales
61	JC96-04852A	ELA HOU-HCF	1	SNA	D	Sales
62	JC61-01406A	HOLDER-M_LIU	1	SA	D	
63	JC63-01050A	COVER-M_BARRIER	1	SA	D	
65	JC92-01568A	PBA SUB-AIR_TMP	1	SA	D	

5.2 Cover Unit

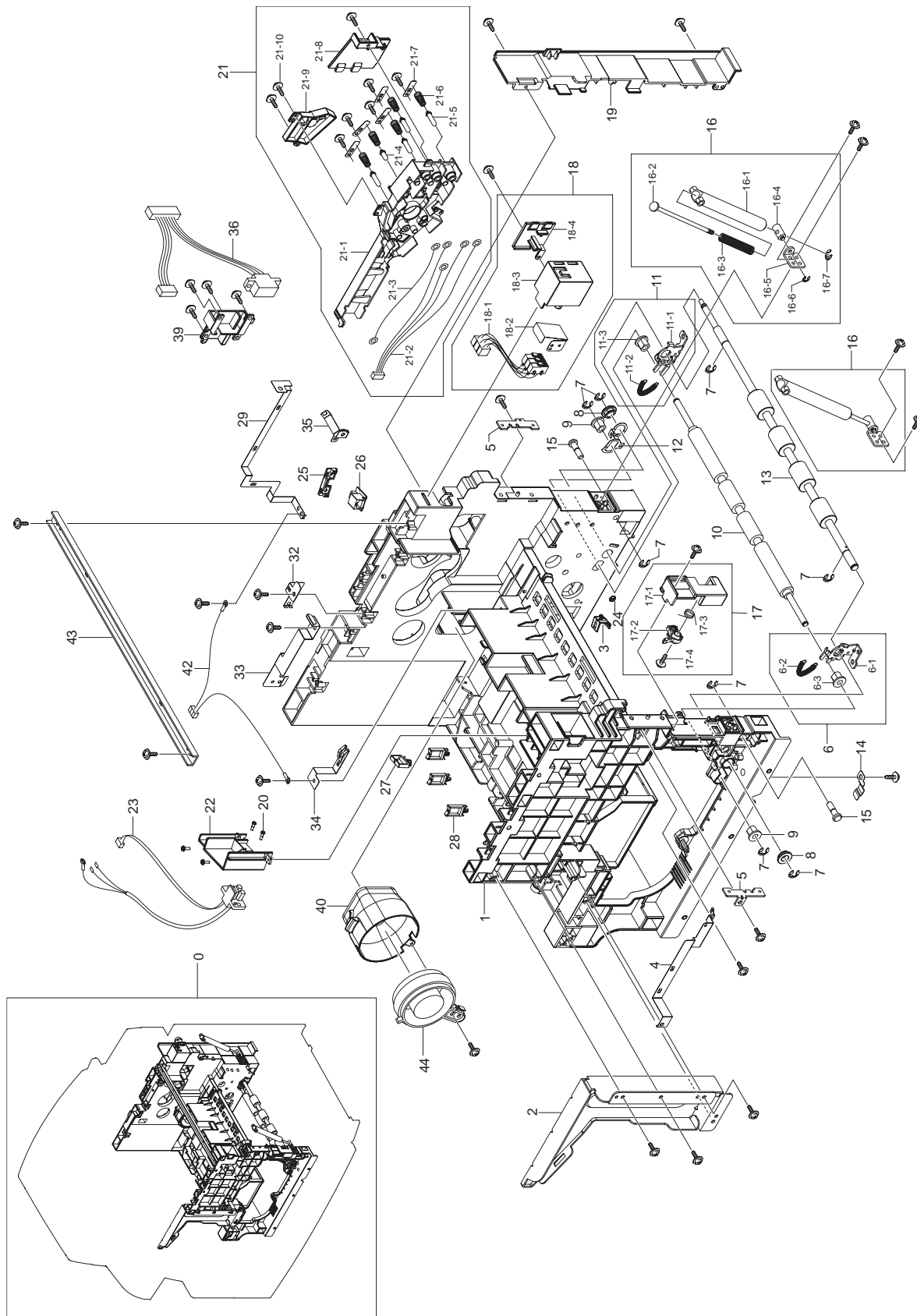


Cover Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-03118A	MEA-COVER	1	SNA	A	
1	JC97-02258B	MEA UNIT-COVER TOP	1	SA	A	
1-1	JC63-00736B	COVER-EXIT TOP	1	SNA	A	
1-2	JC63-00739B	COVER-GUIDE STACKER	1	SNA	D	
1-3	6107-000117	SPRING-CS	2	SA	A	
1-4	JC63-00737B	COVER-EXIT ST LOWER	1	SNA	D	
1-5	6107-001264	SPRING-TS	1	SNA	A	
1-6	JC63-00738B	COVER-EXIT STACKER	1	SNA	D	
2	JC97-02706C	MEA UNIT-COVER FRONT	1	SA	D	
2-1	JC63-00733C	COVER-FRONT INNER	1	SNA	D	
2-2	JC61-00961A	MAGNET-CATCH DELL	1	SNA	A	
2-3	JC63-00735B	COVER-FRONT	1	SNA	D	
2-4	JC61-00962A	PLATE-MAGNET CATCH	1	SNA	A	
2-5	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	
2-6	JC68-01624B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	
2-7	JC68-01623B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	
2-8	JC68-01694B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	
2-9	6003-000196	SCREW-TATITE	1	SA	B	
2-10	6003-001001	SCREW-TATITE	1	SNA	B	
2-11	JC61-02561A	PLATE-FRONT INNER	1	SNA	D	
3	JC97-02274B	MEA UNIT-COVER UPPER	1	SA	A	
3-1	JC63-00734B	COVER-EXIT UPPER	1	SNA	D	
3-2	JC66-01019A	ROLLER-M EXIT DP IDLE	3	SA	D	
3-3	JC70-00064A	IPR-PIN ROLLER EXIT	3	SNA	A	
3-4	JC61-01353A	BRACKET-P-CHANNEL	1	SNA	D	
3-5	JC63-00740A	GROUND-P-OPE	1	SNA	D	
4	JC63-00728B	COVER-EXIT BRACKET	1	SA	A	
5	JC63-00727B	COVER-EXIT BOTTOM	1	SA	A	
6	JC67-00164B	CAP-HOLE SCREW	2	SNA	A	
7	JC63-00731B	COVER-M_EXIT REAR	1	SA	A	
8	JC63-01588A	COVER-PANEL MFP	1	SA	D	
9	JC63-01242A	SHEET-PANEL	1	SA	D	
10	JC97-03123A	MEA-COVER REAR	1	SA	A	
10-1	JC63-01639A	COVER-MAIN REAR	1	SNA	D	
10-2	JC63-00730B	COVER-REAR DUMMY	1	SNA	D	

5.3 Main Frame



Main Frame Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

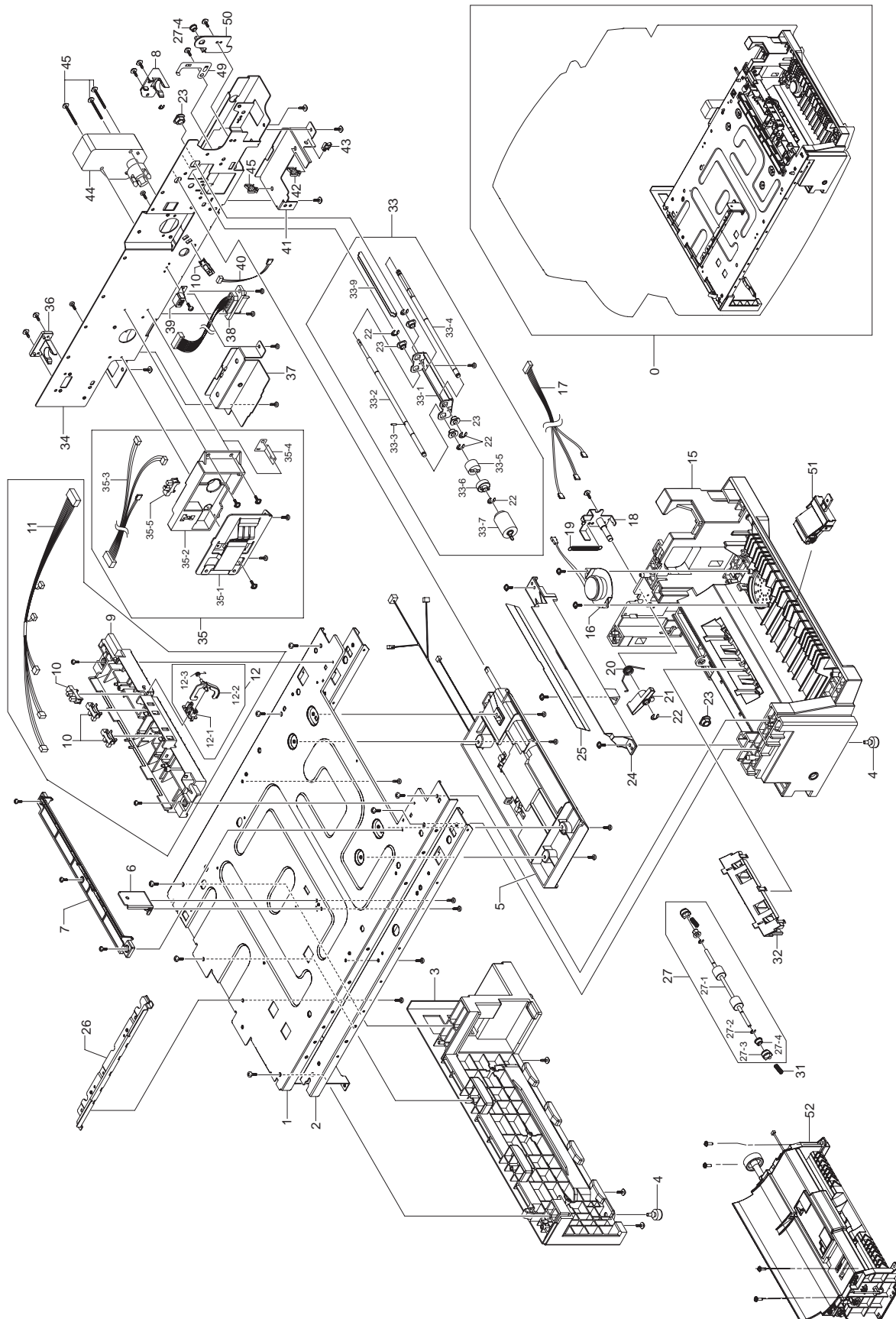
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04898A	ELA HOU-FRAME MAIN	1	SNA	A	
1	JC61-01315A	FRAME-M_MAIN	1	SNA	D	
2	JC61-01360A	BRACKET-P-SUP SCAN F	1	SNA	D	
3	JC61-02710A	HOLDER-STAR WHEEL	1	SA	B	
4	JC63-00802A	GROUND-P-OPC CONTACT	1	SNA	D	
5	JC61-01285A	HOLDER-P-FUSER	2	SNA	D	
6	JC97-02262A	MEA UNIT-REGI F	1	SA	A	
6-1	JC61-01355A	BRACKET-P-REGI F	1	SNA	D	
6-2	6107-001155	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
6-3	JC61-00884A	BUSH-6_D(L)	1	SNA	D	
7	6044-000231	RING-E	1	SA	A	
8	JC61-00426A	BUSH-8/5	2	SA	D	
9	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	2	SA	B	
10	JC66-01028A	ROLLER-IDLE REGI	1	SA	D	
11	JC97-02261A	MEA UNIT-REGI R	1	SA	A	
11-1	JC61-01356A	BRACKET-P-REGI R	1	SNA	D	
11-2	6107-001155	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
11-3	JC61-00884A	BUSH-6_D(L)	1	SNA	D	
12	JC63-00804A	GROUND-P-FEED	1	SNA	D	
13	JC66-01029A	ROLLER-DR REGI	1	SA	A	
14	JC63-00803A	GROUND-P-REGI	1	SNA	D	
15	JC66-00960A	SHAFT-DUP GUIDE	2	SNA	A	
16	JC97-02301A	MEA UNIT-DAMPER,L	2	SA	A	
16-1	JC61-00194A	CASE-DAMPER DUP	1	SNA	D	
16-2	JC61-00196A	SHAFT-DAMPER DUP	1	SNA	D	
16-3	6107-001254	SPRING-CS	1	SNA	D	
16-4	JC61-00197A	HINGE-SHAFT DUP	1	SNA	D	
16-5	JC61-00310A	BRACKET-L DAMPER DUP	1	SNA	D	
16-6	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	
16-7	6044-000121	RING-E	1	SA	D	
17	JC97-02263A	MEA UNIT-F DR	1	SA	A	
17-1	JC63-00741A	COVER-M_FRONT DUMMY	1	SNA	D	
17-2	JC61-01358A	BRACKET-M_SIDE OPEN	1	SNA	D	
17-3	JC61-00486A	SPRING ETC-TORSION	1	SA	D	
17-4	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	B	
18	JC96-03534A	ELA HOU-CVR OPN	1	SA	A	
18-1	JC39-00541A	HARNES-COVER_SW	1	SA	D	
18-2	JC63-00753A	GUARD-P_SW	1	SNA	A	
18-3	JC61-01354A	HOUSING-M_SIDE DR SNR	1	SNA	A	

Main Frame Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
18-4	JC63-00760A	COVER-M_SIDE DOOR SNR	1	SNA	D	
19	JC61-01316A	FRAME-M_COVER REAR	1	SNA	D	
20	6009-001396	SCREW-SPECIAL	2	SNA	D	
21	JC96-03535A	ELA HOU-TERMINAL	1	SA	A	
21-1	JC61-01357A	HOUSING-M_TERMINAL	1	SNA	D	
21-2	JC39-00544A	CBF HARNESS-HVPS(8P)	1	SA	D	
21-3	JC96-04056A	ELA HOU-VARISTOR	1	SA	A	
21-4	JC70-40912A	ICT-SHAFT HV LARGE	1	SA	B	
21-5	JC66-00979A	SHAFT-TERMINAL_16L	4	SNA	A	
21-6	JC61-70930A	SPRING ETC-HV SMALL	5	SA	A	
21-7	JC61-01330A	PLATE-P-TERMIANL_HV	5	SNA	A	
21-8	JC63-00757A	COVER-M_TERMINAL DUP	1	SNA	D	
21-9	JC63-00742A	COVER-M_TERMINAL	1	SNA	D	
21-10	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	B	
22	JC61-02257A	HOLDER-FUSER LAMP	1	SNA	D	
23	JC39-00832A	HARNESS-FUSER_FR	1	SNA	D	
24	JB61-00439A	PLATE-STARWHEEL	1	SNA	A	
25	JC61-02422A	HOLDER-TONER CRUM	1	SNA	D	
26	JC92-01963A	PBA-TCRUM_IF		SA	A	
27	6502-001101	CABLE CLAMP	1	SNA	A	
28	6502-001093	CABLE CLAMP	1	SA	A	
29	JC63-00797A	GROUND-P-P FUSER	1	SNA	D	
32	JC63-00798A	GROUND-P-EXIT	1	SNA	D	
33	JC63-00800A	GROUND-P-OPE REAR	1	SNA	D	
34	JC63-00796A	GROUND-P-H FUSER	1	SNA	D	
35	JC63-00799A	GROUND-P-MAIN DRIVE L	1	SNA	D	
36	JC39-00784A	HARNESS-DEVE_RF	1	SNA	D	
39	JC61-01287A	HOLDER-M_DEVE CONN	1	SNA	D	
40	JC67-00127A	DUCT-M_FAN LSU	1	SA	B	
42	JC39-00545A	CBF HARNESS-HVPS(3P)	1	SA	D	
43	JC61-01353A	BRACKET-P-CHANNEL	1	SNA	D	
44	JC31-00099A	FAN	1	SA	D	

5.4 Base Frame



Base Frame Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

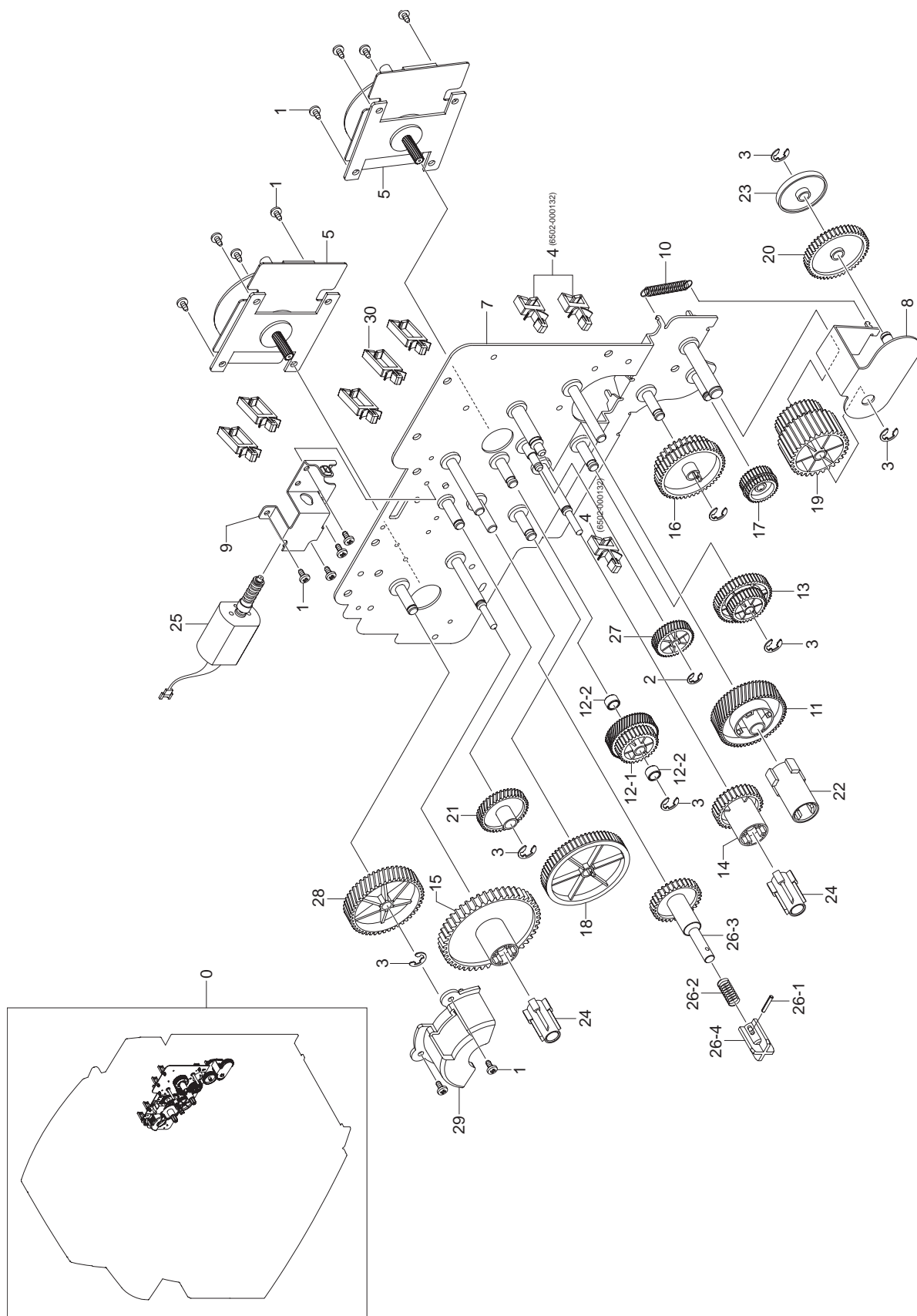
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04903A	ELA HOU-BASE FRAME	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-01337A	BASE-P-PLATE	1	SNA	A	
2	JC61-01312A	PLATE-P-BEAM BASE	2	SNA	D	
3	JC61-01342B	HOUSING-BASE LEFT	1	SNA	A	
4	JC61-40001A	FOOT-ML80	1	SA	A	
5	JC96-05046A	ELA HOU-PICK UP	1	SA	A	
6	JC61-01347A	BRACKET-P-JOINT BASE	1	SNA	D	
7	JC61-01296A	GUIDE-M_FEED UPPER	1	SNA	D	
8	JC61-01344A	HOLDER-M_CST R	1	SNA	D	
9	JC61-01294A	GUIDE-M_FEED DP	1	SNA	D	
10	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	3	SA	A	
11	JC39-00790A	CBF HARNESS-REGI	1	SNA	D	
12	JC97-02704A	MEA UNIT-ACT READY	1	SNA	A	
12-1	JC61-01422A	HOLD-M ACT READY	1	SA	A	
12-2	JC61-01435A	LEG-M_ACT READY DP	1	SA	A	
12-3	JB61-00076A	SPRING ETC-TORSION DOC (CC2-F)	1	SA	B	
15	JC61-01341B	HOUSING-BASE RIGHT	1	SA	A	
16	3001-002207	SPEAKER	1	SA	D	
17	JC39-00792A	HARNESS-MP_SPK	1	SNA	D	
18	JC61-01423A	BRACKET-P-ARM FRIC	1	SNA	D	
19	6107-001258	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
20	6107-001263	SPRING-TS	1	SNA	D	
21	JC66-00959A	LEVER-M_ARM FRICTION	1	SA	D	
22	6044-000125	RING-E	6	SA	A	
23	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	4	SA	B	
24	JC61-01313A	GUIDE-M_PICKUP BASE	1	SNA	D	
25	JC63-00795A	SHEET-GUIDE FILM BASE	1	SA	A	
26	JC61-01314A	GUIDE-P-SHIELD SMPS	1	SNA	D	
27	JC97-02705A	MEA UNIT-FEED IDLE MP	1	SA	A	
27-1	JC66-01027A	ROLLER-RUBBER IDLE	1	SNA	D	
27-2	JC61-00046A	SPRING ETC-TR R HAWK	2	SNA	D	
27-3	JC61-01434A	HOLDER-M_BUSHING IDLE	2	SNA	D	
27-4	JC61-00424A	BUSH-4	2	SA	B	
31	6107-001258	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
32	JC61-01297A	GUIDE-M_FEED IDLE MP	1	SA	A	
33	JC97-02290A	MEA UNIT-RETARD	1	SA	A	
33-1	JC61-01348A	BRACKET-P-RETARD	1	SNA	D	
33-2	JC66-00937A	SHAFT-RETARD S	1	SA	A	
33-3	JC66-00939A	SHAFT-LOCK	1	SA	A	

Base Frame Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
33-4	JC66-00938A	SHAFT-RETARD M	1	SNA	D	
33-5	JC67-00126A	COUPLER-TORQUELIMITER	1	SA	B	
33-6	JC66-00976A	JOINT-M_RETARD	1	SA	D	
33-7	JC97-02259A	MEA UNIT-ROLLER PU	1	SA	A	
33-8	JC61-01349A	BRACKET-P-BAR RETARD	1	SNA	D	
34	JC61-01338A	BASE-P-PLATE REAR	1	SNA	A	
35	JC96-04906A	ELA HOU-SIZE SENSOR	1	SA	A	
35-1	JC96-02127B	ELA HOU-CST SENSOR HAWK16	1	SA	A	
35-2	JC61-01343A	HOUSING-M_SIZE SENSOR	1	SA	D	
35-3	JC39-00795A	HARNESS-TRAY_SIZE	1	SNA	D	
35-4	JC63-00794A	GROUND-P-PAPER SIZE	1	SA	D	
36	JC61-01345A	HOLDER-M_CST L	1	SNA	D	
37	JC61-01340A	BRACKET-P_HANDLE L	1	SNA	D	
38	JC39-00780A	HARNESS-SCF_MAIN	1	SNA	D	
39	JC70-11028A	IPR-GROUND TOP	1	SA	D	
40	JC39-00793A	CBF HARNESS-NEAR SEN	1	SNA	A	
41	JC61-01436A	BRACKET-P_HANDLE R	1	SNA	D	
42	6502-000132	CABLE CLAMP	1	SA	D	
43	6502-001101	CABLE CLAMP	1	SNA	A	
44	JC31-00045A	MOTOR GEARED-P LIFT	1	SA	A	
49	JC63-00833A	GROUND-P-SHAFT RETARD	1	SA	D	
50	JC61-02262A	HOLDER-P-MP FEED	1	SNA	D	
51	JC97-02260A	MEA UNIT-HOLDER PAD	1	SA	A	
52	JC96-04905A	ELA HOU-MP	1	SA	A	

5.5 Main Drive

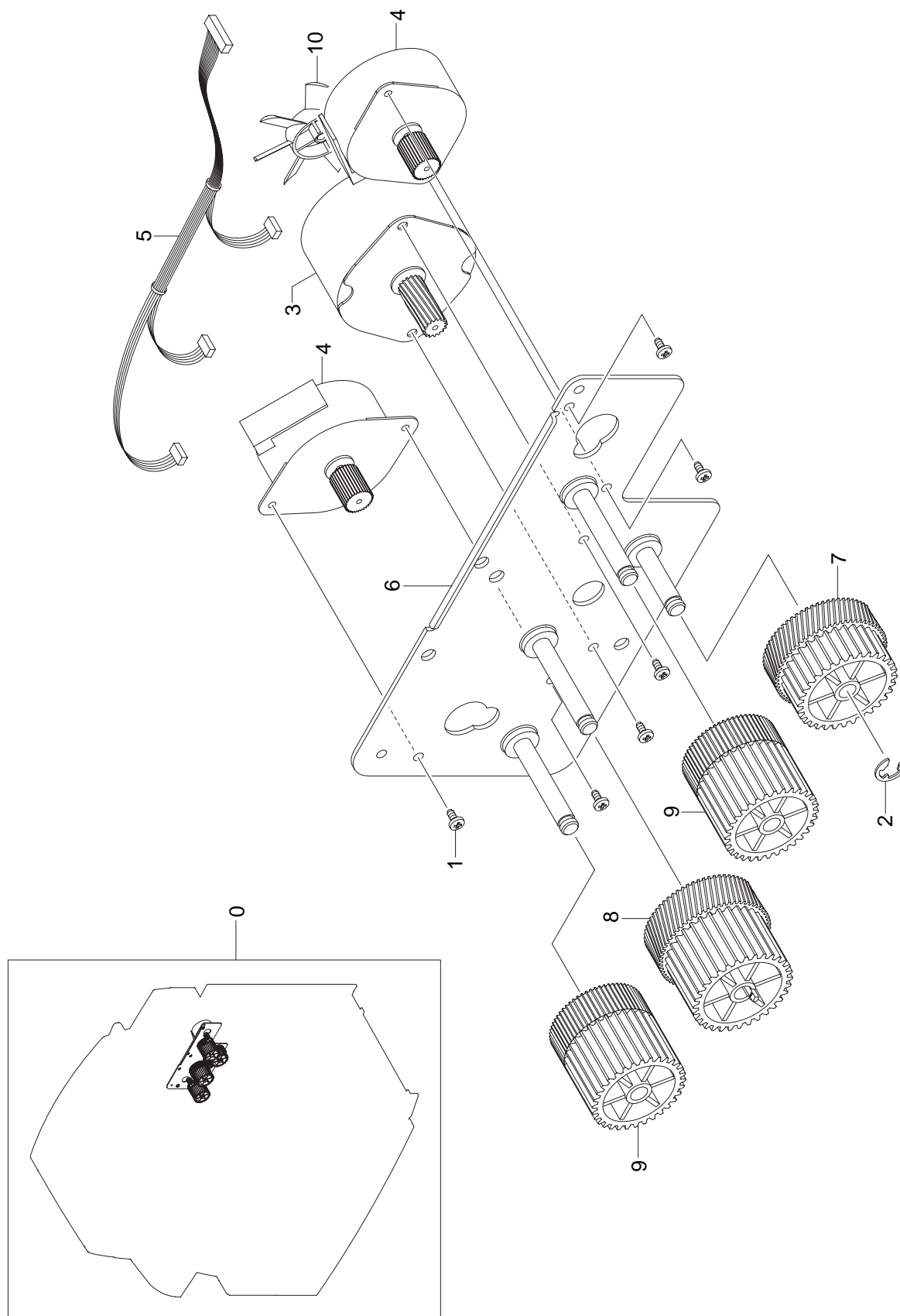


Main Drive Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04891A	ELA HOU-DRIVE MAIN	1	SA	A	
1	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE	14	SA	B	
2	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	
3	6044-000231	RING-E	7	SA	A	
4	6502-000132	CABLE CLAMP	3	SA	D	
5	JC31-00090A	MOTOR BLDC	2	SA	A	
6	JC39-00777A	HARNESS-MAIN_MTR	1	SNA	D	
7	JC61-02245A	BRACKET-MAIN	1	SNA	D	
8	JC61-01369A	BRACKET-P-DPX SWING	1	SNA	A	
9	JC61-01370A	BRACKET-P-TONER MOTOR	1	SNA	A	
10	JC61-70950A	SPRING ETC-EXTENSION	1	SA	A	
11	JC66-00982A	GEAR-M_OPC BASE	1	SA	D	
12	JC97-03120A	MEA-GEAR REGI IDLE A	1	SNA	D	
12-1	JC66-01681A	GEAR-REGI HELICAL	1	SA	D	
12-2	JC61-01428A	BUSH-DRY	2	SA	A	
13	JC66-01677A	GEAR-REGI IDLE C	1	SA	D	
14	JC66-00985A	GEAR-M_MIXER	1	SA	D	
15	JC66-00986A	GEAR-M_AGITATOR	1	SA	D	
16	JC66-01682A	GEAR-PICKUP HELICAL	1	SA	D	
17	JC66-01680A	GEAR-MP HELICAL	1	SA	D	
18	JC66-00989A	GEAR-M_AGI IDLE	1	SA	D	
19	JC66-00990A	GEAR-M_MP IDLE B	1	SA	D	
20	JC66-00991A	GEAR-M_DUPLEX IDLE	1	SA	D	
21	JC66-00993A	GEAR-M_SUPPLY IDLE	1	SA	D	
22	JC67-00115A	OTHER MECHA-M CPL OPC	1	SA	D	
23	JC67-00116A	OTHER MECHA-M COLLAR DP	1	SNA	D	
24	JC72-00743A	PMO-DEV/COUPLING	2	SA	D	
25	JC31-00078A	MOTOR DC	1	SA	A	
26	JC97-02681A	MEA UNIT-GEAR SUPPLY	1	SA	A	
26-1	6043-001028	PIN-SPRING	1	SA	D	
26-2	JC61-00396A	SPRING ETC-COIL CONTAINER	1	SA	D	
26-3	JC66-00992A	GEAR-M_SUPPLY	1	SNA	D	
26-4	JC72-00621A	JOINT-COUPLING_CONTAINER	1	SA	D	
27	JC66-01678A	GEAR-MIDDLE	1	SA	D	
28	JC66-01679A	GEAR-AGI IDLE B	1	SA	D	
29	JC67-00276A	CAP-GEAR	1	SNA	D	
30	6502-001093	CABLE CLAMP	5	SA	A	

5.6 Fuser Drive

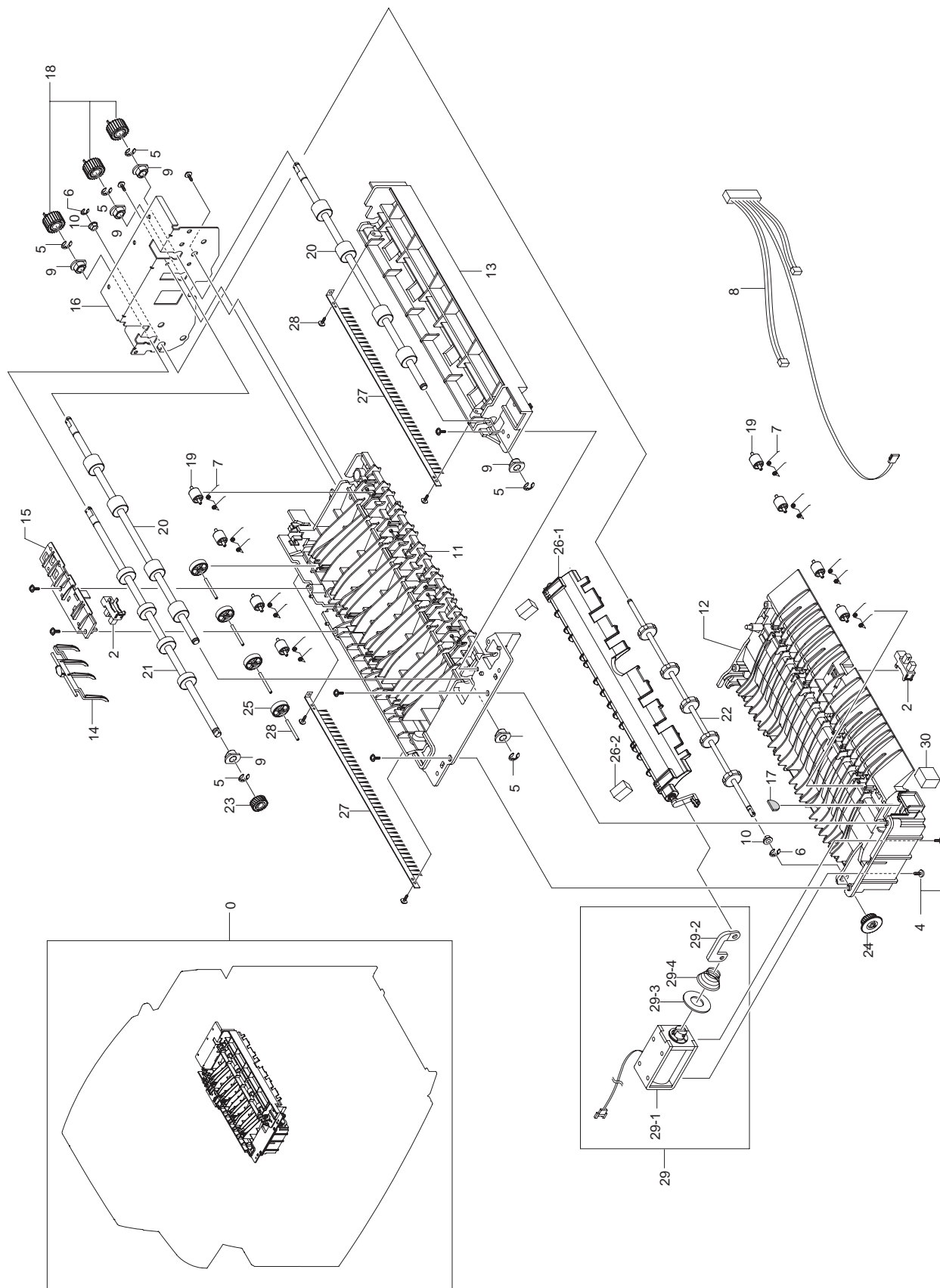


Fuser Drive Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04893A	ELA HOU-DRIVE FUSER	1	SA	A	
1	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(YEL	6	SA	B	
2	6044-000231	RING-E;ID5.0,OD11.0,T0.6,PASS,STS304	1	SA	A	
3	JC31-00100A	MOTOR STEP	1	SNA	D	
4	JC31-00077A	MOTOR STEP	2	SNA	A	
5	JC39-00789A	HARNESS-STP_MTR	1	SA	D	
6	JC61-01371A	BRACKET-P-FUSER EXIT;SCX-6345N/XRX,S	1	SNA	D	
7	JC66-01986A	GEAR-FUSER IDLE A	1	SNA	D	
8	JC66-01988A	GEAR-EXIT IDLE A	1	SNA	D	
9	JC66-01987A	GEAR-EXIT IDLE C	2	SNA	D	
10	JC72-00825A	PMO-IMPELLER_DRV;ML-6200,NYLON66,BLK	1	SA	A	

5.7 Exit Ass'y

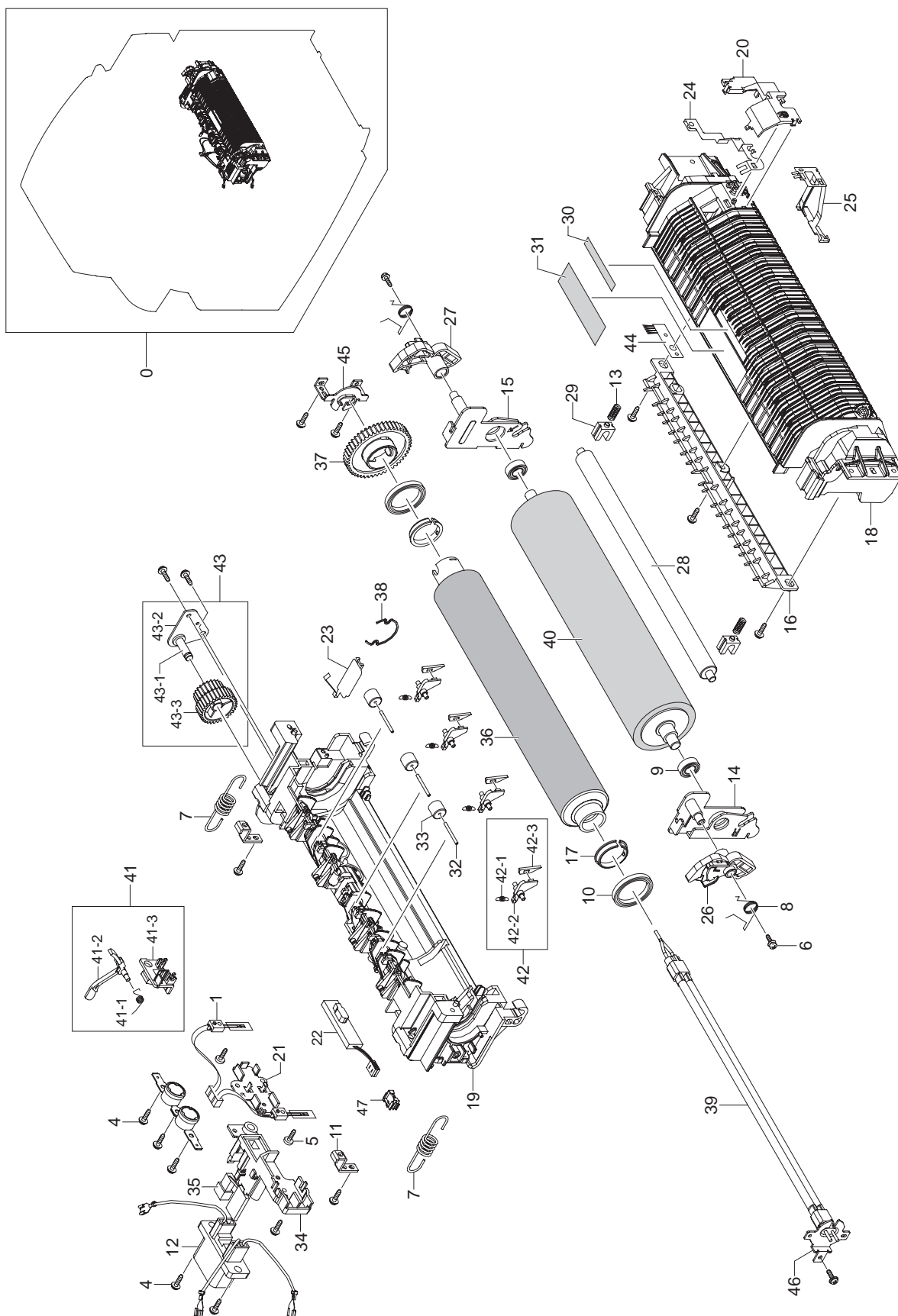


Exit Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04892A	ELA HOU-EXIT	1	SA	A	
2	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
3	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	B	
4	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	B	
5	6044-000125	RING-E	6	SA	A	
6	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	
7	6107-001540	SPRING-TS	8	SNA	A	
8	JC39-00788A	HARNESS-EXIT	1	SNA	D	
9	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	6	SA	B	
10	JC61-00424A	BUSH-4	2	SA	B	
11	JC61-01301A	GUIDE-M_EXIT UPPER	1	SNA	D	
12	JC61-01302A	GUIDE-M_EXIT LOWER	1	SNA	D	
13	JC61-01303A	GUIDE-M_EXIT DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
14	JC61-01391A	LEG-M LIMIT STACKING	1	SA	A	
15	JC61-01392A	HOLDER-M_ACT OUTBIN	1	SNA	D	
16	JC61-01393A	BRACKET-P-EXIT	1	SNA	A	
17	JC63-00821A	ABSORBER-DAMPER S	1	SNA	D	
18	JC66-01012A	GEAR-M_EXIT	3	SA	D	
19	JC66-01013A	ROLLER-M IDLE JF	8	SA	A	
20	JC66-01014A	ROLLER-EXIT DRV	1	SNA	A	
21	JC66-01015A	ROLLER-EXIT UPPER	1	SNA	D	
22	JC66-01016A	ROLLER-EXIT_LOWER	1	SNA	A	
23	JC66-01017A	GEAR-M_EXIT UPPER	1	SA	D	
24	JC66-01018A	GEAR-M_EXIT LOWER	1	SA	D	
25	JC66-01019A	ROLLER-M EXIT DP IDLE	4	SA	D	
26	JC67-00125A	BRUSH-EXIT	1	SA	D	
26-1	JC70-00064A	IPR-PIN ROLLER EXIT	1	SNA	A	
26-2	JC72-01416A	SPONGE-DAMPER SOL	2	SA	D	
27	JC96-04899A	ELA HOU-SOLENOID DP	1	SA	A	
28	JC33-00029A	SOLENOID-DUPLEX	1	SNA	A	
29	JC61-01332A	GUIDE RAIL-M LINK GATE	1	SNA	D	
29-1	JC61-70915A	SPRING ETC-SOLENOID DP	1	SA	A	
29-2	JC63-00820A	ABSORBER-DAMPER L	1	SNA	D	
29-3	JC97-03208A	MEA-GATE SPONGE	1	SNA	A	
29-4	JC67-00122A	OTHER MECHA-M GATE DP	1	SA	D	
30	JC72-01415A	SPONGE-DAMPER GATE	1	SA	D	

5.8 Fuser Unit



Fuser Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

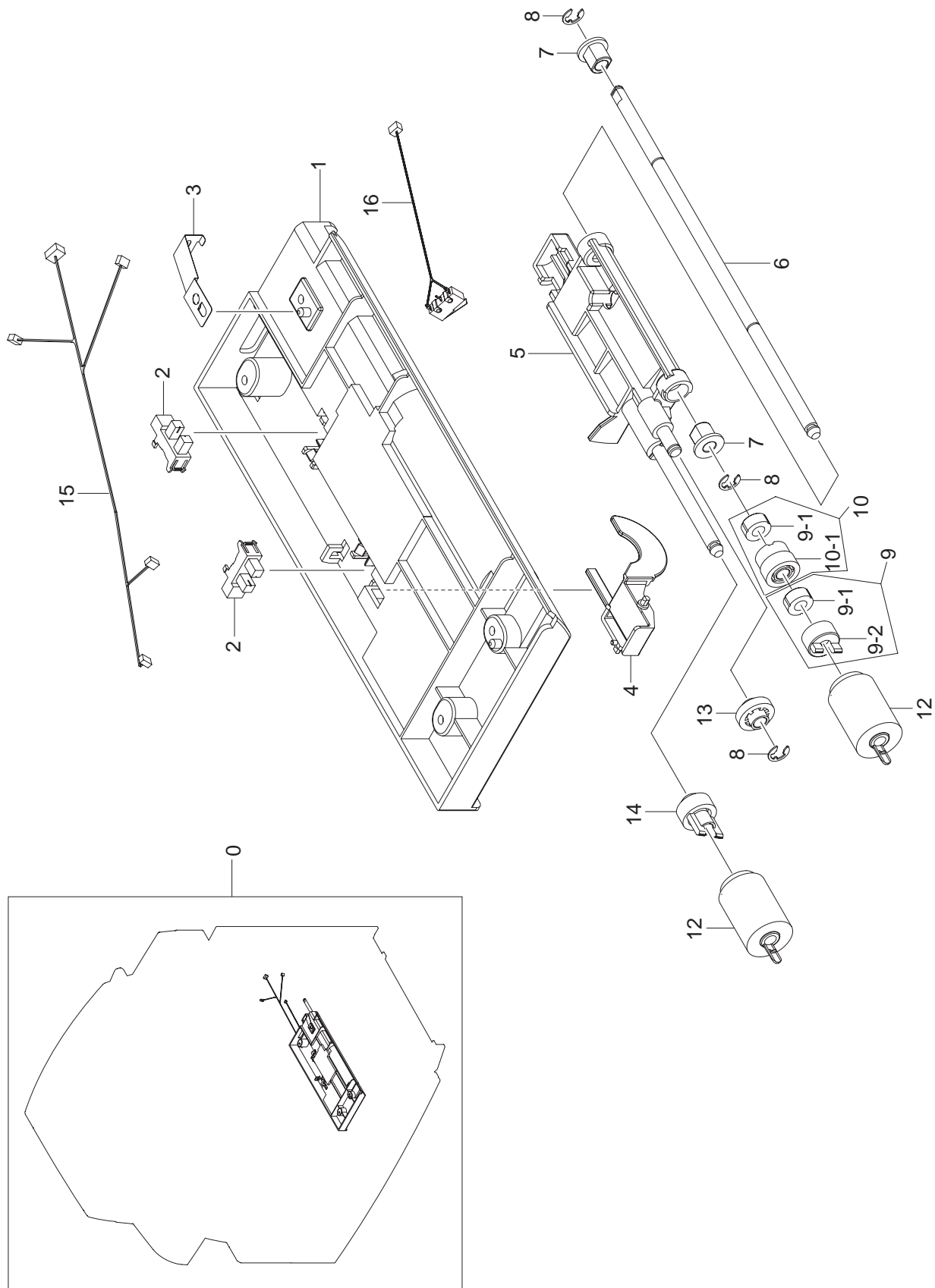
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04991A	ELA HOU-FUSER	1	SA	A	110V
0	JC96-04991B	ELA HOU-FUSER	1	SNA	A	220V
1	1404-001355	THERMISTOR-NTC ASSY	1	SA	A	
2	4712-001028	THERMOSTAT	1	SA	A	
3	6002-000440	SCREW-TAPPING	3	SA	B	
4	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	20	SA	B	
5	6003-001086	SCREW-TAPTITE	2	SA	D	
6	6006-001193	SCREW-MACHINE	2	SA	D	
7	6107-001385	SPRING-ES	2	SNA	D	
8	6107-001260	SPRING-TS	2	SNA	D	
9	6601-001341	BEARING-BALL	2	SA	A	
10	6601-001479	BEARING-BALL	2	SA	A	
11	JC61-02264A	BRACKET-SPR SUPPORT	2	SNA	D	
12	JC39-00831A	HARNESS-FUSER_FU	1	SNA	D	
13	JC61-00013A	SPRING ETC-PAD	2	SNA	D	
14	JC61-02277A	BRACKET-PR R	1	SNA	D	
15	JC61-02266A	BRACKET-PR L	1	SNA	D	
16	JC61-01419A	GUIDE-M_INPUT JF	1	SNA	D	
17	JC61-01958A	BUSH-HR	2	SA	A	
18	JC63-01598A	COVER-LOWER FUSER	1	SNA	D	
19	JC63-01604A	COVER-UPPER FUSER	1	SNA	D	
20	JC63-00761A	COVER-M_GROUND	1	SNA	D	
21	JC63-01587A	COVER-NC THERMISTOR	1	SNA	D	
22	1404-001453	THERMISTOR-NTC ASSY	1	SA	D	
23	JC63-01642A	GROUND-HR	1	SNA	D	
24	JC63-00819A	GROUND-P-PR	1	SNA	D	
25	JC63-01640A	GROUND-PR2	1	SNA	D	
26	JC66-01687A	LEVER-JAM R	1	SA	D	
27	JC66-01859A	LEVER-JAM L	1	SA	D	
28	JC66-01870A	SHAFT-CLEANING_PR	1	SNA	D	
29	JC66-10205A	BEARING-PRESSURE R	2	SA	D	
30	JC68-01134A	LABEL(P)-BLANK(FUSER)	1	SNA	A	
31	JC68-01581B	LABEL-CAUTION	1	SNA	A	
32	JC70-00064A	IPR-PIN ROLLER EXIT	3	SNA	A	
33	JC72-20902A	PEX-ROLLER F/UP(2)	3	SA	A	
34	JC63-01591A	COVER-TERMINAL LAMP	1	SNA	D	
35	JC92-02008A	PBA-FUSER_CRUM	1	SNA	D	
36	JC66-01871A	ROLLER-HEAT	1	SA	D	
37	JC66-01666A	GEAR-FUSER	1	SA	D	

Fuser Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
38	JC61-02551A	SPRING ETC-LOCK	1	SNA	A	
39	4713-001235/6	LAMP-HALOGEN (220V/110V)	1	SA	D	
40	JC66-01825A	ROLLER-PRESSURE	1	SA	D	
41	JC97-02288A	MEA UNIT-ACTUATOR	1	SA	A	
41-1	JC61-00019A	SPRING ETC-ACT, FEED	1	SA	D	
41-2	JC61-01384A	LEG-M ACTUATOR EXIT	1	SNA	D	
41-3	JC61-01385A	HOLDER-ACTUATOR	1	SNA	D	
42	JC97-02294A	MEA UNIT-CLAW	4	SA	A	
42-1	6107-001291	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
42-2	JC61-01383A	HOLDER-M_CLAW	1	SNA	D	
42-3	JC67-00121A	OTHER MECHA-FINGER	1	SNA	D	
43	JC97-02680A	MEA-BRACKET FUSER	1	SA	A	
43-1	0205-001003	GREASE-BEARING	0.001KG	SNA	A	
43-2	JC61-01388A	BRACKET-P-FUSER GEAR	1	SNA	D	
43-3	JC66-01011A	GEAR-M DRV Z2228	1	SA	D	
44	JC67-00317A	BRUSH-ANTISTATIC_FUSER	1	SNA	A	
45	JC61-02281A	BRACKET-LAMP L	1	SNA	D	
46	JC61-02271A	BRACKET-LAMP R	1	SNA	D	
47	JC61-02657A	HOLDER THERMISTOR	1	SA	B	

5.9 Pick Up Ass'y

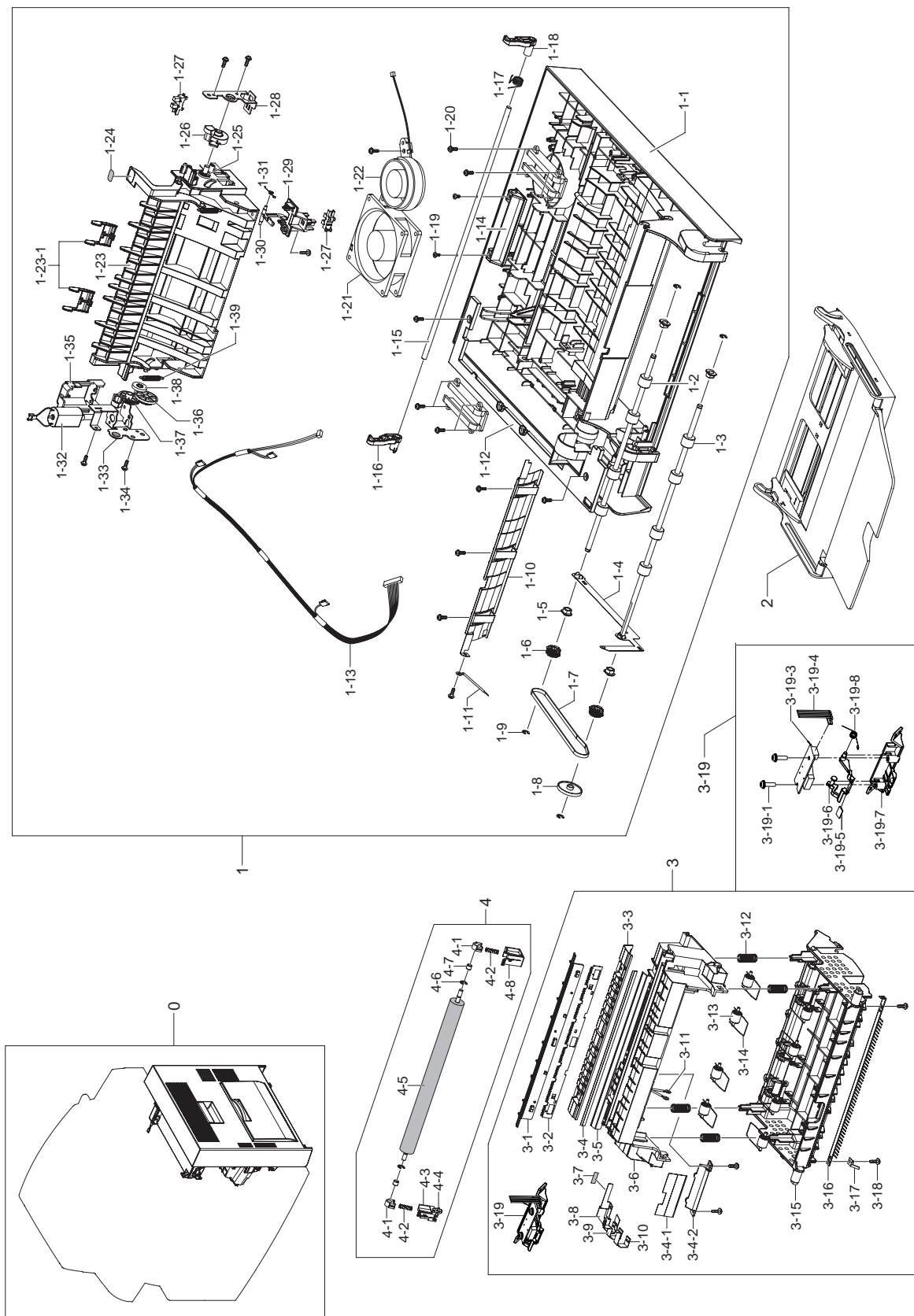


Pick Up Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-05046A	ELA HOU-PICK UP	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-01298A	FRAME-M_BASE PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
2	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
3	JC63-00743A	GROUND-P-SHAFT PU	1	SNA	D	
4	JC61-01350A	LEG-M_ACT NO PAPER	1	SNA	A	
5	JC61-01299A	GUIDE-M_UPPER PICK UP	1	SNA	A	
6	JC66-00942A	SHAFT-PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
7	JC61-00884A	BUSH-6_D(L)	2	SNA	D	
8	6044-000125	RING-E	3	SA	A	
9	JC97-02291A	MEA UNIT-GEAR ONE WAY	1	SNA	D	
9-1	JC66-00977A	CLUTCH-P_ONE WAY	2	SA	B	
9-2	JC66-00941A	GEAR-M_ONE WAY	1	SA	D	
10	JC97-02292A	MEA UNIT-IDLE FORWARD	1	SNA	D	
10-1	JC61-01288A	HOLDER-M_IDLE ONE WAY	1	SA	A	
12	JC97-02259A	MEA UNIT-ROLLER PU	2	SA	A	
13	JC66-00940A	GEAR-M_IDLE PU	1	SA	D	
14	JC66-00943A	GEAR-M_PU JOINT	1	SA	D	
15	JC39-00794A	HARNESS-SCF_EMPTY	1	SNA	D	
16	JC39-00833A	HARNESS-MOTOR_SW	1	SNA	D	

5.10 Side Duplex



Side Duplex Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04890A	ELA HOU-SIDE DUPLEX	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04896X	ELA HOU-SIDE	1	SA	A	
1-1	JC63-00775A	COVER-M_SIDE	1	SA	B	
1-2	JC66-00969A	ROLLER-DUPLEX	1	SA	D	
1-3	JC66-00970A	ROLLER-DUPLEX READY	1	SA	A	
1-4	JC63-00784A	GROUND-P-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
1-5	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	4	SA	B	
1-6	JC66-00971A	PULLEY-M_DUPLEX	2	SA	D	
1-7	6602-001092	BELT-TIMING GEAR	1	SA	B	
1-8	JC67-00116A	OTHER MECHA-M COLLAR DP	1	SNA	D	
1-9	6044-000125	RING-E	4	SA	A	
1-10	JC61-01334A	BRACKET-P-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
1-11	JB39-00103A	CBF HARNESS-LIU GND	1	SA	B	
1-12	JC67-00112A	CAP-M_SIDE	1	SNA	D	
1-13	JC39-00783A	HARNESS-DUPLEX	1	SA	D	
1-14	JC64-00205A	HANDLE-M_SIDE	1	SA	D	
1-15	JC66-00935A	SHAFT-HANDLE	1	SNA	D	
1-16	JC64-00199A	LOCKER-M_REAR	1	SA	A	
1-17	JC61-00479A	SPRING ETC-LOCKER TORSION	1	SA	D	
1-18	JC64-00198A	LOCKER-M_FRONT	1	SA	A	
1-19	6001-000130	SCREW-MACHINE	2	SA	A	
1-20	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	10	SA	B	
1-21	JC31-00088A	FAN-DC	1	SA	B	
1-22	JC31-00087A	FAN-DC	1	SA	A	
1-23	JC61-01308A	GUIDE-M_EXIT	1	SNA	D	
1-23-1	JC61-02562A	GUIDE-EXIT SUB	2	SA	A	
1-24	JC68-01246B	LABEL(R)-GUIDE_DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
1-25	JC61-02557A	SPRING-TS	1	SA	D	
1-26	JC66-01686A	LEVER-GEAR FRONT	1	SA	D	
1-27	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
1-28	JC61-02246A	BRACKET-CAM FRONT	1	SNA	D	
1-29	JC61-01335A	HOLDER-M_ACTUATOR DP	1	SA	A	
1-30	JC61-01336A	LEG-M_ACTUATOR DUPLEX	1	SA	A	
1-31	JC61-00019A	SPRING ETC-ACT, FEED	1	SA	D	
1-32	JC31-00094A	MOTOR DC	1	SA	A	
1-33	JC61-02269A	BRACKET-MOTOR	1	SNA	D	
1-34	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	7	SA	B	
1-35	JC63-01585A	COVER-MOTOR ENV	1	SNA	D	
1-36	JC66-01665A	GEAR-IDLE ENV	1	SA	D	

Side Duplex Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

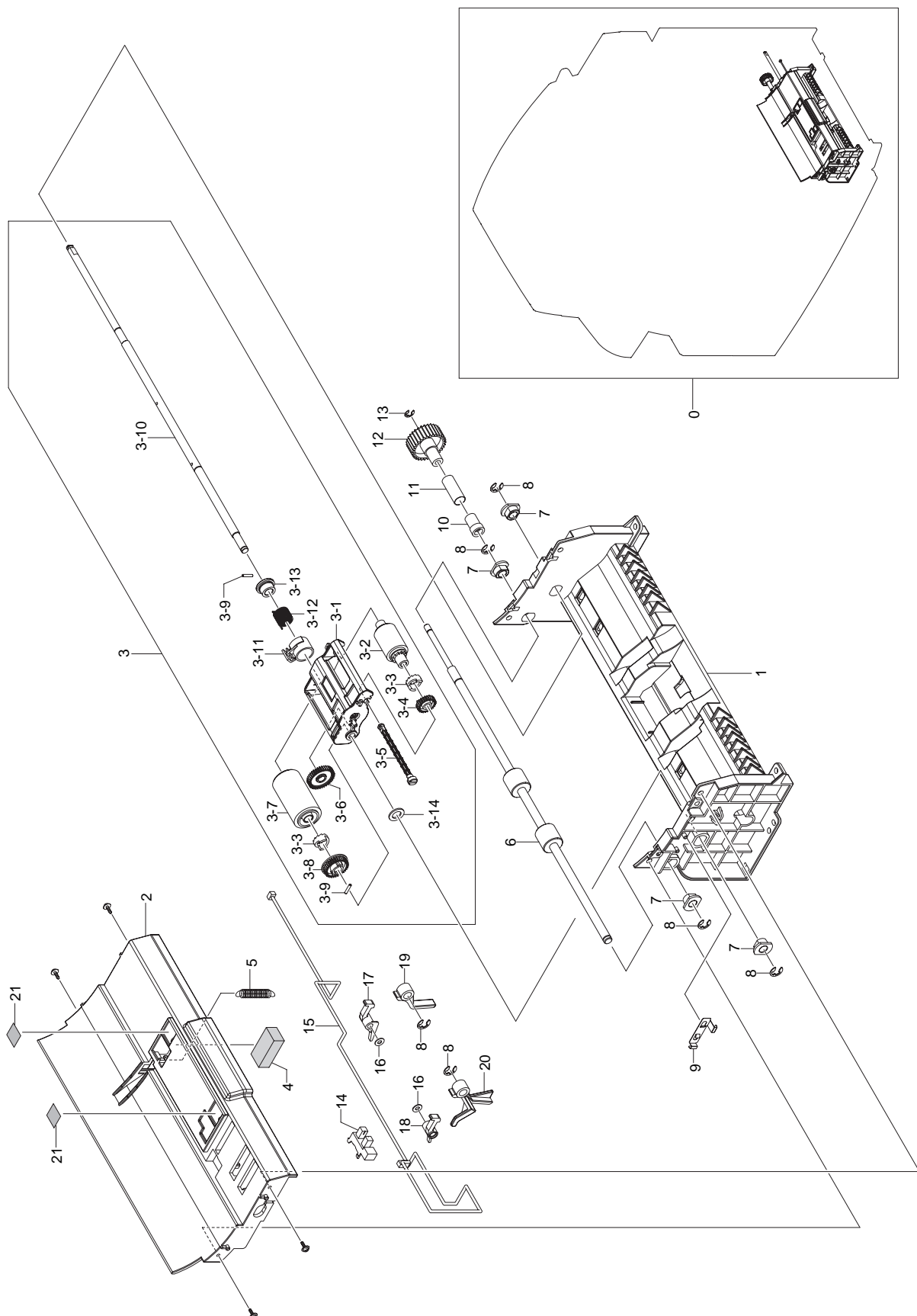
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
1-37	JC66-01684A	GEAR-CAM REAR	1	SA	D	
1-38	JC66-01685A	GEAR-DRIVE REAR	1	SA	D	
1-39	JC61-70910A	SPRING ETC-RAIL	2	SA	D	
2	JC97-02264X	MEA UNIT-TRAY	1	SA	A	
3	JC96-04982A	ELA HOU-DUPLEX	1	SA	A	
3-1	JC61-01407A	HOLDER-M_SAW	1	SNA	D	
3-2	JC70-10232D	IPR-E-PLATE SAW(MCK2)	1	SA	D	
3-3	JC61-01290A	GUIDE-P-TR	1	SNA	D	
3-4	JC63-01868A	SHEET-CLEARING TR	1	SNA	D	
3-4-1	JC63-01869A	SHEET-FEED CTD	1	SNA	D	
3-4-2	JC61-02259A	HOLDER-CTD SENSOR	1	SNA	D	
3-5	JC61-02760A	GUIDE-P-EARTH TR	1	SA	A	
3-6	JC61-01292A	GUIDE-M_FEED	1	SNA	D	
3-7	0203-001778	TAPE-DOUBLE FACE	1	SNA	D	
3-8	JC63-00786A	GROUND-P-GND	1	SNA	D	
3-9	JC63-00788A	GROUND-P-SAW	1	SNA	D	
3-10	JC63-00787A	GROUND-P-TR	1	SNA	D	
3-11	JC39-00187A	CBF HARNESS-ADF ROLLER GND	1	SA	D	
3-12	JC61-70959A	SPRING ETC-SPRING ETC FEED	4	SA	D	
3-13	JC66-01013A	ROLLER-M IDLE JF	8	SA	A	
3-14	JC65-00012A	TERMINAL-S_IDLE	8	SA	A	
3-15	JC61-01293A	GUIDE-M_DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
3-16	JC67-00125A	BRUSH-EXIT	1	SA	D	
3-17	JC63-00785A	GROUND-P-BRUSH	1	SNA	D	
3-18	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	12	SA	B	
3-19	JC96-05348A	ELA HOU-ID SENSOR	1	SA	A	
3-19-1	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	2	SA	B	
3-19-3	JC32-00009A	SENSOR-CTD	1	SA	D	
3-19-4	JC39-00797A	HARNESS-CTD	1	SNA	D	
3-19-5	JC61-02767A	BLADE-CLEANER	1	SA	A	
3-19-6	JC61-02753A	HOLDER-CLEANER	1	SA	A	
3-19-7	JC61-02259A	HOLDER-CTD	1	SNA	D	
3-19-8	6107-001261	SPRING-TS	1	SA	A	
4	JC97-02287A	MEA UNIT-TR	1	SA	A	
4-1	JC61-01694A	BUSH-46D	2	SA	D	
4-2	JC61-70906A	SPRING ETC-TR_R	2	SA	D	
4-3	JC72-00884A	PMO-HOLDER GEAR TR	1	SA	D	
4-4	JC61-70203A	SPRING ETC-PLATE TR	1	SA	D	
4-5	JC97-02375A	MEA UNIT-TR SUB	1	SA	A	

Side Duplex Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
4-6	6044-000125	RING-E	2	SA	A	
4-7	JC72-40228A	PMO-BUSH	2	SA	D	
4-8	JC72-00883A	PMO-HOLDER GND TR	1	SA	D	

5.11 MP Unit

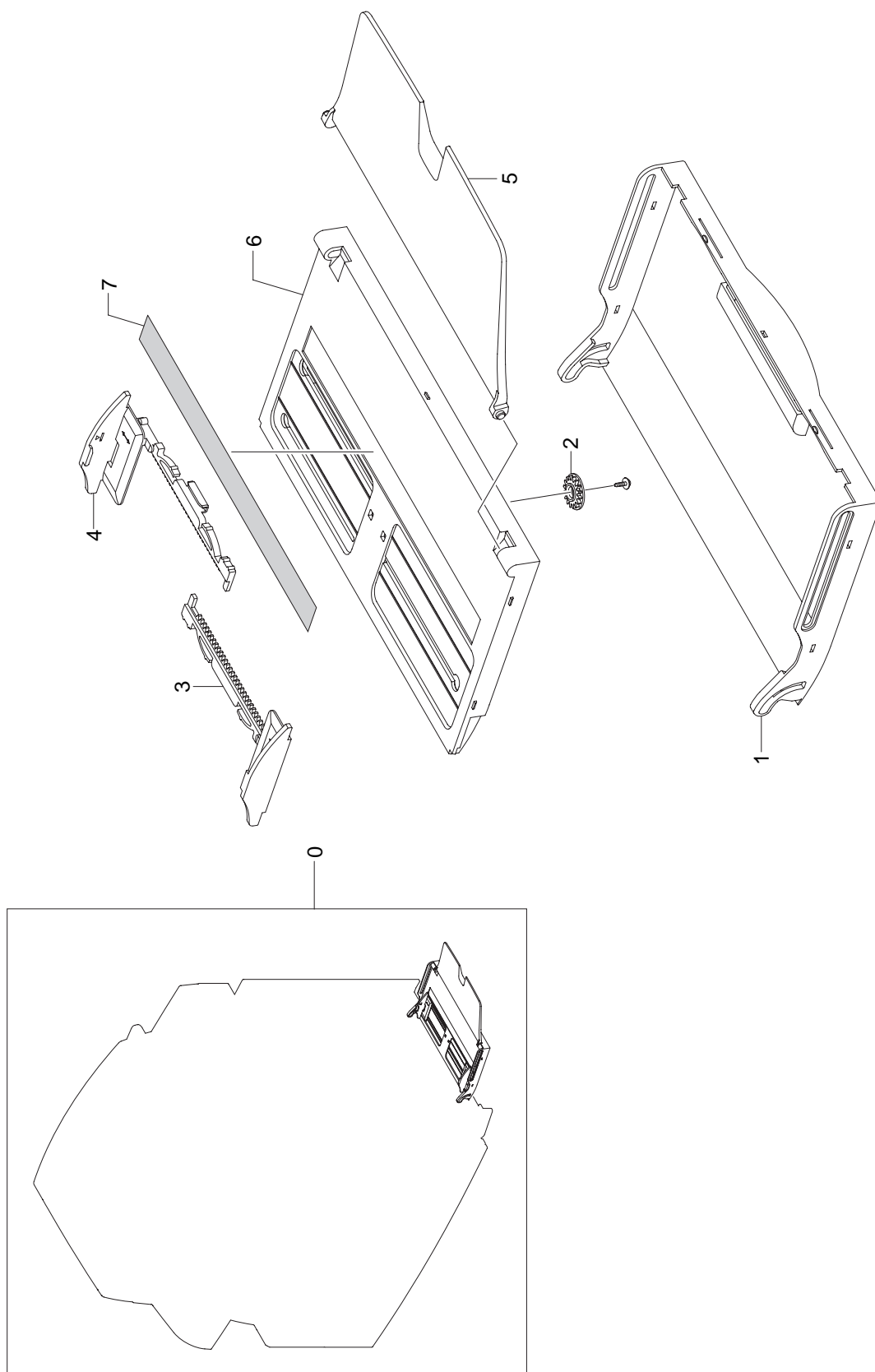


MP Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04905A	ELA HOU-MP	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-01351B	FRAME-M_MP LOWER	1	SA	A	
2	JC61-01352B	FRAME-M_MP TOP	1	SA	A	
3	JC96-03533A	ELA HOU-MP PICK UP	1	SA	A	
3-1	JC61-01410A	GUIDE-M_PICKUP DOC	1	SNA	A	
3-2	JB75-00300A	MEC-PICK UP ROLLER ASSY	1	SA	A	
3-3	JB72-00845A	PMO-PICK UP CLUTCH SUB	1	SA	A	
3-4	JB66-00105A	GEAR-PICK UP 26	1	SA	A	
3-5	JC72-00744A	PMO-SHAFT PICK UP	1	SA	B	
3-6	JB66-00102A	GEAR-PICK UP IDEL 38	1	SA	A	
3-7	JB75-00299A	MEC-ADF ROLLER ASSY	1	SA	A	
3-8	JB66-00104A	GEAR-ADF IDLE 34	1	SA	A	
3-9	JB70-00168A	ICT-PIN ADF	1	SA	A	
3-10	JC66-00978A	SHAFT-PICK UP MP	1	SNA	D	
3-11	JB72-00821A	PMO-ADF COLAR	1	SA	A	
3-12	JB61-70904A	SPRING ETC-CLUTCH	1	SA	A	
3-13	JC61-00750A	BUSH-M-ADF CLUTCH	1	SA	D	
3-14	6031-000023	WASHER-PLAIN	1	SA	B	
4	JC72-01375A	SPONGE-DAMPER MP	1	SNA	D	
5	6107-001256	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
6	JC66-01026A	ROLLER-MP DRV	1	SNA	D	
7	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
8	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
9	JC63-00744A	GROUND-P-MP	1	SNA	D	
10	JG72-40732A	PMO-BUSHING HOLDER	1	SNA	D	
11	JG70-40534A	ICT-SPRING CLUTCH	1	SA	D	
12	JC66-00936A	GEAR-M_MP FEED	1	SA	D	
13	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	
14	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
15	JC39-00791A	HARNESS LIMIT_EMPTY	1	SA	D	
16	6031-001247	WASHER-PLAIN	1	SNA	D	
17	JC66-00958B	LATCH-M_ARM REAR	1	SNA	D	
18	JC66-00958A	LATCH-M_ARM FRT	1	SNA	A	
19	JC61-01307B	STOPPER-M_PAPER REAR	1	SNA	A	
20	JC61-01307A	STOPPER-M_PAPER FRT	1	SNA	D	
21	JB63-00058A	SHEET-FILM ASF	1	SNA	A	

5.12 MP Tray

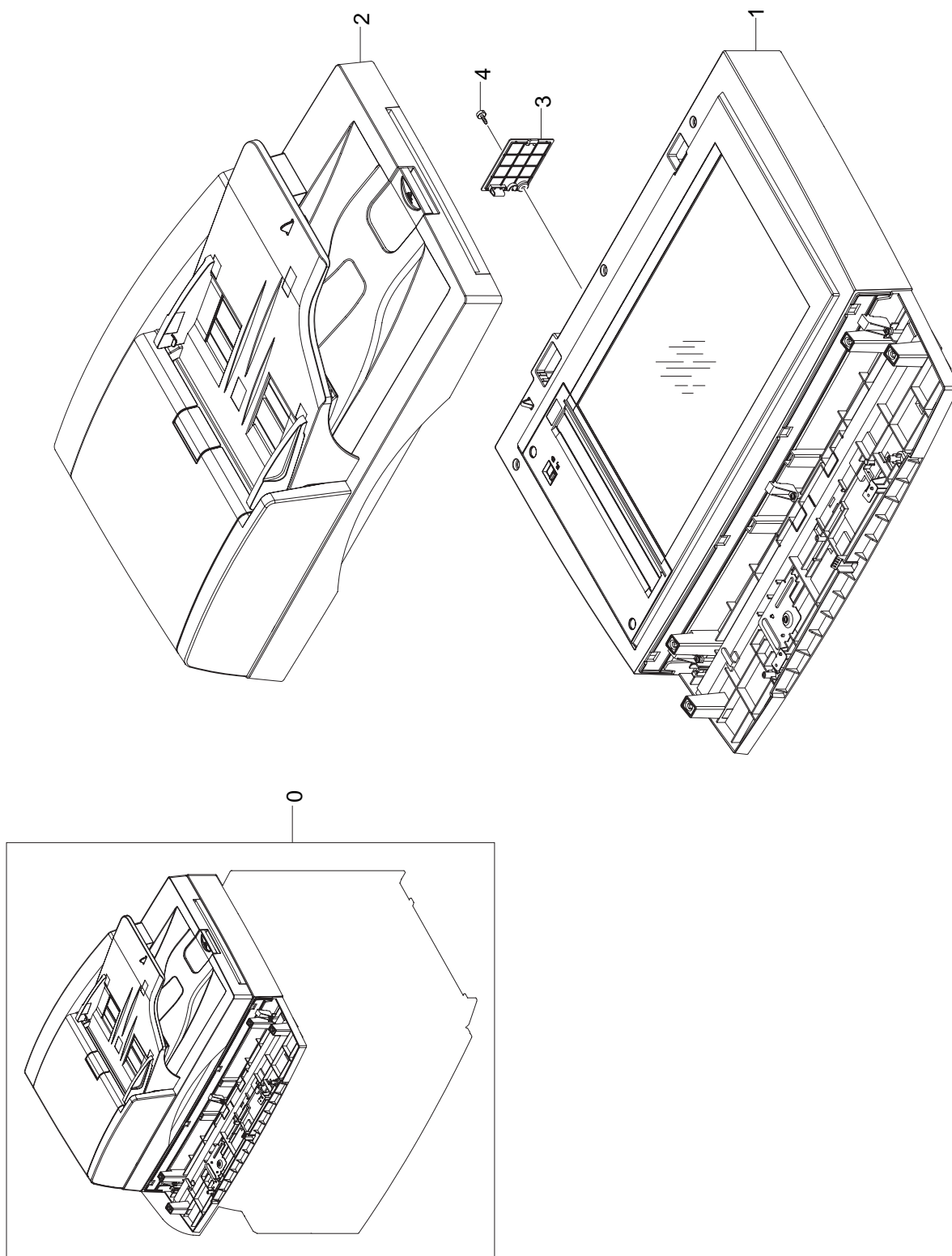


MP Tray Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-02264B	MEA UNIT-TRAY	1	SA	A	
1	JC63-00746B	TRAY-COVER LOWER	1	SNA	D	
2	JG66-40003A	GEAR-PINION	1	SA	A	
3	JC72-01005D	PMO-SIDE GUIDE MP(L)	1	SNA	A	
4	JC72-01006C	PMO-SIDE GUIDE MP(R)	1	SNA	A	
5	JC63-00447E	TRAY-M_ASF_FOLDER	1	SA	A	
6	JC63-00745B	TRAY-COVER TOP	1	SNA	A	
7	JC68-01622B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	

5.13 Scanner Ass'y

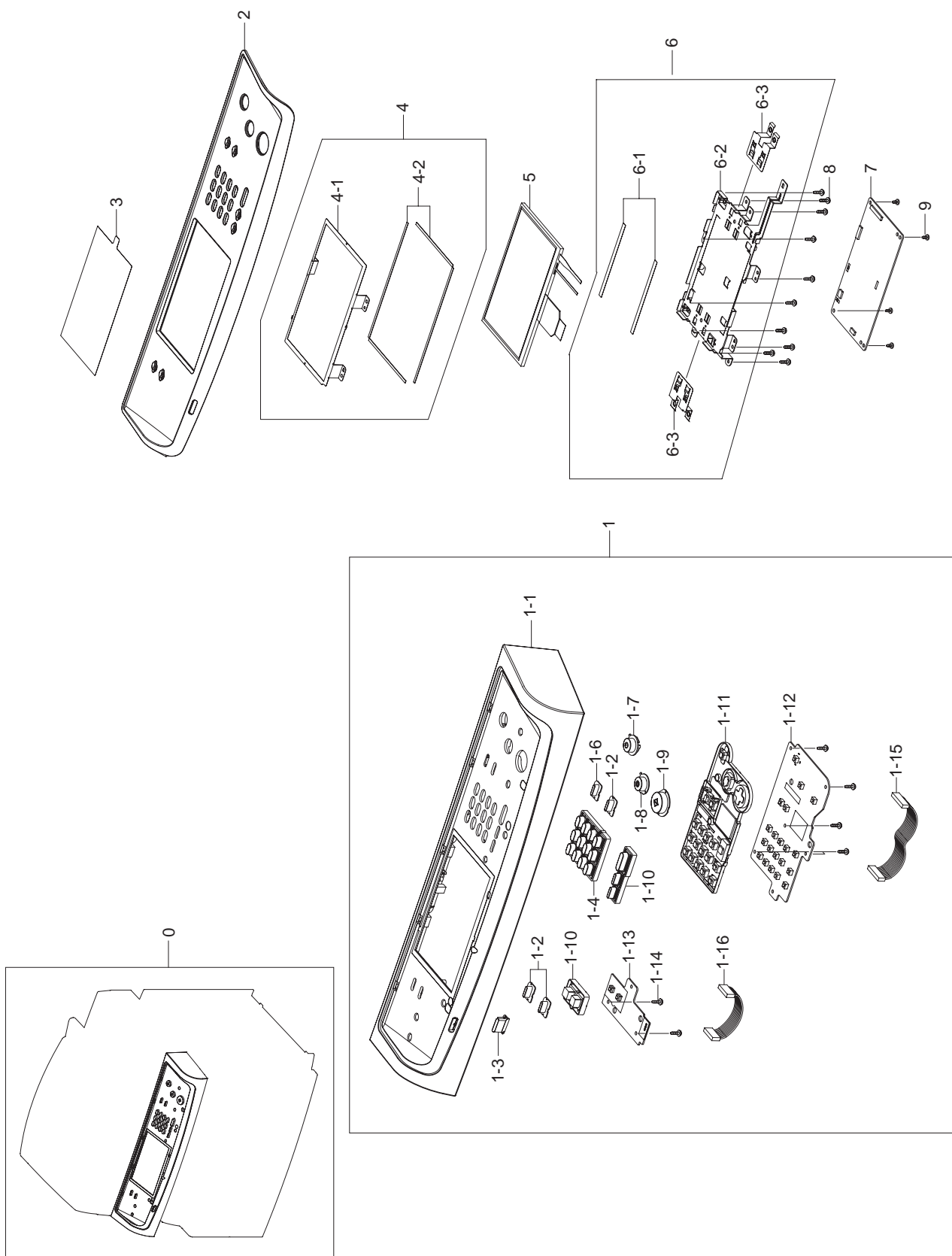


Scanner Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04863A	ELA HOU-SCAN	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04979A	ELA HOU-PLATEN	1	SA	A	
2	JC96-04855A	ELA HOU-DADF	1	SA	A	
3	JC63-00765A	COVER M_CONNECTOR	1	SA	D	
4	JC61-02098A	SCREW-SPECIAL	1	SA	D	

5.14 OPE Unit

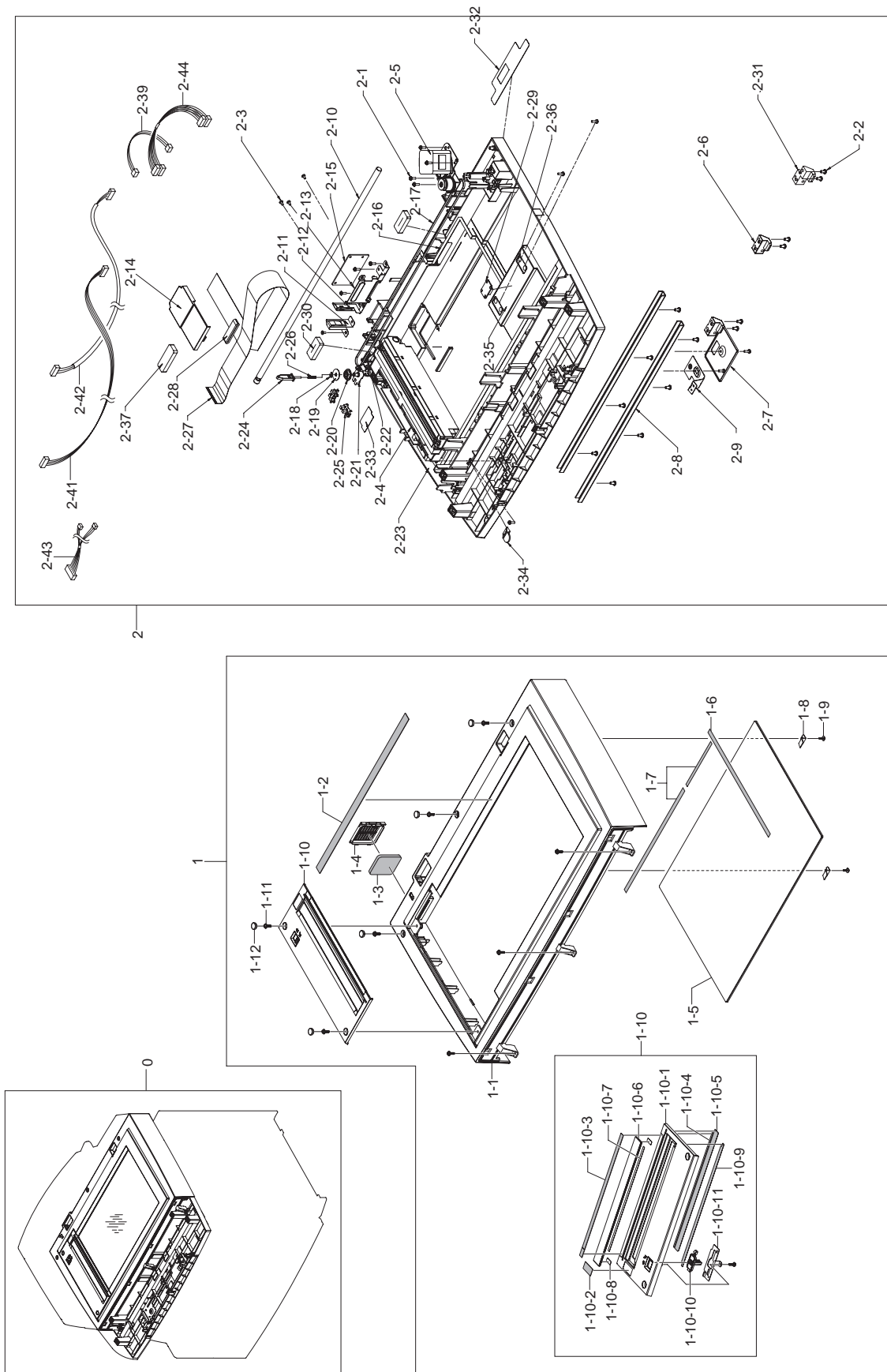


OPE Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04666A	ELA HOU-OPE	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04667A	ELA HOU-OPE COVER	1	SA	A	
1-1	JC63-01455A	COVER-OPE	1	SNA	D	
1-2	JC64-00287A	KEY-JOB_STATUS	3	SA	D	
1-3	JC67-00209A	LENS-STATUS	1	SNA	D	
1-4	JC64-00239A	KEY-M_TEL	1	SNA	D	
1-5	JC64-00288A	KEY-HOOK	1	SA	A	
1-6	JC64-00244A	KEY-M_BLACK	1	SNA	D	
1-7	JC64-00289A	KEY-STOP	1	SA	D	
1-8	JC64-00290A	KEY-START	1	SA	D	
1-9	JC64-00335A	KEY-POWER	1	SA	A	
1-10	JC73-00258A	RUBBER-JOB STATUS	1	SNA	D	
1-11	JC73-00257A	RUBBER-JOB START	1	SNA	D	
1-12	JC92-01929A	PBA SUB-KEY	1	SA	A	
1-13	JC92-01928A	PBA SUB-KEY_SUB	1	SA	A	
1-14	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10	7	SA	B	
1-15	JC39-00764A	HARNESS-OPE_KEY	1	SNA	A	
1-16	JC39-00765A	HARNESS-OPE_KEY_SUB	1	SNA	A	
2	JC63-01456B	COVER-PANEL FRONT	1	SNA	B	
3	JC63-01784A	SHEET-LCD	1	SA	B	
4	JC97-03138A	MEA UNIT-PLATE LCD	1	SA	A	
4-1	JC61-02521A	PLATE-LCD	1	SNA	D	
4-2	JC62-00428A	SEAL-COLOR LCD	2	SNA	A	
5	JC07-00011A	LCD	1	SA	A	
6	JC97-03477A	MEA UNIT-PLATE OPE	1	SA	A	
6-1	JC02-00013A	TAPE ETC-DOUBLE TAPE SMALL	2	SNA	A	
6-2	JC61-02522A	PLATE-OPE	1	SNA	D	
6-3	JC63-01459A	GROUND-LCD R	2	SNA	A	
7	JC92-02045A	PBA-OPE	1	SA	A	
8	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE;PWH,+,B,M3,L10	10	SA	B	
9	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE;BH,+,-,S,M3,L6,ZPC(WHT)	4	SA	B	

5.15 Platen Ass'y



Platen Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

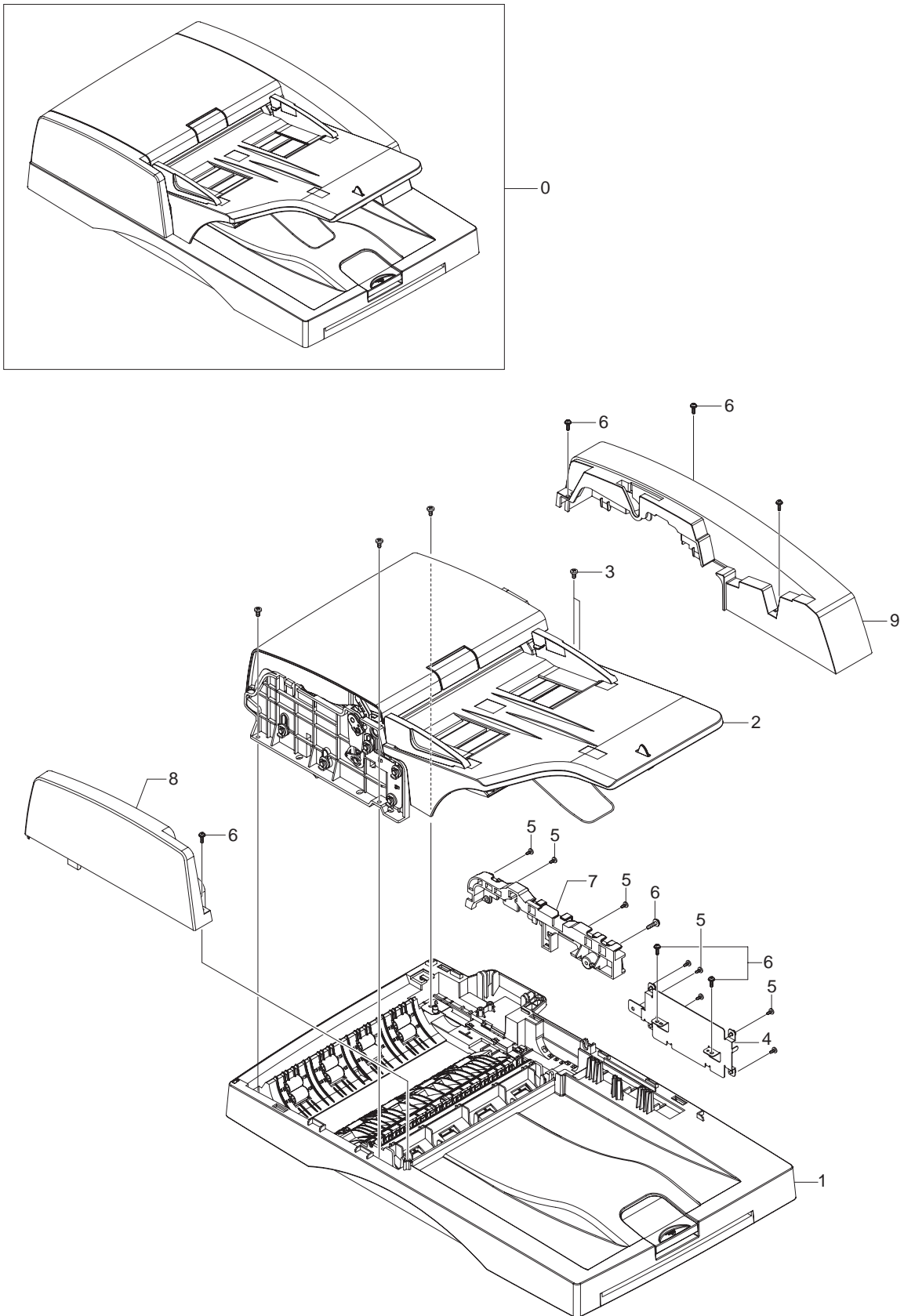
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04979A	ELA HOU-PLATEN	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04569A	ELA UNIT-SCAN UPPER	1	SA	A	
1-1	JC63-01371A	COVER SCAN UPPER	1	SNA	A	
1-2	JC63-00748A	SHEET-ABS_REGI_EDGE	1	SNA	D	
1-3	JC72-01393A	SPONGE-FILTER DUST	1	SA	D	
1-4	JC63-01364A	COVER FAN	1	SNA	A	
1-5	JC01-00016A	GLASS SCAN HEATING	1	SA	D	
1-6	JC02-00012A	TAPE ETC-DOUBLE TAPE LARGE	2	SNA	D	
1-7	JC02-00013A	TAPE ETC-DOUBLE TAPE SMALL	1	SNA	A	
1-8	JB70-00148A	IPR-HOLDER GLASS	2	SA	A	
1-9	6002-000440	SCREW-TAPPING	2	SA	B	
1-10	JC97-02950A	MEA UNIT DUMMY UPPER	1	SA	A	
1-10-1	JC63-01361A	COVER-ADF GLASS	1	SNA	D	
1-10-2	JC68-01548A	LABEL(R)-CLEAN	1	SNA	D	
1-10-3	JC68-01550A	LABEL(R)-REGI_EDGE(L)	1	SNA	D	
1-10-4	JC63-00074A	SHEET-DUMMY UPPER	1	SA	D	
1-10-5	JC63-01674A	SHEET-SHADING	1	SNA	B	
1-10-6	JC74-00019A	MCT-GLASS ADF	1	SA	D	
1-10-7	0203-001799	TAPE-DOUBLE FACE	1	SNA	D	
1-10-8	0203-001800	TAPE-DOUBLE FACE	2	SNA	D	
1-10-9	JC63-01152A	SHEET ADF GLASS	1	SNA	A	
1-10-10	JC97-03035A	MEA UNIT-LEVER-LOCKER	1	SNA	A	
1-10-11	JC61-01987A	BRACKET-LOCKER	1	SNA	A	
1-11	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	9	SA	B	
1-12	JC67-00164A	CAP-HOLE SCREW	5	SA	D	
2	JC96-04980A	ELA HOU-SCAN LOWER	1	SNA	A	
2-1	JC63-01367A	COVER-SCAN LOWER	1	SNA	A	
2-2	6003-001256	SCREW-TAPTITE	14	SNA	A	
2-3	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE	4	SA	B	
2-4	JC96-04615A	ELA UNIT-CCDM HC	1	SA	A	
2-5	JC96-04958A	ELA UNIT-SCAN MOTOR	1	SA	A	
2-6	JC61-02015A	HOLDER-FRAME	2	SNA	D	
2-7	JC61-01318A	PLATE-P-SCAN LOWER	1	SNA	A	
2-8	JC70-00239A	IPR-CHANNEL BASE FRAME	2	SA	D	
2-9	JC61-02091A	BRACKET-OPE GROUND	1	SA	D	
2-10	JC66-01526A	SHAFT-CCD	1	SNA	A	
2-11	JC63-00812A	GROUND-P-SCAN LOWER	1	SNA	A	
2-12	JC63-01406A	GROUND-SCAN IF	1	SNA	D	
2-13	JC61-02090A	BRACKET-BOARD	1	SNA	D	

Platen Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
2-14	JC63-01362A	COVER-CCD CABLE	1	SA	A	
2-15	JC92-01884A	PBA SUB-SCAN_IF	1	SA	A	
2-16	JC39-00941A	FLAT CABLE-APS_FFC	1	SNA	D	
2-17	6602-001090	BELT-TIMING GEAR	1	SA	A	
2-18	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
2-19	JB72-00764A	PMO-HOLDER BELT	1	SA	A	
2-20	JB72-00763A	PMO-PULLEY	1	SA	A	
2-21	JC61-01365A	BRACKET-P-PULLEY	1	SNA	D	
2-22	6107-001194	SPRING-CS	1	SA	B	
2-23	JC63-01367A	COVER-SCAN LOWER	1	SNA	A	
2-24	JC72-00755A	PMO-LEVER SENSOR	1	SA	B	
2-25	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
2-26	JB61-70939A	SPRING ETC-EXIT	1	SNA	D	
2-27	JC39-00815A	HARNESS-CCD_FFC	1	SNA	D	
2-28	3301-001900	CORE-FERRITE	1	SNA	D	
2-29	JC92-02009A	PBA-APS_IF	1	SA	A	
2-30	JC62-00499A	SEAL-SCAN_LOWER	2	SA	A	
2-31	JC64-00360A	LOCKER-SCAN FR L	1	SNA	D	
2-32	JC63-01876A	SHEET-SCAN_LOWER_L	1	SA	A	
2-33	JC63-01875A	SHEET-SCAN_LOWER_S	1	SA	A	
2-34	JC61-00667A	STOPPER-M-FAN80	1	SA	D	
2-35	JC61-02365A	PLATE-DOC SIZE	1	SNA	D	
2-36	0604-001370	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	D	
2-37	JC62-00492A	SEAL-COVER CCD	1	SA	D	
2-38	JC39-00322A	CBF HARNESS-SCAN GND	1	SNA	A	
2-39	JC39-00723A	HARNESS-SCAN MT	1	SNA	D	
2-40	JC39-00781A	HARNESS-SCAN_IF	1	SNA	D	
2-41	JC39-00786A	HARNESS-OPE_USB	1	SNA	D	
2-42	JC39-00787A	HARNESS-OPE_MAIN	1	SNA	D	
2-43	JC39-00796A	HARNESS-APS_SEN	1	SNA	D	
2-44	JC39-00811A	HARNESS-SCAN_SEN	1	SNA	D	

5.16 DADF Ass'y

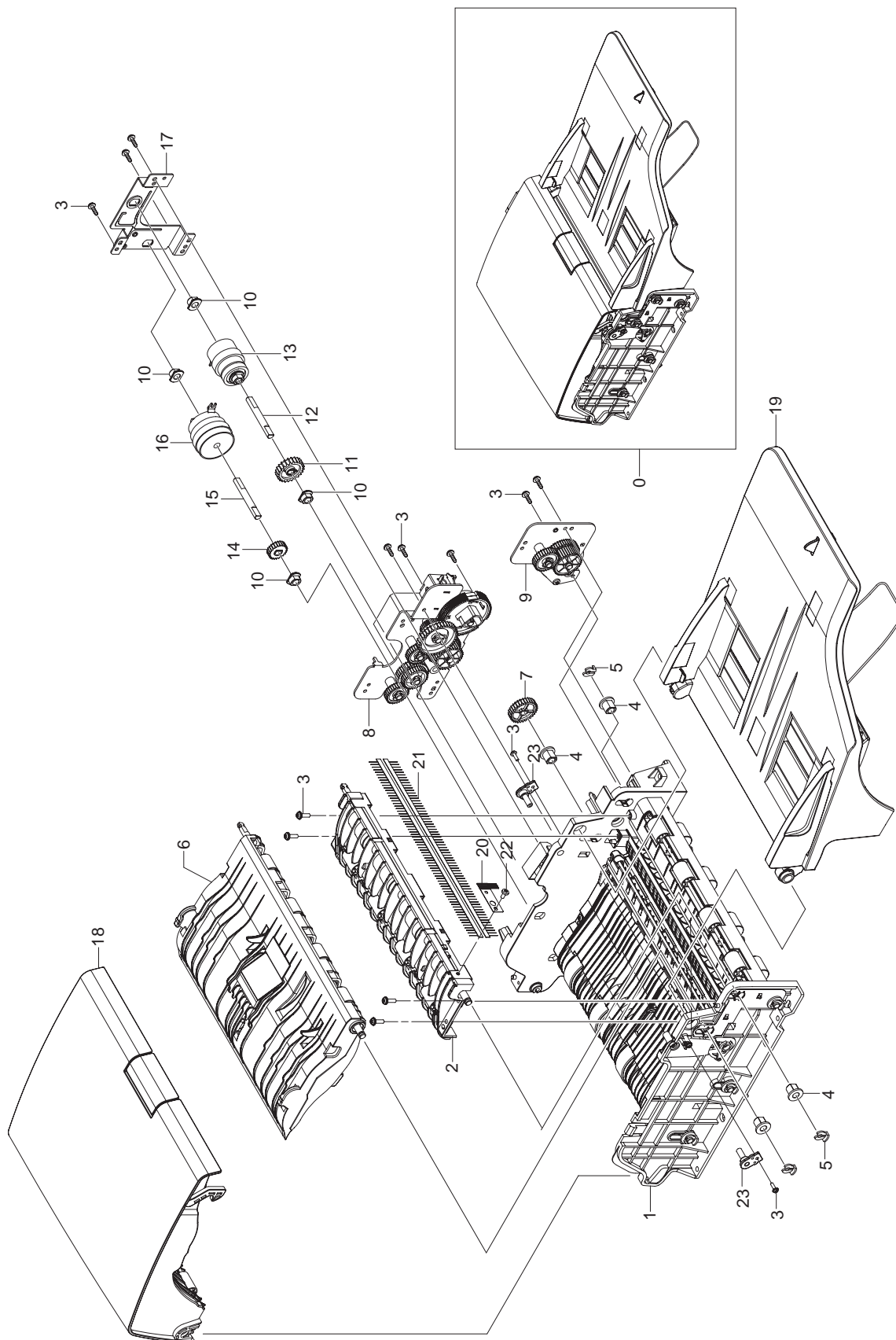


DADF Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04855A	ELA HOU-DADF	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04856A	ELA-COVER PLATEN	1	SNA	A	
2	JC96-04858A	ELA-DADF SUB	1	SA	A	
3	6003-001256	SCREW-TAPTITE	5	SNA	A	
4	JC63-01643A	SHIELD-DADF BD	1	SNA	D	
5	6003-000269	SCREW-TAPTITE	8	SA	B	
6	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	7	SA	B	
7	JC61-02298A	HOLDER HARNESS	1	SNA	D	
8	JC63-01611A	COVER-FRONT	1	SNA	D	
9	JC63-01637A	COVER-REAR	1	SNA	D	

5.17 DADF SUB Ass'y

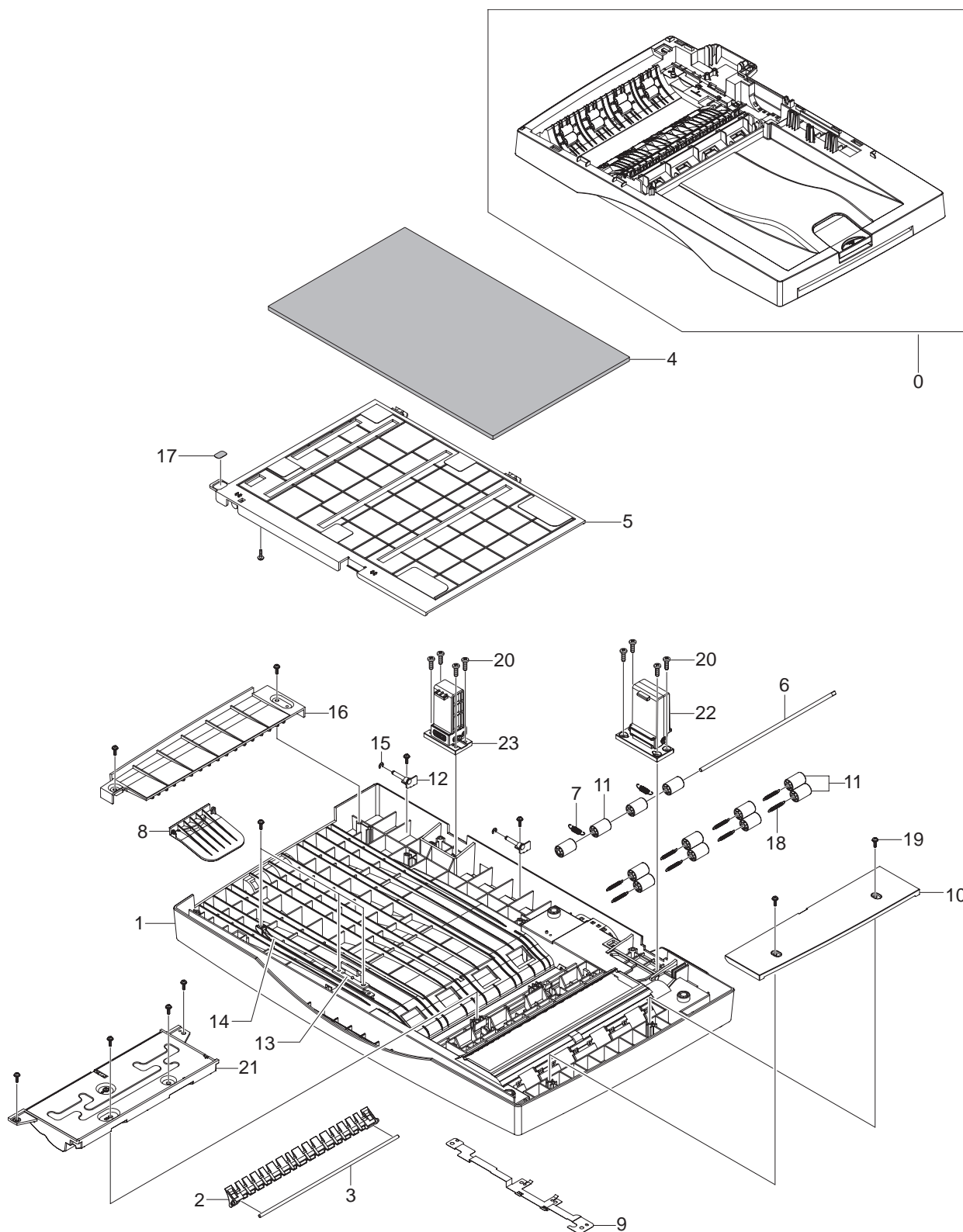


DADF SUB Ass'y Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04858A	ELA-HOU DADF SUB	1	SA	A	
1	JC96-04861A	ELA HOU-GUIDE SCAN	1	SA	A	
2	JC97-03095A	MEA-EXIT	1	SA	D	
3	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	14	SA	B	
4	JC61-00884A	BUSH-6_D(L)	4	SNA	D	
5	JC61-01367A	FIXER-M_E RING 4PI	3	SA	A	
6	JC97-03096A	MEA-GUIDE PICK UP	1	SA	A	
7	JC66-01675A	GEAR-ROLLER DRIVE	1	SA	D	
8	JC96-04859A	ELA HOU-DADF MOTOR	1	SA	A	
9	JC96-04860A	ELA HOU-DUPLEX MOTOR	1	SA	A	
10	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	4	SA	B	
11	JC66-00565A	GEAR-DADF24(A)	1	SA	D	
12	JC66-00662A	SHAFT-REGI	1	SA	D	
13	JC66-01864A	CLUTCH-2.5K Z24	1	SA	D	
14	JC66-01667A	GEAR-CLUTCH	1	SA	D	
15	JC66-00662A	SHAFT-REGI	1	SA	D	
16	JC66-00994A	CLUTCH-5K Z32	1	SA	B	
17	JC61-02283A	BRACKET-CLUTCH	1	SNA	D	
18	JC96-04862A	ELA HOU-COVER OPEN	1	SA	A	
19	JC97-03098A	MEA-TX STACKER	1	SA	A	
20	JC67-00317A	BRUSH-ANTISTATIC-FUSER	1	SNA	A	
21	JC75-00095A	MEC-BRUSH ANTISTATIC	2	SA	A	
22	6003-00269	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	D	
23	JC64-00355A	HANDLE-STUD	2	SNA	D	

5.18 Cover Platen_DADF

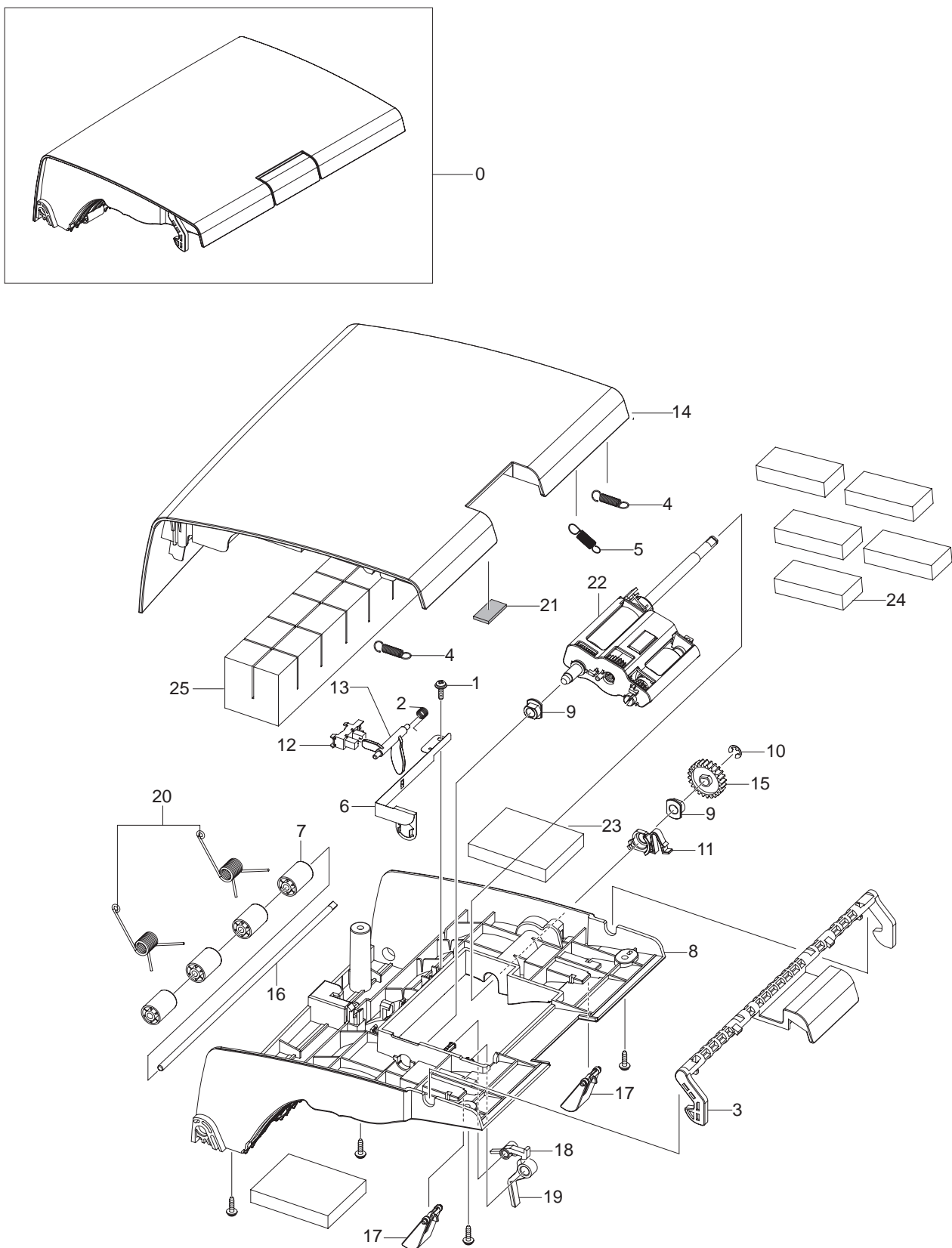


Cover Platen_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04856A	ELA HOU-COVER PLATEN	1	SNA	A	
1	JC63-01638A	COVER-PLATEN	1	SNA	D	
2	JC61-02345A	GUIDE-REVERSE	1	SNA	D	
3	JC66-01861A	SHAFT-GATE	1	SNA	D	
4	JC72-00751A	PPR-SPONGE SHEET	1	SA	D	
5	JC63-01601A	COVER-PLATEN_SUB	1	SNA	D	
6	JC66-01860A	SHAFT-IDLE ROLLER	1	SNA	D	
7	JC61-70928A	SPRING ETC-DEV_R	2	SNA	A	
8	JC61-02347A	GUIDE-EXTENSION PLATEN	1	SNA	D	
9	JC63-01649A	GROUND-COVER PLATEN	1	SNA	D	
10	JC63-01600A	COVER-DUMMY PLATEN	1	SNA	D	
11	JC66-01022B	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	12	SNA	A	
12	JC61-02270A	BRACKET-PLATEN SUB	2	SNA	D	
13	JC64-00357A	HANDLE-SUB PLATEN	1	SNA	D	
14	JC72-00766A	PMO-TIE STOPPER	1	SA	D	
15	6044-000159	GING-C	2	SA	B	
16	JC63-01625A	COVER-PLATEN SUB DUMMY	1	SNA	D	
17	JC68-01246A	LABEL-GUIDE DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
18	6107-001390	SPRING-ES	8	SNA	D	
19	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	14	SA	B	
20	6003-001324	SCREW-TAPTITE	8	SA	D	
21	JC96-04857A	ELA-COVER JAM	1	SA	A	
22	JC97-02265A	MEA UNIT-HINGE JF	1	SA	A	
23	JC97-02635A	MEA UNIT-HINGE JF	1	SA	A	

5.19 Cover Open_DADF

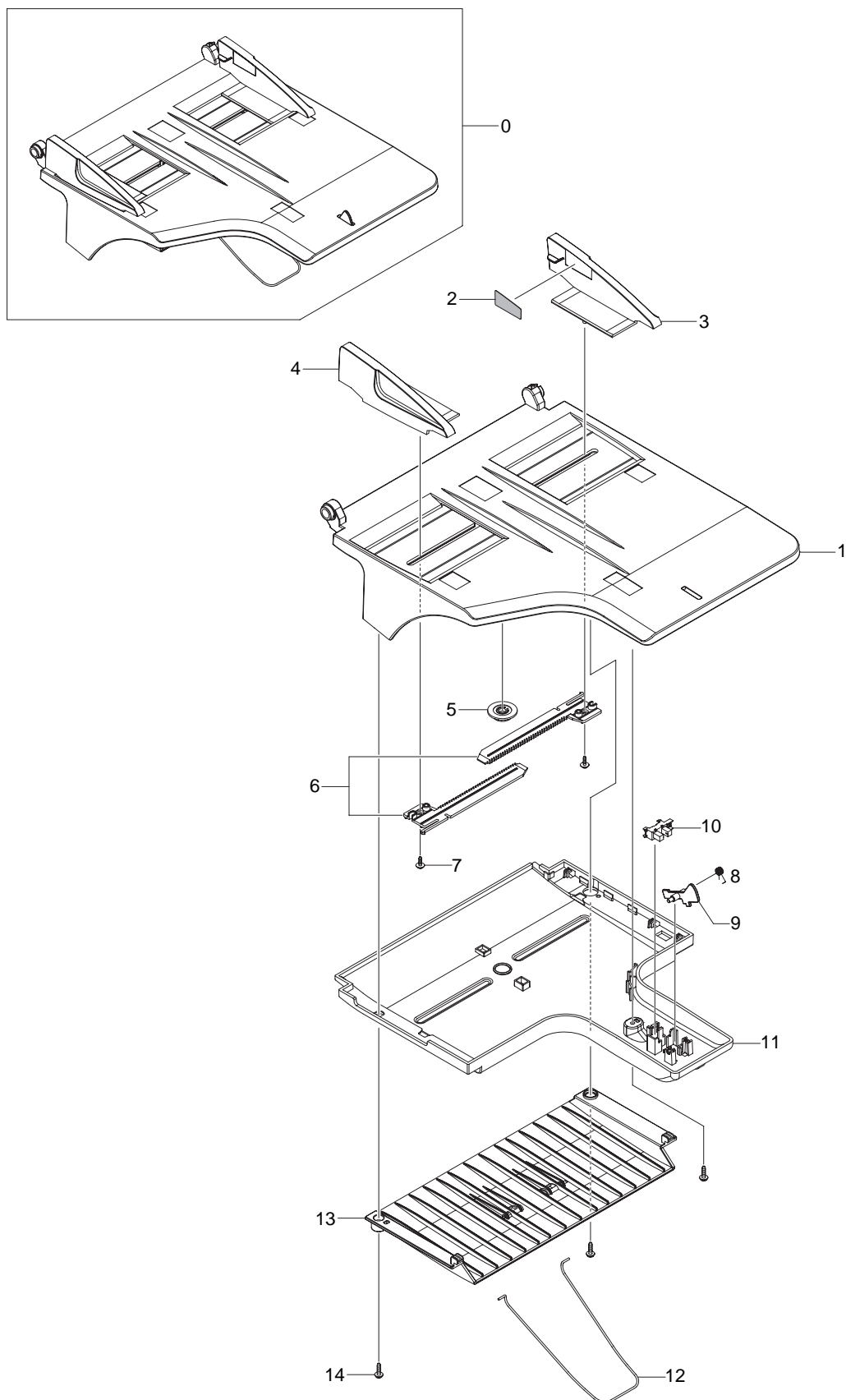


Cover Open_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04862A	ELA-COVER OPEN	1	SA	A	
1	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	5	SA	B	
2	JB61-00076A	SPRING ETC-TORSION DOC(CC2-F)	1	SA	B	
3	JC64-00351A	HANDLE-COVER-OPEN	1	SNA	D	
4	JC61-00483A	SPRING-KNOCK UP MP	2	SA	A	
5	JC61-00482A	SPRING-ETC-PICK UP	1	SA	A	
6	JC63-01644A	GROUND-PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
7	JC66-01022B	ROLLER-M_IDLE_SCF	4	SNA	A	
8	JC63-01599A	COVER-OPEN-LOWER	1	SNA	D	
9	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	2	SA	B	
10	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
11	JC61-02250A	HOLDER-BUSH-PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
12	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
13	JC66-01688A	ACTUATOR-REGI	1	SA	D	
14	JC63-01577A	COVER-OPEN-UPPER	1	SNA	D	
15	JC66-01644A	GEAR-PICK UP-DRIVE	1	SA	D	
16	JC66-01860A	SHAFT-IDLE ROLLER	1	SNA	D	
17	JC61-00788B	GUIDE-M_DOC SENSOR	2	SNA	D	
18	JC66-00958A	LATCH-M_ARM FRT	1	SNA	A	
19	JC61-01307B	STOPPER-M_PAPER REAR	1	SNA	A	
20	JB61-00074A	SPRING-SCAN STOPPER	2	SA	D	
21	JC72-01421A	SPONGE-COVER-UPPER1	1	SNA	D	
22	JC97-03099A	MEA-PICK UP	1	SA	D	
23	JC72-01483A	SPONGE-OPEN LOWER	2	SA	A	
24	JC72-01484A	SPONGE-OPEN UPPER A	5	SA	A	
25	JC72-01485A	SPONGE-OPEN UPPER B	1	SA	A	

5.20 TX Stacker_DADF

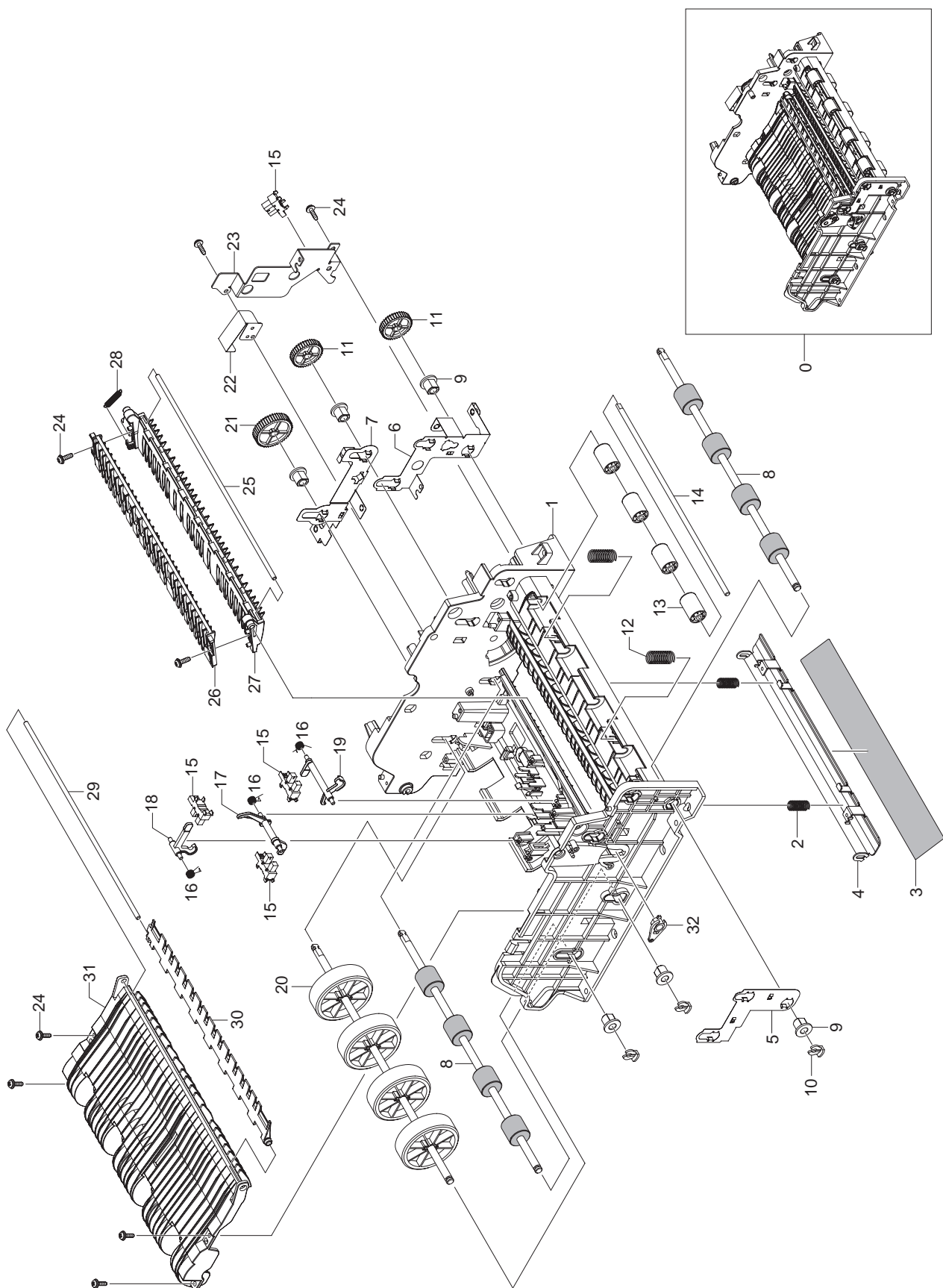


TX Stacker_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-03098A	MEA-TX STACKER	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-02344A	GUIDE_TX_STACKER	1	SNA	D	
2	JC68-01547B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	B	
3	JC61-02341A	GUIDE-DOC_REAR	1	SNA	D	
4	JC61-02340A	GUIDE-DOC FRONT	1	SNA	D	
5	JF72-41354A	PMO-GEAR PINION	1	SA	D	
6	JC66-01807A	GEAR-RACK DOCU TX	2	SNA	D	
7	6002-000440	SCREW-TAPPING	2	SA	B	
8	JB61-00076A	SPRING ETC-TORSION DOC(CC2-F)	1	SA	B	
9	JC72-01250B	PMO-ACTUATOR LENGTH	1	SA	D	
10	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
11	JC61-02342A	GUIDE_STACKER_LOWER	1	SNA	D	
12	JC61-01438A	GUIDE-STACKER WIRE	1	SNA	A	
13	JC61-02342A	GUIDE_STACKER_DUMMY	4	SNA	D	
14	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	3	SA	B	

5.21 Guide Scan_DADF

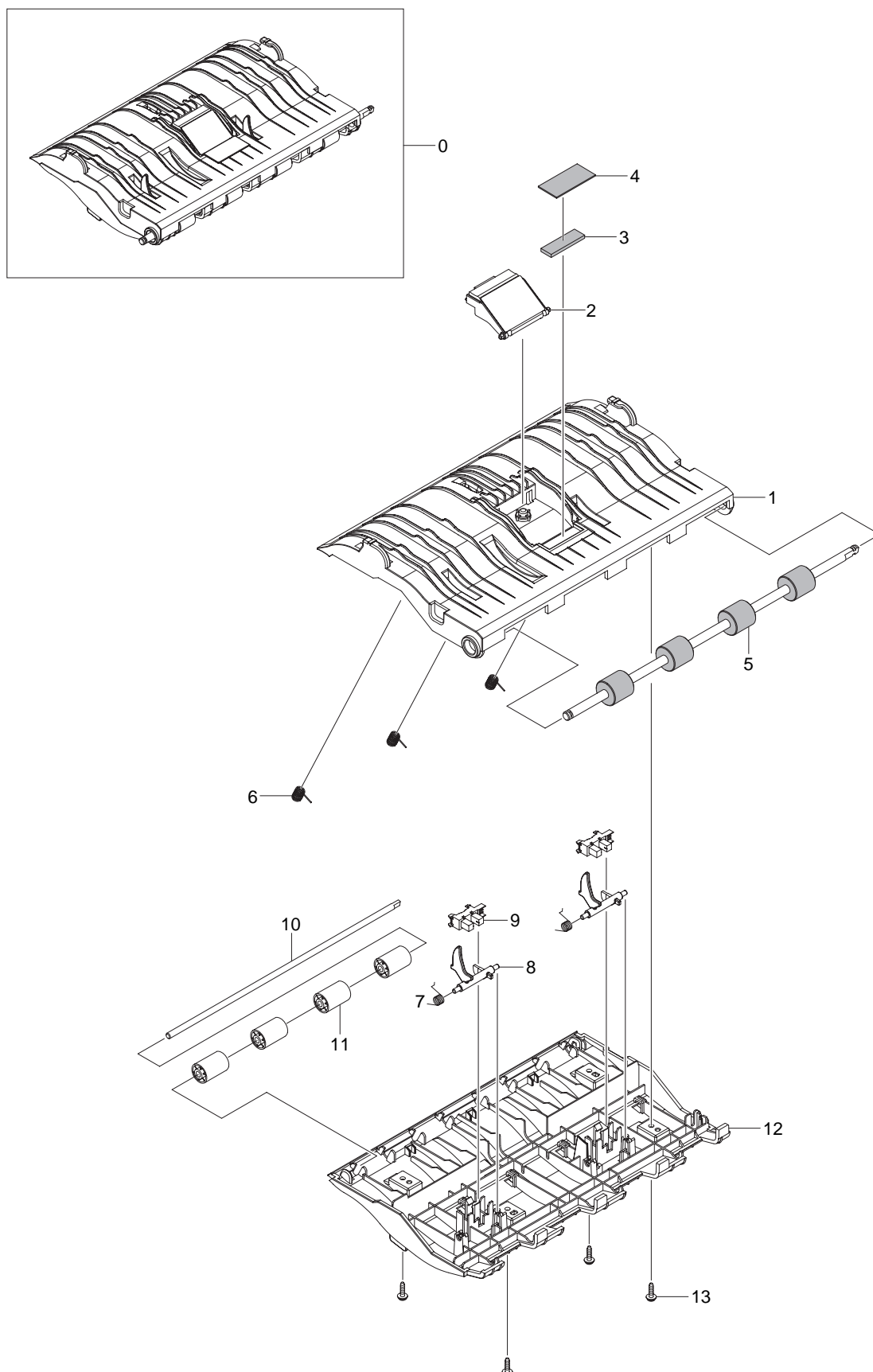


Guide Scan_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04861A	ELA HOU-GUIDE SCAN	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-02346A	GUIDE-SCAN	1	SNA	D	
2	JC61-00548A	SPRING ETC-WHITE BAR	2	SA	A	
3	JC63-00810A	SHEET-WHITE BAR	1	SNA	A	
4	JC61-02754A	BRACKET-P-WHITE BAR	1	SA	D	
5	JC63-01647A	GROUND-EXIT FRONT	1	SNA	D	
6	JC63-01648A	GROUND-EXIT	1	SNA	D	
7	JC63-01646A	GROUND-DADF	1	SNA	D	
8	JC66-01826A	ROLLER-DUPLEX	2	SNA	D	
9	JC61-00884A	BUSH-6_D(L)	6	SNA	D	
10	JC61-01367A	FIXER-M_E RING 4PI	3	SA	A	
11	JC66-01675A	GEAR-ROLLER DRIVE	2	SA	D	
12	JC61-70959B	SPRING ETC-FEED	2	SNA	D	
13	JC66-01022B	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	4	SNA	A	
14	JC66-01860A	SHAFT-IDLE ROLLER	1	SNA	D	
15	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	4	SA	A	
16	JB61-00076A	SPRING ETC-TORSION DOC(CC2-F)	3	SA	B	
17	JC66-01689A	ACTUATOR-DUPLEX	1	SA	D	
18	JC66-01690A	ACTUATOR-SCAN	1	SA	D	
19	JC66-01803A	ACTUATOR-GATE	1	SA	D	
20	JC97-03119A	MEA-FEED ROLLER	1	SA	D	
21	JC66-01806A	GEAR-MULTI ROLLER	1	SA	D	
22	JC70-00218A	IPR-GUARD C/O S/W	1	SA	D	
23	JC61-02282A	BRACKET-GROUND	1	SNA	D	
24	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	8	SA	B	
25	JC66-00683A	SHAFT-GATE DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
26	JC61-02348A	GUIDE-PATH TOP	1	SNA	D	
27	JC61-02338A	GUIDE-PATH LOWER	1	SNA	D	
28	6107-001388	SPRING-GATE	1	SNA	D	
29	JC66-01861A	SHAFT-GATE	1	SNA	D	
30	JC61-02339A	GUIDE-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
31	JC63-01605A	COVER-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
32	JC72-41191A	PMO-BEARING SHAFT	1	SA	B	

5.22 Guide Pickup_DADF

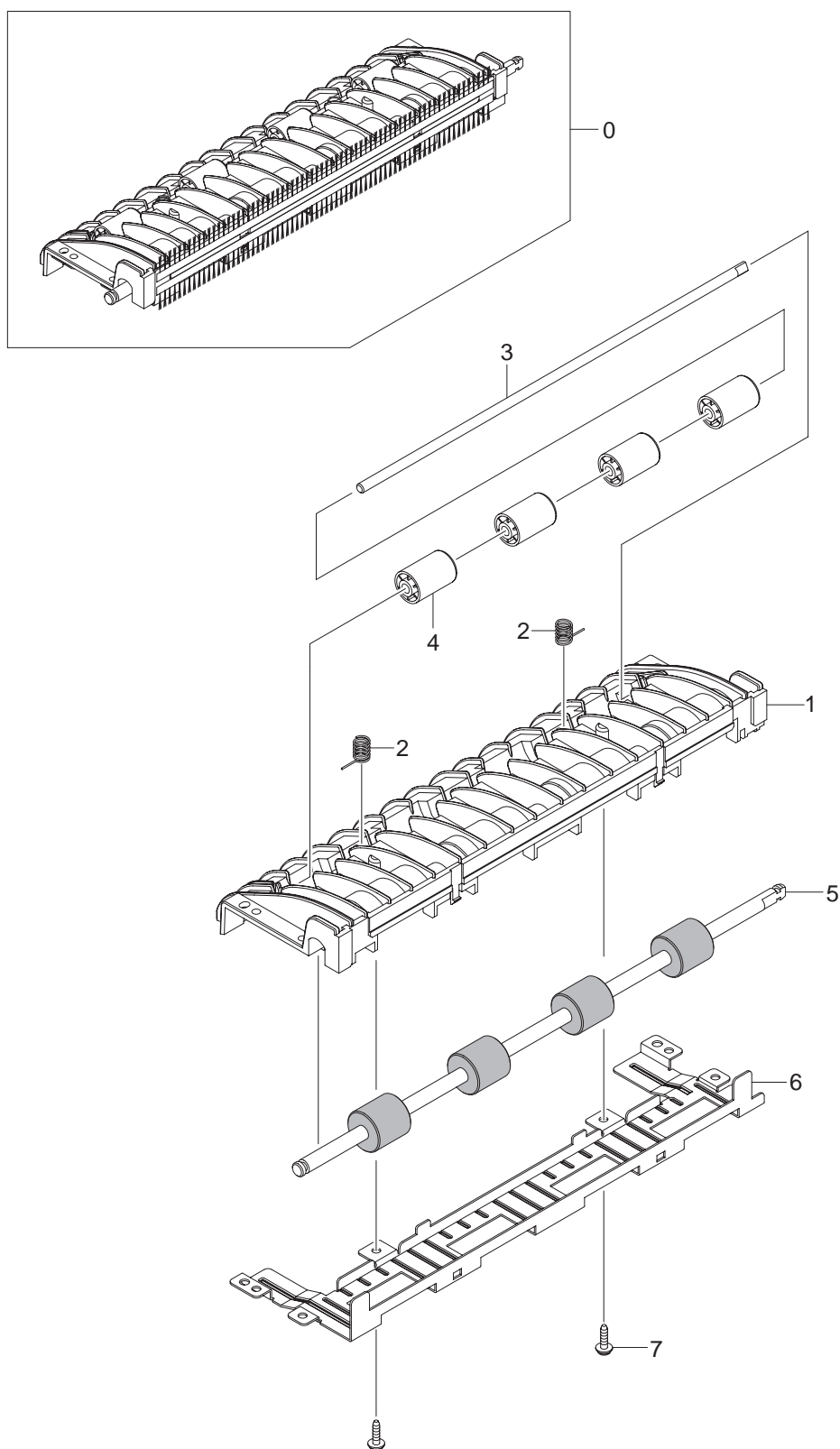


Guide Pickup_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-03096A	MEA-GUIDE PICK UP	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-02350A	GUIDE PICK UP_UPPER	1	SNA	D	
2	JC97-03097A	MEA-HOLDER ADF RUBBER	1	SA	D	
3	JC72-01422A	SPONGE-GUIDE PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
4	JC69-01369A	PAD-GUIDE PICK UP	1	SA	D	
5	JC66-01826A	ROLLER-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
6	JC61-01563A	SPRING ETC-DUP IDLE	3	SA	A	
7	JB61-00076A	SPRING ETC-TORSION DOC(CC2-F)	2	SA	B	
8	JC72-01248A	PMO-ACTUATOR DOC	2	SA	D	
9	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
10	JC66-01860A	SHAFT-IDLE ROLLER	1	SNA	D	
11	JC66-01022B	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	4	SNA	A	
12	JC61-02351A	GUIDE PICK UP LOWER	1	SNA	D	
13	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	4	SA	B	

5.23 Exit Unit_DADF

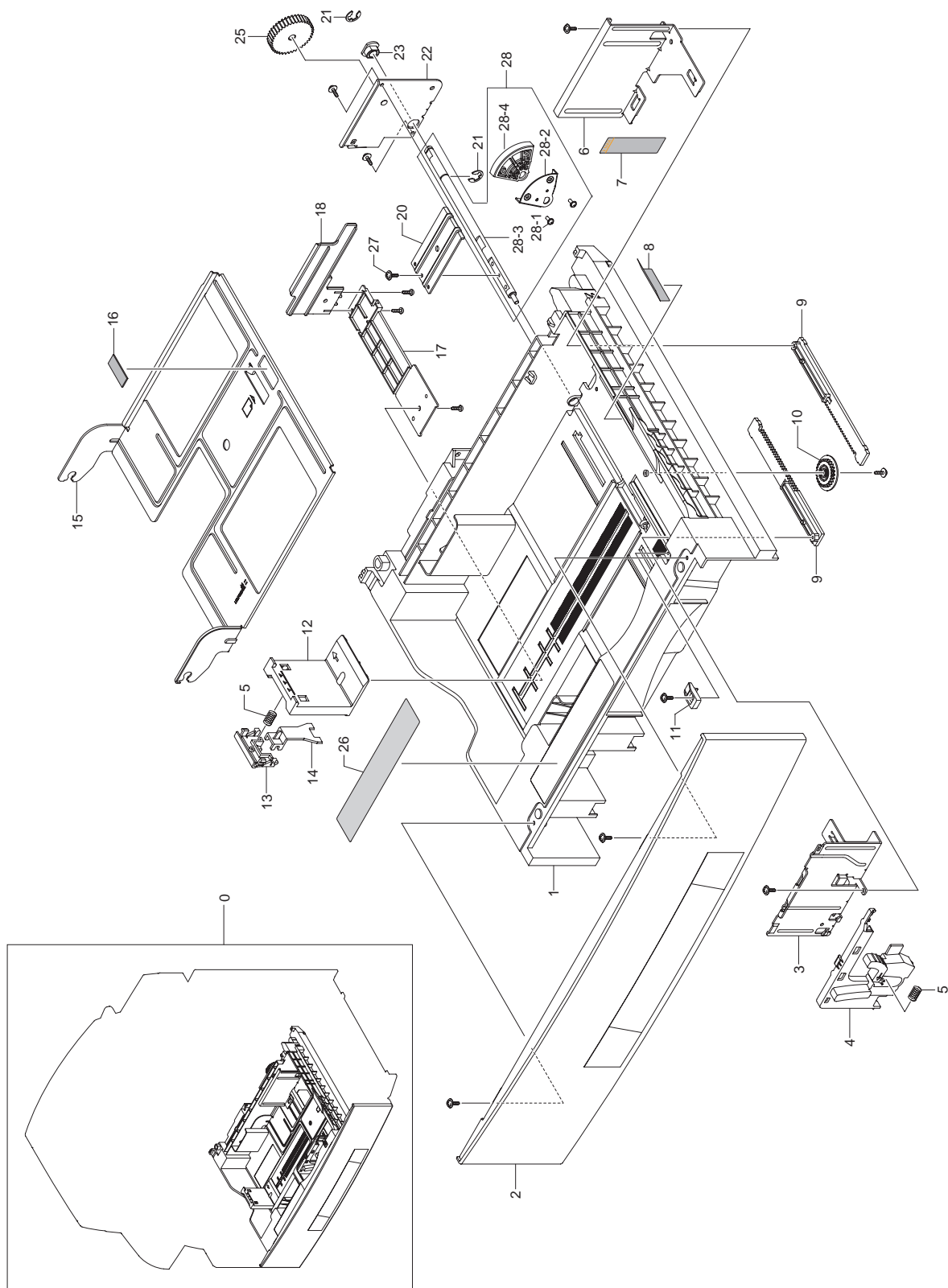


Exit Unit_DADF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-03095A	MEA-EXIT	1	SA	D	
1	JC61-02349A	GUIDE-DUPLEX_INNER	1	SNA	D	
2	JC61-01563A	SPRING ETC-DUP IDLE	2	SA	A	
3	JC66-01860A	SHAFT-IDLE ROLLER	1	SNA	D	
4	JC66-01022B	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	4	SNA	A	
5	JC66-01826A	ROLLER-DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
6	JC61-02353A	PLATE-DUPLEX LOWER	1	SNA	D	
7	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	2	SA	B	

5.24 Cassette

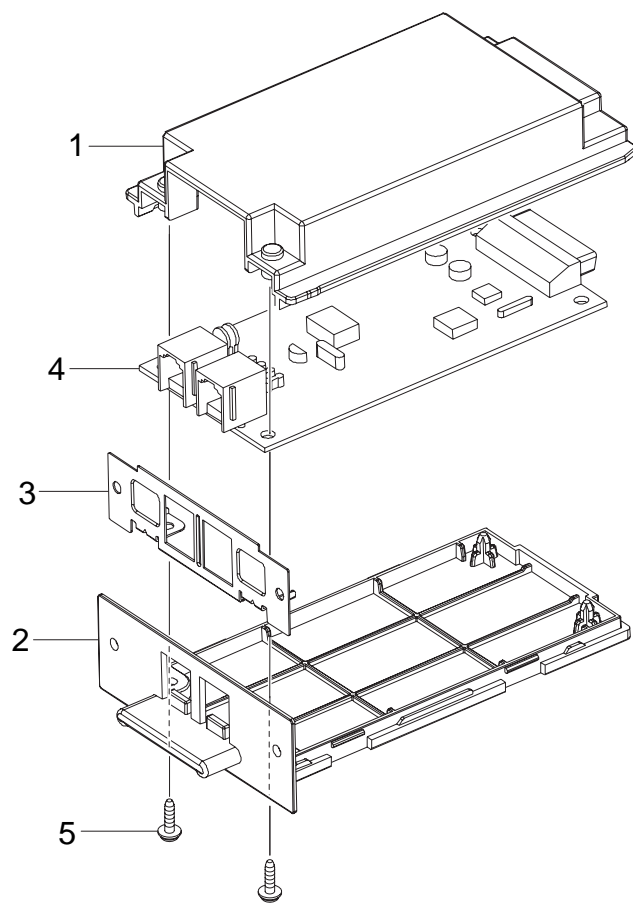
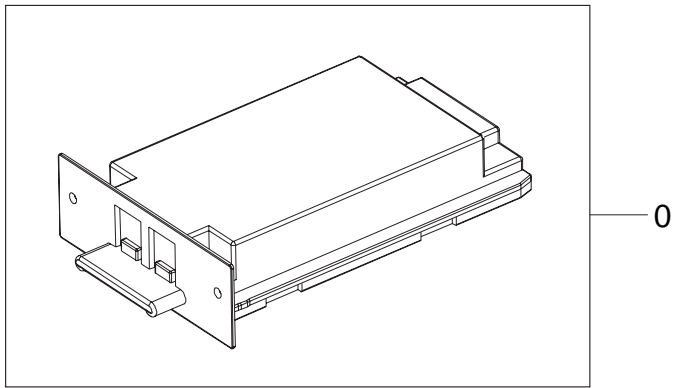


Cassette Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC97-02273B	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	1	SA	A	
1	JC61-01411B	FRAME-M_CASSETTE	1	SA	A	
2	JC63-00782B	COVER-CASSETTE	1	SNA	A	
3	JC61-01413A	GUIDE-P-SIDE LEFT	1	SA	D	
4	JC67-00123B	CAP-M_HANDLE LEFT	1	SNA	A	
5	JC61-00548A	SPRING ETC-WHITE BAR	2	SA	A	
6	JC61-01414A	GUIDE-P-SIDE RIGHT	1	SNA	D	
7	JC68-01621A	LABEL(R)-MAX FILL	1	SA	D	
8	JC63-00747A	SHEET-GUIDE RETARD	1	SA	D	
9	JC66-00956A	GEAR-M_RACK	2	SNA	D	
10	JC66-01020A	GEAR-M_PINION 24	1	SA	D	
11	JC61-00832A	STOPPER-M_KNOCK UP	1	SA	D	
12	JC61-01395B	GUIDE-REAR	1	SNA	A	
13	JC66-00202C	LEVER-LENTH HANDLE	1	SNA	A	
14	JC61-01304B	GUIDE-HOOK	1	SNA	A	
15	JC61-01412A	PLATE-P-KNOCK UP	1	SNA	D	
16	JC69-00494A	PAD-MP(PLUS)	1	SA	A	
17	JC61-01416A	SUPPORT-M_BAR PAPER	1	SNA	D	
18	JC61-01417A	SUPPORT-M_PUSH PAPER	1	SNA	D	
20	JC61-01322A	PLATE-P-LEVER	1	SNA	D	
21	6044-000231	RING-E	1	SA	A	
22	JC61-01394A	BRACKET-P-LIFTING	1	SNA	D	
23	JC61-00426A	BUSH-8/5	1	SA	D	
25	JC66-00955A	GEAR-M_LIFT COUPLING	1	SA	D	
26	JC68-01622B	LABEL-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	
27	6001-000130	SCREW-MACHINE	1	SA	A	
28	JC97-02836A	MEA UNIT-LIFTING GEAR	1	SA	A	
28-1	6002-000440	SCREW-TAPPING	2	SA	B	
28-2	JC61-01791A	PLATE-LIFTING GEAR	1	SNA	A	
28-3	JC66-00953A	SHAFT-PLATE LEVER	1	SNA	D	
28-4	JC66-00954A	GEAR-M_LIFTING	1	SA	D	

5.25 Fax Unit

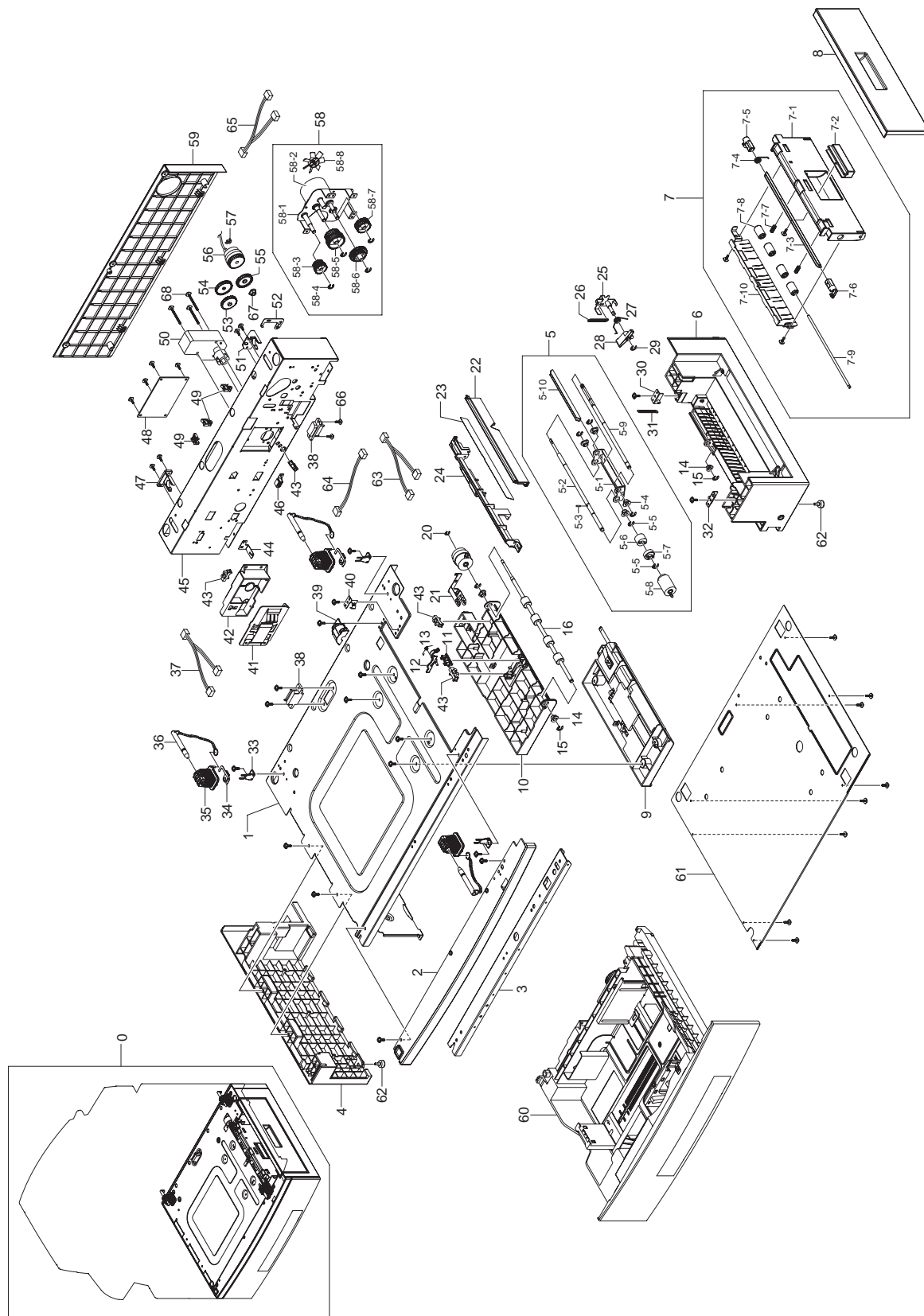


Fax Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-05173A	ELA HOU-FAX; Option Unit	1	SA	-	
1	JC63-00822B	COVER-M_LIUUPPER	1	SNA	D	
2	JC63-00823B	COVER-M_LIUBOTTOM	1	SNA	D	
3	JC61-01396A	BRACKET-P_LIU	1	SNA	D	
4	JC92-01981A	PBA-FAX_PARALLE	1	SA	D	
5	6003-000196	SCREW-TAPTITE	2	SA	B	

5.26 SCF



SCF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-05221A	ELA UNIT-SCF; Option Unit	1	SNA	-	
1	JC61-01333A	FRAME-P_TOPSCF	1	SNA	D	
2	JC63-00771B	COVER-M_FRONTSCF	1	SNA	D	
3	JC61-01312A	PLATE-P-BEAM BASE	1	SNA	D	
4	JC61-01397B	BASE-M_LEFTSCF	1	SNA	D	
5	JC97-02290A	MEA UNIT-RETARD	1	SA	A	
5-1	JC61-01348A	BRACKET-P-RETARD	1	SNA	D	
5-2	JC66-00937A	SHAFT-RETARD S	1	SA	A	
5-3	JC66-00939A	SHAFT-LOCK	1	SA	A	
5-4	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
5-5	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
5-6	JC67-00126A	COUPLER-TORQUELIMITER	1	SA	B	
5-7	JC66-00976A	JOINT-M_RETARD	1	SA	D	
5-8	JC97-02259A	MEA UNIT-ROLLER PU	1	SA	A	
5-9	JC66-00938A	SHAFT-RETARD M	1	SNA	D	
5-10	JC61-01349A	BRACKET-P-BAR RETARD	1	SNA	D	
6	JC61-01398B	BASE-M_RIGHT SCF	1	SNA	D	
7	JC97-02275B	MEA UNIT-SCF DOOR	1	SA	D	
7-1	JC61-01327B	GUIDE-DOOR INNER	1	SNA	D	
7-2	JC64-00208B	HANDLE-DOOR	1	SNA	D	
7-3	JC61-01404A	BRACKET-P_HANDLE SCF	1	SNA	D	
7-4	6107-001206	SPRINGTS	1	SNA	D	
7-5	JC64-00204B	LOCKER-M_RIGHT	1	SNA	D	
7-6	JC64-00204A	LOCKER-M_LEFT	1	SNA	D	
7-7	JC61-70959B	SPRING FEED	1	SNA	D	
7-8	JC66-01022A	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	1	SNA	D	
7-9	JC66-00661A	SHAFT-EXIT IDLE	1	SA	D	
7-10	JC61-01328A	PLATE-P_GUIDE SCF	1	SNA	D	
8	JC63-00769B	COVER-M_DOOR SIDE SCF	1	SNA	D	
9	JC96-03558A	ELA HOU-PICK UP	1	SA	D	
10	JC61-01401A	HOUSING-M_PICKUP SCF	1	SNA	D	
11	JC61-01422A	HOLDER-M_ACT READY	1	SA	A	
12	JC61-01402A	LEG-M_ACT FEED SCF	1	SNA	#N/A	
13	6107-001262	SPRING-TS	1	SA	D	
14	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
15	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
16	JC66-02012A	ROLLER-FEED SCF	1	SNA	D	
17	JC66-01865A	CLUTCH-ELECRTIC	1	SNA	D	
20	6044-000159	RING-C	1	SA	B	

SCF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
21	JC63-00825A	GROUND-P_SHAFTSCF	1	SNA	D	
22	JC61-01326A	GUIDE-M_PUUPPERSCF	1	SNA	D	
23	JC63-00754A	SHEET-GUIDEFILMSCF	1	SA	D	
24	C61-01325A	GUIDE-M_PULOWERSCF	1	SNA	D	
25	JC61-01423A	BRACKET-P-ARM FRIC	1	SNA	D	
26	6107-001257	SPRING-ES	1	SA	D	
27	6107-001262	SPRING-TS	1	SNA	D	
28	JC66-00959A	LEVER-M_ARM FRICTION	1	SA	D	
29	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
30	JC61-01400A	PLATE-P_LOCKER R	1	SNA	D	
31	6107-001257	SPRING-ES	1	SA	D	
32	JC61-01399A	PLATE-P_LOCKER L	1	SNA	D	
33	JC64-00207A	LOCKER-M_GRIPPIN	1	SNA	D	
34	JC63-00826A	GROUND-P_TOP	1	SA	D	
35	JC61-01403A	HOLDER-M_PIN	1	SNA	D	
36	JC66-01021A	SHAFT-PIN LOCK	1	SA	D	
37	JC96-03735A	ELA HOU-SIZE SENSOR	1	SA	D	
37-1	JC96-02127A	ELA HOU-CST SENSOR HAWK16	1	SA	D	
37-2	JC61-01343A	HOUSING-M_SIZE SENSOR	1	SA	D	
37-3	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
37-4	JC63-00794A	GROUND-P-PAPER SIZE	1	SA	D	
37-5	JC39-00548A	CBFHARNES-SCF_TRAY	1	SNA	D	
38	JC39-00547A	CBFHARNES-SCF	1	SA	D	
39	JC67-00124A	CAP-M_GEAR FEED	1	SNA	D	
40	JC63-00824A	GROUND-P DOOR INNER	1	SNA	D	
43	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
45	JC61-01324A	FRAME-P_REAR SCF	1	SNA	D	
46	JC70-11028A	IPR-GROUND TOP	1	SA	D	
47	JC61-01345A	HOLDER-M_CST L	1	SNA	D	
48	JC92-01697A	PBA SUB-SCF	1	SA	D	
49	6502-000132	CABLE CLAMP	1	SA	D	
50	JC31-00045A	MOTOR GEARED-P LIFT	1	SA	A	
51	JC61-01344A	HOLDER-M_CST R	1	SNA	D	
52	JC63-00833A	GROUND-P-SHAFT RETARD	1	SA	D	
53	JC66-00975A	GEAR-M_RETARD	1	SA	D	
54	JC66-00974A	GEAR-M_FORWARD	1	SA	D	
55	JC66-00973A	GEAR-M_PICKUP IDLE B	1	SA	D	
56	JC66-00994A	CLUTCH-5K Z32	1	SA	B	
57	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	

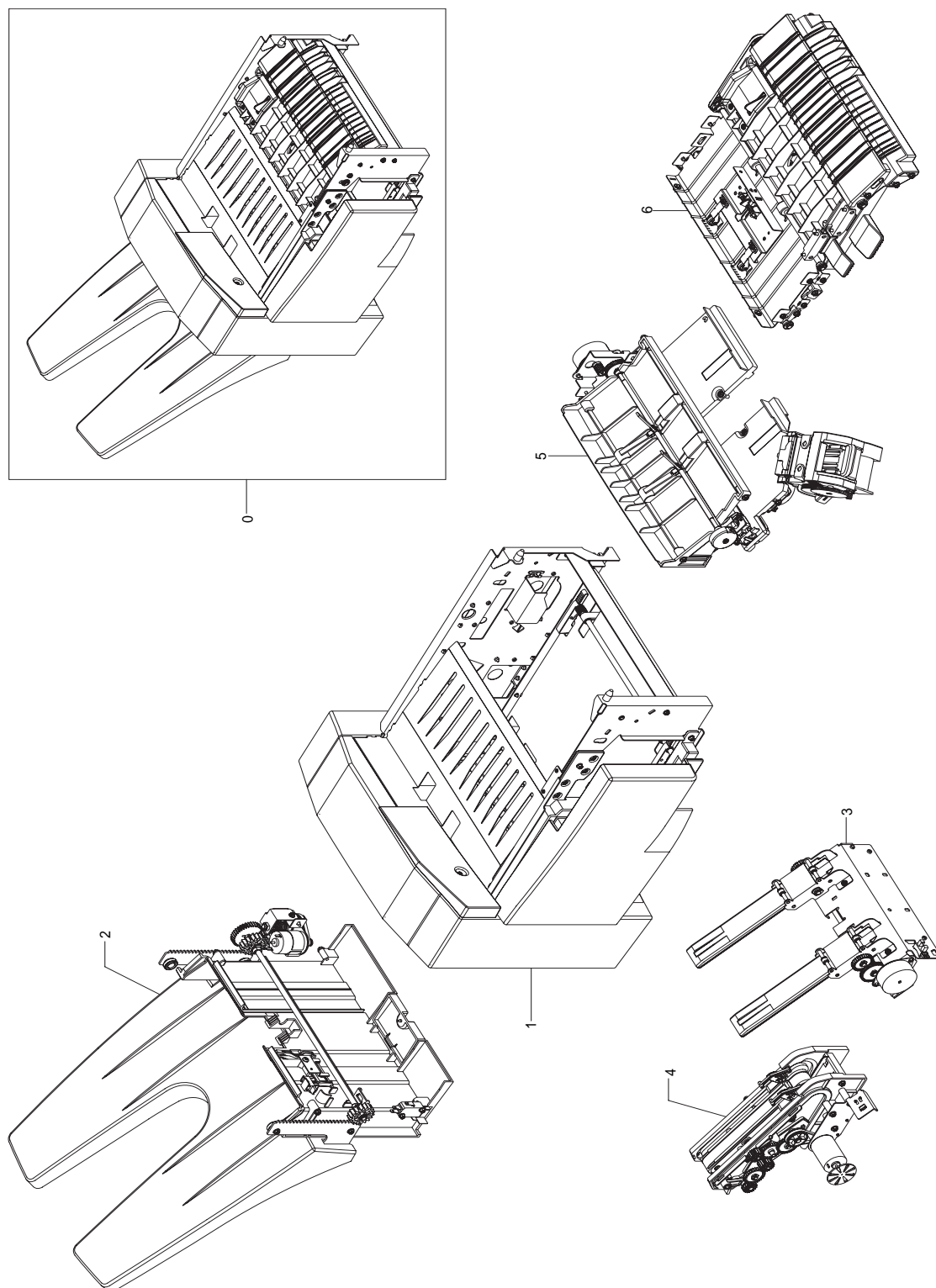
SCF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
58	JC96-05278A	ELA-HOU-DRIVE SCF	1	SA	D	
58-1	JC61-02704A	BRACKET-DRIVE SCF	1	SNA	D	
58-2	JC31-00028B	Motor Pickup SCF	1	SNA	D	
58-3	JC66-02011A	GEAR-FEED SCF	1	SNA	D	
58-4	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	A	
58-5	JC66-00965A	GEAR-M_FDIDLEASCF	1	SNA	D	
58-6	JC66-00967A	GEAR-M_PUIDLEASCF	1	SNA	D	
58-7	JC66-00968A	GEAR-M_PUIDLECSCF	1	SNA	D	
58-8	JC72-00825A	PMO-IMPELLER_DRV	1	SA	A	
59	JC63-00770B	COVER-M_REARSCF	1	SNA	D	
60	JC97-02273B	MEA UNIT-CASSETTE	1	SA	A	
61	JC61-01323A	FRAME-P_BOTTOMSCF	1	SNA	D	
62	JC61-40001A	FOOT-ML80	1	SA	A	
63	JC39-00461A	HARNESS-SCF_FEED	1	SNA	D	
64	JC39-00463A	HARNESS-GATE_NEAR	1	SA	D	
65	JC39-00549A	CBFHARNESS-SCF_CLUT	1	SNA	D	
66	6009-001390	SCREW-SPECIAL	1	SNA	D	
67	6003-000221	SCREW-TAPTITE	1	SA	D	
68	JC39-00462A	HARNESS-SCF_EMPTY	1	SA	D	
69	JC39-00477A	HARNESS-MOTOR_SW	1	SA	D	

5.27 FINISHER UNIT (Optional Unit)

5.27-1 Main_Finisher

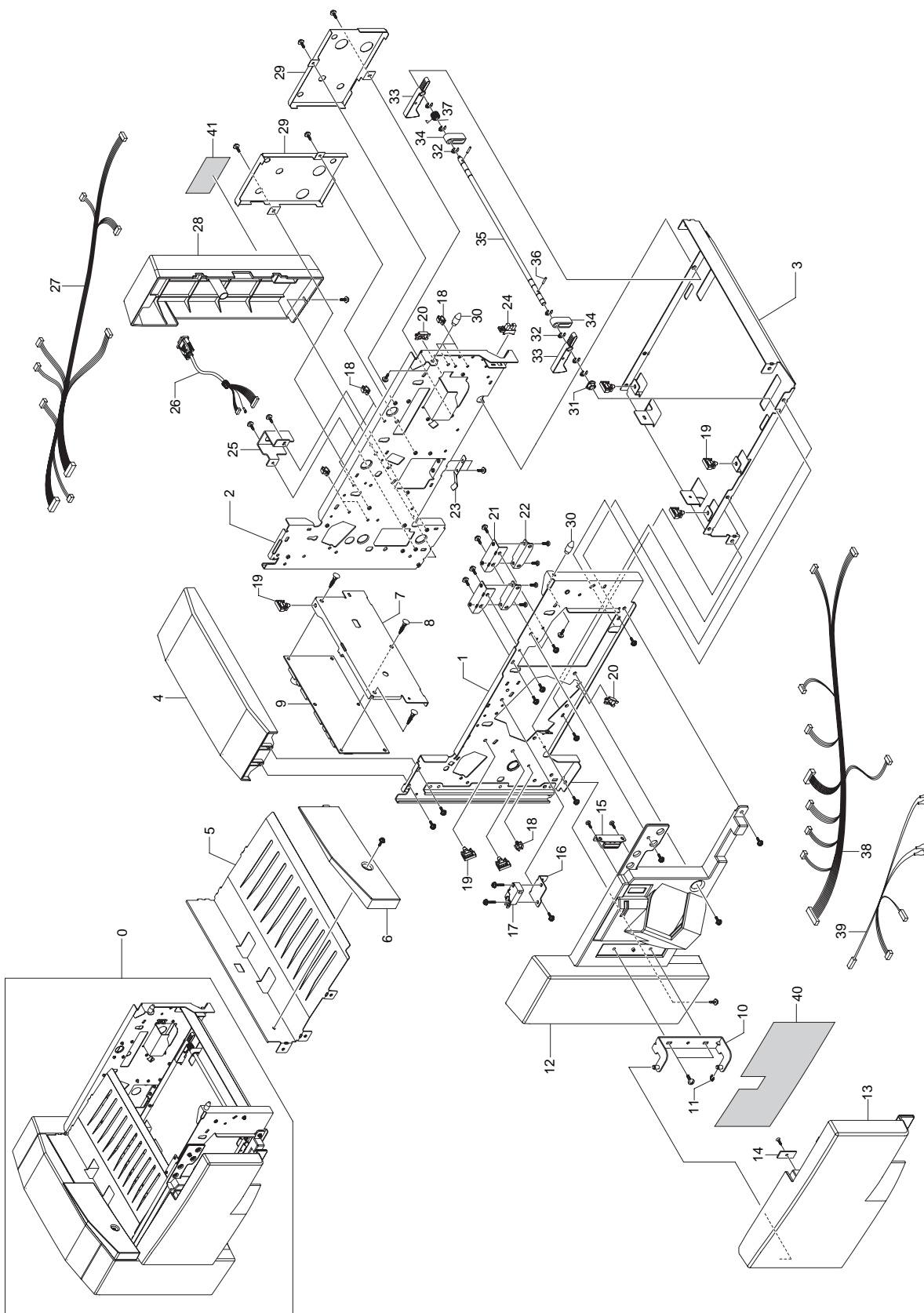


Main_Finisher Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-03908C	ELA HOU-FINISHER; Option Unit	1	SNA	D	
1	-	FRAME UNIT	1	SNA	D	
2	-	STACKER UNIT	1	SNA	D	
3	-	EXTENTION TRAY UNIT	1	SNA	D	
4	JC81-03773A	EJECTOR UNIT	1	SA	A	
5	-	COMPILE UNIT	1	SNA	D	
6	-	FEED UNIT	1	SNA	D	

5.27-2 Frame Unit



Frame Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

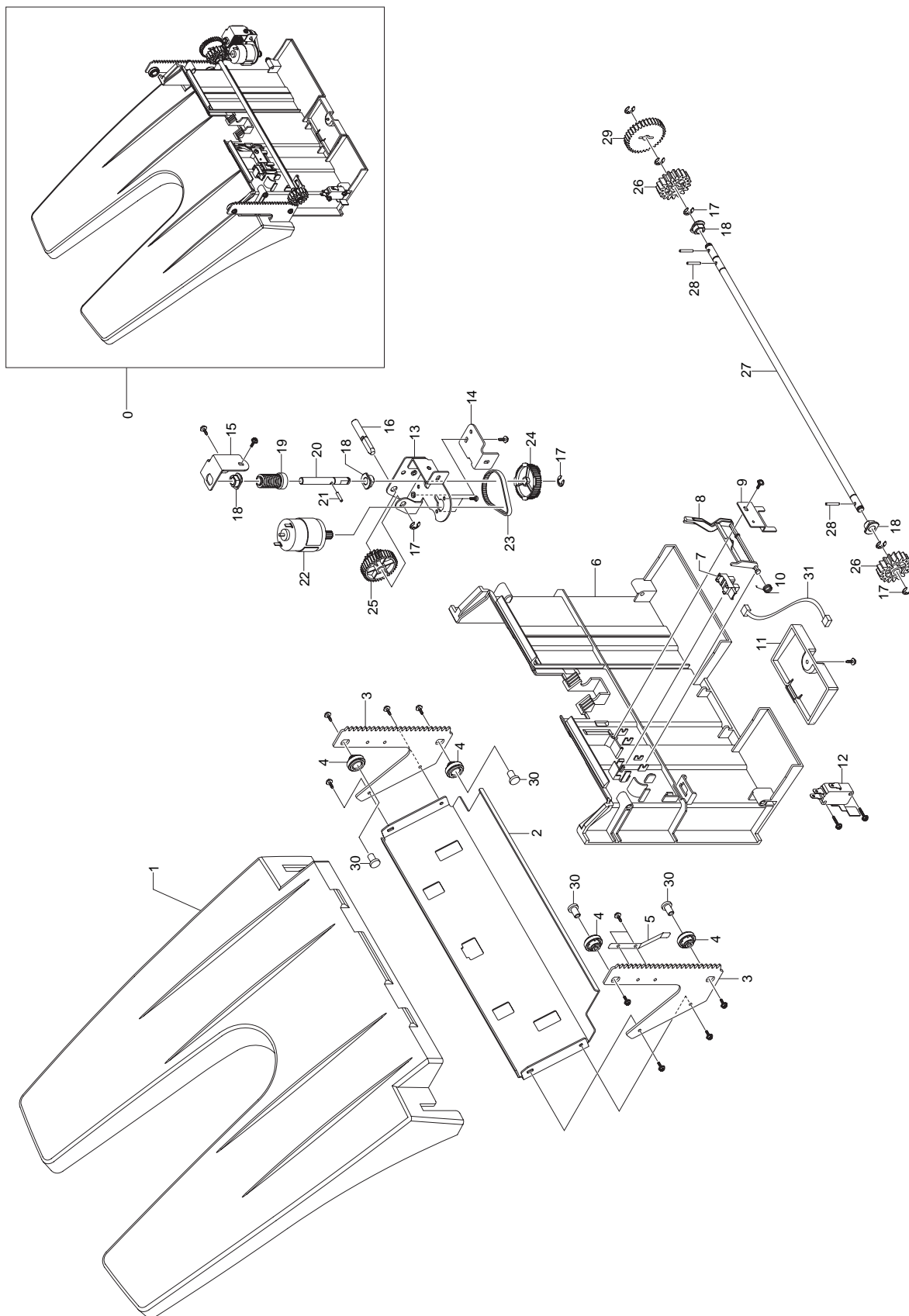
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	FRAME UNIT	1	SNA	D	
1	-	ASSY:SIDE PLATE:FRONT	1	SNA	D	
2	-	ASSY:SIDE PLATE:REAR	1	SNA	D	
3	-	BASE:LOWER	1	SNA	D	
4	JC81-03487B	AS-COVER TOP	1	SA	A	
5	-	STAY:DUPLEX GUIDE	1	SNA	D	
6	JC81-03767B	AS-COVER SCAN DUMMY	1	SA	A	
7	-	BKT:MAIN PCB	1	SNA	D	
8	-	BUTTON LOCKING SUPPORT:BLSS12	1	SNA	D	
9	JC81-03467A	AS-PCB MAIN ASSY	1	SA	A	
10	-	ASSY:HINGE:DOOR	1	SNA	D	
11	-	E-RING:Φ4	1	SNA	D	
12	JC81-03768B	AS-COVER FRONT	1	SA	A	
13	JC81-03488B	AS-COVER DOOR ASSY	1	SA	A	
13-1	-	COVER-DOOR	1	SNA	D	
13-2	-	HANDLE-DOOR	1	SNA	D	
13-3	-	LABEL-STAPLE REPLACE	1	SNA	D	
13-4	-	MAGNET CATCH PLATE:12x26	1	SNA	D	
13-5	-	SCREW-TAPTITEFH,+,B,M3,L8	1	SNA	D	
15	JC81-03468A	AS-MAGNET ASSY	1	SA	A	
16	-	BKT:INTER LOCK:DOOR OPEN	1	SNA	D	
17	JC81-03469A	AS-SWITCH MICRO	1	SA	A	
18	-	MICRO WIRE SADDLE	1	SNA	D	
19	-	SIDE LOCKING SADDLE	1	SNA	D	
20	-	COVER SADDLE:DS-1	1	SNA	D	
21	-	BKT:MAGNET:GUIDE	1	SNA	D	
23	-	LEAF SPRING:EARTH	1	SNA	D	
24	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	B	
26	JC81-03470A	AS-MH INTER FACE ASSY	1	SA	A	
27	-	ASSY:M/H:REAR FRAME	1	SNA	D	
28	JC81-03490B	AS-COVER REAR	1	SA	A	
29	-	BKT:COVER:REAR	1	SNA	D	
30	-	STUD:SET	1	SNA	D	
31	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
32	-	E-RING:Φ4	1	SNA	D	
33	-	HOOK:INSTALL	1	SNA	D	
34	-	GUIDE:SET	1	SNA	D	
35	-	SHAFT:HOOK:SET	1	SNA	D	
36	-	PARALLEL PIN:Φ2x10	1	SNA	D	

Frame Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
37	-	T-SPRING:HOOK:SET	1	SNA	D	
38	-	ASSY:M/H:FRONT FRAME	1	SNA	D	
39	-	ASSY:M/H:INTER LOCK	1	SNA	D	
40	-	RATING-LABEL	1	SNA	D	

5.27-3 Stacker Unit

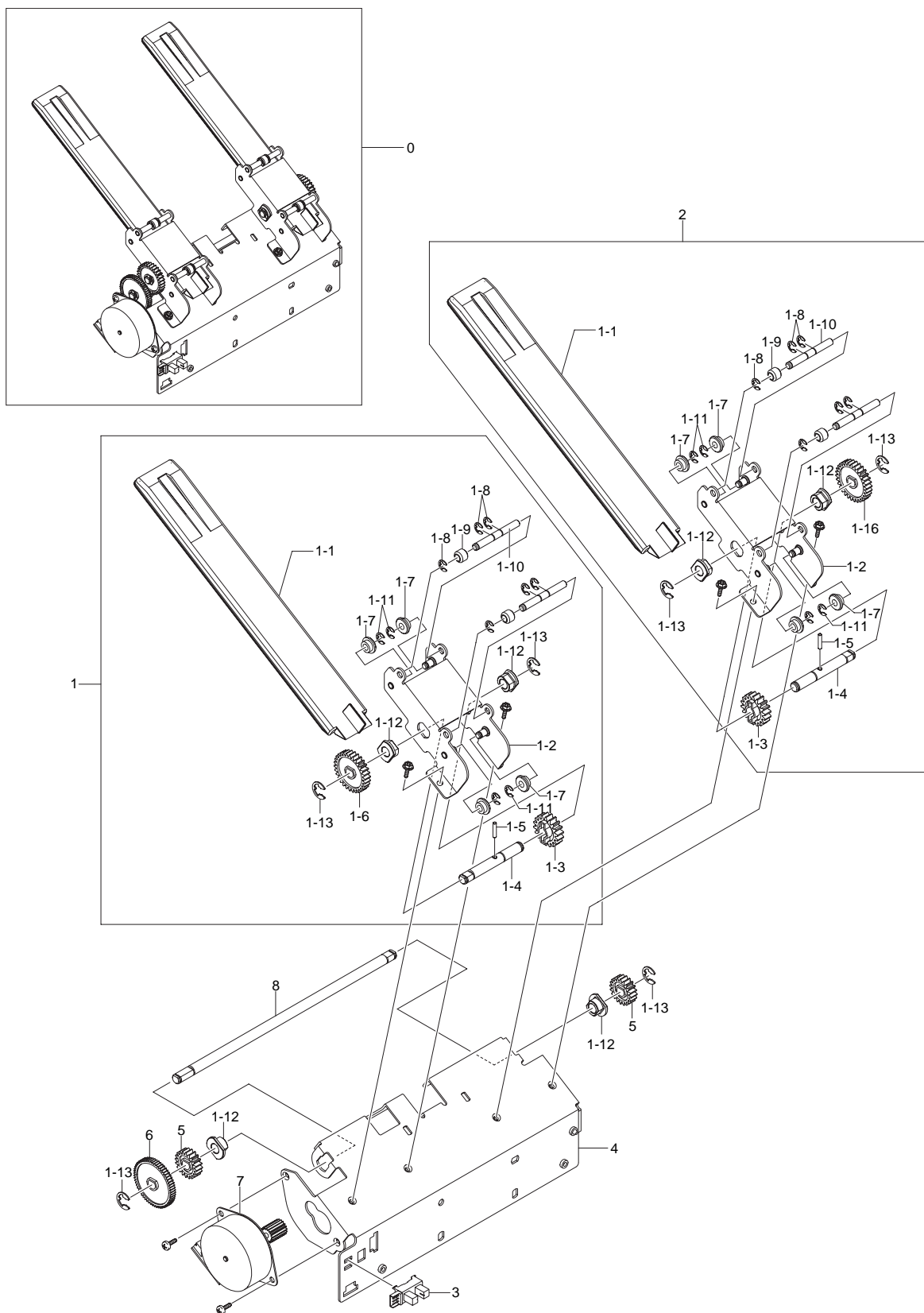


Stacker Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	STACKER UNIT	1	SNA	D	
1	JC81-03472B	AS-TRAY STACKER	1	SA	A	
2	-	STAY:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
3	-	SIDE FRAME:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
4	-	ROLLER:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
5	-	LEAF SPRING:EARTH	1	SNA	D	
6	-	SHIELD:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
7	0604-001095	PI SENSOR:GP1S73P2	1	SA	A	
8	-	ACTUATOR:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
9	-	BKT:SENSOR	1	SNA	D	
10	-	T-SPRING:ACTUATOR:STACK	1	SNA	D	
11	-	COVER:PCB	1	SNA	D	
12	JC81-03471A	AS-MS STACKER ASSY	1	SA	A	
13	-	BKT:MOTOR:STACKER	1	SNA	D	
14	-	BKT:SUPPORT:MORTOR	1	SNA	D	
15	-	BKT:WORM:STACK	1	SNA	D	
16	-	SHAFT:WORM WHEEL	1	SNA	D	
17	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
18	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
19	JC81-03489A	AS-WORM STACKER	1	SA	B	
20	-	SHAFT:WORM	1	SNA	D	
21	-	PARALLEL PIN:210	1	SNA	D	
22	JC81-03484A	AS-MOTOR DC	1	SA	B	
23	JC81-03525A	AS-BELT STACKER	1	SA	B	
24	JC81-03491A	AS-PULLEY S2M48T	1	SA	B	
25	JC81-03524A	AS-W_WHEEL STACKER	1	SA	B	
26	JC81-03492A	AS-GEAR PINION18T	1	SA	B	
27	-	SHAFT:STACKER:DRIVE	1	SNA	D	
28	-	PARALLEL PIN:214	1	SNA	D	
29	JC81-03523A	AS-GEAR SPUR Z35	1	SA	B	
30	-	STUD:STACKER:LIFT	1	SNA	D	
31	-	ASSY:M/H:STK TOP SNR	1	SNA	D	

5.27-4 Extension Tray Unit

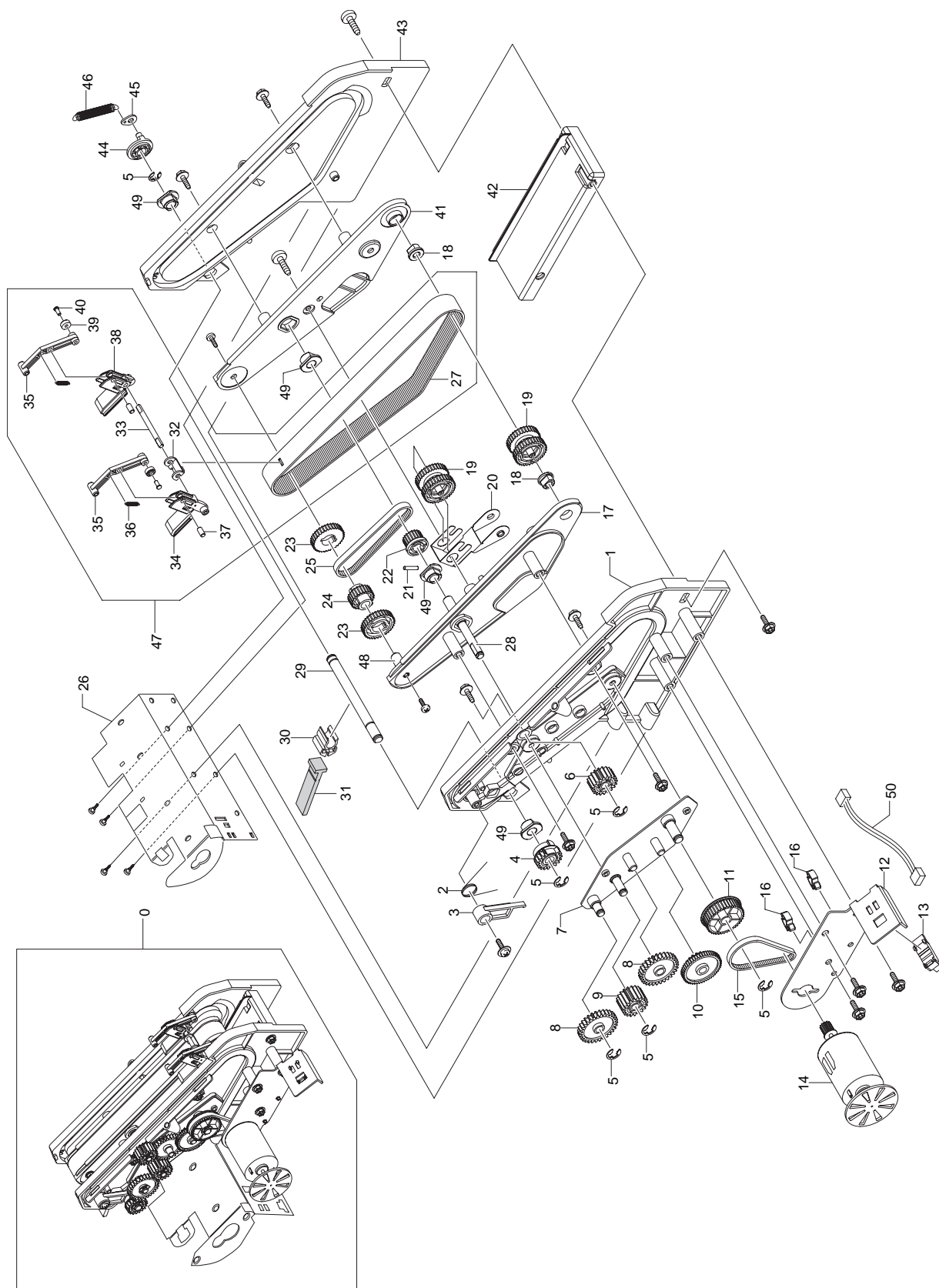


Extension Tray Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	EXTENTION TRAY UNIT	1	SNA	D	
1	JC81-03769B	AS-SUPP FINGER ASSY_F	1	SA	B	
1-1	JC81-03483B	AS-TRAY BERO	1	SA	B	
1-2	-	BKT:TRAY:BERO:ASSY	1	SNA	D	
1-3	JC81-03494A	AS-RACK PINION Z18	1	SA	B	
1-4	-	SHAFT:RACK PINION	1	SNA	D	
1-5	-	PARALLEL PIN:2x10	1	SNA	D	
1-6	JC81-03521A	AS-GEARZ30	1	SA	B	
1-7	-	ROLLER:BERO:LOWER	1	SNA	D	
1-8	-	E-RING:2.5	1	SNA	D	
1-9	-	ROLLER:BERO:UPPER	1	SNA	D	
1-10	-	SHAFT:ROLLER:BERO	1	SNA	D	
1-11	-	E-RING:3	1	SNA	D	
1-12	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
1-13	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
2	JC81-03770A	AS-SUPP FINGER ASSY_R	1	SA	B	
2-1-1	JC81-03483A	AS-TRAY BERO	1	SA	B	
2-1-2	-	BKT:TRAY:BERO:ASSY	1	SNA	D	
2-1-3	JC81-03494A	AS-RACK PINION Z18	1	SA	B	
2-1-4	-	SHAFT:RACK PINION	1	SNA	D	
2-1-5	-	PARALLEL PIN:2x10	1	SNA	D	
2-1-6	JC81-03521A	AS-GEAR Z30	1	SA	B	
2-1-7	-	ROLLER:BERO:LOWER	1	SNA	D	
2-1-8	-	E-RING:2.5	1	SNA	D	
2-1-9	-	ROLLER:BERO:UPPER	1	SNA	D	
2-1-10	-	SHAFT:ROLLER:BERO	1	SNA	D	
2-1-11	-	E-RING:3	1	SNA	D	
2-1-12	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
2-1-13	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
3	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	B	
4	-	FRAME:BERO	1	SNA	D	
5	JC81-03493A	AS-GEAR Z20	1	SA	B	
6	JC81-03522A	AS-GEAR Z60	1	SA	B	
7	JC81-03473A	AS-MOTOR PM ASSY Z18	1	SA	B	
8	-	SHAFT:TRANS:BERO	1	SNA	D	
8-1-12	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	
8-1-13	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	

5.27-5 EjectorUnit



EjectorUnit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

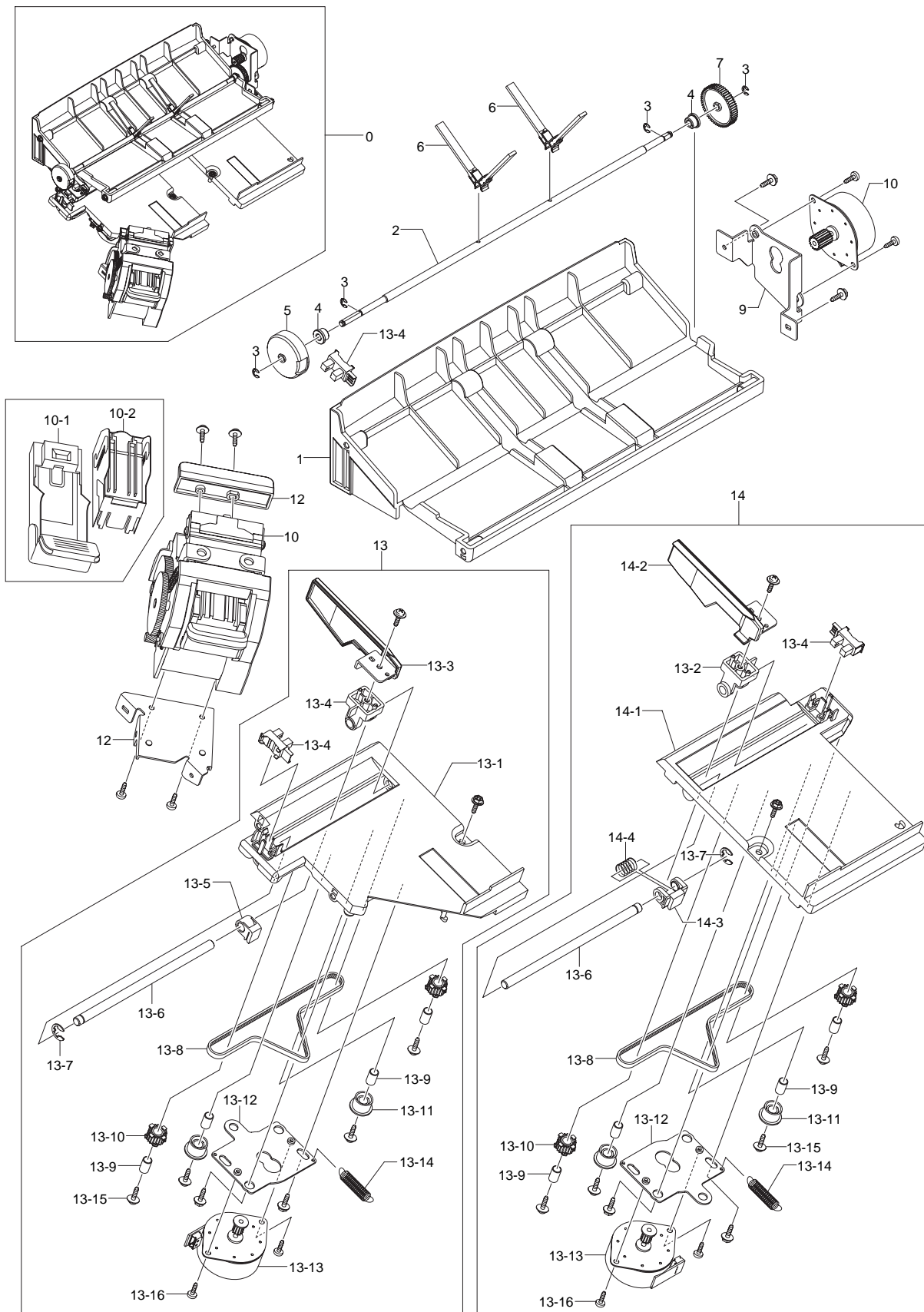
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC81-03773A	AS-EJECTOR UNIT ASSY	1	SA	B	
1	-	FRMAE:FRONT:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
2	-	T-SPRING:LATCH:SCU	1	SNA	D	
3	-	HOOK:CAM:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
4	JC81-03526A	AS-GEAR CAM SCU	1	SA	B	
5	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
6	JC81-03495A	AS-SPUR GEAR Z19	1	SA	B	
7	-	ASSY:BKT:DRIVING:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
8	JC81-03504A	AS-SPUR GEAR Z30	1	SA	B	
9	JC81-03503A	AS-SPUR GEAR Z19 SCU	1	SA	B	
10	JC81-03502A	AS-GEAR M08Z19M05Z50	1	SA	B	
11	JC81-03501A	AS-PULLEY S2MT40M05T24	1	SA	B	
12	-	BKT:DC MOTOR:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
13	0604-001095	PI SENSOR:GP1S73P2	1	SA	A	
14	JC81-03474A	AS-MOTOR EJECT	1	SA	B	
15	C81-03500A	AS-BELT B35S2M118J	1	SA	B	
16	-	MICRO WIRE SADDLE	1	SNA	D	
17	-	FRAME:BELT:EJECT:FRONT	1	SNA	D	
18	JC61-00424A	BUSH-4_D	1	SA	B	
19	C81-03499A	AS-PULLEY S2M34TJ	1	SA	B	
20	-	PLATE SPRING:TIGHTNER:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
21	-	PARALLEL PIN:2x10	1	SNA	D	
22	JC81-03498A	AS-PULLEY S2M20T	1	SA	B	
23	JC81-03497A	AS-PULLEY DRVS2M34T	1	SA	B	
24	JC81-03496A	AS-PULLEY S2M25T	1	SA	B	
25	JC81-03513A	AS-BELT B35S2M144	1	SA	B	
26	-	FRAME:BERO	1	SNA	D	
27	JC81-03512A	AS-BELT ASSY EJECT	1	SA	B	
27-1	-	BELT-EJECT B130S2M370	1	SNA	D	
27-2	-	HOLER-BELT EJECT	1	SNA	D	
28	-	SHAFT:BELT TRANS:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
29	-	SHAFT:SCU	1	SNA	D	
30	-	HOLDER:SCU	1	SNA	D	
31	-	PADDLE:SCU	1	SNA	D	
32	-	ASSY:M/H:EXT TRAY HOME SNR	1	SNA	D	
33	-	SHAFT D-CUT:GRIP HINGE:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
34	-	GRIP BASE:FRONT:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
35	-	GRIP LINK:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
36	-	E-SPRING:GRIP	1	SNA	D	

EjectorUnit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
37	-	SHAFT:GRIP HINGE:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
38	-	GRIP BASE:REAR:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
39	-	ROLLER:GRIP:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
40	-	PIN:ROLLER:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
41	-	FRAME:BELT:EJECT:REAR	1	SNA	D	
42	-	FRAME:RETURN:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
43	-	FRAME:REAR:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
44	-	ROTATOR:CAM:SCU	1	SNA	D	
45	-	HOOK:SPRING:SCU	1	SNA	D	
46	-	E-SPRING:CLUTCH:SCU	1	SNA	D	
47	JC81-03772A	AS-EJT BELT SUBASSY	1	SA	B	
48	-	SHAFT:BELT PULLEY:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
49	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	1	SA	B	

5.27-6 Compile Unit

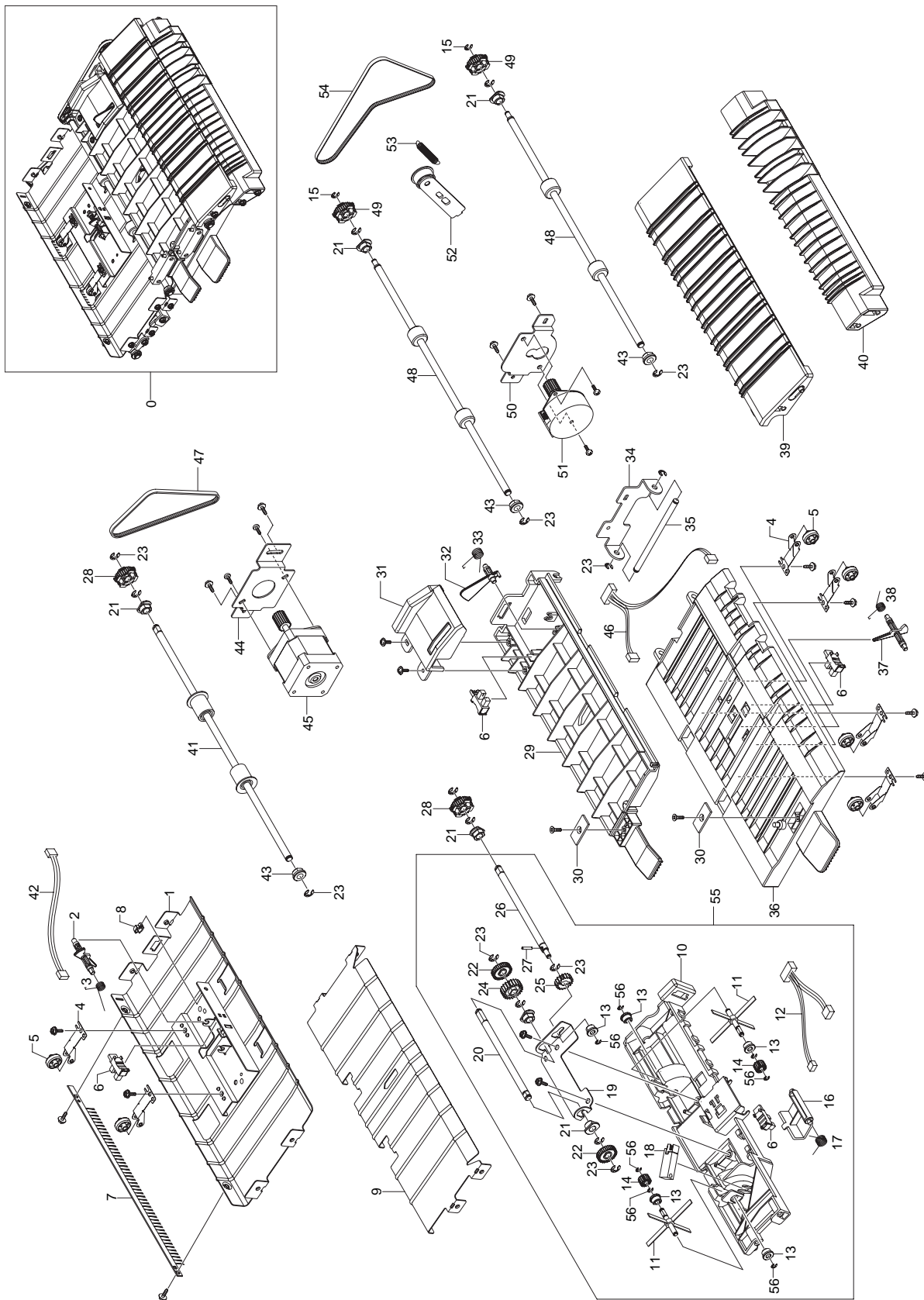


Compile Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	COMPILE UNIT	1	SNA	D	
1	-	COVER:COMPILE:UPPER	1	SNA	D	
2	-	SHAFT:PADDLE	1	SNA	D	
3	-	E-RING:3	1	SNA	D	
4	JC61-00424A	BUSH-4_D	1	SA	B	
5	-	ACTUATOR:HOME:PADDLE	1	SNA	D	
6	JC81-03482A	AS-PADDLE COMPILE	1	SA	B	
7	JC81-03510A	AS-GEAR PADDLE Z56	1	SA	B	
8	-	BKT:MOTOR:PADDLE	1	SNA	D	
9	JC81-03473A	AS-MOTOR PM ASSY Z18	1	SA	B	
10	JC81-03475A	AS-STAPLER ASSY EH-C590	1	SA	B	
10-1	JC81-03481A	AS-CARTRIDGE STAPLER No.590X	1	SA	B	
10-2	JC81-03476A	AS-STAPLES REFILL No.505XW	1	SA	B	
11	-	GUIDE:STAPLER	1	SNA	D	
12	-	BASEBKT:STAPLER	1	SNA	D	
13	JC81-03511B	AS-FRONT JOGGER ASSY	1	SA	B	
13-1	-	FRAME:COMPILE:FRONT	1	SNA	D	
13-2	-	LMBUSH:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
13-3	-	SIDEFENCE:TAMPER:FRONT	1	SNA	D	
13-4	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
13-5	-	HOLDER:BELT:TAMPER:FRONT	1	SNA	D	
13-6	-	LM SHAFT:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
13-7	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
13-8	JC81-03509A	AS-BELT B40S2M290	1	SA	B	
13-9	-	HOLLOW SHAFT:D_6	1	SNA	D	
13-10	JC81-03508A	AS-PULLEY T20 TAMPER	1	SA	B	
13-11	-	ROLLER:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
13-12	-	BKT:MOTOR:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
13-13	JC81-03486A	AS-MOTOR PM ASSY S2M12T	1	SA	D	
13-14	-	E-SPRING:TIGHTNER:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
13-15	-	SCREW-TAPTITE M3L10	1	SNA	D	
13-16	-	SCREW-TAPPING M3L8	1	SNA	D	
14	JC81-03507B	AS-REAR JOGGER ASSY	1	SA	B	
14-1	-	FRAME:COMPILE:REAR	1	SNA	D	
14-2	-	SIDE FENCE:TAMPER:REAR	1	SNA	D	
14-3	-	HOLDER:BELT:TAMPER:REAR	1	SNA	D	
14-4	-	C-SPRING:TAMPER	1	SNA	D	
15	-	DAMPER-SPONGE	1	SNA	D	

5.27-7 Feed Unit



Feed Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	FEED UNIT	1	SNA	D	
1	-	GUIDE:EXIT:UPPER:ASSY	1	SNA	D	
2	-	ACTUATOR:FEED	1	SNA	D	
3	-	T-SPRING:ACTUATOR:FEED	1	SNA	D	
4	-	LEAF SPRING:FEED	1	SNA	D	
5	-	ROLLER:IDLE:FEED	1	SNA	D	
6	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	1	SA	A	
7	JC67-00125A	ANTI-STATIC BRUSH	1	SA	B	
8	-	MICRO WIRE SADDLE	1	SNA	D	
9	-	GUIDE:EXIT:LOWER	1	SNA	D	
10	-	GUIDE:COMPILE	1	SNA	D	
11	JC81-03506A	AS-PADDLE SUB ASSY	1	SA	B	
12	-	ASSY:M/H:EJEC THOMESNR	1	SNA	D	
13	JC61-00424A	BUSH-4_D	1	SA	B	
14	JC81-03505A	AS-GEAR P □ Z18M05	1	SA	B	
15	-	E-RING:3	1	SNA	D	
16	-	ACTUATOR:EJECTOR	1	SNA	D	
17	-	T-SPRING:ACTUATOR:EJECT	1	SNA	D	
18	JC81-03480A	AS-SENSOR PHOTO	1	SA	B	
19	-	BKT:PADDLE:SUB	1	SNA	D	
20	-	SHAFT:TRANS:SUB PADDLE	1	SNA	D	
21	-	BUSH-6_D	1	SNA	D	
22	JC81-03520A	AS-GEAR SUB PDL Z34	1	SA	B	
23	-	E-RING:4	1	SNA	D	
24	JC81-03519A	AS-GEAR SUB PDL Z22	1	SA	B	
25	JC81-03518A	AS-GEAR SUB PDL Z18M08	1	SA	B	
26	-	SHAFT:TRANS:SUB PADDLE:FEED	1	SNA	D	
27	-	PARALLEL PIN:2x10	1	SNA	D	
28	JC81-03517A	AS-PULLEY T30S2M	1	SA	B	
29	-	GUIDE:OPEN:DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
30	-	MAGNET CATCHPLATE:12x26	1	SNA	D	
31	-	COVER:ACTUATOR:DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
32	-	ACTUATOR:DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
33	-	T-SPRING:ACTUATOR:DUPLEX	1	SNA	D	
34	-	BKT:HINGE:GUIDE	1	SNA	D	
35	-	SHAFT:HINGE:GUIDE	1	SNA	D	
36	-	GUIDE:OPEN	1	SNA	D	
37	-	ACTUATOR:FEED	1	SNA	D	

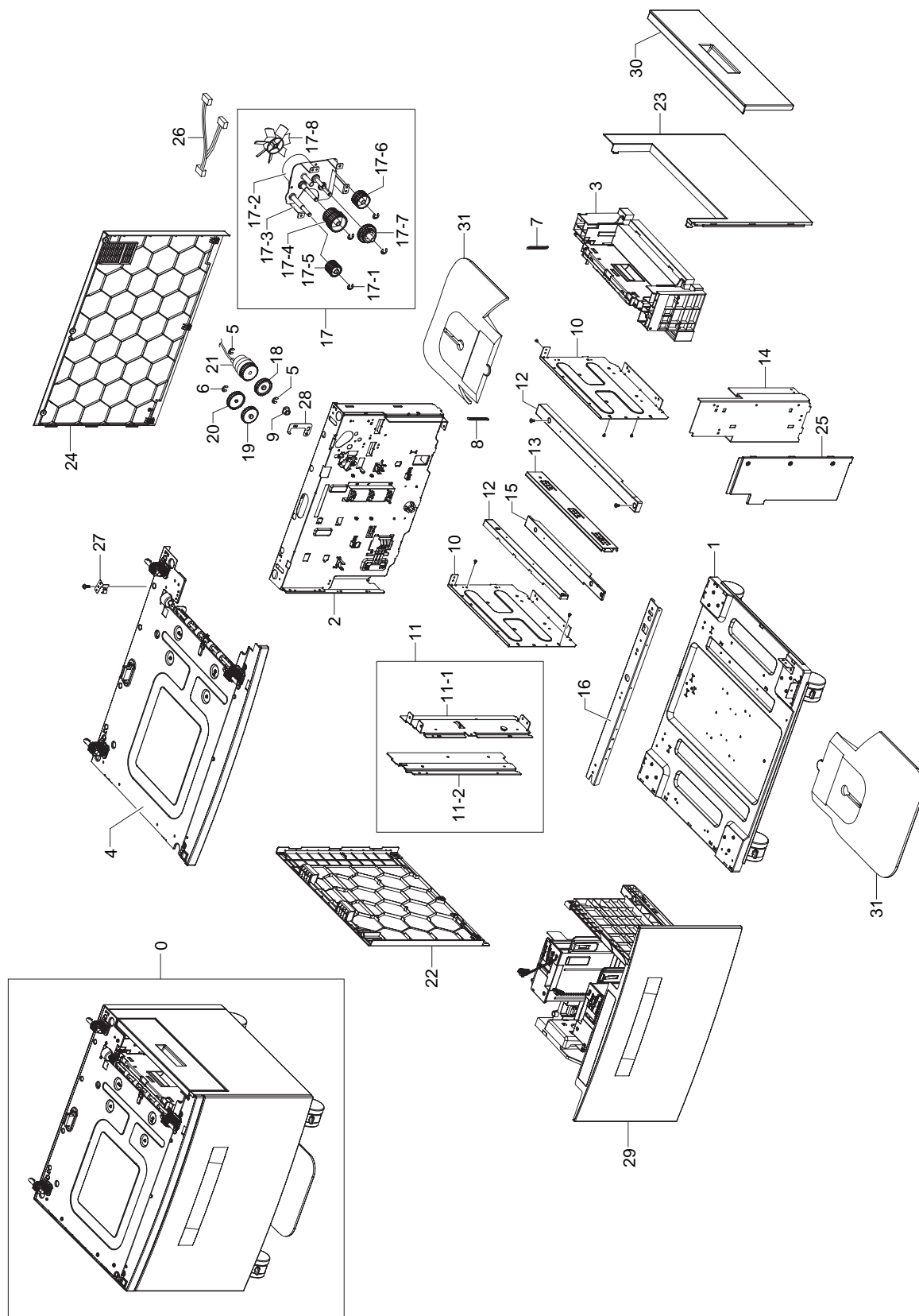
Feed Unit Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
38	-	T-SPRING:ACTUATOR:STACK	1	SNA	D	
39	-	GUIDE:ENTRANCE:UPPER	1	SNA	D	
40	-	GUIDE:ENTRANCE:LOWER	1	SNA	D	
41	JC81-03477A	AS-ROLLER EXIT	1	SA	B	
42	-	ASSY:M/H:EXIT SNR	1	SNA	D	
43	-	BEARING:6	1	SNA	D	
44	-	BKT:MOTOR:FEED:EXIT	1	SNA	D	
45	JC81-03479A	AS-MOTOR HB ASSY	1	SA	B	
46	-	ASSY:M/H:MID SNR	1	SNA	D	
47	JC81-03516A	AS-BELT B30S2M244	1	SA	B	
48	JC81-03485A	AS-ROLLERENT	1	SA	B	
49	JC81-03515A	AS-PULLEY T33S2M	1	SA	B	
50	-	BKT:MOTOR:FEED:ENT	1	SNA	D	
51	JC81-03478A	AS-MOTOR PM ASSY	1	SA	B	
52	-	ASSY:BKT:TIGHTNER	1	SNA	D	
53	-	E-SPRING:TIGHTNER:FEED	1	SNA	D	
54	JC81-03514A	AS-BELT B30S2M354 ENT	1	SA	B	
55	JC81-03771A	AS-FEED UNIT ASSY	1	SA	B	
56	-	E-RING:2.5	1	SNA	D	

5.28 HCF UNIT (Optional Unit)

5.28-1 ELA HOU-HCF



ELA HOU-HCF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

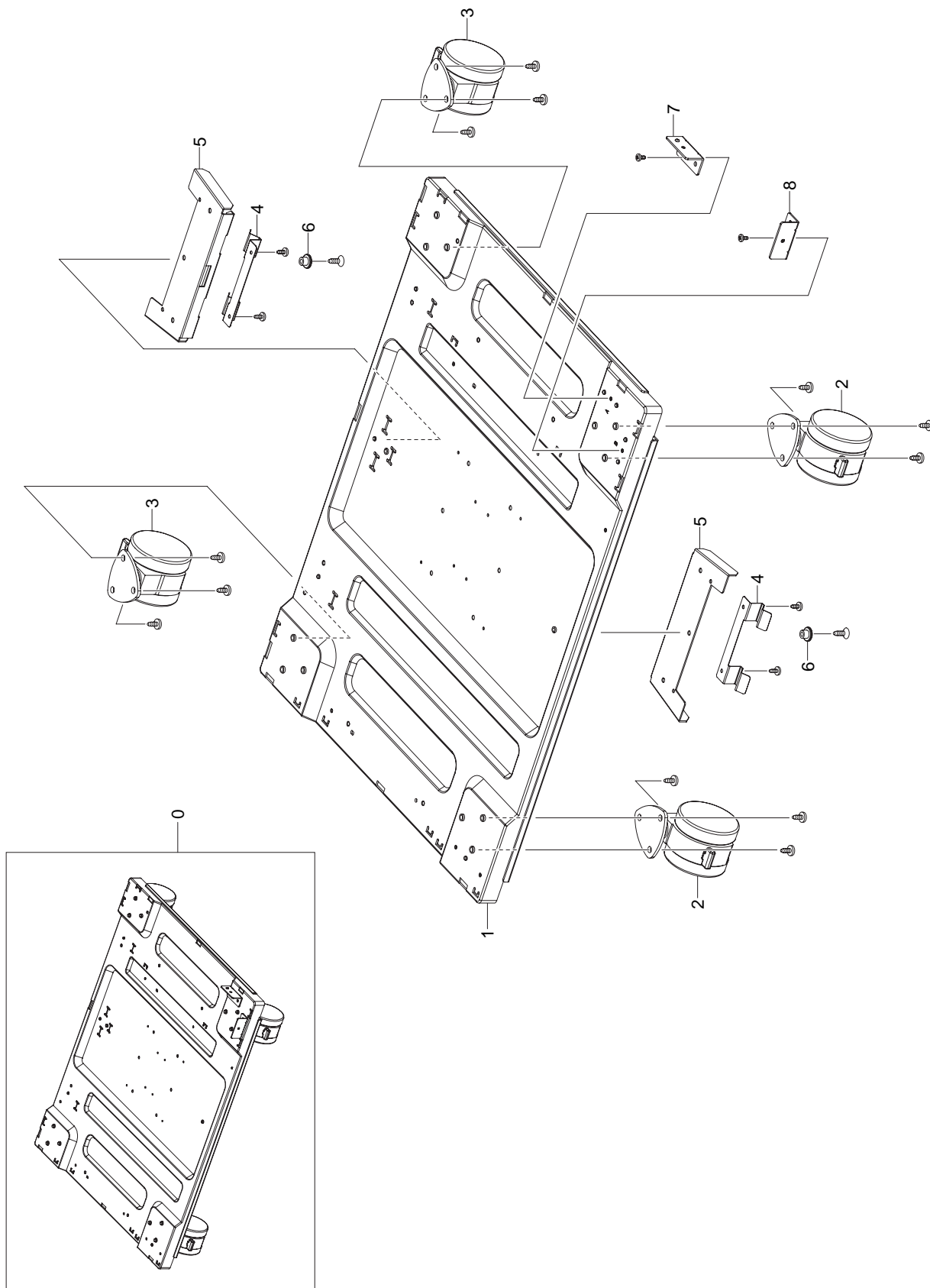
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC96-04852A	ELA HOU-HCF	1	SA	D	
1	-	SUB PLATE-BOTTOM_HCF	1	SNA	D	
2	-	SUB UNIT-REAR_HCF	1	SNA	D	
3	JC81-06298A	AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT	1	SA	B	
4	-	ELA HOU-UPPER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
5	6044-000125	RING-E, ID4	2	SA	A	
6	6044-000159	RING-C, ID3	1	SA	B	
7	6107-001258	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
8	6107-001259	SPRING-ES	1	SA	A	
9	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6D	2	SA	B	
10	-	PLATE-BEAM_HCF	2	SNA	D	
11	-	MEA UNIT-LEFT_HCF	1	SNA	D	
11-1	-	PLATE-SUP LEFT	1	SNA	D	
11-2	-	PLATE-SUP BRKT L	1	SNA	D	
12	-	GUIDE-RAIL SIDE_HCF	2	SNA	D	
13	-	GUIDE-RAIL_HCF	1	SNA	D	
14	-	PLATE-SUP RIGHT	1	SNA	D	
15	JC81-06067A	AS-SLIDE RAIL HCF	1	SA	B	
16	JC61-01312A	PLATER-P_BEAM BASE	1	SNA	B	
17	JC96-05278A	ELA HOU-SCF DRIVE	1	SA	B	
17-1	6044-000231	RINGE-E	4	SA	A	
17-2	JC31-00028B	MOTOR PICKUP SCF	1	SA	B	
17-3	JC61-02704A	BRACKET-SCF DRIVE	1	SA	B	
17-4	JC66-00965A	GEAR-M_FD IDLE A SCF	1	SA	B	
17-5	JC66-02011A	GEAR-FEED SCF	1	SA	B	
17-6	JC66-00967A	GEAR-M_PU IDLE A SCF	1	SA	B	
17-7	JC66-00968A	GEAR-M_PU IDLE C SCF	1	SA	B	
17-8	JC72-00825A	PMO-IMPELLER_DRV	1	SA	A	
18	JC66-00973A	GEAR-M_PICKUP IDLE B	1	SA	B	
19	JC66-00974A	GEAR-M_FORWARD	1	SA	B	
20	JC66-00975A	GEAR-M_RETARD	1	SA	B	
21	JC66-00994A	CLUTCH-5K Z32	1	SA	B	
22	-	COVER-LEFT_HCF	1	SNA	D	
23	-	COVER-RIGHT_HCF	1	SNA	D	
24	-	COVER-REAR_HCF	1	SNA	D	
25	-	COVER-RIGHT_FRONT	1	SNA	D	
26	JC39-00549A	CBF HARNESS-SCF_CLUT	1	SA	B	
27	JC63-00824A	GROUND-P-DOOR INNER	1	SA	B	
28	JC63-00833A	GROUND-P-SHAFT RETARD	1	SA	B	

ELA HOU-HCF Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
29	JC81-06068A	AS- UNIT CASSETTE HCF	1	SA	B	
30	JC63-00769B	COVER-M_DOOR SIDE SCF	1	SA	B	
31	-	STABILITY FOOT-SMALL	2	SNA	D	
32	-	RUBBER-DROP	3	SNA	D	
33	JC67-00328A	CAP-CLUTCH SCF	1	SNA	B	

5.28-2 SUB PLATE-BOTTOM

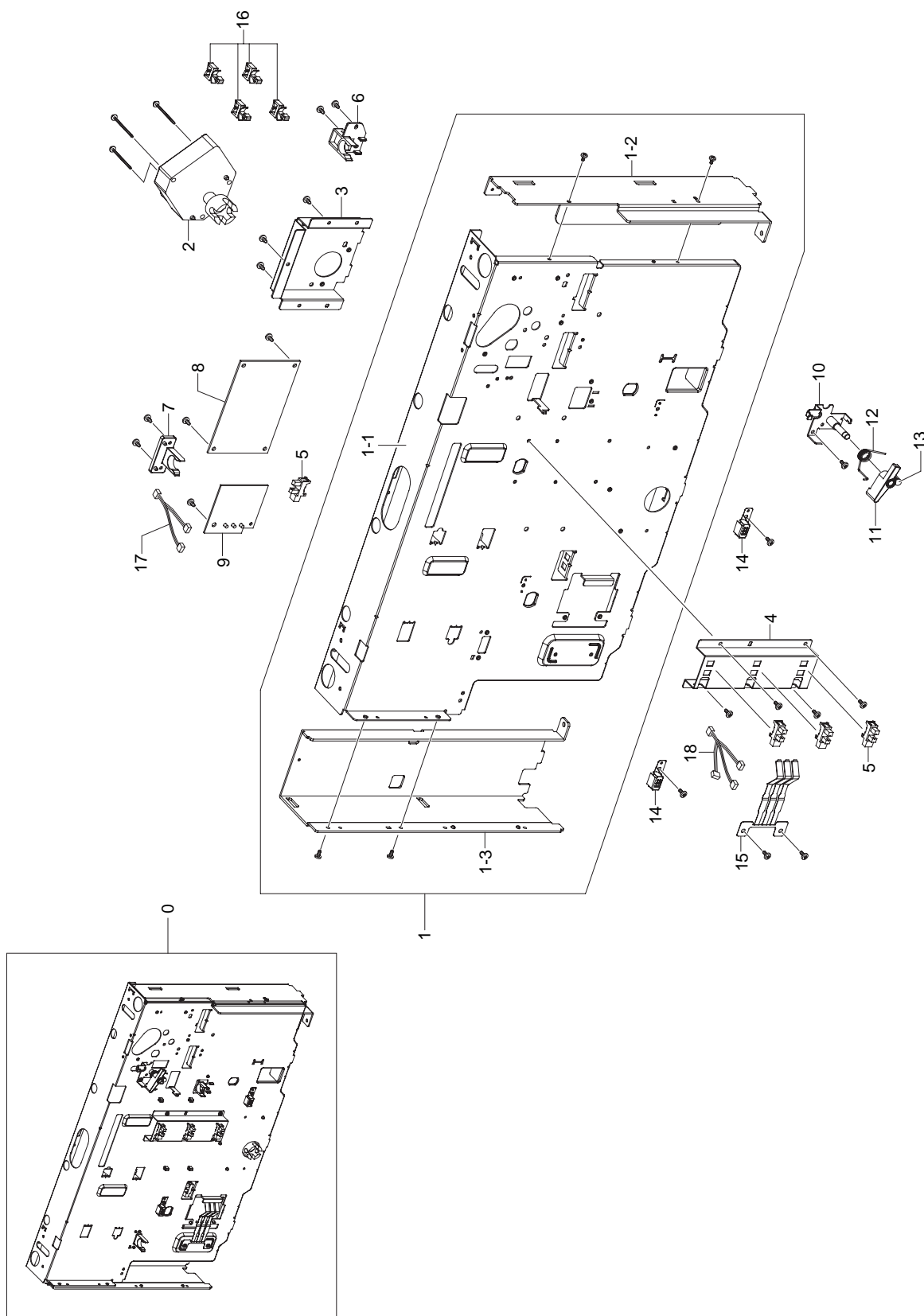


SUB PLATE-BOTTOM Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	SUB PLATE-BOTTOM_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	-	PLATE-BOTTOM HCF	1	SNA	D	
2	JC81-06304A	CASTER (FIX)	2	SA	B	
3	JC81-06305A	CASTER	2	SA	B	
4	-	SPRING CLIP	2	SNA	D	
5	-	STABILISER BRACKET SPRING CLIP	2	SNA	D	
6	-	LOCATING BUSH	2	SNA	D	
7	-	PLATE-BRKT A	1	SNA	D	
8	-	PLATE-BRKT B	1	SNA	D	

5.28-3 SUB UNIT-REAR

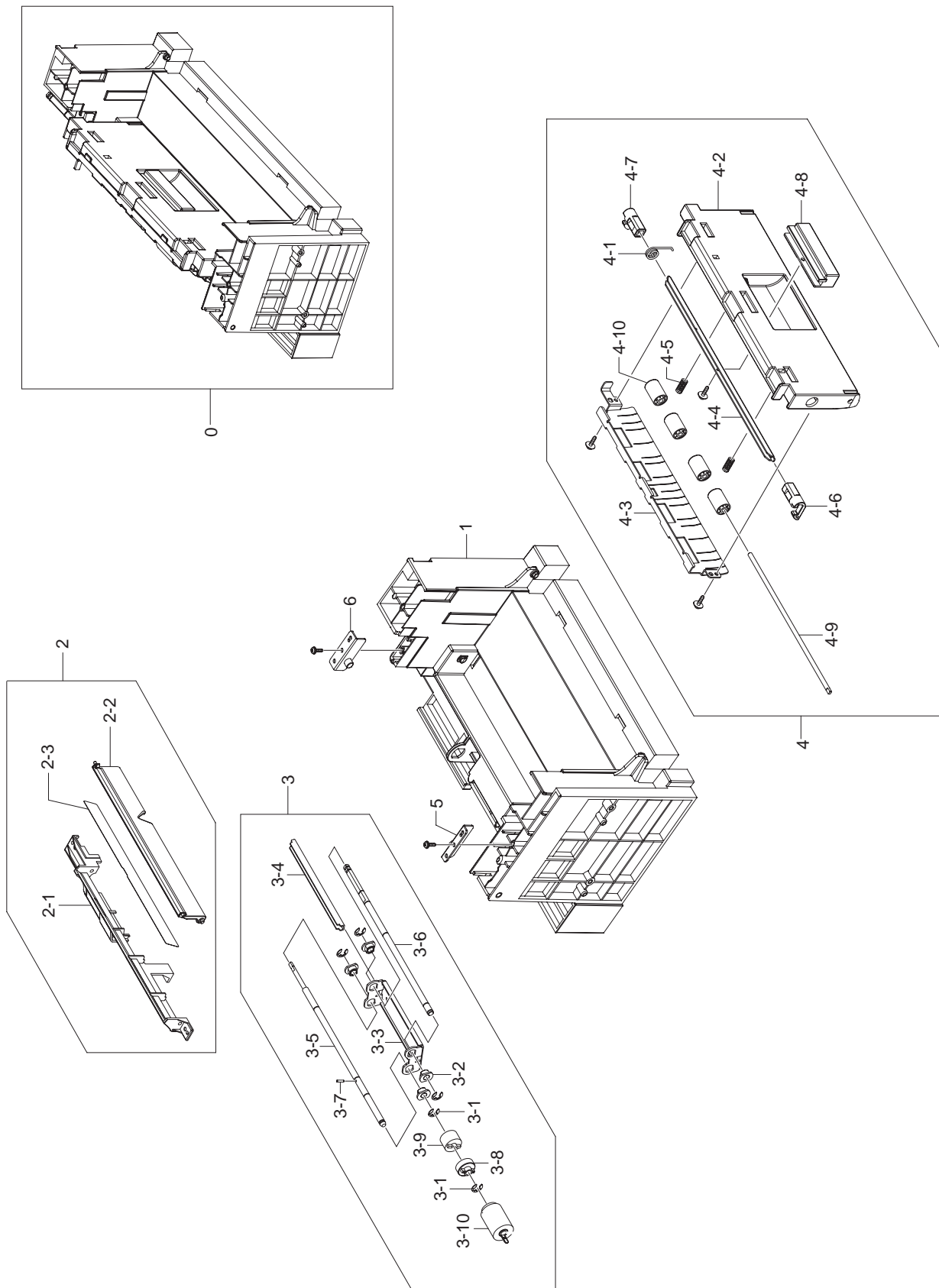


SUB UNIT-REAR Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	SUB UNIT-REAR_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	-	MEA UNIT-REAR_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1-1	-	PLATE-REAR HCF	1	SNA	D	
1-2	-	PLATE-REAR RIGHT	1	SNA	D	
1-3	-	PLATE-REAR LEFT	1	SNA	D	
2	JC31-00109A	AS-MOTOR GEARED	1	SA	B	
3	-	PLATE-MOTOR GEARED	1	SNA	D	
4	-	PLATE-PAPER LEVEL	1	SNA	D	
5	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	4	SA	A	
6	JC61-01344A	HOLDER-M_CST R	1	SNA	B	
7	JC61-01345A	HOLDER-M_CST L	1	SNA	B	
8	JC92-01697A	PBA SUB-SCF	1	SA	B	
9	JC92-01336A	PBA SUB-CASSETTE	1	SA	B	
10	JC61-01423A	BRACKET-P-ARM FRIC	1	SNA	B	
11	JC66-00959A	LEVER-M_ARM FRICTION	1	SA	B	
12	6107-001263	SPRING-TS	1	SNA	B	
13	6044-000125	RING-E	1	SA	B	
14	JC61-01423A	IPR-GROUND-TOP	2	SNA	B	
15	JC66-00959A	IPR-PLATE SENSOR	1	SA	B	
16	6107-001263	CABLE CLAMP	4	SNA	B	
17	JC39-00548A	CBF HARNESS HCF TRAY	1	SNA	B	
18	-	PAPER-LEVER HARNESS	1	SNA	D	

5.28-4 AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT

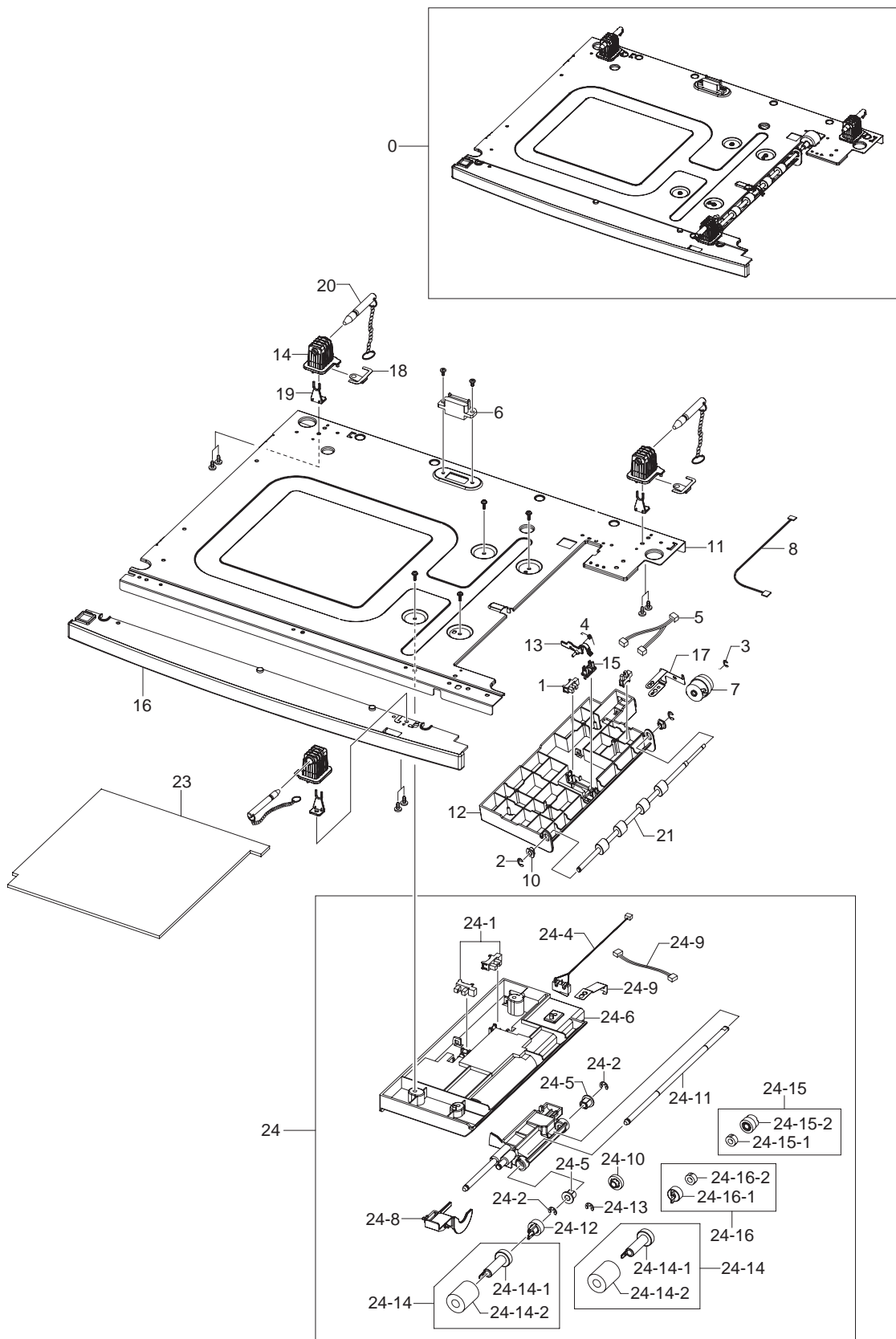


AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC81-06298A	AS-UNIT FRAME RIGHT	1	SA	B	
1	-	FRAME-RIGHT_HCF	1	SNA	D	
2	JC97-02284A	MAE UNIT-GUIDE PU SCF	1	SNA	B	
2-1	JC61-01325A	GUIDE-M_PU LOWER SCF	1	SNA	B	
2-2	JC61-01326A	GUIDE-M_PU UPPER SCF	1	SNA	B	
2-3	JC63-00754A	SHEET-GUIDE FILM SCF	1	SA	B	
3	JC97-02290A	MEA UINT-RETARD	1	SA	B	
3-1	6044-000125	RING-E, ID4	5	SA	A	
3-2	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6D	4	SA	B	
3-3	JC61-01348A	BRACKET-P-RETARD	1	SNA	D	
3-4	JC61-01349A	BRACKET-P_BAR RETARD	1	SNA	D	
3-5	JC66-00937A	SHAFT-RETARD S	1	SA	A	
3-6	JC66-00938A	SHAFT-RETARD M	1	SNA	D	
3-7	JC66-00939A	SHAFT-LOCK	1	SA	A	
3-8	JC66-00976A	JOINT-M_RETARD	1	SA	D	
3-9	JC67-00126A	COUPLER-TORQUE LIMITER	1	SA	B	
3-10	JC97-02259A	MEA UNIT-ROLLER PU	1	SA	A	
4	JC97-02275B	MEA UNIT-SCF DOOR	1	SA	D	
4-1	6107-001206	SPRING TS	1	SNA	D	
4-2	JC61-01327B	GUIDE-DOOR INNER	1	SNA	D	
4-3	JC61-01328A	PLATE-P_GUIDE SCF	1	SNA	D	
4-4	JC61-01404A	BRACKERT-P_HANDLE SCF	1	SNA	D	
4-5	JC61-70959B	SPRING ETC-FEED	2	SNA	B	
4-6	JC64-00204A	LOCKER-LEFT	1	SNA	B	
4-7	JC64-00204B	LOCKER-RIGHT	1	SNA	B	
4-8	JC64-00208B	HANDLE-M_DOOR	1	SNA	B	
4-9	JC66-00661A	SHAFT-EXIT IDLE	1	SNA	B	
4-10	JC66-01022A	ROLLER-M_IDLE SCF	4	SNA	B	
5	JC61-01399A	PLATE-P_LOCKER L	1	SNA	B	
6	JC61-01400A	PLATE-P_LOCKER R6	1	SNA	B	

5.28-5 ELA HOU-UPPER



ELA HOU-UPPER Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

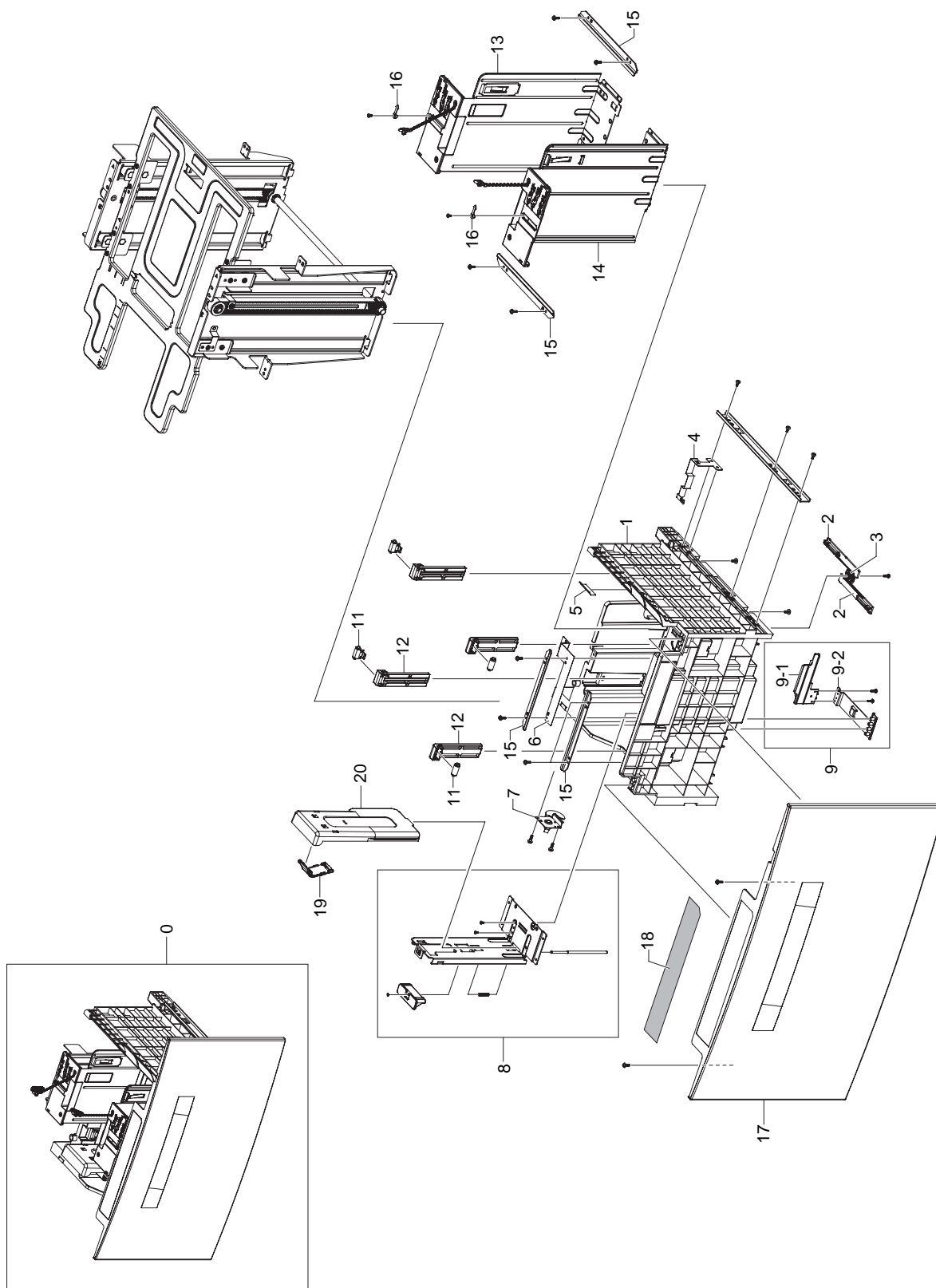
Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	ELA HOU-UPPER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
2	6044-000125	RING-E, ID4	2	SA	A	
3	6044-000159	RING-C, ID3	1	SA	B	
4	6107-001261	SPRING-TS	1	SA	A	
5	JC39-00461A	CBF HARNESS-SCF_FEED	1	SA	D	
6	JC39-00547A	CBF HARNESS-SCF	1	SA	D	
7	JC66-01865A	CLUTCH-ELECTRIC	1	SA	D	
8	JC39-00721A	HARNESS-SCF_CLT	1	SA	D	
10	JC61-00423A	BUSH-6_D	2	SA	B	
11	-	PLATE-TOP_HCF	1	SNA	D	
12	JC61-01401A	HOUSING-M_PICKUP SCF	1	SA	D	
13	JC61-01402A	LEG-M_ACT FEED SCF	1	SA	D	
14	JC61-01403A	HOLDER-M_PIN	3	SA	D	
15	JC61-01403A	HOLDER ACTUATOR SCF	1	SA	D	
16	JC63-00771B	COVER-M_FRONT SCF	1	SA	D	
17	JC63-00825A	GROUND-P_SHAFT SCF	1	SA	D	
18	JC63-00826A	GROUND-P_TOP	2	SA	D	
19	JC64-00207A	LOCKER-M_GRIP PIN	3	SA	D	
20	JC66-01021A	SHAFT-PIN LOCK	3	SA	D	
21	JC66-02012A	ROLLER-FEED SCF	1	SA	D	
23	-	SPONGE-TOP	1	SNA	D	
24	JC96-03558A	ELA UNIT PICKUP	1	SA	D	
24-1	0604-001095	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	2	SA	A	
24-2	6044-000125	RING-E, ID4	2	SA	A	
24-3	-	HCF_EMPTY HARNESS	1	SNA	D	
24-4	JC39-00477A	HARNESS-MOTOR_SW	1	SA	D	
24-5	JC61-00884A	BUSH 6D L	2	SNA	D	
24-6	JC61-01298A	FRAME-M_BASE PICK UP	1	SNA	D	
24-7	JC61-01299A	GUIDE-M_UPPER PICK UP	1	SNA	A	
24-8	JC61-01350A	LEG-M_ACT NO PAPER	1	SNA	A	
24-9	JC63-00743A	GROUND-P_SHAFT PU	1	SNA	D	
24-10	JC66-00940A	GEAR-M_IDLE PU	1	SA	D	
24-11	JC66-00942A	SHAFT-PICKUP	1	SNA	D	
24-12	JC66-00943A	GEAR-M_PU JOINT	1	SA	D	
24-13	6044-000159	RING-E, ID3	1	SA	B	
24-14	JC97-02259A	MEA UNIT-ROLLER PU	2	SA	A	
24-14-1	JC61-01409A	HOUSING-M_ROLLER PU	1	SNA	D	
24-14-2	JC73-00216A	RUBBER-ROLLER P	1	SA	D	

ELA HOU-UPPER Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
24-15	JC97-02291A	MEA UNIT-GEAR ONE WAY	1	SNA	D	
24-15-1	JC66-00941A	GEAR-M_ONE WAY	1	SA	D	
24-15-2	JC66-00977A	CLUTCH-P_ONE WAY	1	SA	D	
24-16	JC97-02292A	MEA UNIT-IDLE FORWARD	1	SA	D	
24-16-1	JC61-01288A	HOLDER-M_IDLE ONE WAY	1	SA	D	
24-16-2	JC66-00977A	CLUTCH-P_ONE WAY	1	SA	D	

5.28-6 AS-UNIT CASSETTE

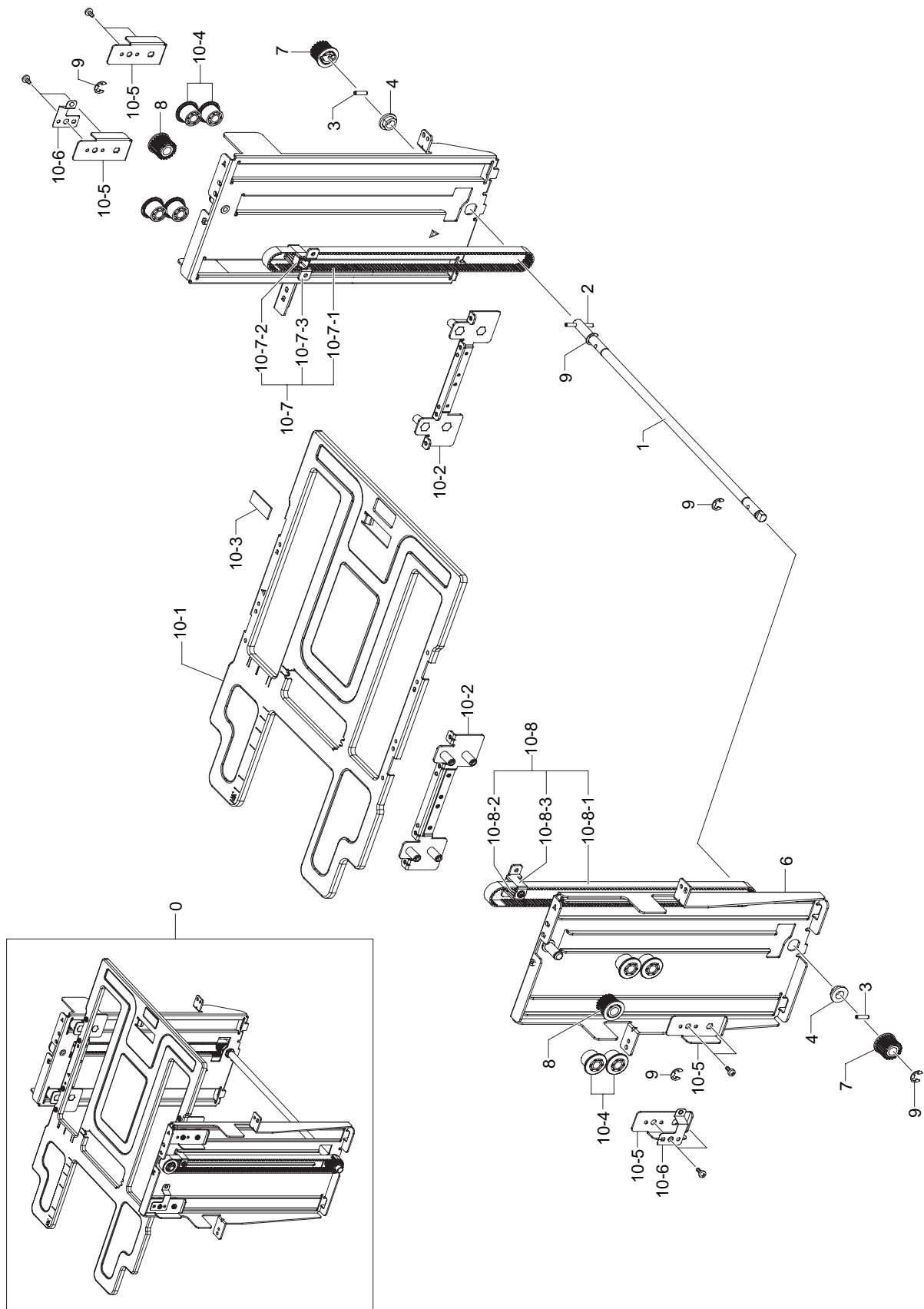


AS-UNIT CASSETTE Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	JC81-06068A	AS-UNIT CASSETTE HCF	1	SA	D	
1	-	FRAME-CASSETTE_HCF	1	SNA	D	
2	-	RACK-GEAR_HCF	2	SNA	D	
3	JC66-01020A	GEAR-M_PINION 24	1	SA	D	
4	-	GROUND-RAIL_HCF	1	SNA	D	
5	JC63-00747A	SHEET-GUIDE RETARD	1	SA	D	
6	-	GROUND-REAR_HCF	1	SNA	D	
7	-	MEA UNIT-HOLDER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
7-1	-	PLATE-HOLDER LOCKER	1	SNA	D	
7-2	-	BRKT-HOLDER-LOCKER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
7-3	-	STUD-HOLDER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
8	-	SUB GUIDE REAR	1	SNA	D	
9	-	SUB SUPPORT	1	SNA	D	
9-1	JC61-01417A	SUPPORT-M_PUSH PAPER	1	SNA	D	
9-2	-	SUPPORT-BAR PAPER	1	SNA	D	
10	-	MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP_HCF	4	SNA	D	
11	JC81-06074A	AS-UNIT SPRING ROLL	4	SA	D	
11-1	-	SPRING-ROLL	4	SNA	D	
11-2	-	BRKT-SPRING ROLL	4	SNA	D	
12	JC81-06075A	AS-GUIDE SPRING ROLL	4	SA	D	
13	-	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R_HCF	1	SNA	D	
14	-	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L_HCF	1	SNA	D	
15	-	PLATE-GUIDE RAIL	4	SNA	D	
16	-	SET-PAPER_HCF	2	SNA	D	
17	-	COVER-CASSETTE_HCF	1	SNA	D	
18	-	LABEL(R)-INSTALLATION	1	SNA	D	
19	JC81-06070A	AS-COVER PAPER HOOK	1	SA	B	
20	JC81-06069A	AS-COVER PAPER REAR DUMMY	1	SA	B	

5.28-7 MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP

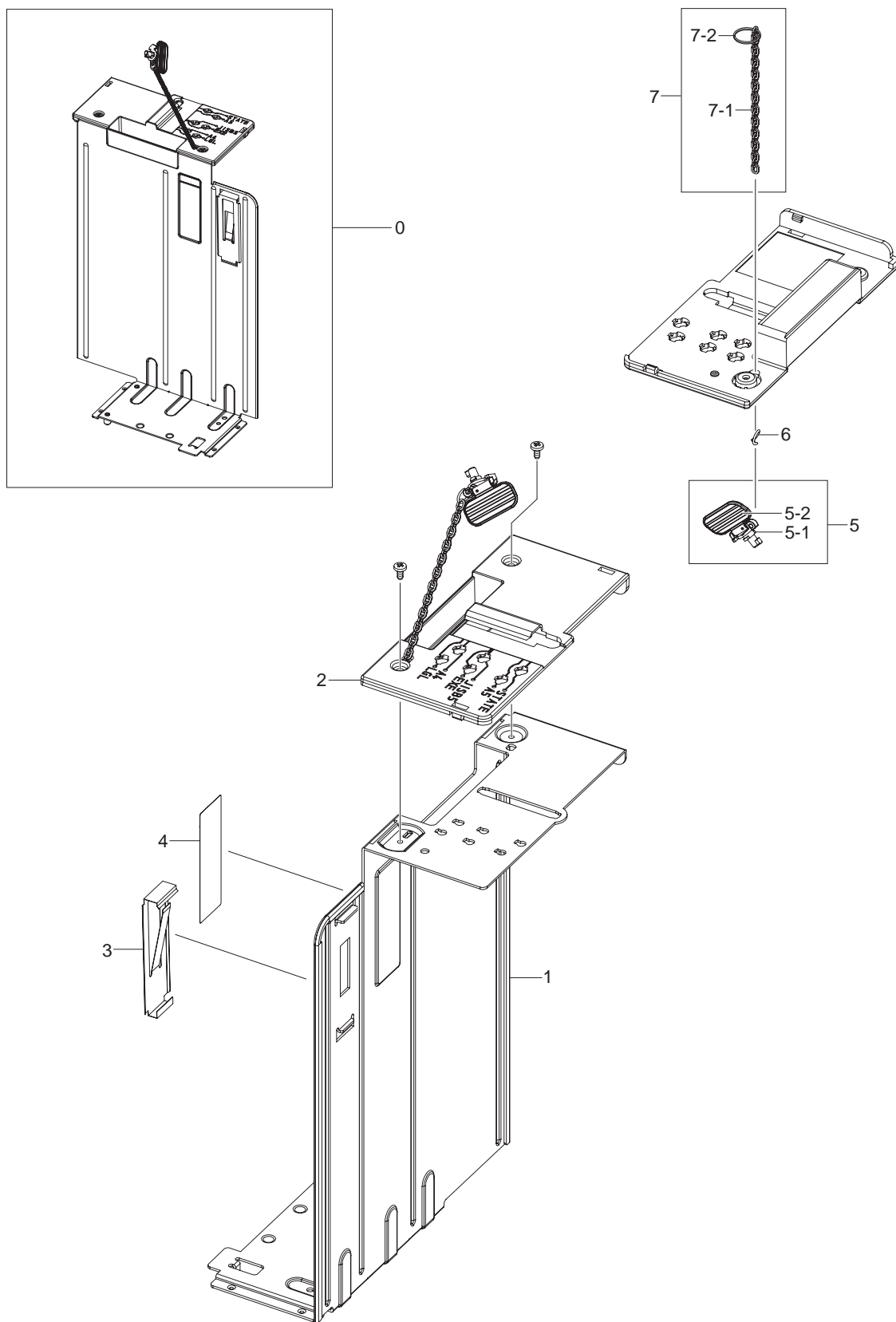


MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	MEA UNIT-KNOCK UP_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	-	SHAFT-PLATE LEVER	1	SNA	D	
2	-	SPRING-PIN ASMO	1	SNA	D	
3	-	SPRING-PIN PULLEY	2	SNA	D	
4	JC61-00426A	BUSH 8/5	2	SA	D	
5	-	PLATE-LIFT R	1	SNA	D	
6	-	PLATE-LIFT L	1	SNA	D	
7	-	PULLEY-LOWER BELT	2	SNA	D	
8	-	PULLEY-UPPER BELT	2	SNA	D	
9	6044-000129	RING-E	6	SA	D	
10	-	SUB KNOCK-UP	1	SNA	D	
10-1	-	PLATE-KNOCK UP	1	SNA	D	
10-2	-	BRKT-KNOCK UP	2	SNA	D	
10-3	JC69-00494A	RPR- PAD MP(PLUS)	1	SA	A	
10-4	-	ROLLER-GUIDE KU	8	SNA	D	
10-5	-	BRKT-GUIDE ROLLER	4	SNA	D	
10-6	-	GROUND-LEFT_HCF	2	SNA	D	
10-7	JC81-06071A	AS-UNIT BELT R HCF	1	SA	B	
10-7-1	JC81-06072A	AS-TIMING BELT S3M	1	SA	B	
10-7-2	-	BELT-STOPPER	1	SNA	D	
10-7-3	-	BRKT-STOPPER_R	1	SNA	D	
10-8	JC81-06073A	AS-UNIT BELT L HCF	1	SA	B	
10-8-1	JC81-06072A	AS-TIMING BELT S3M	1	SA	B	
10-8-2	-	BELT-STOPPER	1	SNA	D	
10-8-3	-	BRKT-STOPPER_L	1	SNA	D	

5.28-8 MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R

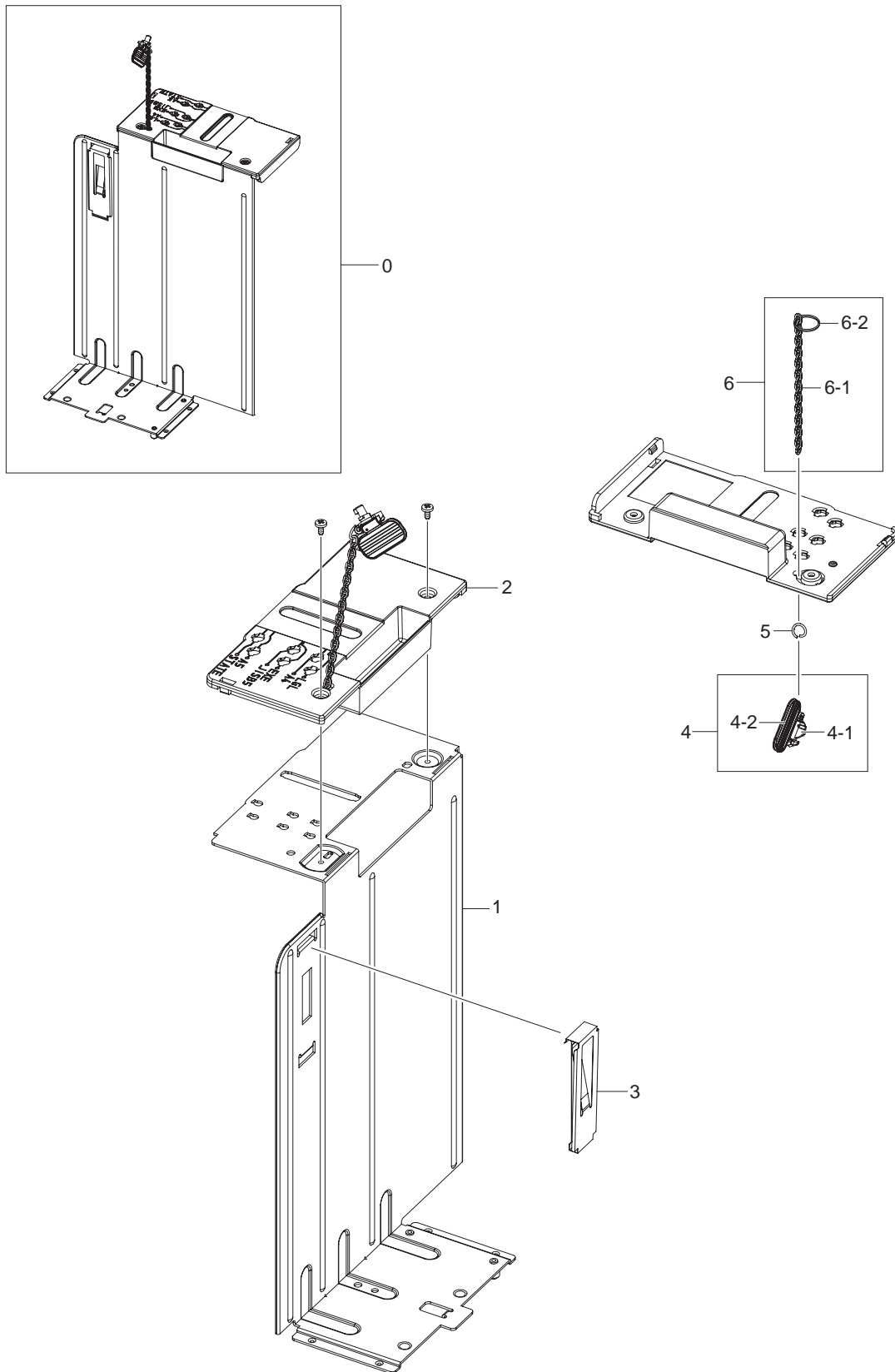


MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE R_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	-	PLATE-PAPER SIDE R	1	SNA	D	
2	-	COVER-PAPER_SIDE R	1	SNA	D	
3	JC70-10929A	IPR-SPR PLATE G/SIDE	1	SA	D	
4	JC68-01621A	LABEL(R)-MAX FILL	1	SA	D	
5	JC81-06076A	AS-PIN PAPER HCF	1	SA	B	
5-1	-	PIN-PAPER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
5-2	-	PIN-HANDLE_HCF	1	SNA	D	
6	-	PIN_RING	1	SNA	D	
7	-	MEA UNIT-LINK	1	SNA	D	
7-1	-	PIN_LINK	1	SNA	D	
7-2	-	PIN_SPRING	1	SNA	D	

5.28-9 MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L

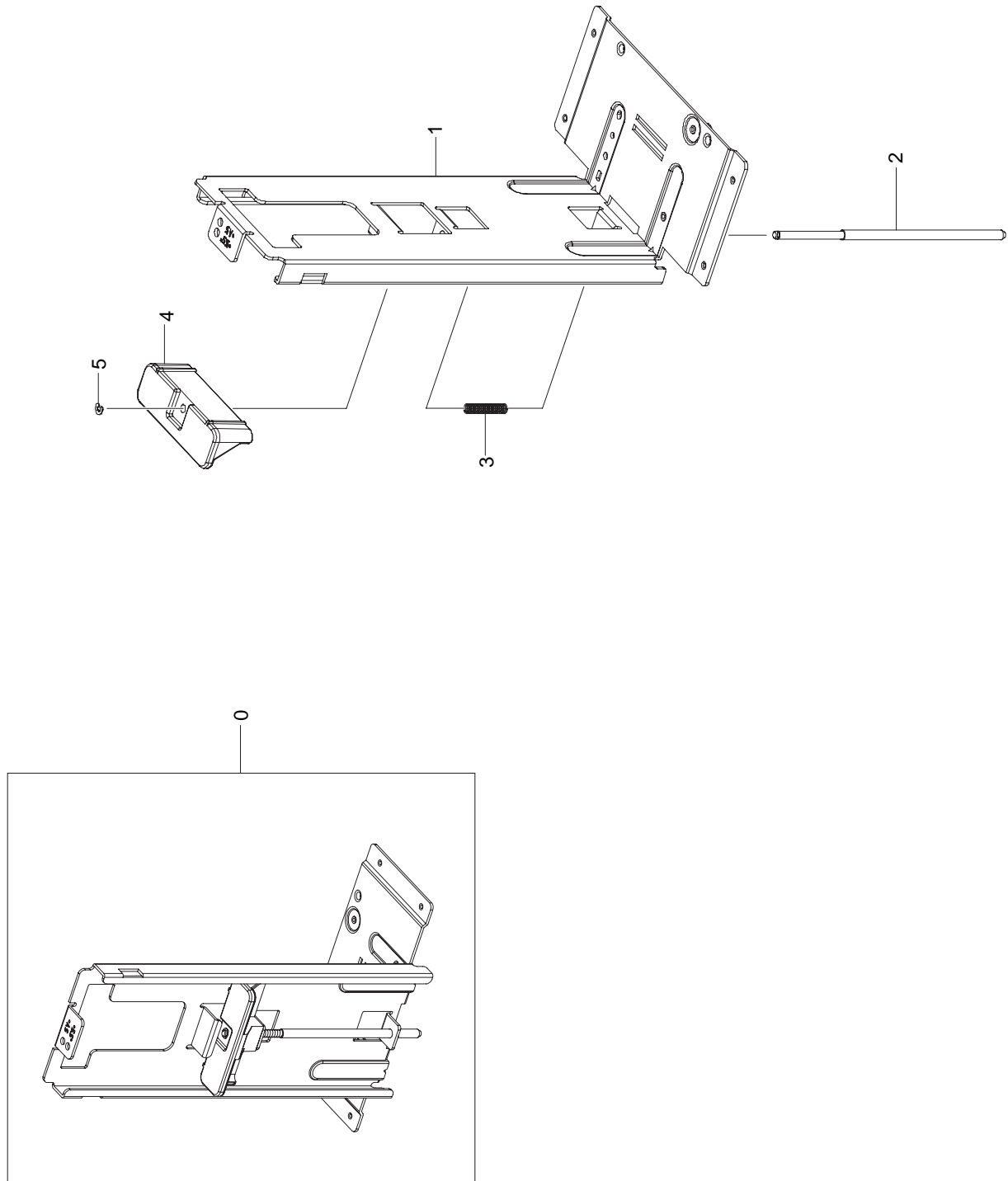


MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	MEA UNIT-PAPER SIDE L_HCF	1	SNA	D	
1	-	PLATE-PAPER SIDE L	1	SNA	D	
2	-	COVER-PAPER_SIDE L	1	SNA	D	
3	JC70-10929A	IPR-SPR PLATE G/SIDE	1	SA	D	
4	JC81-06076A	AS-PIN PAPER HCF	1	SA	B	
4-1	-	PIN-PAPER_HCF	1	SNA	D	
4-2	-	PIN-HANDLE_HCF	1	SNA	D	
5	-	PIN_RING	1	SNA	D	
6	-	MEA UNIT-LINK	1	SNA	D	
6-1	-	PIN_LINK	1	SNA	D	
6-2	-	PIN_SPRING	1	SNA	D	

5.28-10 SUB GUIDE REAR



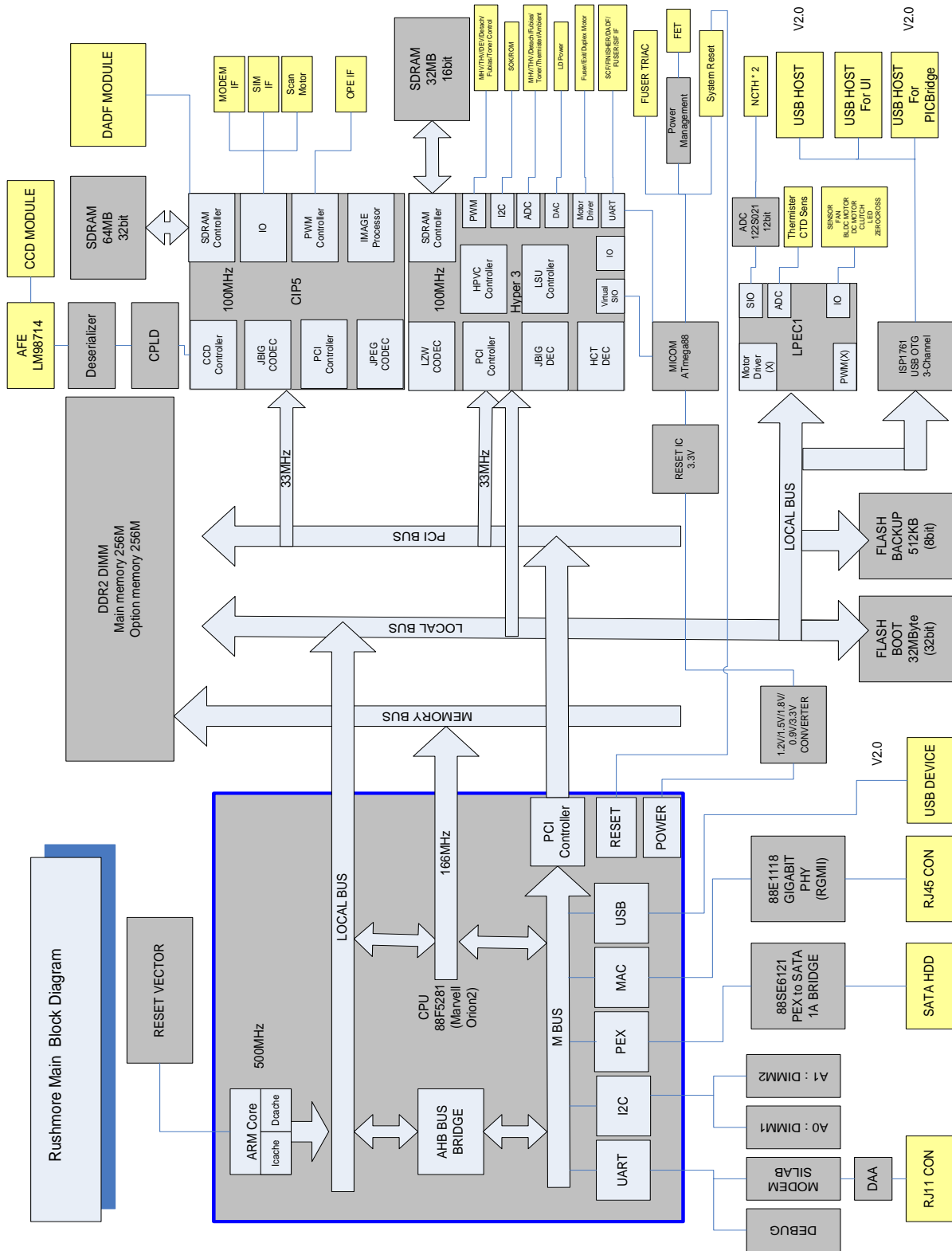
SUB GUIDE REAR Parts List

SA : SERVICE AVAILABLE, SNA : SERVICE not AVAILABLE

Drawer#	SEC_Code	Description	QT'y	Service	Grade	Remark
0	-	SUB GUIDE REAR	1	SNA	D	
1	-	PLATER-PAPER REAR	1	SNA	D	
2	-	SHAFT-HOOK	1	SNA	D	
3	JC61-00043A	SPRING-F/DOWN	1	SNA	D	
4	-	HANDLE-PAPER HOOK	1	SNA	D	
5	6044-000159	RING-E, ID3	1	SA	B	

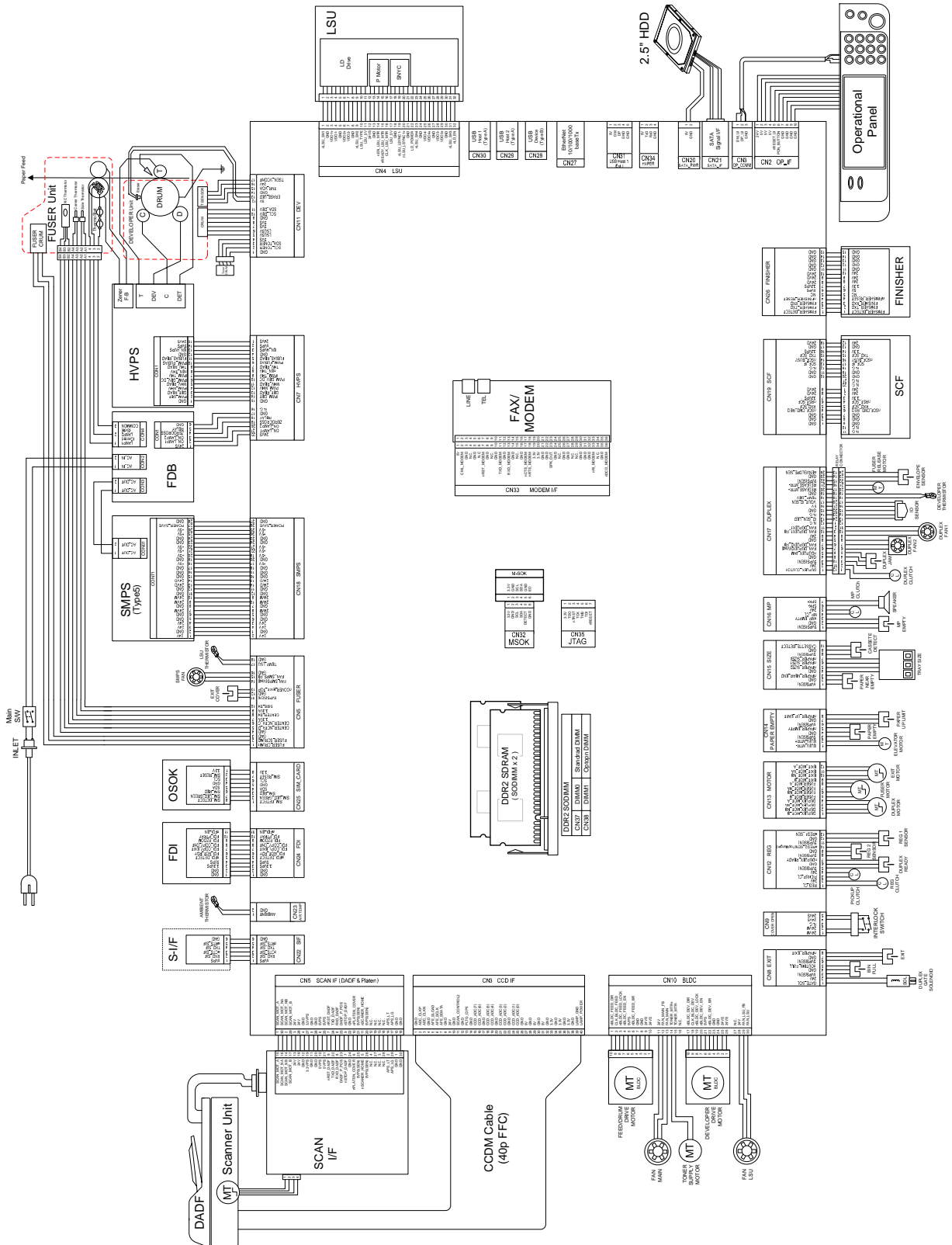
6. System Diagram

6.1 Block Diagram



6.2 Connection Diagram

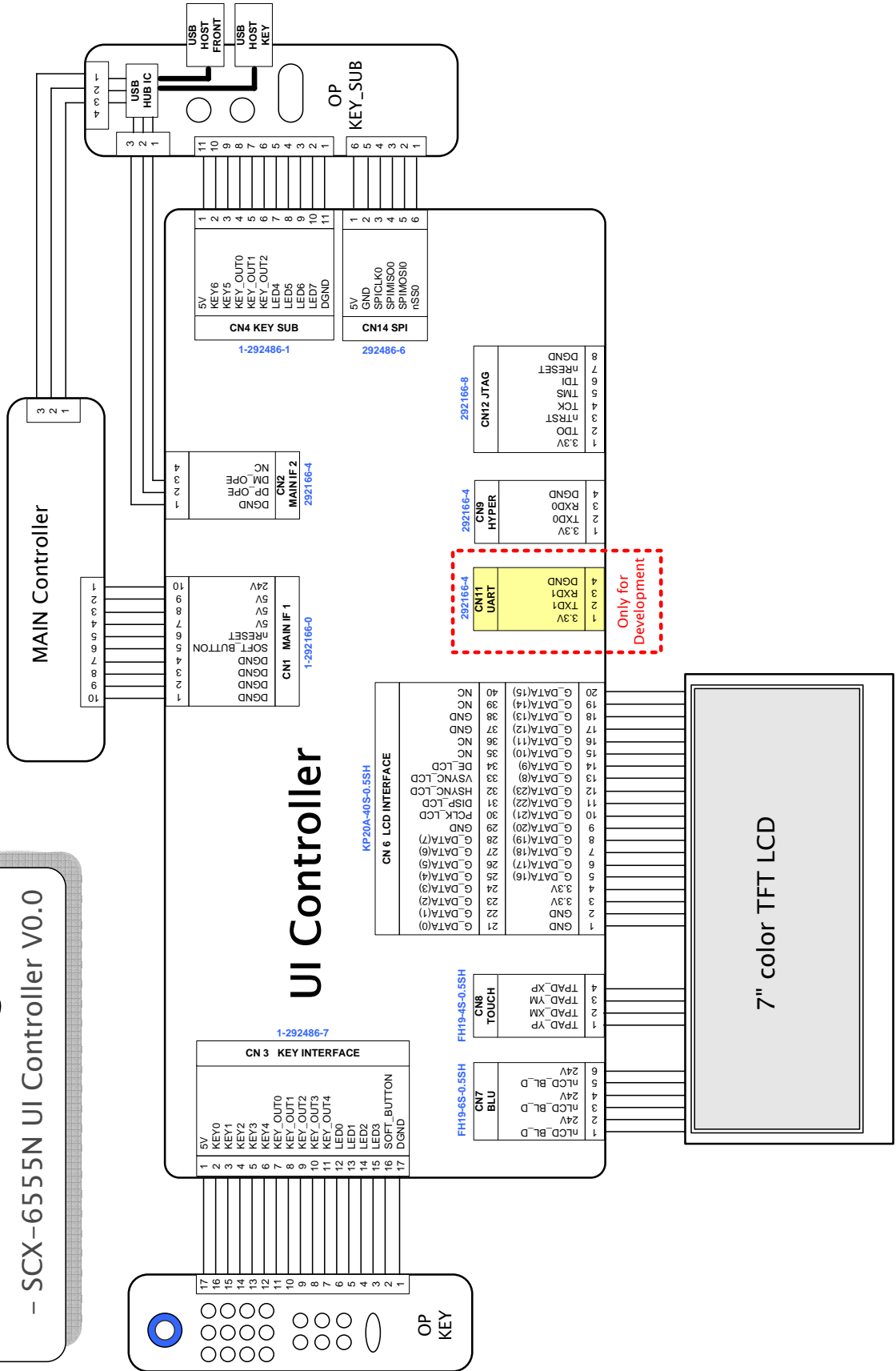
- Main controller



- OP Unit

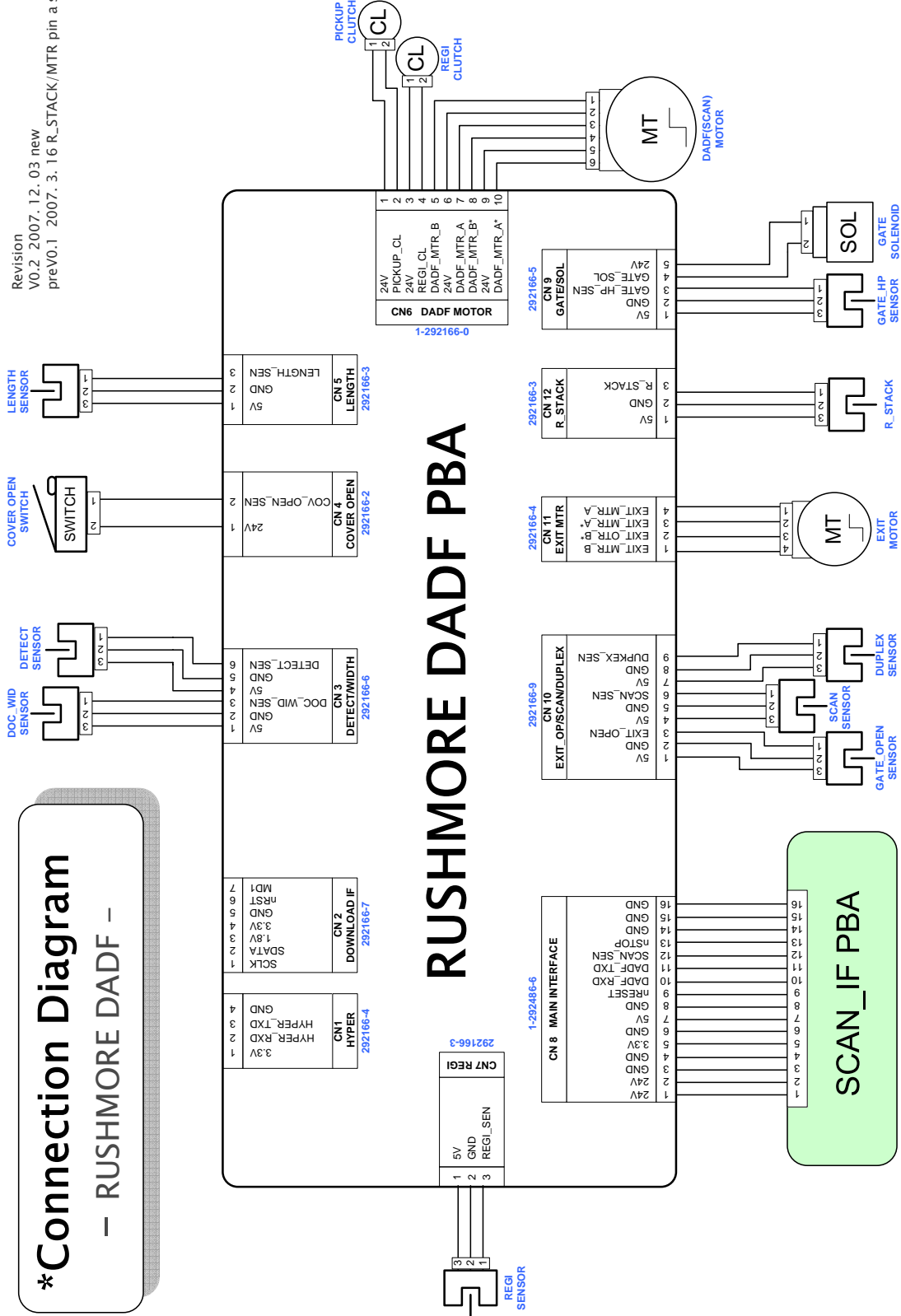
***Connection Diagram**

- SCX-6555N UI Controller V0.0



- DADF

Revision
 VO.2 2007.12.03 new
 preVO.1 2007.3.16 R_STACK/MTR pin assign外



7. Reference Information

Please refer to description in this manual for details.

7.1 Parts Life Cycle Maintenance Table

7.1.1 Parts Life Cycle Maintenance Table

Supplies	Life-Cycle	Condition	Engine-Condition	LCD- Indication	Custmoer - Panel Manage	Toner
Toner Cartridge	25K	Toner Low	Warning	Ready Low Toner	-	- 10% Remains
		Toner Empty	Warning	Ready Toner	-	Initialized at toner change
Fuser	250K	Fuser 90%	Warning	Replace Fuser Soon	-	
		Fuser 100%	Warning	Replace Fuser	Engine Stop	
Transer Roller	125K	Exhausted	No Indication	No Indication	Replaced at Exhausted	
PickUP Roller	250K	Exhausted	No Indication	No Indication	Replaced at Exhausted	

7.1.2 Toner Cartridge Criterion

1) Supplies Criterion (Toner Cartridge)

1. Cartridge Main Defects

- White Point, Black Point : White or Black point on printing image
- Image contamination : Dirty printing image
- Image Fainted : Entire Image is faded and vertical white line emerge
- Black Line : Vertical black line emerge on printing image

2) Defect Symptoms

Symptoms	Criterion	Remarks
White, Black Point	Clean Up OPC (10 times), if disappeared, no failure. - If continuous, failure	
Image contamination (Toner leakage)	Drity printing image or conteminated reverse side - Clean up OPC (10 times) and inside of machine with cloth, if disappeared, no failure.	
Image Fainted	After shake cartridge right and left 5~6 times, if printing image is not faded, no failure. (Toner Exhausted)	
Vertical Black Line	Vertical thin line emerge, if cartridge is scratched. - (Customer fault)	

7.2 Model Information

7.2.1 Understanding for Model Code

Model code is inscribed and managed by product standard operation.

If understand the standard operation. It will help to comprehend basic and derived model.

Classification	Model abbreviation				Feature/Properties					
DIGIT	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Example	S	C	X	-	6	5	5	5	N	
Definition	Product Classification			Division between code	1. Speed of Engine - If same speed models are released simultaneously higher model is added +1 at speed code. - If over 10 models with same speed are brought into, tenth model is added +1.	1. New model, series	Copy Speed (Default A4) - If over 10 models with same speed are brought into, tenth model is added +1.	Main feature description - N : N/W - P : PS - S : N/W+PS - B : Bluetooth - T : 2nd CST - M : Mac Compatible - X : Scanner • Beside above feature description, product conception to product planning group responded	Space (Basic: Omitted)	
Code Description	S:Samsung	C:Copier	X:Fax							
Description	Alphabet			-	Digit			Alphabet		

7.2.2 Understanding Material Code & Name

Material code and name is maintained by standard criteria.

If understand the criteria, it will help to order materials.

1. Two different description ways for material code. (● : Digit, ■ : Letter(Alphabet))

- Type 1 ●●●●●-●●●●●●●● ex) 2007-007961 R-CHIP
- Type 2 ■■●●●-●●●●●■ ex)JB96-01268A ELA UNIT-COVER TOP

Type1 : Parts managed by entire divisions : Materials used by all samsung products.
Most electrical parts are under the type 1.

Type 2 : Parts managed by a division : Material used by a certain product
Most mechanical parts are under type 2.

2. A/S Only material : Only for A/S, not related to product manufacturing.

3. Ass'y material : More than two materials are assembled. If the material order is out of service, the order can be processed by Ass'y material order.
Picture and numbers are also described on Service manual.

※ Ass'y Material and A/S Only material Code are recognizable by product name.
Those are under type 2 and known by material properties and beginning letters of product name.

Classification	Material Code	Material Name
A/S Only Material	**81-***** (JB81-00039A)	AS-***** (AS-FUSE)
A/S Only Material	**75-***** (JB75-00068A)	MEC-***** (MEC-CHUTE)
A/S Only Material	**92-***** (JB92-01131A)	PBA-***** (PBA MAIN-CONTROLLER)
A/S Only Material	**96-***** (JB96-01268A)	ELA-***** (ELA UNIT-COVER TOP)
A/S Only Material	**97-***** (JB97-01089A)	MEA-***** (MEA UNIT-PULLEY IDLE)

7.3 Acronyms and Abbreviations

The table below explains abbreviations used in this service manual.
The contents of this service manual are declared with abbreviations in many parts. Please refer to the table.

7.3.1 Acronyms

ABS	Automatic Background Suppression(a kind of copy feature)	FDI	Foreign Device Interface
APF	Automatic Paper Feeder(Tray)	FIA	Foreign Interface Attachment
BOOTP	BOOTSTRAP PROTOCOL	FRU	Field Replaceable Unit
CCD	Charged Coupled Device	FPOT	First Print Out Time
CIS	Contact Image Sensor	GW	GateWay
CPM	Copies Per Minute	HH	High Temperature, High Humidity (Testing Chamber conditions)
CP	Control Panel(= OPE)	HPVC	Halftone Printing Video Controller in the SPGPm (Graphic Processor for Copy)
CQ	Copy Quality	IDC	International Data Corp.
CRU	Customer Replaceable Unit	IMAP	Internet Message Access Protocol
CRUM	CRU Memory	IPP	Internet Printing Protocols
CW	Center Ware	IPM	Images Per Minutes
CWDP	Center Ware Device Discovery Software(Samsung equivalent of Samsung's SyncThru)	IPX	Internetwork Packet Exchange
CWIS	Center Ware Internet Services	IQ	Image Quality
DADF	Duplex Auto Document Feeder (= DADH)	ITU	International Telecommunication Union
DC	Direct Connect	JBIG	Joint Binary Image Group (a kind of image data coding method)
DDNS	Dynamic Domain Name System	JPEG	Joint Photographic Expert Group (a kind of image data coding method)
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
DLC	Data Link Control	LEF	Long Edge Feeding
DNS	Domain Name System	LL	Low Temperature, Low Humidity (Testing Chamber conditions)
ECM	Error Correction Mode	LPR/LPD	Line Printer Daemon Protocols (LPR is a TCP-based protocol)
ECP	Enhanced Capability Port	LSU	Laser Scanning Unit
e-Coil	Extended Coil technology for Rapid(Fast) Fusing.	LUI	Local User Interface
EH&S	Samsung Environment, Health, & Safty	MCBF	Mean Copy Between Failure
ESMTP	Extended Simple Mail Transfer Protocol	MDSP	Multiple Document Single Printout
EP	Electro Photography	MFP	Multi-Functional Product
EPC	Electric Pre-Collation	MH	Modified Huffman (a kind of image data coding method)
FCOT	First Copy Out Time		

MIB	Management Information Base	RT-OS	Real Time Operating System
MIME	Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions	RX	Receive
MR	Modified Read (a kind of image data coding method)	S2E	Scan-To-Email
MMR	Modified and Modified Read (a kind of image data coding method)	SAD	Solid Area Density
MN std	Multi-National Standard	SC	Service Call
MSOK	Master SOK(System Operation Key)	SCF	Second Cassette Feeder
MSO	Mixed Size Original	SDSP	Single Document Single Printout
MP	Multi Purpose	SDMP	Single Document Multiple Printout
MPBF	Mean Print Between Failure	SDR	Shut Down Rate
MSI	Multi Sheet Input	SEF	Short Edge Feeding
MTBF	Mean Time Between Failure	SIR	Sacrificed(or Standard) Image Reference
MTTR	Mean Time To Repair	SOK	System Operation Key
NCP	Network Control Protocol	sRGB	Standard RGB (Color Coordinate System)
NIC	Network Interface Card	SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
NOS	Network Operating System	TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol
NN	Normal Temperature, Normal Humidity (Testing Chamber conditions)	TBC(or tbc)	To Be Confirmed
NSDR	Non-Shut Down Rate(=USDR)	TBD(or tbd)	To Be Determined
NW	Network	TIFF	(Adobe & Aldus) Tagged Image File Format
OD	Optical Density	TRIM	Technical Retrofit Interim Maintenance
OHD	On Hook Dial	TTM	Time to Market
OSOK	Optional SOK(System Operation Key)	TX	Transmit
OP	Operational Procedure	UI	User Interface
PCL	Printer Control Language	UMC	Unit Manufacturing Cost
PDF	(Adobe) Portable Document Format	UMR	Unscheduled Maintenance Ratio
PPM	Pages Per Minutes	UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
PQ	Print Quality	USB	Universal Serial Bus
PS/3	PostScript Level-3	USDR	Un-Shut Down Rate(=NSDR)
PVC	Printing Video Controller in the SPGPm(Graphic Processor for Printer)	XCMI	Samsung's Management Information Base
QCD	Quality, Cost, and Delivery	WA	Warranty Action
RCP	Remote Control Panel	W x D x H	Width x Depth x Height

7.3.2 Service Parts

ACRONYM	EXPLANATION
ELA HOU-SCANNER ASS'Y	ELA=Electrical Assembly, HOU =Housing
MEA UNIT-COVER PA EXIT ASS'Y	MEA= Mechanical Assembly, PA=Paper
PMO-TRAY EXTENTION MP NE	PMO= Processing Mold MP=Multi-Purpose(Bypass) tray NE=for NEC (common as Samsung Halk printer)
MEC-CASSETTE ASS'Y(LETTER)	MEC = Mechanic Combined unit
COVER-M-FRONT	M=Mold
MPR-NAME/PLATE	MPR= Machinery Press,
UNIT-LSU	LSU =Laser Scanning Unit
SMPS-SMPS(V1)+HVPS	SMPS =Switching Mode Power Supply HVPS =High Voltage Power Supply
ELA-OPC UNIT SET	OPC=Organic Photo-Conductive
ELA HOU-MP ASS'Y	MP =Multi-Purpose (Bypass) tray
PBA MAIN-MAIN	PBA =Printed circuit Board Assembly
PMO-CONNECT PAPER MFP	MFP =Multi-Functional Peripheral
FAN-DC	DC =Direct Current
CBF POWER STITCH GRAY	CBF= Cable Form
MEA UNIT GUIDE CST PA ASS'Y	CST=Cassette(Paper tray), PA=Paper
PBA LIU	PBA =Printed circuit Board Assembly LIU =Line Interface Unit for FAX
SHIELD-P_MAIN LOWER	P=Press
CBF HARNESS-LIU GND	LIU =Line Interface Unit for FAX GND= Ground
PMO-COVER FEED AY	AY=Assembly
PMO-COVER BRKT MOTER	BRKT=Bracket
CBF HARNESS-LSU	LSU =Laser Scanning Unit
IPR-SHIELD SMPS UPPERI	IPR=Iron Press
PMO-BUSHING P/U.MP	P/U=Pickup MP=Multi-Purpose (Bypass) Tray
PMO-HOLDER GEAR TRr	TR= Transfer Roller
SPRING ETC-TR_L	TR_L=Transfer Roller - Left
PMO-CAM JAM REMOVE	PMO-CAM= Processing Mold-CAM
PMO-LOCKER DEVE	DEVE=Developer

ACRONYM	EXPLANATION
SPECIAL SCREW(PANNEL MFP)	MFP =Multi-Functional Peripheral
A/S MATERAL-DUMMY UPPER ASS'Y	A/S=After-Service
MCT-GLASS ADF	MCT= Machinery Cutting ADF=Automatic Document Feeder
PPR-REGISTRATION EDGE(F)	PPR= Processing Press
IPR-HOLDER GLASSI	PR=Iron Press
MCT-GLASS SCANNER(LLEGAL)	MCT= Machinery Cutting
CBF HARNESS-OPE	OPE=Operation Panel(Control Panel)
PBA SUB-D_SUB	PBA SUB-D_SUB =>Sub Printed circuit Board Assembly for the D-SUB type electrical connector (D-Sub) a kind of the connector type(shape 'D')
COVER-M-CCD CABLE	M=Mold CCD=Charge Coupled Device
COVER-SCAN LOWER(UMAX)	UMAX=> Supplier's name for CCD module
ICT-INSERT SHAFTI	ICT= Iron Cutting
IPR-BRK SCAN BD	IPR=Iron Press BRK=Bracket BD= Board
CBF SIGNAL-CCD FFC	CCD = Charge Coupled Device FFC =Flexible Flat Cable
COVER-M-OPE	M=Mold OPE=Operation Panel(Control Panel)
KEY-M-COPY	M=Mold
PLATE-M-ALPHA KEY	M=Molde ALPHA=Alphabet
PMO-GUIDE DP SIDE	DP=Duplex
RING-CS	CS= Compress
GEAR-MP/DUP DRV	MP =Multi-Purpose (Bypass) tray DUP DRV = Duplex Driver
IPR-BRKT G DUPI	PR=Iron Press BRKT=BRACKET G= Ground UP=Duplex
PMO-BUSHING TX(B4)	TX=Transmit
PMO-TRAY CASE, MP	MP=Multi-Purpose tray(Bypass tray)

ACRONYM	EXPLANATION
SPRING CS RE	CS=Compress RE=Rear
SPRING CS FR	CS=Compress FR=Front
PMO-BUSHING FINGER, F	F=Front
ICT-SHAFT-EXIT LOWER ID	ID=Idler
SPRING-EXIT ROLL FD	FD=Face Down
PMO-BUSHING_P/U,MP	P/U=Pickup MP =Multi-Purpose (Bypass) tray
PMO-HOLDER CAM MPF	MPF=Multi-Purpose Feeder(=MP)
PMO-GEAR P/U MPF	P/U=Pickup
MFP =Multi-Functional Peripheral	
RPR-RUBBER PICK UP,MP	RPR=Rubber Press
PBA SUB-MP SEN	PBA SUB-MP-SEN =>Sub Printed circuit Board Assembly for the MP-SEN(= Multi-Purpose (Bypass) tray-Sensor)
A/S MATERIAL-PICKUP,MP	
FOOT-ML80	
HOLDER CATCH CST MC2	MC2=>McKinley2 (Samsung Project code name)
IPR-GROUND PLATE A(OPC)	OPC=Organic Photo-Conductive
ELA M/M-AUD SPEAKER	ELA M/M => Electrical Assembly M/M AUD=Audio
CBF HARNESS-OPC GND	OPC GNG=Organic Photo-Conductive-Ground
IPR-GROUND PLATE SCF	SCF=Second Cassette Feeder(Tray2)
PBA SUB-PTL	PBA SUB-PTL=>Sub Printed circuit Board Assembly for the PTL(= Pre Transfer Lamp)
PBA SUB-FEED+P.EMP SEN.	PBA SUB-FEED=>Sub Printed circuit Board Assembly for the feeder EMP SEN=Empty Sensor
MOTOR STEP-MCK2(MAIN)	
GEAR-EXIT/U	EXIT/U=EXIT/Upper
GEAR-RDCN FEED INNER	RDCN=Reduction
CBF-HARNESS-MAIN-THV WIRE	THV =Transfer High Voltage
CBF-HARNESS-MAIN-MHV WIRE	MHV= High Voltage(Charge Voltage)

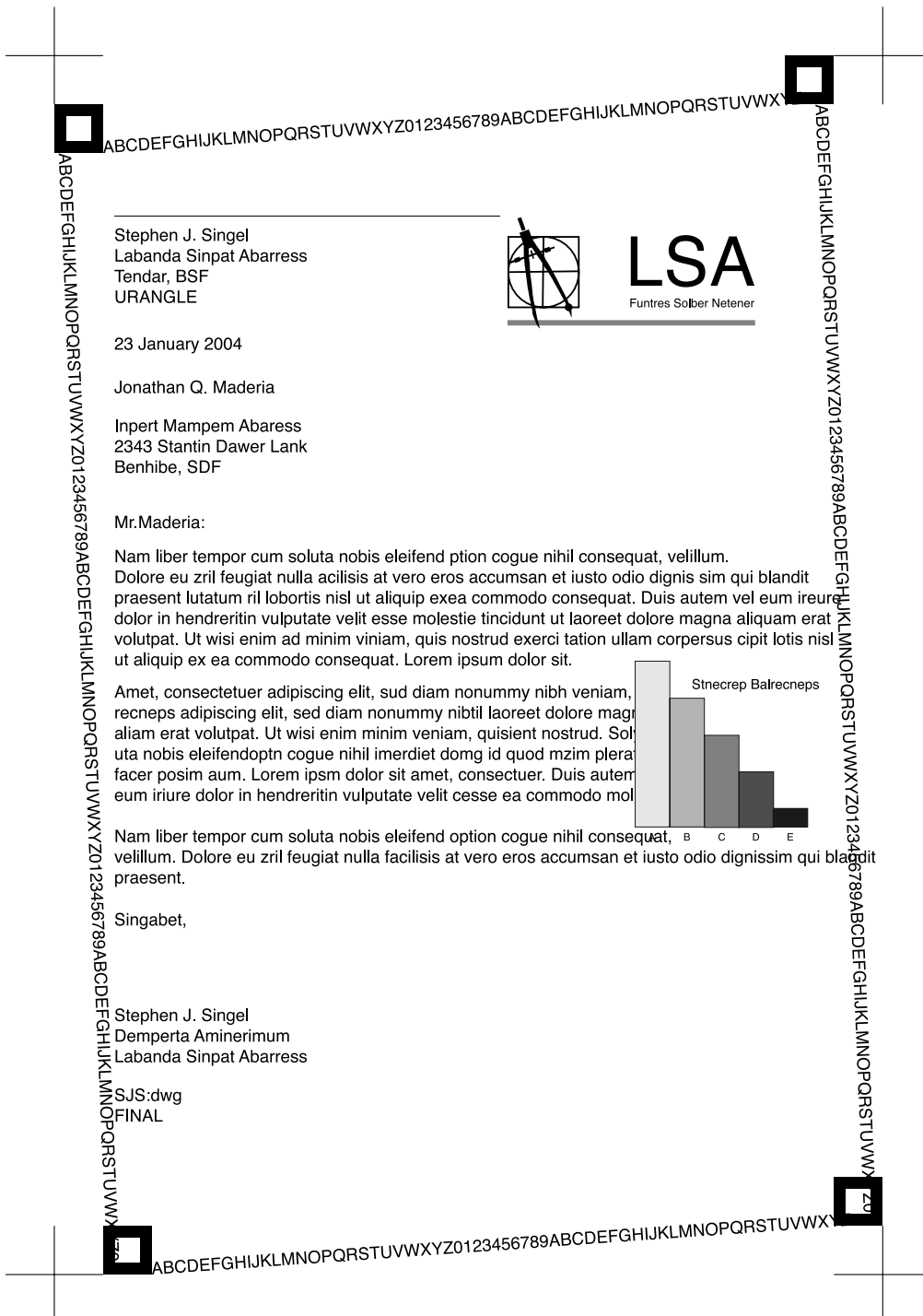
ACRONYM	EXPLANATION
GEAR-EXIT/U, ID	U=Upper ID=Idler
IPR-TERMINAL FU	FU=Fuser
PMO-BEARING H/R-F	H/R-F=Heat Roller - Front
BEARING-H/R L	H/R-L=Heat Roller -Left
PEX-ROLLER EXIT F_UP	PEX= Processing Extrude F_UP=Face Up
SPRING ETC-P/R	P/R=Pressure Roller
SPRING(R)-CAU-HOT-FU	CAU-HOT-FU = Caution Hot -Fuser
PMO-ARM ACTUATOR	PMO-ARM= Processing Mold Arm
LABEL(R)-HV FUSER	HV=High Voltage (220V)
LABEL(R)-LV FUSER	LV=Low Voltage (110V)
PPR-SPONG SHEET	PPR=Plastic Press
IPR-P_PINCH(SCAN)I	PR-P = Iron Press
ROLLER-REGI	REGI=Registration
PBA SUB-REGI	PBA SUB-REGI => Sub Printed circuit Board Assembly for the Registration
GROUND-P_SCAN ROLLER	GROUND-P =Ground-Press
IPR-GUARD C/O S/W	C/O = Cover Open S/W= Switch
MEA UNIT-TX STACKER	TX =Transmit
IPR-WASHER SPRING CU	CU=Curve

7.4 The Sample Pattern for the Test

The sample pattern shown in below is the standard pattern used in the factory.
 The life of the toner cartridge and the printing speed are measured using the pattern shown below.
 (The image is 70% of the actual A4 size).

7.4.1 A4 ISO 19752 Standard Pattern

This test page is reproduced at 70% of the normal A4 size



7.5 Selecting a location

Select a level, stable place with adequate space for air circulation. Allow extra space for opening covers and trays.

The area should be well-ventilated and away from direct sunlight or sources of heat, cold, and humidity. Do not set the machine close to the edge of your desk or table.

Clearance space

- Front: 482.6 mm (enough space so that the paper tray can be removed)
- Back: 100 mm (enough space for ventilation)
- Right: 300 mm (enough space for ventilation)
- Left: 100 mm (enough space for ventilation)

